S-101

Annex A

Data Classification and Encoding Guide

Edition 2.0.0.202402211 – Xxxx 2024

Deleted: 1.2
Deleted: 311091082127
Deleted: 115672231
Deleted: 012678
Deleted: 2023

IHO

International Hydrographic Organization

Published by the
International Hydrographic Organization
4b quai Antoine 1er
Principauté de Monaco
Tel: (377) 93.10.81.00
Fax: (377) 93.10.81.40
info@iho.int
www.iho.int

Deleted: 2023

CONTENTS

Document Control

Version	Version Type	Date	Approved By	Signed Off By	Role
0.0.0	Editing Committee Draft	Jan 2014	TSMAD	J. Wootton	DCEG Coordinator
0.0.1	Baseline Version 1	Apr 2014	TSMAD	J. Wootton	DCEG Coordinator
0.0.2	Baseline Version	Aug 2016	S-101PT	J. Wootton	DCEG Coordinator
0.0.2	Baseline Version 2	Mar 2017	S-101PT	J. Wootton	DCEG Coordinator
1.0.0	Edition 1.0.0	Dec 2018	S-101PT	A. Armstrong	S-101PT Chair
1.0.1	Edition 1.0.1	Mar 2021	S-101PT	T. Richardson	S-101PT Chair
1.0.2	Edition 1.0.2	Mar 2022	S-101PT	T. Richardson	S-101PT Chair
1.1.0	Edition 1.1.0	Mar 2023	S-101PT	T. Richardson	S-101PT Chair
1.2.0	Edition 1.2.0	Oct 2023	S-101PT	T. Richardson	S-101PT Chair
2.0.0	Edition 2.0.0	Xxx 2024	S-101PT	T. Richardson	S-101PT Chair

Formatted: Font color: Red

Summary of Substantive Changes in Edition 2.0.0

Deleted: 1.2

Bold references in the Clauses Affected column indicate the principle sections/clauses that are impacted by the described change.

Change Summary	Clauses Affected
Added statement regarding the restriction of geometric primitives based on attribution of individual feature instance attribution being described in Sections 3-24.	**2.3**
Clarified final paragraph to add multipoint geometry and the meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** as allowed to be associated with **Spatial Quality**.	**2.4.7**
Allowed **Update Information** to be associated to S-101 Meta features using the association **Updated Information**.	3.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, **25.19**
Clarified that the vertical uncertainty associated with survey reliability is to be encoded using an instance of **Spatial Quality** associated to the geometry of individual geo features or an instance of **Quality of Bathymetric Data**.	**3.11.1**
Corrected the Type for the Component of Role for the **Aids to Navigation Association** to Aggregation for the target feature.	6.2, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8, 6.9, 6.11, 6.12, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 8.3, 8.4, 8.6, 8.12, 8.14, 8.17, 8.18, 13.9, 14.1, 20.1, 20.2, 20.3, 20.4, 20.5, 20.9, 20.10, 20.11, 20.12, 20.13, 20.14, 20.15, 20.16, **25.2**
Added new encoding examples (Figures) for the **Bridge** feature.	**6.2.2**
Added value *21* (cement) as an allowable enumerate value for attribute **product** on feature **Conveyor**.	**6.9**

Corrected complex attribute **vertical clearance open** for feature **Gate** to be consistent with feature **Span Opening** (addition of mandatory sub-attribute **vertical clearance unlimited** and amendment of multiplicity of sub-attribute **vertical clearance value**).	**8.10**
Added **Pontoon** as an allowable feature for inclusion in the association **Bridge Aggregation**.	8.18, **25.4**
Added complex attribute **fixed date range** to relevant "no geometry" features (consistency)	**8.22**, **15.6**, **15.11**, **15.15**, **15.23**
Amended Remarks 16th bullet to distinguish between FAD and a wreck deliberately sunk to perform the function of a fish haven.	**13.6.1**
Added new Remark prohibiting **Obstruction** of geometric primitive curve where attribute **category of obstruction** is populated s *23* (mangrove).	**13.6.1.1**
Added attribute **communication channel** and amended encoding guidance to specify single communication channel instances should be encoded on the relevant feature but multiple instances of th same communication channel should be encoded using an associated **Contact Details** feature.	**15.27**, 15.30, 15.31, 16.26, **22.1**, 22.3, 22.4, 22.5, 22.6, **22.7**
Corrected Table 19-1 to remove columns for IQ and IVQ (no longer valid light characteristics in S-4).	**19.1.1**
Added attribute **exhibition condition of light** value *3* (fog signal) as an allowable value for feature **Light Sectored**.	**19.3**
Added new guidance for encoding virtual AIS aids to navigation intended to serve a purpose other than those defined in attribute **virtual AIS aid to navigation type**.	**21.3.1**
Corrected association **Text Association** to add missing feature **Swept Area** to the identifies Role.	**25.16**
Corrected Note 1 for attribute **category of zone of confidence in data** to include the Information type **Spatial Quality** in providing additional quality information.	**27.73**
Corrected the definition of attribute **maximum permitted vessel length** to refer to length rather than draught.	**27.125**
Removed redundant complex attribute **update description**.	**29.35** (Edition 1.2.0)

Deleted: ¶

1 Overview

1.1 Preface

The “Data Classification and Encoding Guide” has been developed to provide consistent, standardized instructions for encoding S-100 compliant ENC data. This document has been laid out, as far as possible, along the lines of the IHO publication S-4, Part B “Chart Specifications of the IHO – Medium and Large-Scale National and International (INT) Charts”.

The purpose of the Data Classification and Encoding Guide is to facilitate S-101 encoding to meet IHO standards for the proper display of ENC in an ECDIS. The document describes how to encode information that the cartographer considers relevant to an ENC. The content of an ENC is at the discretion of the producing authority provided that the conventions described within this document are followed. A “producing authority” is a Hydrographic Office (HO) or an organization authorized by a government, HO or other relevant government institution to produce ENCs.

The entire S-100 Standard, including the S-101 ENC Product Specification, is available at the following web site, https://iho.int/.

1.2 S-101 Annex A; Data Classification and Encoding Guide - Metadata

Note: This information uniquely identifies this Annex to the Product Specification and provides information about its creation and maintenance.

Title: The International Hydrographic Organization Electronic Navigational Chart Product Specification, Annex A – Data Classification and Encoding Guide

Version: 2.0.0

Date: Xxxx 2024

Language: English

Classification: Unclassified

Contact: International Hydrographic Organization
4b, quai Antione 1er
B.P. 445
MC 98011 MONACO CEDEX
Telephone: +377 93 10 81 00
Fax: +377 93 10 81 40

URL: https://iho.int/

Identifier: S-101 Annex A

Maintenance: Changes to S-101 Annex A; Data Classification and Encoding Guide are coordinated by the S-101 Project Team (S-101PT), a Project Team under the IHO S-100 Working Group (S-100WG), and must be made available via the IHO web site.

Deleted: 1.2

Deleted: 2023

1.3 Terms, definitions and abbreviations

1.3.1 Terms and definitions

See S-101 Product Specification Main document, clause 1.3.2.

1.3.2 Abbreviations

ECDIS	Electronic Chart Display and Information System
ENC	Electronic Navigational Chart
ENCWG	ENC Standards Maintenance Working Group
GML	Geography Markup Language
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System

HO	Hydrographic Office
IHO	International Hydrographic Organization
IMO	International Maritime Organization
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
SOLAS	Safety of Life at Sea
S-57	IHO Transfer Standard for Digital Hydrographic Data
S-100WG	S-100 Working Group
S-101PT	S-101 Project Team (a Project Team of the S-100WG)
TIFF	Tagged Image File Format
UNCLOS	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea
URL	Universal Resource Locator
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
XML	Extensible Markup Language

1.4 Use of language

Within this document:

"Must" indicates a mandatory requirement;

"Should" indicates an optional requirement, that is the recommended process to be followed, but is not mandatory;

"May" means "allowed to" or "could possibly", and is not mandatory.

1.5 Maintenance

Changes to the Data Classification and Encoding Guide must occur in accordance with the S-101 ENC Product Specification clause 1.6.

2 General

The S-101 Data Classification and Encoding Guide describes how data describing the real world should be captured using the types defined in the S-101 Feature Catalogue (see S-101 Product Specification Main document clause 4.3). It provides the encoding rules and guidance required to create S-101 ENCs. This standard is specifically concerned with those entities in the real world that are of relevance to hydrography. This hydrographic regime is considered to be geo-spatial. As a result, the model defines real-world entities as a combination of descriptive and spatial characteristics. Within the model these sets of characteristics are defined in terms of feature, spatial and information types. A type is defined as a stereotype of class that is used to specify a domain of instances (features) together with the operations applicable to the features. A type may have attributes and may be related to other types.

The types used within S-101 are described below. Within this document feature types, information types, associations and attributes appear in **bold** text.

2.1 Feature types

Feature types contain descriptive attributes and do not contain any geometry (that is, information about the shape and position of a real-world entity).

Features have two aspects – feature type and feature instance. A feature type is a class and is defined in a Feature Catalogue. A feature instance is a single occurrence of the feature type and

represented as an object in a dataset. A feature instance is located by a relationship to one or more spatial instances. A feature instance may exist without referencing a spatial instance.

S-101 makes use of the following feature types:

Geographic (Geo) feature type – carries the descriptive characteristics of a real-world entity.

Cartographic feature type – contains information about the cartographic representation (including text) of real-world entities.

Meta feature type – contains information about other features. Information defined by meta features override the default metadata values defined by the dataset descriptive records. Meta attribution on individual geographic feature instances overrides attribution on meta features.

2.1.1 Multiple features

On some sources, multiple features in close proximity are generalised to a single feature with a text string indicating the presence of the other features. In such cases, where it is considered that this information may be useful for visual navigation, one feature of the appropriate class should be encoded and the true number of features, if known, must be encoded using the complex attribute **multiplicity of features**, sub-attribute **number of features**, with Boolean sub-attribute **multiplicity known** set to *True* (see clause 27.130). If the true number of features is not known, **multiplicity of features** Boolean sub-attribute **multiplicity known** must be populated as *False*. If **multiplicity of features** is not an allowable attribute for the feature, multiplicity may be indicated using the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **text** (for example *3 trees*. If the true number of features is not known, the text "*more than one*" should be encoded using **information** (**text**).

Multiple submerged features in close proximity, which have been generalised to a single feature, should not have the multiplicity indicated unless the multiplicity has some significance to safe navigation. This is so as to minimise the presence of ECDIS "information" symbols, which may contribute to screen clutter (see clause 2.4.6).

For the encoding of multiple, identical lights using the complex attribute **multiplicity of features**, see Table 19-2 in clause 19.1.7.

For the encoding of leading lights that are required to be merged due to scale, see clause 19.1.5.

There is no method within ENC to indicate to the Mariner that a feature has not been encoded in its true position, therefore it is considered important for features to be encoded in their true position to provide the Mariner with an accurate representation of the real world.

Encoders are advised, therefore, that if it is required to encode a feature which has been displaced on the source, it should be captured in its real-world position on the ENC.

2.2 Information types

An information type is an identifiable object that can be associated with features in order to carry information particular to the associated features. An example of the use of an information type may be the requirement to include a note about overhead cables. Information types can also be associated with other information types. This may be done where there is further supplementary information that is relevant to the information type.

Information types carry attributes but not geometry.

2.3 Geometric primitives

The allowable geometric primitive for each feature type is defined in the Feature Catalogue. Within this document, allowable primitives are included in the tables containing a description of each feature type. Allowable geometric primitives are point, pointset, curve and surface.

Each spatial value must be referenced by at least one feature instance.

Within this document, allowable primitives are included in the description of each feature type. For easy reference, Table 2-1 below summarises the allowable geometric primitives for each feature type. For some features, the allowable geometric primitives may be further constrained dependant on the

attribution applied to a feature instance. Where this occurs, these constraints are described in the feature Table entries in Sections 3-24.

In the Table, abbreviations are as follows: point (P), pointset (A), curve (C) and surface (S). A feature that may have no geometric primitive is annotated as none (N).

GEO FEATURES

Administration Area		C	S		Airport/Airfield	P		S	
Anchor Berth	P		S		Anchorage Area	P		S	
Archipelagic Sea Lane			S	N	Archipelagic Sea Lane Area			S	
Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis		C			Berth	P	C	S	
Bollard	P				Bridge		C	S	N
Building	P		S		Built-up Area	P		S	
Cable Area			S		Cable Overhead		C		
Cable Submarine		C			Canal		C	S	
Cardinal Beacon	P				Cardinal Buoy	P			
Cargo Transhipment Area	P		S		Causeway		C	S	
Caution Area	P		S		Checkpoint	P		S	
Coast Guard Station	P		S		Coastline		C		
Collision Regulations Limit		C			Contiguous Zone		C	S	
Continental Shelf Area		C	S		Conveyor		C	S	
Crane	P		S		Current – Non-Gravitational	P			
Custom Zone			S		Dam		C	S	
Daymark	P				Deep Water Route			S	N
Deep Water Route Centreline		C			Deep Water Route Part			S	
Depth Area			S		Depth Contour		C		
Depth – No Bottom Found	A				Discoloured Water	P		S	
Distance Mark	P				Dock Area			S	
Dolphin	P				Dredged Area	P		S	
Dry Dock			S		Dumping Ground			S	
Dyke		C	S		Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy	P			
Exclusive Economic Zone		C	S		Fairway			S	
Fairway System			S	N	Fence/Wall		C		
Ferry Route		C	S		Fishery Zone			S	
Fishing Facility	P	C	S		Fishing Ground			S	
Floating Dock	P	C	S		Fog Signal	P			
Fortified Structure	P	C	S		Foul Ground	P		S	
Free Port Area			S		Gate	P	C	S	
Gridiron			S		Harbour Area (Administrative)			S	
Helipad	P				Hulk	P		S	
Ice Area			S		Information Area	P		S	
Inshore Traffic Zone			S		Installation Buoy	P			
Island Group			S	N	Isolated Danger Beacon	P			
Isolated Danger Buoy	P				Lake			S	
Land Area	P	C	S		Land Elevation	P	C		
Land Region	P	C	S		Landmark	P	C	S	
Lateral Beacon	P				Lateral Buoy	P			
Light Air Obstruction	P				Light All Around	P			
Light Float	P				Light Fog Detector	P			
Light Sectored	P				Light Vessel	P			
Local Magnetic Anomaly	P	C	S		Lock Basin			S	
Log Pond	P		S		Magnetic Variation	P	C	S	
Marine Farm/Culture	P	C	S		Marine Pollution Regulations Area			S	
Military Practice Area	P		S		Mooring Area	P		S	
Mooring Buoy	P				Mooring Trot			S	N
Navigation Line		C			Obstruction	P	C	S	
Offshore Platform	P		S		Offshore Production Area			S	
Oil Barrier		C			Physical AIS Aid to Navigation	P			
Pile	P	C	S		Pilot Boarding Place	P		S	

Commented [TS1]: Add guidance on restricted encoding/geometric primitives combinations? Refer Christian email 06/10/22.

Deleted:

Pilotage District			S		Pipeline Overhead		C		
Pipeline Submarine/On Land		C			Pontoon	P	C	S	
Precautionary Area	P		S		Production/Storage Area	P		S	
Pylon/Bridge Support	P		S		Radar Line		C		
Radar Range			S		Radar Reflector	P			
Radar Station	P				Radar Transponder Beacon	P			
Radio Calling-In Point	P	C			Radio Station	P			
Railway		C			Rapids		C	S	
Range System		C	S	N	Recommended Route Centreline		C		
Recommended Track		C			Recommended Traffic Lane Part	P		S	
Rescue Station	P		S		Restricted Area			S	
Retroreflector	P				River		C	S	
Road		C	S		Runway		C	S	
Safe Water Beacon	P				Safe Water Buoy	P			
Sandwave	P	C	S		Sea Area/Named Water Area	P		S	
Seabed Area	P	C	S		Seagrass	P		S	
Seaplane Landing Area	P		S		Separation Zone or Line		C	S	
Shoreline Construction	P	C	S		Signal Station Traffic	P		S	
Signal Station Warning	P		S		Silo/Tank	P		S	
Slope Topline		C			Sloping Ground	P		S	
Small Craft Facility	P		S		Sounding	A			
Span Fixed		C	S		Span Opening		C	S	
Special Purpose/General Beacon	P				Special Purpose/General Buoy	P			
Spring	P				Straight Territorial Sea Baseline		C		
Submarine Pipeline Area	P		S		Submarine Transit Lane			S	
Swept Area			S		Territorial Sea Area		C	S	
Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb	P		S		Tidal Stream Panel Data	P		S	
Tideway		C	S		Traffic Separation Scheme			S	N
Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary		C			Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing			S	
Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part			S		Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout			S	
Tunnel		C	S		Two-Way Route			S	N
Two-Way Route Part			S		Underwater/Awash Rock	P			
Unsurveyed Area			S		Vegetation	P	C	S	
Vessel Traffic Service Area			S		Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation	P			
Water Turbulence	P	C	S		Waterfall	P	C		
Weed/Kelp	P		S		Wind Turbine	P			
Wreck	P		S						

METADATA FEATURES

Data Coverage			S		Local Direction of Buoyage			S	
Navigational System of Marks			S		Quality of Bathymetric Data			S	
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data			S		Quality of Survey		C	S	
Sounding Datum			S		Update Information	P	C	S	
Vertical Datum of Data			S						

CARTOGRAPHIC FEATURES

Text Placement	P			

INFORMATION TYPES

Contact Details				N	Nautical Information				N
Non-Standard Working Day				N	Service Hours				N
Spatial Quality				N					

Table 2-1 - Features permitted for ENC and their geometric primitives

2.3.1 Capture density guideline

It is recommended that curves and surface boundaries should not be encoded at a point density greater than 0.3mm at the optimum display scale for the ENC data.

A curve consists of one or more curve segments. Each curve segment is defined as a loxodromic line on WGS84. Long lines may need to have additional coordinates inserted to cater for the effects of projection change.

The presentation of line styles may be affected by curve length. Therefore, the encoder must be aware that splitting a curve into numerous small curves may result in poor symbolization.

2.4 Attributes

Attributes may be simple type or complex type. Complex (C) attributes are aggregates of other attributes that can be simple type or complex type. Simple attributes in S-101 are assigned to one of 7 types (see clause 2.4.2).

The binding of attributes to feature types; the binding of attributes to attributes to construct complex attributes; and attribute multiplicity is defined in the Feature Catalogue. Within this document, the allowable attributes are included in the description of each feature type, as well as the allowable values for enumeration type attributes.

2.4.1 Multiplicity

In order to control the number of allowed attribute values; or sub-attribute instances within a complex attribute, S-100 uses the concept of multiplicity. This defines lower and upper limits for the number of values, whether the order of the instances has meaning and if an attribute is mandatory or not. Common examples are shown in Table 2-2 below:

Format : *MinOccurs*, *MaxOccurs* (if * Infinite) *(ordered)* – sequential

Multiplicity	Explanation
0,1	An instance is not mandatory; there can be only one instance.
1,1	An instance is mandatory and there must only be one instance.
0,*	An instance is not mandatory and there can be an infinite number of instances.
1,*	An instance is mandatory and there can be an infinite number of instances.
1,* (ordered)	An instance is mandatory and there can be an infinite number of instances, the order of which has a specific meaning.
2,2	Two instances are mandatory and no more than two.
{1,* [C]}	Example of “collective” multiplicity. Used for associations only – see Section 25.

Table 2-2 - Multiplicity - Examples

Note: The function of the S-57 attribute type “List” has been replaced by Enumeration (EN) with an upper limit of multiplicity greater than 1. This means that when more than one value is needed for an enumerated attribute, the attribute code is populated multiple times with the required values.

Example: A red and white tower is encoded with attribute **colour** = *3* (red) and **colour** = *1* (white). Within this document, this example would be indicated as “**colour** = *3,1*”.

2.4.2 Simple attribute types

Each simple attribute in S-101 is assigned to one of 7 types:

EN Enumeration: A fixed list of valid identifiers of named literal values. Attributes of an enumerated type may only take values from this list.

BO Boolean: A value representing binary logic. The value can be either *True* or *False*. The default state for Boolean type attributes, unless stated otherwise in this document, is *False*; this includes instances where the attribute is allowable for a feature but is not populated.

RE Real: A signed Real (floating point) number consisting of a mantissa and an exponent. The representation of a real is encapsulation and usage dependent.

Examples: 23.501, -0.0001234, -23.0, 3.141296

IN Integer: A signed integer number. The representation of an integer is encapsulation and usage dependent.

Examples: 29, -65547

TE Text: A CharacterString, that is an arbitrary-length sequence of characters including accents and special characters from a repertoire of one of the adopted character sets.

TD S100_TruncatedDate: Allows a partial date to be encoded as an extension to the ISO 8601 compliant date attribute type values for year, month and day according to the Gregorian Calendar. Character encoding of a date is a string which follows the calendar date format (complete representation, basic format) for date specified by ISO 8601. See clause 2.4.8.

Example: 19610922 (YYYYMMDD)

TI Time: A time is given by an hour, minute and second in the 24-hour clock system. Character encoding of a time shall be a complete representation of the basic format as defined in ISO 8601. Complete representation means that hours, minutes and seconds shall be used. Basic format means that separating characters are omitted.

Time is preferably expressed as Universal Time Coordinated (UTC).

Example: 183059Z

Time may be expressed as a Local Time with a given offset to UTC.

Example: 183059+0100

Time may be expressed as a Local Time without a specified offset to UTC.

Example: 183059

The complete representation of the time of 27 minutes and 46 seconds past 15 hours locally in Geneva (in winter one hour ahead of UTC), and in New York (in winter five hours behind UTC), together with the indication of the difference between the time scale of local time and UTC, are used below as examples.

Geneva*:* 152746+0100

New York: 152746-0500

The service hours for a service, that is available all year in an area where Daylight Saving Hour affects the offset to UTC, could be expressed as Local Time without specified offset.

Example: Opening: 074500 Closing: 161500

Real or integer attribute values must not be padded by non-significant zeroes. For example, for a signal period of 2.5 seconds, the value populated for the attribute **signal period** must be 2.5 and not 02.50.

2.4.3 Mandatory and conditional attributes

Some attributes are mandatory and must be populated for a given feature type. The following are reasons why attribute values may be considered mandatory:

- They are required to support correct portrayal by determining
  - whether a feature is in the display base
  - which symbol is to be displayed;
- Certain features make no logical sense without specific attributes; and
- Some attributes are required for safety of navigation.

In Table 2-3 below, mandatory attributes for which this is relevant for a feature (that is, the attribute should not be populated with an empty (null) value) are indicated by the superscript *****

Within this document, mandatory attributes (multiplicity 1,1; 1,n (n>1); or 1,*) are identified in the description of each feature type. For easy reference, Table 2-3 summarises the mandatory attributes for each feature type (note that mandatory sub-attributes of complex attributes are not included in this Table – see NOTE 2 below Table 2-3):

Feature	Mandatory Attributes
GEO FEATURES	
Administration Area	**jurisdiction**
Archipelagic Sea Lane	**nationality ***
Archipelagic Sea Lane Area	**nationality *** (except when included in **ASL Aggregation** association)
Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis	**nationality *** (except when included in **ASL Aggregation** association)

Feature	Mandatory Attributes
Berth	**feature name**
Bridge	over navigable water: **opening bridge** If **opening bridge** = *True*: **category of opening bridge** other cases: none
Cable Overhead	over navigable water, one of: **vertical clearance fixed** or **vertical clearance safe** other cases: none
Cardinal Beacon	**beacon shape**; **category of cardinal mark**; **colour**
Cardinal Buoy	**buoy shape**; **category of cardinal mark**; **colour**
Caution Area	at least one of: **information ***; **pictorial representation ***
Contiguous Zone	**nationality ***
Continental Shelf Area	**nationality ***
Conveyor	over navigable water: **vertical clearance fixed** other cases: none
Current – Non-Gravitational	**orientation**; **speed**
Custom Zone	**nationality ***
Daymark	**colour**; **topmark shape**
Deep Water Route Centreline	**based on fixed marks**; **orientation value ***; **traffic flow**
Deep Water Route Part	**depth range minimum value**; **orientation value ***; **traffic flow**
Depth Area	**depth range maximum value ***; **depth range minimum value ***
Depth Contour	**value of depth contour ***
Distance Mark	**measured distance value**
Dolphin	**category of dolphin**
Dredged Area	**depth range minimum value ***
Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy	**buoy shape**; **colour**
Exclusive Economic Zone	**nationality ***
Ferry Route	**category of ferry**
Fishery Zone	**nationality ***
Fog Signal	**category of fog signal**
Gate	if navigable at optimum display scale for the data: **horizontal clearance open**
Harbour Facility	**category of harbour facility**
Ice Area	**category of ice**
Information Area	at least one of: **information ***; **pictorial representation ***
Installation Buoy	**buoy shape**; **colour**
Island Group	**feature name**
Isolated Danger Beacon	**beacon shape**; **colour**
Isolated Danger Buoy	**buoy shape**; **colour**
Land Elevation	**elevation ***
Land Region	at least one of: **category of land region**; **feature name**
Landmark	**category of landmark**; **visual prominence**
Lateral Beacon	**beacon shape**; **category of lateral mark**; **colour**
Lateral Buoy	**buoy shape**; **category of lateral mark**; **colour**
Light All Around	**colour**; **rhythm of light**

Commented [TS2]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: Buoy

Feature	Mandatory Attributes
Light Float	**colour**
Light Sectored	**sector characteristics**
Light Vessel	**colour**
Local Magnetic Anomaly	**value of local magnetic anomaly**
Magnetic Variation	**reference year for magnetic variation**; **value of annual change in magnetic variation**; **value of magnetic variation ***
Marine Farm/Culture	**water level effect** at least one of: **height**; **value of sounding**
Mooring Buoy	**buoy shape**
Navigation Line	**category of navigation line**; **orientation**
Obstruction	**water level effect** at least one of: **height**; **value of sounding**
Offshore Platform	**water level effect**
Pipeline Overhead	over navigable water: **vertical clearance fixed** other cases: none
Precautionary Area	**information**
Production Area	**category of production area**
Pylon/Bridge Support	**category of pylon**
Radar Line	**orientation value**
Radar Transponder Beacon	**category of radar transponder beacon**
Radio Calling-In Point	**orientation value** (point features only); **traffic flow**
Recommended Route Centreline	**based on fixed marks**
Recommended Track	**based on fixed marks**; **orientation value**; **traffic flow**
Recommended Traffic Lane Part	**orientation value ***
Restricted Area	**restriction**
Safe Water Beacon	**beacon shape**; **colour**
Safe Water Buoy	**buoy shape**; **colour**
Sea Area/Named Water Area	at least one of: **category of sea area**; **feature name**
Seabed Area	**surface characteristics**
Signal Station Traffic	**category of signal station traffic**
Signal Station Warning	**category of signal station warning**
Small Craft Facility	**category of small craft facility**
Span Fixed	**vertical clearance fixed**
Span Opening	**vertical clearance closed**; **vertical clearance open**
Special Purpose/General Beacon	**beacon shape**; **category of special purpose mark**; **colour**
Special Purpose/General Buoy	**buoy shape**; **category of special purpose mark**; **colour**
Straight Territorial Sea Baseline	**nationality ***
Swept Area	**depth range minimum value ***
Territorial Sea Area	**nationality ***
Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb	**category of tidal stream**; **orientation**; **speed**

Feature	Mandatory Attributes
Tidal Stream Panel Data	**station name**; **tidal stream panel values ***
Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part	**orientation value** (except when the lane part is a junction)
Two-Way Route Part	**orientation value**; **traffic flow**
Underwater/Awash Rock	**value of sounding**; **water level effect**
Vegetation	**category of vegetation**
Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation	**virtual AIS aid to navigation type ***
Water Turbulence	**category of water turbulence**
Wreck	**water level effect** at least one of: **category of wreck**; **value of sounding**
METADATA FEATURES	
Data Coverage	**maximum display scale**; **minimum display scale**; **optimum display scale ***
Local Direction of Buoyage	**marks navigational – system of**; **orientation value ***
Navigational System of Marks	**marks navigational – system of ***
Quality of Bathymetric Data	**category of temporal variation**; **data assessment**; **features detected**; **full seafloor coverage achieved**; **survey date range**; **zone of confidence ***
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data	**horizontal position uncertainty**
Quality of Survey	**survey authority**; **survey date range**; **survey type**
Sounding Datum	**vertical datum ***
Update Information	**update description**
Vertical Datum of Data	**vertical datum ***
CARTOGRAPHIC FEATURES	
Text Placement	**text offset bearing ***; **text offset distance *** one of: **text**; **text type**
INFORMATION TYPES	
Nautical Information	at least one of: **information ***; **pictorial representation ***
Non-Standard Working Day	at least one of: **date fixed ***; **date variable ***
Service Hours	**schedule by day of week ***
Spatial Quality	at least one of: **quality of horizontal measurement**; **spatial accuracy**

Table 2-3 - Mandatory attributes

NOTE 1: Sub-attributes of complex attributes, as well as the complex attribute itself, may also be designated as mandatory (see NOTE 2 below). "Conditional" mandatory attributes are identified in the feature Tables in Sections 3-24 by the superscript †, with qualifying comments included after the attribute list for the relevant feature; and are also indicated in Table 2-3 above by the following additional text:

Commented [TS3]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: below

*over navigable water**	for **Bridge**, **Cable Overhead**, **Conveyor**, **Pipeline Overhead**
at least one of	for **Caution Area**, **Information Area**, **Land Region**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Wreck**, **Nautical Information**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Spatial Quality**
if navigable at….	for **Gate**
except when…..	for **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**
(point features only)	for **Radio Calling-In Point**

one of for **Cable Overhead**, **Text Placement**

* *over navigable water*, in the context of ENC encoding, is defined as areas covered by Skin of the Earth features **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area**.

Compilers must consider these conditional circumstances when encoding features for ENC, as well as any additional information given in the feature class descriptions in this document. For example, when encoding a **Cation Area**, the mandatory attributes are *at least one of* **information** or **pictorial representation** – if the relevant information is textual, **information** must be populated and there is no requirement to populate **pictorial representation**, which therefore should not be populated with an empty (null) value, as it is not mandatory in this case.

NOTE 2: For complex attributes, at least one sub-attribute is mandatory (or conditionally mandatory) however mandatory sub-attributes of complex attributes have not been included in Table 2-3 above. Where the sub-attribute of a complex is conditionally mandatory (for example, for the feature **Seabed Area** *at least one of* the sub-attributes **nature of surface** or **nature of surface – qualifying terms** must be populated for the complex attribute **surface characteristics**), this is indicated by the superscript † as for the "Conditional" mandatory attributes described in Note 1 above.

NOTE 3: The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for any feature (except lights features) that has more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

NOTE 4: The ECDIS "system" attributes **default clearance depth** and **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

2.4.4 Missing attribute values

Where a value of a mandatory attribute is not known, the attribute must be populated with an empty (null) value (however, see first paragraph of clause 2.4.3 above).

Where the value of a non-mandatory attribute is not known, the attribute should not be included in the dataset.

In a base dataset, when an attribute code is present but the attribute value is missing, it means that the Producer wishes to indicate that this attribute value is unknown.

In an Update dataset, when an attribute code is present but the attribute value is missing it means:

- that the value of this attribute is to be replaced by an empty (null) value if it was present in the original dataset, or
- that an empty (null) value is to be inserted if the attribute was not present in the original dataset.

2.4.5 Portrayal feature attributes

The primary use of ENC is within ECDIS where ENC data is displayed based on the rules defined within the S-101 Portrayal Catalogue. While most ECDIS portrayal is based on attributes describing the instance of a particular feature in the real world, certain feature attributes are used in portrayal rules to provide additional functionality in the ECDIS or information to the Mariner. The following attributes have specific influence on portrayal:

fixed date range; **periodic date range** – population of these complex attributes determines when the feature will be added (sub-attribute **date start**) and/or removed (sub-attribute **date end**) from the display in some ECDIS display settings (see clause 2.4.8).

information – population of this complex attribute will result in the display of the magenta information symbol to highlight additional information to the user.

name usage – this sub-attribute determines the priority and level of display (full display or Pick Report only) where multiple instances of the complex attribute **feature name** are encoded for a single feature instance, based on Mariner's selected ECDIS display settings (see clause 2.5.8).

pictorial representation – population of this attribute will result in the display of the magenta information symbol to highlight additional information to the user.

scale minimum – value at which the feature will be removed from the display if application of scale minimum is enabled in the ECDIS (see clause 2.5.9).

Deleted: display name – this Boolean attribute determines if the text for a name should display. If not populated the default rules provided in the Portrayal Catalogue will be used.¶

Commented [TS4]: Refer to email from Alvaro 19/01/24 and S-101 Documentation and FC GitHub Issue #109.

sector line length – population of this attribute will result in the sector lines and arc radius of the sector being extended by the defined length when the ECDIS display is set to display default light sectors. See clause 19.3.1.

visual prominence – this attribute determines that visually conspicuous features are shown in black colour rather than brown.

2.4.5.1 ECDIS "system" (portrayal) attributes

Attributes designated as "ECDIS system" attributes are intended to provide information specific to aiding in portrayal of features in ECDIS in certain circumstances; and should be automatically populated by the ENC production software as required. The population of these attributes are conditional dependant on individual encoding instances including the relationship between an encoded feature and the underlying Skin of the Earth feature(s); and resolution of conflicts in portrayal specific to collocated light features. These attributes are described in Section 30 of this document, and include:

default clearance depth (see clause 30.1) – this attribute is intended to provide a depth value to the ECDIS to aid in the display of underwater hazards (**Obstruction**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Wreck**) where the actual depth of the underwater hazard is unknown (attribute **value of sounding** populated with an empty (null) value. This value is algorithmically calculated by the production system as required, based on the value populated for the ECDIS system attribute **surrounding depth** (see below). For S-101 ENCs, **default clearance depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **surrounding depth** is populated with a (non-null) value.

flare bearing (see clause 30.2) – defines the orientation direction of a light flare where more than one all around light is collocated so as to avoid the light flares from being coincident in the ECDIS display. This attribute is automatically calculated and populated as required by the ENC production software. However, for improved ENC display in ECDIS, encoders may manually populate **flare bearing** to cartographically align, for example, along a transit or leading line.

in the water (see clause 30.3) – this Boolean attribute provides an indication to the ECDIS that features that are located in or over navigable water are to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. This attribute is automatically populated by the ENC production software where a structure is located over an area of bathymetry (**Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, **Unsurveyed Area**).

sector arc extension (see clause 30.4) – this Boolean attribute provides an indication that a distance beyond the default distance at which a light sector arc will be displayed is required where more than one sector light having overlapping sectors has been encoded. This attribute is automatically calculated and populated as required by the ENC production software. Note that **sector arc extension** is not utilised where light sectors are displayed at the nominal range of the sectors.

surrounding depth (see clause 30.5) – this attribute defines a depth value for the area surrounding an underwater hazard of unknown depth, and is based on the **depth range minimum value** for the surrounding **Depth Area**(s). This attribute is automatically calculated and populated as required by the ENC production software. For an area feature covered by more than one **Depth Area**, the value of **surrounding depth** is determined as the depth range minimum value of the deeper of the **Depth Area** features covering the underwater hazard. For S-101 ENCs, **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

2.4.6 Textual information

The complex attribute **information** (see clause 29.9) contains information as text using the sub-attribute **text**, or the name of an external file using the sub-attribute **file reference**, in English and, optionally, using multiple instances of **information** to encode the information in one or more additional languages; and where bound to the geo feature classes may be used to encode additional textual information specific to a single feature instance. General conventions for the population of **information** for a feature instance are as follows:

- Where required, only a single mandatory instance of **information** in English (mandatory sub-attribute **language** = *eng* or empty (null)) must be encoded.
- Further optional instances of **information** may also be encoded (sub-attribute **language** populated with the three-letter language code in conformance with ISO 639-2/T) in one or more languages.

The information type **Nautical Information** (see clause 24.4) should be used to encode additional textual information associated to a group of features; and if the information is specific to a single feature, the information should be encoded on the feature itself. The **Nautical Information** is associated to the relevant features using the association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1).

The complex attribute **information** must not be used when it is possible to encode the information by means of any other attribute. Under certain ECDIS display settings the "information" symbol will display when this attribute is populated. Therefore Producers should carefully consider use of this attribute as the symbol may contribute significantly to ECDIS screen clutter.

Character strings contained in **information** sub-attribute **text** must be UTF-8 character encoding. **Information** should generally be used for short notes or to transfer information which cannot be encoded by other attributes, or to give more detailed information about a feature. Text populated in **text** must not exceed 300 characters.

The exchange language for textual information should be English. Languages other than English may be used as a supplementary option, for which **language** must be populated with an appropriate value to indicate the language. Generally this means, when a national language is used in the textual attributes, the English translation must also exist.

Remarks:

- For Guidance on encoding names of features, see clause 2.5.8.

2.4.7 Spatial attribute types

Spatial attribute types must contain referenced geometry and may be associated with spatial quality attributes. Each spatial attribute instance must be referenced by a feature instance or another spatial attribute instance.

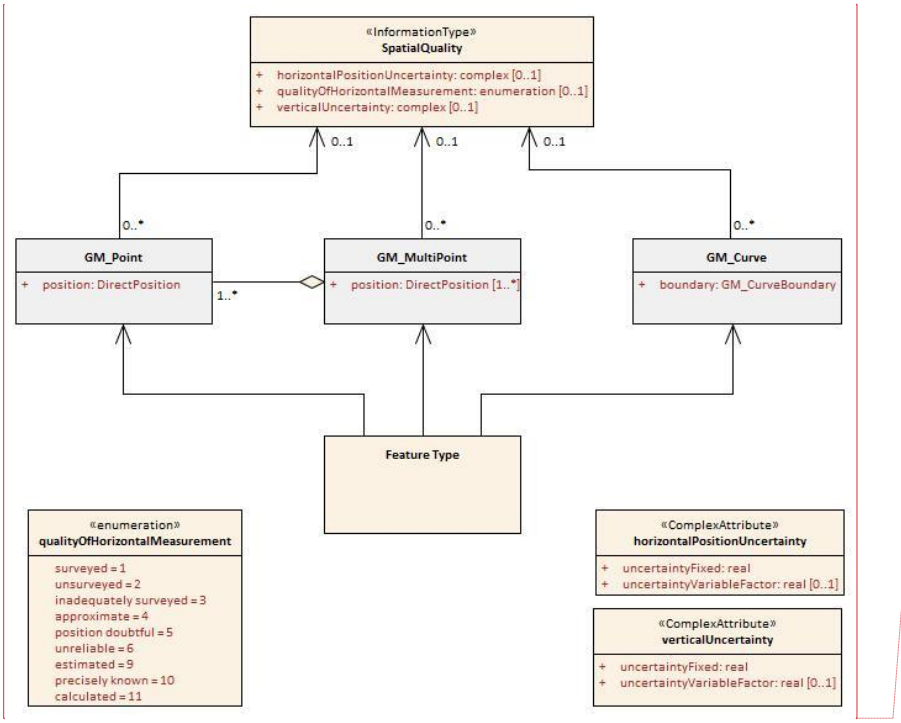


Figure 2-1 – Spatial Quality information type

Commented [TS5]: Figure needs to be reviewed based on allowing spatial edges of surface type features to be associated with **Spatial Quality**.

Spatial quality attributes are carried in the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5). Only point, multipoint, and curve, geometry and the meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** can be associated with **Spatial Quality**. Currently no use case for associating surfaces with spatial quality attributes is known, therefore this is prohibited; however it is allowable for **Spatial Quality** to be associated with the curves comprising the spatial edges (boundaries) of surface features. Vertical uncertainty is prohibited for curves as this dimension is not supported by curves.

Commented [TS6]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: s

Deleted: pointsets

Deleted: s

2.4.8 Dates

When encoding dates using the attributes **dredged date**, **fixed date range**, **reported date**, **reference year for magnetic variation**, **survey date range** and **swept date**, the following values must apply in conformance to S-100.

- Full date: `YYYYMMDD`
- No specific day required: `YYYYMM--`
- No specific month required: `YYYY----`

If it is required to encode periodic/recurring dates using the attributes **date fixed** and **periodic date range**, the following values must apply in conformance to S-100.

- No specific year required, same day each year: `----MMDD`
- No specific year required, same month each year: `----MM--`

Notes: `YYYY` = calendar year; `MM` = month; `DD` = day.
The dashes (−) indicating that the year, month or day is not needed must be included.

Encoded date ranges are inclusive, see S-100 Part 3, clause 3-8.3. For example:

fixed date range/date start = *20220922*	Commences at 000000 hours on 22 September 2022
fixed date range/date end = *20221022*	Ends at 240000 hours on 22 October 2022.
periodic date range/period start = ----*09*--	Commences annually at 000000 hours on 01 September.
periodic date range/date end = ----*09*--	Ends annually at 240000 hours on 30 September.

Where the temporal attributes have been encoded for any feature that is the structure component of a **Structure/Equipment** feature association (see clause 25.15), all other component features within the relationship must not extend beyond the temporal attribute values encoded for the structure feature.

2.4.8.1 Seasonal features

If it is required to show seasonality of features, it must be done using the attribute **status** = *5* (periodic/intermittent). If it is required to encode the start and/or end dates of the season, this must be done using the complex attribute **periodic date range** (see clauses 2.4.8 and 29.15).

Where there is a requirement to indicate the beginning or end date of a seasonal occurrence as the "last day in February", consideration must be given to allowing for the extra day (29th February) added on leap years. Encoding **periodic date range**, sub-attribute **date end** with the value ----*0228* may result in erroneous indication of seasonality in the ECDIS on the 29th February for leap years, while encoding the value ----*0229* may similarly result in ECDIS performance issues for non-leap years. Encoders are advised, therefore, that where it is required to encode the end of seasonality as the last day in February, this must be done, similar to any other month of the year, by encoding the value of **periodic date range**, sub-attribute **date end** as ----*02*--. Where the beginning of seasonality is the last day in February, this must be done by encoding the value of **periodic date range**, sub-attribute **date start** in accordance with the next occurrence of the date (----*0228* if the next occurrence is a non-leap year or ----*0229* if the next occurrence is a leap year). The ENC dataset must be amended by ENC Update (see Section 31) where the date is required to be changed. For instance, if the value is ----*0228* and the next occurrence is a leap year, an ENC Update must be created to amend the date to ----*0229*.

Alternatively, if encoders consider that there is no regulatory requirement to update the start date of a period for leap years, the value of **date start** may be populated as ----*03*--, indicating a beginning date of 01 March each year.

2.4.9 Times

If it is required to show the beginning and end of the active time period of a feature, it must be encoded using the attributes **time of day end** (see clause 27.181) and **time of day start** (see clause 27.182). The attribute descriptions for **time of day end** and **time of day start** state that the format must conform to ISO 8601, and this format must be used (see also clause 2.4.2).

Time is preferably expressed as Universal Time Coordinated (UTC). Where required, this must be done using the format *hhmmssZ*, with 2 digits for the hour (*hh*), 2 digits for the minutes (*mm*) and 2 digits for the seconds (*ss*); and "*Z*" mandatory.

EXAMPLE: *183059Z* to represent a UTC time of 30 minutes and 59 seconds after 6 o'clock in the evening

If it is required to express Local Time with a given offset to UTC, this must be done using the format *hhmmss+hhmm*.

EXAMPLE: *183059+0100* to represent a local time that is 1 hour ahead of UTC

In areas that are subject to daylight saving hours during certain periods of the year, it may be more appropriate to provide local times that are independent of a UTC offset. If it is required to express Local Time without a specified offset to UTC, this must be done using the format *hhmmss*.

EXAMPLE: *183059* to represent a local time of 30 minutes and 59 seconds after 6 o'clock in the evening

2.4.9.1 Schedules

If it is required to indicate the time schedule associated with any feature, it must be encoded using the information types **Service Hours** (see clause 24.2) or **Non-Standard Working Day** (see clause 24.3). **Service Hours** is used to indicate the regular operational schedule and/or times of closure for a service related to a feature. **Non-Standard Working Day** is used to indicate specific days of the year when normal working hours are limited, and may not be related to the Gregorian calendar.

EXAMPLE: A feature service is available under normal operation status 24 hours/day on Monday and Wednesday and from 08:00 to 16:00 (local time – note the format for local time without specified offset to UTC in clause 2.4.9 above) from Thursday to Saturday. The service is not available on public holidays and the 05 of August of each year.

Service Hours
- **schedule by day of week**
  - **category of schedule** = *1* (normal operation)
  - **time intervals by day of week**
    - **day of week** = *2,4* (Monday, Wednesday)
    - **day of week is range** = *0* (false)
  - **time intervals by day of week**
    - **day of week** = *5,7* (Thursday, Saturday)
    - **day of week is range** = *1* (true)
    - **time of day start** = *080000*
    - **time of day end** = *160000*

Non-Standard Working Day
- **date fixed** = *- - - -0805* (05 August each year)
- **date variable** = *public holidays*

2.4.10 Colours and colour patterns

If it is required to encode multiple colours on a feature, they must be encoded using the attributes **colour pattern** and **colour** as follows:

- For horizontal stripes (**colour pattern** = *1*), the values for **colour** must be ordered such that the first colour is the top-most, and subsequent colours follow sequentially from top to bottom. For example, **colour** = *3,1* to encode a red stripe above a white stripe.
- For vertical stripes (**colour pattern** = *2*), the values for **colour** must be ordered such that the first colour is the left-most, and subsequent colours follow sequentially from left to right. For example, **colour** = *3,1,3* to encode red, white, red vertical stripes

- For diagonal stripes (**colour pattern** = *3*), the values for **colour** must be ordered such that the first colour is the top-left-most, and subsequent colours follow sequentially from top left to bottom right. For example, **colour** = *1,3,1,3,1* to encode white, red, white, red, white diagonal stripes.
- For squares (**colour pattern** = *4*), the values for **colour** must be ordered such that the first colour is the top-left-most square. Subsequent colours follow sequentially from left to right along the top row then repeated for subsequent rows until the bottom right-most square is reached. For example, **colour** = *1,3,3,1* to encode white, red squares on the top row and red, white squares on the bottom row.
- For border stripes (**colour pattern** = *6*), the values for **colour** must be ordered such that the first colour is the border stripe, and the second colour that of the background. For example, **colour** = *3,1* to encode a red border stripe on a white background. Where a border stripe is combined with other patterns, an assessment as to which pattern is most important to marine navigation must be made, and the appropriate value populated in **colour pattern**.

Note that the attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for any feature (except lights) that has more than one colour.

If the encoded colours and colour pattern for feature is considered to be complex, it is strongly recommended that an image of the feature, if available, is also included using the attribute **pictorial representation**.

2.4.11 Radar conspicuous features (see S-4 – B-485.2)

The Boolean attribute **radar conspicuous** is used to encode whether or not a feature is radar conspicuous.

Remarks:
- If it is required to encode a feature which has no radar reflector, but is radar conspicuous, it must be indicated using attribute **radar conspicuous** = *True*.
- If it is required to encode a surface or point feature which is radar conspicuous because it is fitted with a radar reflector, it must be indicated using attribute **radar conspicuous** = *True* on the feature where **radar conspicuous** is an allowable attribute. Where **radar conspicuous** is not an allowable attribute for the feature, a **Radar Reflector** feature (see clause 20.17) must be encoded within or coincident with the feature.
- If it is required to encode radar reflectors on curve features (for example overhead cables), this must be done using the feature **Radar Reflector**.

2.4.12 Attributes referencing external files

The complex attribute **information** and its sub-attribute **file reference** on the information type **Nautical Information** (see clause 24.4) or on individual geo features references textual support files. The simple attribute **pictorial representation** on **Nautical Information** or on individual geo features references picture files. The association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1) is used to create an association between the geo feature(s) and **Nautical Information** where required. Where the information is relevant to a single feature instance only, it should be encoded using **information** or **pictorial representation** on the feature instance. Where the information is relevant to multiple feature instances, it should be encoded using **information** or **pictorial representation** on an associated instance of **Nautical Information**. See also clause 2.4.6.

The attributes **information** and **pictorial representation** are considered portrayal feature attributes (see clause 2.4.5), meaning that under given circumstances the “information” symbol (magenta “i”) will be portrayed in ECDIS when one or both of these attributes are populated. Due to risk of ECDIS screen clutter, Producers should carefully consider the use of these attributes.

These attributes must not be used when it is possible to encode the information by means of any other attribute.

Clause 11.2 of the S-101 Product Specification Main document specifies the content of an Exchange Set and the inclusion of support files. Clause 11.4 of the Product Specification Main document outlines specific rules and limitations for support file management.

2.4.12.1 Reference to textual files

The files referenced by the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **file reference**, must be.TXT, .HTM or .XML files, and may contain formatted text. These files should generally be used for longer

texts (for example longer chart notes, tables or paragraphs from Nautical Publications), but should not be used to replicate large blocks of text (for example entire chapters of Sailing Directions) that can be found in other Nautical Publications, which may not be suitable for viewing in ECDIS. It is up to the Producing Authority to determine the most suitable means of encoding a particular piece of text. Files must only use UTF-8 character encoding.

The exchange language for textual information should be English. The sub-attribute **language** must be populated with an appropriate value to indicate the language used. Languages other than English may be used as a supplementary option. Generally this means, when a national language is used in the textual attributes, the English translation must also exist.

Remarks:

- Encoders must encode national text files (files referenced by the sub-attribute **file reference**) using UTF-8 character encoding. This means that the encoding of the characters in text files must match the encoding of other textual national attributes (that is, **feature name**, **information** (**text**) with value other than English populated for sub-attribute **language**) within the dataset.

2.4.12.2 Reference to pictorial files

Commented [TS7]: Different formats allowable for picture files? Refer to email from Christina Ulrich 26/10/23 and S-101 Documentation and FC Issue #113.

The attribute **pictorial representation** should only be populated where the information is considered important in terms of safety of navigation and protection of the marine environment. Picture files that form part of the ENC must be in Tagged Image File (TIF) format 6.0.

Encoders should also consider, when including a reference to an external graphics file, whether the file is appropriate in terms of:

- Size of the file: Graphics files should be kept to a minimum file size, and should be considered in relation to the maximum allowable size of an ENC dataset (10Mb). Therefore, for example, a graphic file of 100Mb should be considered to be inappropriate. Using the following values as a guideline for TIF files will ensure acceptable size files:

Recommended Resolution:	96 DPI
Minimum Size x,y:	200,200 pixels
Maximum Size x,y:	800,800 pixels
Bit Depth:	8 Bit Indexed Colour
Compression:	LZW
Format:	Tiff 6.0

Table 2-4 – Recommended formatting for TIF files

- Content of the graphic: The information contained in the graphic should supplement, in terms of navigational relevance, the encoding of the associated feature. For example, an image of a standard IALA special purpose buoy that duplicates the attribution of the associated **Special Purpose/General Buoy** provides no relevant supplementary information to the Mariner (and may be considered to be double encoding), and therefore should not be included.
- Aspect: Graphics should provide perspective relevant to the view of the Mariner. For example, an image of the top of a bridge derived from a photograph taken from the top of a bridge tower or nearby building does not provide the Mariner with any information relevant to their location, and should not be included. However, an image derived from a photograph taken from a vessel approaching the bridge may be considered relevant.
- Suitability for display in ECDIS: Graphics should be such that all the information in the graphic is legible in the ECDIS display. For example, text included in diagrams or tables must be large enough so as to be legible when the file is opened in the ECDIS display. Images included in a graphical file should also be appropriately scaled such that they comfortably fit in the picture display window on the ECDIS (that is, do not only take up a very small area of the window; or are so large that the image needs to be panned to see the entire image). Consideration must also be given to variation in ships' bridge lighting conditions. It is recommended that, where possible, associated files are tested by opening the file in an ECDIS prior to publication of the ENC.

2.5 Datasets

A Dataset is a grouping of features, attributes, geometry and metadata which comprises a specific

coverage.

Four types of ENC dataset may be produced and contained within an exchange set:

- Update: Changing some information in an existing dataset.
- Re-issue of a dataset: Including all the Updates applied to the original dataset up to the date of the reissue. A Re-issue does not contain any new information additional to that previously issued by Updates.
- New dataset and New Edition of a dataset: Including new information which has not been previously distributed by Updates. Each New Edition of a dataset must have the same name as the dataset that it replaces.

See also S-101 Main document, Section 4.5 in addition to the sub-clauses below for further information regarding ENC datasets.

2.5.1 ENC data coverage

An ENC dataset can contain more than one **Data Coverage** (see clause 3.5). The data boundary is defined by the extent of the **Data Coverage** meta features. Data must only be present within **Data Coverage** meta features.

Producing Authorities must not leave “holes” (that is, areas not covered with data) in smaller scale range coverage, under the assumption that the ECDIS user will have the larger scale data available. For areas covered by larger scale ENCs, well established cartographic data generalization practices should be applied, including the inclusion of minimum depiction areas (see clause 2.5.3.2 below).

An ENC Update dataset must not change the extent of the data coverage for the base ENC cell. Where the extent of the data coverage for a base ENC cell is to be changed, this must be done by issuing a New Edition of the cell.

2.5.1.1 Skin of the Earth

Each area covered by a meta-feature **Data Coverage** must be totally covered by a set of geo features of geometric primitive type surface that do not overlap each other (the Skin of the Earth). Feature types that comprise the Skin of the Earth are listed below:

Depth Area

Dredged Area

Land Area

Unsurveyed Area

The geometry of coincident boundaries between Skin of the Earth features in a dataset must not be duplicated.

2.5.2 Discovery metadata

Information regarding discovery metadata can be found in the S-101 ENC Product Specification (main document).

2.5.3 Minimal depiction areas

Where minimal depiction areas exist in a specified ENC optimum display scale, they should be encoded using one of the following options:

2.5.3.1 Wide blank areas

Areas of a dataset which contain no data must be excluded from the area(s) covered by the meta feature **Data Coverage**. The areas that contain data must be completely covered by **Data Coverage** features.

2.5.3.2 Simplified or minimum depiction areas

- Bathymetry in such areas should be encoded as described in clause 11.9.2.
- Information that does not relate to bathymetry but is relevant to land area features may be encoded.

- One **Caution Area** feature covering the whole area should be created. The complex attributes **information** (sub-attribute **text** or **file reference**) should be encoded using one of the following options (the textual content of the attributes (for **file reference** this will be the contents of the referenced file) is within quotation marks and italicised):

Where larger scale coverage is available:

"Most features, including bathymetry, are omitted in this area. The minimal depiction of detail in this area does not support safe navigation; mariners should use a more appropriate scale ENC."

Any other relevant information pertaining to the area should be incorporated within, or replace completely, the above statement.

Where no larger scale coverage is available:

"Most features, including bathymetry, are omitted in this area. The minimal depiction of detail in this area does not support safe navigation."

This statement should be supplemented by additional cautionary information relating to any authority to be consulted before navigating in the area.

2.5.4 Units

The depth, height and positional uncertainty units in a dataset must be metres.

2.5.5 Seamless ENC coverage

ENCs should form a seamless coverage in the navigable waters of the Producer's area of responsibility. However, it is often impractical to do so for all ECDIS display scales, and therefore S-101 ENCs declare a scale range, which dictate between what scales the data can be used.

The meta feature **Data Coverage** (see clause 3.5) is used to provide the ECDIS with the scale information necessary for the determination of dataset loading and unloading in relation to the user selected viewing scale in the ECDIS.

The mandatory attribute **optimum display scale** is used to indicate the largest intended viewing scale for the data. This may be considered by the Data Producer to be the compilation scale for the data, and is also used as the reference for the overscale indication. The mandatory attribute **minimum display scale** is used to indicate the smallest intended viewing scale for the data. The mandatory attribute **maximum display scale** is used to indicate the value considered by the Data Producer to be the maximum (largest) scale at which the data is to be displayed before it can be considered to be "grossly overscaled".

An ENC dataset (discovery metadata) and associated **Data Coverage** feature(s) must carry a value for **optimum display scale**. Each **Data Coverage** feature must also carry a value for **maximum display scale** and **minimum display scale.** Values for **optimum display scale**, **maximum display scale** and **minimum display scale** must be taken from the following Table:

Scale
NULL (only allowed on **minimum display scale** where the **optimum display scale** = *10,000,000*)
1:10,000,000
1:3,500,000
1:1,500,000
1:700,000
1:350,000
1:180,000
1:90,000
1:45,000
1:22,000
1:12,000
1:8,000

1:4,000
1:3,000
1:2,000
1:1,000
NULL (only allowed on **maximum display scale** where the **optimum display scale** = *1000*)

Table 2-5 – Optimum, maximum and minimum display scale values

Commented [TS8]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: *Maximum*

The **Data Coverage** features within a dataset must not overlap, however **Data Coverage** features from different datasets may overlap as long as the scale ranges do not overlap. All **Data Coverage** features within a dataset must have the same minimum display scale, but portions of a dataset can have a different optimum and maximum display scale, depending on the best scale required for navigation in an area for the purpose of the ENC data.

To ensure a seamless ECDIS display of ENC data within the same scale range, it is important that the data on the border of the dataset is aligned and matched with the corresponding data in any adjoining datasets within the scale range, where possible. Where there is a mismatch in depth data between adjoining datasets, editing of the depth data should be done such that depth contours and depth areas are adjusted on the side of safety. Edge matching of data across different scale ranges, particularly depth data, is often not possible due to generalisation issues resulting from differing scales, although features such as maritime boundaries, navigation lines, recommended tracks, roads etc. should be edge matched where possible. Note that point or curve features which are at the border of **Data Coverage** features (see clause 3.5) for adjoining cells with the same scale range must be part of only one dataset.

In areas which include neighbouring Producer Nations, Hydrographic Offices should co-operate to agree on dataset boundaries and ensure no data overlap within scale ranges. Where possible, adjoining nations should agree on common data boundaries within a technical arrangement based on cartographic convenience and benefit to the Mariner. Suitable communications between neighbouring nations should be put in place to ensure data consistency across dataset boundaries. These should include exchange mechanisms to allow access to each other's ENCs.

2.5.6 Feature Object Identifiers

Each feature instance within an ENC must have a unique universal Feature Object Identifier [FOID]. Information regarding FOIDs can be found in clause 4.4 of the S-101 ENC Product Specification (main document).

2.5.7 Heights and elevations

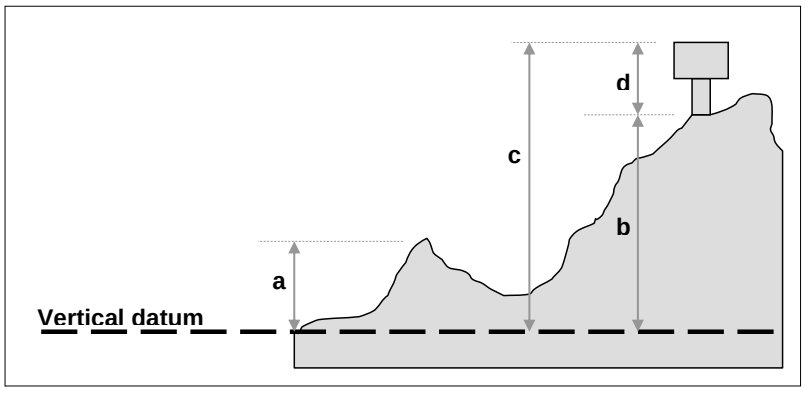


Figure 2-4 – Heights and elevations

If it is required to encode the altitude of natural features above a vertical datum (for example hills, coastlines, slopes), with the exception of trees, it must be done using the attribute **elevation** (Figure 2-4 (a)).

For artificial features (for example landmarks, buildings) or trees:

- If it is required to encode the altitude of the ground level at the base of the feature, or the elevation of a light, above a vertical datum, it must be done using **elevation** (Figure 2-4 (b)).
- If it is required to encode the altitude of the highest point of the feature above a vertical datum, it must be done using the attribute **height** (Figure 2-4 (c)).
- If it is required to encode the height of the feature above ground level, the seabed or (for floating features) the sea surface (that is, not associated with a vertical datum), it must be done using the attribute **vertical length** (Figure 2-4 (d)).

2.5.8 Geographic names

Commented [TS9]: Graphical and or tabular examples required.

If it is required to encode a geographic name, or multiple versions of a geographic name including multiple language versions of the name, it must be done using one of more instances of the complex attribute **feature name** (see clause 29.2). When possible, existing features (for example **Built-Up Area**, **River**, navigational marks) should be used to carry this information.

If it is required to encode a geographic name for which there is no existing feature, a specific **Administration Area**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area** or **Land Region** feature must be created (see clauses 16.8, 9.1 and 5.11). In order to minimise the data volume, these features should, where possible, use the geometry of existing features, for example a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature may use the geometry of a **Depth Area** feature.

Geographic names can be left in their original language in a non-English iteration of the sub-attribute **name**, or transliterated or transcribed and used in an English iteration of the sub-attribute **name**, in which case the original name should be populated in an additional iteration of **feature name** with the mandatory sub-attribute **language** populated with the relevant three-letter language code in accordance with ISO 639-2/T. General conventions for the population of **feature name** for an encoded feature instance are as follows:

- Where required, at least one instance of **feature name** in English (mandatory sub-attribute **language** = *eng* or empty (null)) must be encoded.
- Where a single instance of **feature name** is encoded for a feature instance, there is no requirement to populate the sub-attribute **name usage**. However, if it is required to restrict the display of the name only to the ECDIS Pick Report, this must be done by populating **name usage** = *3* (no chart display).
- Multiple instances of **feature name** may be encoded for any language, and/or for multiple languages. Where multiple instances of **feature name** are encoded for a feature instance, they must be encoded as follows:
  - All encoded instances of **feature name** will be included in the ECDIS Pick Report.
  - Where an instance of **feature name** is encoded within the multiple instances, having a unique value for the mandatory sub-attribute **language**, there is no requirement to populate **name usage**. However, if it is required to restrict the display of the instance only to the ECDIS Pick Report, this must be done by populating **name usage** = *3* (no chart display).
  - Where multiple instances of **feature name** have been encoded having the same value for the mandatory sub-attribute **language**, sub-attribute **name usage** having value *2* (alternate name) must be used, if required, to identify a single instance of **feature name** from these instances that is intended to be displayed where the Mariner selects that language in their ECDIS display settings.
  - Where no instance of **feature name** for a feature instance has the mandatory attribute **language** populated as *eng* or empty (null), the sub-attribute **name usage** having value *1* (default name) must be used, if required, to identify the instance of **feature name** that is intended to be displayed in the ECDIS default language display settings or when a language is selected by the Mariner that is not populated for the sub-attribute **language** for any of the **feature name** instances.
  - If it is required to restrict the display of all instances of **feature name** encoded for a feature instance only to the ECDIS Pick Report, **name usage** must not be populated for any instance.

- Reasons for encoding more than one instance of **feature name** for a particular language include (but are not limited to):
  - For cartographic reasons, for example to abbreviate a name using an international abbreviation.
  - To allow an identifier/designator to be displayed in preference to the name of the feature (for example on aids to navigation).

Geographic names should be encoded using **feature name** based on the following criteria and at the Producing Authority's discretion:

1. Named points or capes that do not contain navigational aids should be encoded as **Land Region** features (of type surface or point), with the geographic name encoded using **feature name**.
2. Named points or capes that contain one navigational aid should be encoded using **feature name** on the structure feature associated with the navigational aid. If more than one navigational aid exists on the point or cape or if the point or cape and the structure feature have different names, a **Land Region** feature (of type surface or point) should be encoded, with the geographic name of the point or cape encoded using **feature name**.
3. A group of hydrographic features (for example **Seabed Area**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Obstruction**), associated with a particular geographic name, should have the name encoded using **feature name** on a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature (of type surface or point). The name should not be encoded on the individual hydrographic features.
4. A major island name close to primary shipping corridors should be encoded using **feature name** on the **Land Area** feature delimiting the island.
5. A named island group or archipelago should be encoded using **feature name** on an **Island Group** feature (see clause 5.5). Where individual islands within the group are named, these should be encoded using **feature name** on the **Land Area** feature delimiting the island.
6. Named features listed in Hydrographic Office's Sailing Directions that may assist in navigation should be encoded using **feature name** on the relevant feature (for example **Land Region**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Seabed Area**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Obstruction**).
7. If it is required to encode an administrative area of international, national, provincial or municipal jurisdiction that may have legal inference, it must be done using an **Administration Area** feature, with the name encoded using **feature name**.
8. If it is required to encode a major city along the coast, it must be done using **Built-Up Area** or **Administration Area** features (see clause 6.1), with the name encoded using **feature name**.
9. If it is required to encode the name of a navigable river, lake or canal, it must be done using a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature, with the name encoded using **feature name**.
10. If it is required to encode the name of a beach and no intertidal area exists, it should be done using **feature name** for the section of sandy coast (**Coastline** with **nature of surface** = *4* (sand)) representing the beach. If the extent of the beach cannot be determined from the source, then the name should be encoded using **Land Region**. When an intertidal area (**Depth Area**) exists in the area covered by the named beach, the name of the beach should be encoded using **feature name** for a **Sea Area** feature covering the intertidal area.

In all instances, if the exact extent of the feature to be named is known, a surface feature must be created. If the exact extent is not known, or the area is too small at the optimum display scale of the ENC dataset, an existing or specifically encoded point feature should be used to encode the geographic name.

2.5.8.1 Text placement

Commented [TS10]: Introductory guidance relating to the Text Placement feature needs more work. Small group established at S-101PT7 to further investigate the implementation of Text Placement.

IHO Sec: Some graphical examples, accompanied by tabular encoding of attributes, would be good.

The cartographic feature **Text Placement** (see clause 23.1) is used specifically to place text cartographically. The properties of the text placement feature are described as follows;

Geometry (point) – the spatial point location of the text string.

text or **text type** – the attribute (or class) which is to be placed.

text offset bearing and **text offset distance** – the bearing and distance (in millimetres in the ECDIS display) used to position the text relative to the feature.

The **Text Placement** feature is associated to the feature which carries the text being placed. The attribute **text type** determines which text string is to be displayed if more than one is present. The

Text Placement feature may provide functionality such that, as an ECDIS screen rotates from its optimum position in “north up” display mode (for example, if display is set to “course up”) text can remain readable, or clear other important charted information.

2.5.9 Sample scale minimum policy

The following policy for the application of **scale minimum** (see clause 27.155) to an ENC portfolio is based on the mandatory **optimum display scale** values listed in clause 3.5.1. While the procedure described below to determine the **scale minimum** value for features in an ENC cell is recommended, the **scale minimum** values used are at the discretion of the Producing Authority. Authorities should cooperate at the regional or RENC level to determine a **scale minimum** policy that results in suitable and consistent display of ENC data for the Mariner across and, where required between, regions.

scale minimum values used must be selected from the following list:

19999999
9999999
4999999
3499999
1499999
999999
699999
499999
349999
259999
179999
119999
89999
59999
44999
29999
21999
17999
11999
7999
3999
2999
1999
999

Table 2-6 – scale minimum values

- **scale minimum** values for features within an ENC should be set to either 1, 2, 3 or 4 steps smaller scale than the optimum display scale of the ENC data.
- Table 2-7 below lists the step values (that is 1, 2, 3 or 4) that may be applied for specific feature classes together with any relevant conditions and additional flexibilities.

Following this process provides an automated approach to setting **scale minimum** which takes account of the relative importance of different feature classes, and will achieve sufficient de-cluttering even where there are large gaps in the scales of coverage available.

Unless the step values outlined in Table 2-7 have been manually adjusted, this approach takes no direct account of the relative importance of individual occurrences of a feature, and may result in the situation where a feature disappears and then reappears as the user zooms out on their ECDIS display. To address these remaining issues, the following additional process steps should be applied:

- Linear and area features (excluding those features subject to extensive generalisation for example **Depth Contour**) that extend beyond the coverage of a dataset and exist in an overlapping smaller scale dataset should be assigned the same **scale minimum** value as the **scale minimum** value of the corresponding feature in the smaller scale dataset.
- The **scale minimum** value of an individual occurrence of a feature should be set to either 1, 2, 3 or 4 steps smaller scale than the optimum display scale of the smallest scale ENC that the feature would appear on (that is, assuming full coverage across all optimum display scale values).

The following notes apply to Table 2-7 below:

1. Producers should be prepared to deviate from the step values specified when the significance of the feature dictates, for example the recommended number of steps for a **Light** feature is 4, but there will be circumstances where a **Light** feature is so important that no **scale minimum** value be applied; alternatively, the light could be so minor that a step value of 1 can be applied.
2. **Scale minimum** should only be applied to navigational aids where they contribute to "screen clutter" and where their removal from the display does not constitute a risk to safe navigation.
3. It is generally accepted that features making up a navigational aid will have the same attributes, and therefore features within a **Structure/Equipment** association (see clause 25.15) should be assigned the same **scale minimum** value.
4. The elements comprising a range system (see clause 15.1.1) should have the same **scale minimum** value, which should be the value corresponding to the largest step value of the features comprising the range system. For instance, for a range system comprising a **Navigation Line**, **Recommended Track** and navigation aids, the decision may be not to apply **scale minimum** to the navigation aids (in accordance to Note 2 above), in which case the **Navigation Line** and **Recommended Track** should also not have **scale minimum** applied. Similarly, all features comprising a routeing measure (see clause 10.2) should have the same **scale minimum** value.
5. Where features having curve or surface geometry extend over multiple **Data Coverage** areas (see clause 3.5), the value for **scale minimum** should be populated based on the largest scale denominator populated for the attribute **optimum display scale** on the underlying **Data Coverage** areas. The same approach should also be considered for items included in feature associations such as range systems and routeing measures, also taking into account Note 4 above.

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
GEO FEATURES			
Administration Area	Curve/Surface		3
Airport/Airfield	Point/Surface		1
Anchor Berth	Point/Surface	If **restriction** defined	3
Anchor Berth	Point/Surface		1
Anchorage Area	Point/Surface		2
Archipelagic Sea Lane	Surface		4
Archipelagic Sea Lane Area	Surface		4
Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis	Curve		4
Berth	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Bollard	Point		1
Bridge	Curve/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Bridge	Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True* and covered by a surface **Land Area**, **Dock Area**, or **Lock Basin** feature	NOT SET
Bridge	Curve/Surface		1
Building	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True* or **function** contains value *33* (light support)	3

Deleted: Airport/Airfield ...

Commented [TS11]: Row related to visualProminence removed as visualProminence is not an allowable attribute for AirportAirfield. Refer email from Richard C 05/12/23.

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Building	Point/Surface	If **function** = *2* (harbour masters office) or *3* (customs office) or **visual prominence** = *2* (not visually conspicuous)	2
Building	Point/Surface		1
Built-Up Area	Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True* or **category of built-up area** = *5* (city)	NOT SET
Built-up Area	Point/Surface	If **category of built-up area** = *4* (town)	2
Built-up Area	Point/Surface		1
Cable Area	Surface	If **restriction** defined	3
Cable Area	Surface		2
Cable Overhead	Curve	Covered by an area **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Cable Overhead	Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Cable Overhead	Curve		1
Cable Submarine	Curve		3
Canal	Curve		1
Canal	Surface		4
Cardinal Beacon	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Cardinal Buoy	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Cargo Transhipment Area	Point/Surface		1
Causeway	Curve/Surface		2
Caution Area	Point/Surface		4
Checkpoint	Point/Surface		1
Coast Guard Station	Point/Surface		1
Coastline	Curve		NOT SET
Collision Regulations Limit	Curve		4
Contiguous Zone	Curve/Surface		3
Continental Shelf Area	Curve/Surface		3
Conveyor	Curve/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Conveyor	Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Conveyor	Curve/Surface		1
Crane	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Crane	Point/Surface		1
Current – Non-Gravitational	Point		3
Custom Zone	Surface		2
Dam	Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True* or if seaward edge is coincident with the coastline (see clause 8.11)	NOT SET
Dam	Curve/Surface		1
Daymark	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	3
Deep Water Route	Surface		4
Deep Water Route Centreline	Curve		NOT SET

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Deep Water Route Part	Surface		NOT SET
Depth Contour	Curve	If **value of depth contour** = *0* (drying line) or *30*	4
Depth Contour	Curve		2
Depth – No Bottom Found	Pointset		1
Discoloured Water	Point/Surface		NOT SET
Distance Mark	Point		2
Dock Area	Surface		1
Dolphin	Point/ Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Dolphin	Point/Surface		1
Dry Dock	Surface		1
Dumping Ground	Point/Surface	If **restriction** defined	3
Dumping Ground	Point/Surface		2
Dyke	Curve/Surface	If seaward edge is coincident with the coastline (see clause 8.5)	NOT SET
Dyke	Curve/Surface		1
Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Exclusive Economic Zone	Curve/Surface		3
Fairway	Surface		3
Fairway System	Surface		3
Fence/Wall	Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Fence/Wall	Curve		1
Ferry Route	Curve/Surface		3
Fishery Zone	Surface		3
Fishing Facility	Point/Curve/Surface		2
Fishing Ground	Surface		1
Floating Dock	Point/Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Floating Dock	Point/Curve		1
Floating Dock	Surface		NOT SET
Fog Signal	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	3
Fortified Structure	Point/Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Fortified Structure	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Foul Ground	Point/ Surface	If **value of sounding** > *30*	4
Foul Ground	Point/ Surface		NOT SET
Free Port Area	Surface		2
Gate	Point/Curve/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	NOT SET
Gate	Point/Curve/Surface		2
Gridiron	Surface		1
Harbour Area (Administrative)	Surface		3
Harbour Facility	Point/Surface		1
Helipad	Point		1
Hulk	Point	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Hulk	Point		1
Hulk	Surface		NOT SET
Ice Area	Surface		3
Island Group	Surface		4
Information Area	Point/Surface		2
Inshore Traffic Zone	Surface		NOT SET
Installation Buoy	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Island Group	Surface		4
Isolated Danger Beacon	Point		4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Isolated Danger Buoy	Point		4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Lake	Surface		1
Land Area	Surface		NOT SET
Land Area	Point/Curve		4
Land Elevation	Point	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous)	NOT SET
Land Elevation	Point/Curve		3
Land Region	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Landmark	Point/Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True* or **function** contains value *33* (light support)	NOT SET
Landmark	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Lateral Beacon	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light Air Obstruction	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light All Around	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light Float	Point		4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light Fog Detector	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light Sectored	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Light Vessel	Point		4 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Local Magnetic Anomaly	Point/Curve/Surface		3
Lock Basin	Surface		1
Log Pond	Point/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Log Pond	Point/Surface		1
Magnetic Variation	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Marine Farm/Culture	Point/Curve/Surface	If **exposition of sounding** = *2* (shoaler than range of the surrounding depth area) and **value of sounding** ≤ *30*	4
Marine Farm/Culture	Point/Curve/Surface	If **restriction** defined	3
Marine Farm/Culture	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Marine Pollution Regulations Area	Surface		3
Military Practice Area	Point/Surface		3
Mooring Area	Point/Surface		2
Mooring Buoy	Point		2 (see Note 3 above)

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Mooring Trot	Surface		3
Navigation Line	Curve		3
Obstruction	Point/Curve/Surface		NOT SET
Obstruction	Point/Curve/Surface	If **value of sounding** > *30* and **exposition of sounding** ≠ *2* (shoaler than range of the surrounding depth area)	4
Offshore Platform	Point/Surface	Covered by a surface **Offshore Production Area**	3
Offshore Platform	Point/Surface		4
Offshore Production Area	Surface		4
Oil Barrier	Curve		4
Physical AIS Aid to Navigation	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Pile	Point	Where used to mark position of **Light** feature in water	4 (see Notes 3 & 4 above)
Pile	Point/Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous)	NOT SET
Pile	Point/Curve/Surface		2
Pilot Boarding Place	Point/Surface		3
Pilotage District	Surface		3
Pipeline Overhead	Curve	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Pipeline Overhead	Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Pipeline Overhead	Curve		1
Pipeline Submarine/On Land	Curve	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	3
Pipeline Submarine/On Land	Curve		1
Pontoon	Point/Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Pontoon	Point/Curve		2
Pontoon	Surface		4
Precautionary Area	Point/Surface		NOT SET
Production/Storage Area	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Production/Storage Area	Point/Surface		1
Pylon/Bridge Support	Point/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	NOT SET
Pylon/Bridge Support	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Pylon/Bridge Support	Point/Surface		1
Radar Line	Curve		3
Radar Range	Surface		3
Radar Reflector	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	3
Radar Station	Point		2
Radar Transponder Beacon	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	3
Radio Calling-In Point	Point/Curve		3
Radio Station	Point		1
Railway	Curve		1
Range System	Surface		3
Rapids	Curve/Surface		1

Commented [TS12]: Refer to email from Richard C 04/01/23.

Deleted: If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure

Commented [TS13]: Refer to email from Richard C 04/01/23.

Deleted: If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Recommended Route Centreline	Curve		3
Recommended Track	Curve		3
Recommended Traffic Lane Part	Point/Surface		3
Rescue Station	Point/Surface		3
Restricted Area	Surface		3
Retroreflector	Point	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	3
River	Curve		1
River	Surface		4
Road	Curve/Surface		1
Runway	Point/Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous)	NOT SET
Runway	Curve/Surface		1
Safe Water Beacon	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Safe Water Buoy	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Sandwave	Point/Curve/Surface		3
Sea Area/Named Water Area	Point/Surface		1
Seabed Area	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Seagrass	Point/Surface		3
Seaplane Landing Area	Point/Surface	If **restriction** defined	3
Seaplane Landing Area	Point/Surface		1
Separation Zone or Line	Curve/Surface		NOT SET
Shoreline Construction	Point/Curve/Surface		NOT SET
Signal Station Traffic	Point/Surface	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	1
Signal Station Warning	Point/Surface	If Equipment **scale minimum** should match that of Structure	1
Silo/Tank	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Silo/Tank	Point/Surface		1
Slope Topline	Curve		3
Sloping Ground	Point/Surface		3
Small Craft Facility	Point/Surface		1
Sounding	Pointset		1
Span Fixed	Curve/Surface		NOT SET
Span Opening	Curve/Surface		NOT SET
Special Purpose/General Beacon	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Special Purpose/General Buoy	Point		3 (see Notes 2, 3 & 4 above)
Spring	Point		1
Straight Territorial Sea Baseline	Curve		3
Submarine Pipeline Area	Point/Surface		3
Submarine Transit Lane	Surface		3
Swept Area	Surface		3
Territorial Sea Area	Curve/Surface		3

FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb	Point/Surface		3
Tidal Stream Panel Data	Point/Surface		2
Tideway	Curve/Surface		1
Traffic Separation Scheme	Surface		4
Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary	Curve		NOT SET
Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing	Surface		NOT SET
Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part	Surface		NOT SET
Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout	Surface		NOT SET
Tunnel	Curve/Surface	Covered by a surface **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, or **Unsurveyed Area** feature	4
Tunnel	Curve/Surface		1
Two-Way Route	Surface		4
Two-Way Route Part	Surface		NOT SET
Underwater/Awash Rock	Point	If **value of sounding** > *30* and **exposition of sounding** ≠ *2* (shoaler than range of the surrounding depth area)	4
Underwater/Awash Rock	Point	Covered by a surface **Obstruction** feature	2
Underwater/Awash Rock	Point		NOT SET
Vegetation	Point/Curve/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous)	NOT SET
Vegetation	Point/Curve/Surface		1
Vessel Traffic Service Area	Surface		3
Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation	Point		3 (see Notes 2, & 4 above)
Water Turbulence	Point/Curve/Surface		3
Waterfall	Point/Curve	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous)	NOT SET
Waterfall	Point/Curve		1
Weed/Kelp	Point/Surface		3
Wind Turbine	Point	On land and if **visual prominence** = *2* (not visually conspicuous) or *3* (prominent)	1
Wind Turbine	Point	Covered by a surface **Offshore Production Area**	3
Wind Turbine	Point		4
Wreck	Point/Surface	If **category of wreck** = *1* or (**value of sounding** > *30* and **exposition of sounding** ≠ *2* (shoaler than range of the surrounding depth area))	3
Wreck	Point/Surface	If **visual prominence** = *1* (visually conspicuous) or **radar conspicuous** = *True*	NOT SET
Wreck	Point/Surface		NOT SET
METADATA FEATURES			
Local Direction of Buoyage	Surface		4
Update Information	Point/Curve/Surface		NOT SET
CARTOGRAPHIC FEATURES			
Text Placement	Point		<= associated feature

Table 2-7 – Procedure for determining scale minimum values – Example

Optional additional rules that can be manually applied to fine tune the application of **scale minimum** after the above values have been automatically applied.

GEO FEATURE	PRIMITIVE	CONDITION	scale minimum STEPS
Obstruction	Point	The most significant **Obstruction** of a group of **Obstruction**s within close proximity	NOT SET
Obstruction	Point	For groups of **Obstruction**s in close proximity, or within an **Obstruction** surface	2
Sounding	Pointset	**scale minimum** should be applied so that the least significant soundings are set to 1 step progressing to 4 steps for the most significant, above the optimum display scale for the data in order to achieve a gradual reduction in the soundings displayed as the user zooms out.	1, 2, 3, 4
Depth – No Bottom Found	Pointset	**scale minimum** should be applied so that the least significant depths are set to 1 step progressing to 4 steps for the most significant, above the optimum display scale for the data in order to achieve a gradual reduction in the depths displayed as the user zooms out.	1, 2, 3, 4
Underwater/Awash Rock	Point	The most significant **Underwater/Awash Rock** of a group of **Underwater/Awash Rock**s within close proximity and not within an **Obstruction** surface	NOT SET
Wreck	Point/Surface	For groups of **Wreck** in close proximity (the most significant should not have **scale minimum**)	2

Table 2-8 – Additional scale minimum considerations - Examples

2.5.10 Masking

Commented [TS14]: See S-101 Documentation and FC GitHub issue #26 opened 19/09/22.

To improve the look and feel of the display of ENCs in ECDIS for the Mariner certain edges of features should be masked (see S-101 Product Specification Main document clause 4.8.3). For example, the boundaries of anchorage area symbols overwrite coincident pontoon symbols:

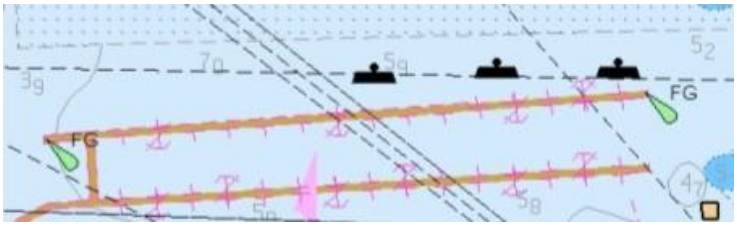


Figure 2-5 – Overwriting symbols – Example

In order to best determine the appropriate level of masking required for an ENC cell, it is recommended that the ENC be viewed in an ECDIS.

The following scenarios where masking is recommended should be considered by compilers;

1. Surface features crossing ENC cell boundaries:

When a single feature of type surface crosses the boundaries of adjoining ENC cells, mask the edge where it shares the geometry of the boundary in each ENC:

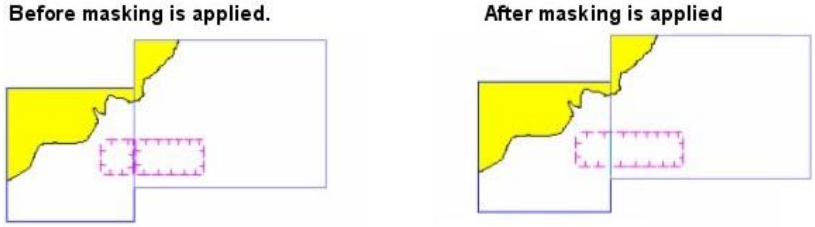
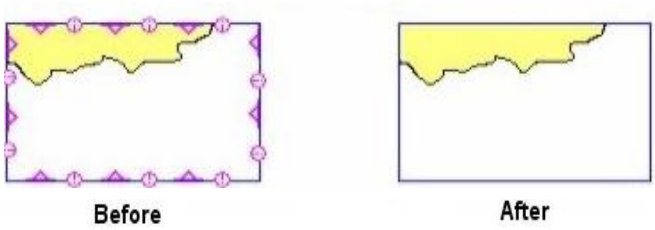


Figure 2-6 – Surface feature crossing ENC cell boundaries

This allows the features to be displayed as a single feature of type surface rather than being divided at the cell boundary and having the representation of two separate features. Note that some ENC production software will automatically truncate (mask) features at the cell boundary.

NOTE: Occasionally an edge of the boundary of an area actually coincides with the ENC cell boundary. Where this occurs and the ENC production system applies automatic truncation (masking) of this edge, the compiler must “unmask” that edge so as to avoid the appearance of the area to be “open ended”.



Where features of type surface extend beyond the entire limit of data coverage for the ENC cell (see clause 3.5), all edges of these area features should be masked:

Figure 2-7 – Surface features extending beyond the entire limit of data coverage

Where a cell contains an area of no data coverage and the ENC production software applies automatic truncation (masking) of features extending beyond the limit of data coverage of the ENC, edges of area features extending beyond the internal limit of the area of no data coverage may need to be masked manually.

Table 2-9 below lists those features of type surface that should have edges masked where the boundary of the area crosses or extends beyond the ENC cell limit or the area of data coverage of the ENC cell.

Feature Type	Comment
Anchorage Area	
Cable Area	
Cargo Transhipment Area	
Caution Area	Also edges that are shared with Traffic Separation Scheme (TSS)
Dredged Area	
Dumping Ground	
Exclusive Economic Zone	
Fishery Zone	
Fishing Ground	
Harbour Area (Administrative)	
Ice Area	
Military Practice Area	
Offshore Production Area	
Pilotage District	When the whole cell falls within a pilotage area.
Pilot Boarding Place	
Precautionary Area	Not applied if it is within a TSS.
Quality of Bathymetric Data	
Quality of Survey	
Restricted Area	
Sandwave	

Feature Type	Comment
Seaplane Landing Area	
Submarine Pipeline Area	
Submarine Transit Lane	
Territorial Sea Area	
Vegetation	
Vessel Traffic Service Area	
Water Turbulence	

Table 2-9 – Features requiring masking along data coverage limit edges

2. Surface features having ECDIS symbol pattern fill:

Surfaces symbolised in ECDIS with a patterned fill, and for which the outer edge of the surface has no significance (or is subject to change or intermittent), for example **Vegetation** (see Figure 2-8 below) or **Water Turbulence** features, may have the boundary of the surface masked to reduce screen clutter.

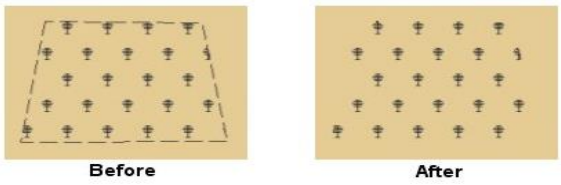


Figure 2-8 – Surface feature with pattern fill

Compilers must take care that the surface is large enough at the optimum display scale of the ENC data (and at smaller optimum display scales at which it is intended that the feature should be displayed) so that at least one pattern symbol is displayed in the area. If this is not the case, the boundary of the surface should not be masked. Alternatively, a point feature may be encoded instead of the surface feature. It may be useful to load and display the ENC in an ECDIS in order to assist with making decisions as to the best encoding option to adopt in individual circumstances.

3. Routeing measures – entrance and exit edges:

Routeing measures such as Traffic Separation Schemes (TSS), Two-Way Routes and Deep Water Routes have defined “ends” through which vessels enter and exit the route. Most routeing measures also consist of multiple components having different orientations. Where encoded, many of the features comprising the routeing measure symbolise along the edges of the area. Where the edges corresponding to the entry/exit points and between individual components of the route have not been masked, the impression of the route as a single routeing measure may not be apparent to the Mariner, and cause confusion. Compilers should therefore mask the entry/exit edges, and all edges between components within the routeing measure.

Table 2-10 below lists those area features that should have entry/exit edges, and all edges between components within the routeing measure masked.

Feature Type	Comment
Deep Water Route Part	
Fairway	
Inshore Traffic Zone	Only to be applied when the entrance and\or exit routes are known
Recommended Traffic Lane Part	
Traffic Separation Scheme lane Part	
Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout	
Two-Way Route part	
Coverage	Coverage available, mask full coverage. (No Coverage available, don’t mask)

Feature Type	Comment
Navigational System of Marks	Mask full coverage.

Table 2-10 – Features for masking of entry/exit points

Figure 2-9 below shows an example of a TSS with all appropriate edges of the components of the TSS masked.

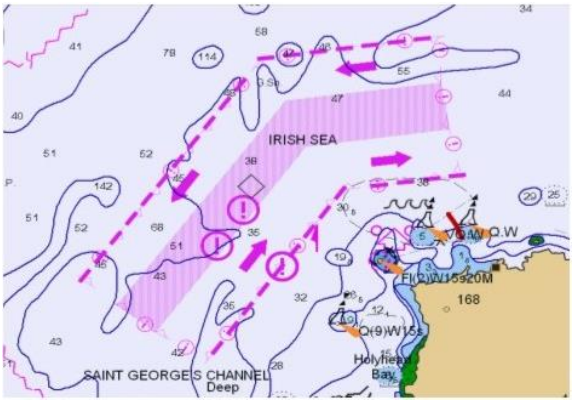


Figure 2-9 – Traffic Separation Scheme with appropriate masking

To give an indication of the effect of masking in a complex area such as a maritime area containing a TSS, Figure 2-9 includes a **Caution Area** feature of type surface which has not had its edges masked. Due to the existence of the magenta "!" symbols within the **Caution Area**, and the fact that the edges of the **Caution Area** are coincident with the outer edge of the TSS, it is possible to further reduce ECDIS display clutter by masking the edges of the **Caution Area**. The resultant ECDIS display can be seen in Figure 2-10 below.

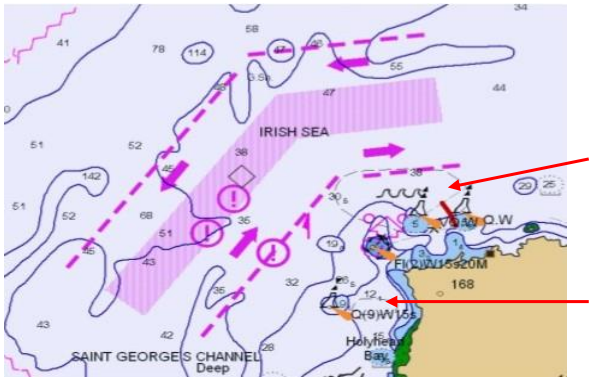


Figure 2-10 – Traffic Separation Scheme with masked Caution Area

NOTE: In the example above it is also possible to mask the areas of water turbulence (indicated in Figure 2-10 by red arrows – see scenario 2 above), however the small area to the east of the West cardinal buoy is too small to display the symbol at the optimum display scale of the ENC data. In cases such as this the compiler should consider capturing this as a **Water Turbulence** feature of type point.

2.6 Description of table format for S-101 meta, geo and information features

X.X Clause heading

IHO Definition: **FEATURE:** Definition. (Authority for definition).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Feature (S-57 Acronym) S-101 feature type, name and corresponding S-57 acronym		
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface, None Allowable geometric primitive(s)		
Real World Example(s) of real-world instance(s) of the Feature.	*Paper Chart Symbol* Example(s) of paper chart equivalent symbology for the Feature.	*ECDIS Symbol* Example(s) of ECDIS symbology for the Feature.

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of beer		1 : ale 2 : lager 3 : porter 4 : stout 5 : pilsener 6 : bock beer 7 : wheat beer 8 : pale ale 9 : indian pale ale	EN	1,1
This section lists the full list of allowable attributes for the S-101 feature. Attributes are listed in alphabetical order. Sub-attributes (Type prefix (S)) of complex (Type C) attributes are listed in alphabetical order and indented directly under the entry for the complex attribute (see below for example). Note that a complex attribute may have simple or complex attributes as sub-complex attributes.	This section lists the corresponding S-57 attribute acronym. A blank cell indicates no corresponding S-57 acronym.	This section lists the allowable encoding values for S-101 (for enumerate (E) Type attributes only). Further information about the attribute is available in Sections 27-30.	Attribute type (see clause 2.4.2).	Multiplicity describes the "cardinality" of the attribute in regard to the feature. See clause 2.4.1.
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Defines	**Name of Association** (see clause 25.xx)	**Feature or Information Type(s)**	Association/ Aggregation/ Composition	0,1
See Section	See Section 25.	Corresponds to the feature(s)	Association	The number

Formatted: German (Germany)

26.		that the subject feature may be associated to. See Section 25	type.	of instances of "Associated to" features that may be associated to the subject feature.

† For each instance of fixed date range, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The "†" superscript in the Multiplicity column indicates a "conditional" mandatory attribute. See clause 2.4.3.

INT 1 Reference: The INT 1 location(s) of the Feature – by INT1 Section and Section Number.

X.X.X Sub-clause heading(s) (see S-4 – B-YYY.Y)

Introductory remarks. Includes information regarding the real world entity/situation requiring the encoding of the Feature in the ENC, and where required nautical cartographic principles relevant to the Feature to aid the compiler in determining encoding requirements.

Specific instructions to encode the feature.

Note that in all sub-clauses feature types and association names are shown in **Bold Capitalised Text**; attributes (complex, sub- and simple) are shown in **bold lower case text**; and attribute values (including enumerate codes) are shown in *italic text*.

Remarks:
- Additional encoding guidance relevant to the feature.

X.X.X.X Sub-sub-clause heading(s) (see S-4 – B-CCC.C)

Clauses related to specific encoding scenarios for the Feature. (Not required for all Features).

Remarks:
- Additional encoding guidance relevant to the scenario (only if required).

Distinction: List of features in the Product Specification distinct from the Feature.

Remarks:

- S-101 Attribute: Indentation of attributes indicates sub-attributes of complex attributes. Complex attributes may also be sub-attributes of complex attributes, which is indicated by further indentation of the attribute name in the tables.
- S-101 Attribute: Attributes shown in grey text are ECDIS "system" attributes which are populated by the ENC production system in order to assist with portrayal of ENC data in ECDIS (see Section 30). These attributes may be further edited by the compiler as required.
- S-57 Acronym: S-57 attribute acronyms shown in italic style text have been re-modelled in S-101 from S-57.
- Allowable Encoding Value: For (EN) type attributes, the enumerates listed are only those allowable for the particular binding of the attribute relevant to the feature. Allowable values may vary for the attribute depending on the feature to which the attribute is bound. Such bindings are defined in the S-101 Feature Catalogue. The full list of enumerates that may be assigned to an attribute in S-101 can be found in Sections 27 and 28 of this document.
- Type: The prefix (C) indicates that the attribute is a complex attribute. Complex attributes are aggregates of other attributes that can be simple type or complex type. The prefix (S) indicates that the attribute is a sub-attribute of a complex attribute. Complex attributes that are sub-attributes of a complex attribute, and their sub-attributes, are indicated by indentation of the attribute name in the S-101 Attribute column.
- Feature/Feature, Feature/Information and Spatial/Information associations, including allowable features for association ends, are described in Section 25.

3 Metadata Features

The maximum use must be made of meta features to reduce the attribution on individual features. In a Base dataset (see S-101 Annex B, clause B5), some meta features are mandatory.

These mandatory meta features are in the following list:

Data Coverage: In order to assist in data discovery, the meta feature **Data Coverage** must be used to provide coverage of the part of the dataset covered by Skin of the Earth features. See clause 3.5.

Navigational System of Marks: The meta feature **Navigational System of Marks** must provide an exhaustive non-overlapping coverage of the **Data Coverage** feature(s). See clause 3.6.

Quality of Bathymetric Data: The meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** defines areas within which uniform assessment exists for the quality of bathymetric data, and is used to provide an assessment of the overall quality of bathymetric data to the Mariner. Areas of a dataset at optimum display scale 1:700000 and larger containing depth data or bathymetry must be covered by one or more **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features, which may overlap vertically (see clause 3.8.1). At optimum display scales smaller than 1:700000, **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features are optional.

Sounding Datum: The meta feature **Sounding Datum** must provide an exhaustive non-overlapping coverage of the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature(s). See clause 3.9.

Vertical Datum of Data: The meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data** must provide an exhaustive non-overlapping coverage of the **Data Coverage** feature(s). See clause 3.10.

3.1 Horizontal uncertainty

The attributes **quality of horizontal measurement** and **horizontal position uncertainty** may be applied to any spatial type, in order to qualify the location of a feature.

If it is required to encode the uncertainty of a horizontal clearance (complex attributes **horizontal clearance fixed** and **horizontal clearance open**), it must be done using the sub-attribute **horizontal distance uncertainty**.

horizontal distance uncertainty applies only to **horizontal clearance fixed** and **horizontal clearance open**. There is no attribute to express the accuracy of the attributes **horizontal length** and **horizontal width**.

horizontal distance uncertainty and **quality of horizontal measurement** must not be applied to the spatial type of any geo feature if they are identical to the **horizontal distance uncertainty** and **quality of horizontal measurement** values of the underlying meta feature. **horizontal position uncertainty** must not be applied to the spatial type of any geo feature if it is identical to the **horizontal position uncertainty** value(s) of the underlying meta feature, except for **Sounding** and **Underwater/Awash Rock** features; and **Foul Ground**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction** and **Wreck** features of type point (see clauses 3.8.1.3, 11.3, 13.4-7 and 13.10).

quality of horizontal measurement gives qualitative information, whereas **horizontal position uncertainty** gives quantitative information.

Remarks:

No remarks.

3.2 Vertical uncertainty

If it is required to encode the uncertainty of a vertical clearance (complex attributes **vertical clearance fixed**, **vertical clearance open**, **vertical clearance closed** and **vertical clearance safe**), it must be done using the complex sub-attribute **vertical uncertainty**.

If several vertical clearances are given for one feature, the uncertainty given must be that of the least accurate.

Commented [TS15]: Email from Tom D 23/08/21 and IHO Sec reply 06/02/24: Allow NauticalInformation to be associated to the meta features?

Refer also to email from Odd 15/02/23 regarding review of the Edition 1.1.0 Feature Catalogue (review comment sheet). Question as to why **Update Information** cannot be associated to the Meta Features.

Remarks:
No remarks.

3.3 Hierarchy of metadata

The following Table indicates individual feature attributes that supersede meta feature attributes.

Meta feature class	Meta feature attribute	Geo feature attribute
Navigational System of Marks	**marks navigational – system of**	**marks navigational – system of**
Quality of Bathymetric Data	**horizontal position uncertainty***	**horizontal position uncertainty****
Quality of Bathymetric Data	**vertical uncertainty***	**vertical uncertainty**
Quality of Bathymetric Data	**vertical uncertainty***	**vertical uncertainty****
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data	**horizontal distance uncertainty**	**horizontal clearance fixed**, **horizontal clearance open**
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data	**horizontal position uncertainty**	**horizontal position uncertainty****
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data	**orientation**	**orientation**
Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data	**vertical uncertainty**	**vertical clearance closed**, **vertical clearance fixed**, **vertical clearance open**, **vertical uncertainty****
Quality of Survey	**quality of horizontal measurement**	**quality of horizontal measurement****
Quality of Survey	**quality of vertical measurement**	**quality of vertical measurement**
Quality of Survey	**technique of vertical measurement**	**technique of vertical measurement**
Vertical Datum of Data	**vertical datum**	**vertical datum**

Table 3-1 – Hierarchy of metadata

* The information type **Spatial Quality**, attributes **horizontal position uncertainty** and **vertical uncertainty**, are associated to **Quality of Bathymetric Data** using the mandatory information to feature association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12).

** As populated on an associated instance of the information type **Spatial Quality**, using the information to feature association **Spatial Association** (see clause 25.14).

It is prohibited to use an attribute on an individual object, if this attribute has the same value as the general value defined by the meta feature.

3.4 Quality of non-bathymetric data

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF NON-BATHYMETRIC DATA**. An area within which a uniform assessment of the quality of the non-bathymetric data exists. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.208, November 2000).

S-101 Metadata Feature: Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data (M_ACCY)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of temporal variation		1 : extreme event 4 : likely to change	EN	0,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		RE	0,1
horizontal position uncertainty			C	1,1
uncertainty fixed	*(POSACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
orientation uncertainty			RE	0,1
survey date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	*(SUREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(SURSTA)*		(S) TD	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 32.1-2

3.4.1 Quality of non-bathymetric data (see S-4 – B-487.2)

The meta feature **Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data** may be used to provide an indication of the overall uncertainty of position for all non-bathymetric features. It must not be used to provide the uncertainty of bathymetric information.

Commented [TS16]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

horizontal position uncertainty on the **Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data** applies to non-bathymetric data situated within the area, while **quality of horizontal measurement** or **horizontal position uncertainty** on the associated spatial types qualifies the location of the **Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data** feature itself.

Meta features **Quality of Non-bathymetric Data** and **Quality of Bathymetric Data** may overlap.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Quality of Bathymetric Data; Quality of Survey.

3.5 Data coverage

IHO Definition: **DATA COVERAGE**. A geographical area that describes the coverage and extent of spatial objects. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.210, November 2000).

S-101 Metadata Feature: Data Coverage (M_COVR) *(M_CSCL)*

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
maximum display scale		See Table 3-2 below maximum display scale ≤ optimum display scale < minimum display scale	IN	1,1
minimum display scale		See Table 3-2 below minimum display scale ≥ optimum display scale > maximum display scale	IN	1,1
optimum display scale		See Table 3-2 below maximum display scale ≤ optimum display scale < minimum display scale	IN	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.5.1 Coverage

The meta feature **Data Coverage** encodes the area covered by data within the dataset. This feature is also used to provide the ECDIS with the scale information necessary for the determination of dataset loading and unloading in relation to the user selected viewing scale in the ECDIS. There must be a minimum of one **Data Coverage** feature in the dataset. **Data Coverage** features must cover the equivalent area to the extent of the spatial types in the dataset, and must not overlap (see clause 2.5.1).

The mandatory attribute **optimum display scale** is used to indicate the largest intended viewing scale for the data. The value populated for **optimum display scale**, therefore, provides a reference for the user selected viewing scale in the ECDIS at which the overscale warning will be displayed if there is no larger optimum display scale ENC dataset available, as well as the ECDIS viewing scale when the cell is loaded. The value also determines the dataset loading strategy as the user defined viewing scale becomes smaller through a series of ENC cells covering a geographic area.

The mandatory attribute **minimum display scale** is used to indicate the smallest intended viewing scale for the data. Where an empty (null) value is populated for **minimum display scale**, the ECDIS will continue to

display the data regardless of how small the user selected viewing scale becomes. The value populated for **minimum display scale**, therefore, is intended to be used in a series of ENC cells covering a geographic area to determine the dataset loading strategy as the user selected viewing scale becomes larger. The mandatory attribute **maximum display scale** is used to indicate the scale at which the Data Producer considers that the "grossly overscaled" warning is to be triggered based on the user selected viewing scale; and plays no role in dataset loading or rendering (display) order.

For ENC, in order to provide a consistent relationship between the encoded data and the way the data is displayed in ECDIS, the values for **maximum display scale**, **minimum display scale** and **optimum display scale** must be taken from the values listed in the following Table:

maximum display scale	optimum display scale	minimum display scale
10,000,000	10,000,000	empty (null)
3,500,000	3,500,000	10,000,000
1,500,000	1,500,000	3,500,000
700,000	700,000	1,500,000
350,000	350,000	700,000
180,000	180,000	350,000
90,000	90,000	180,000
45,000	45,000	90,000
22,000	22,000	45,000
12,000	12,000	22,000
8,000	8,000	12,000
4,000	4,000	8,000
3,000	3,000	4,000
2,000	2,000	3,000
1,000	1,000	2,000
empty (null)		

Table 3-2 – Maximum and minimum display scale values

[NOTE: The selection of values for **maximum display scale** and **minimum display scale** for any selected **optimum display scale** are at the discretion of the Data Producer. That is, any value listed for **maximum display scale** and **minimum display scale** above may be selected from any of the listed values, with the only restriction being that **maximum display scale** must be a smaller value than/equal to **optimum display scale** which must be a smaller value than **minimum display scale**.]

Typically, only a single **Data Coverage** feature should be used in a dataset. However, if the optimum display scale is different for discrete areas within a single ENC dataset, this must be indicated by encoding separate, non-overlapping **Data Coverage** features, each having a different value populated for **optimum display scale**. Producing Authorities are to note, however, that excessive use of multiple **Data Coverage** features having different values of **optimum display scale** within a single dataset should be avoided. Where different values of **optimum display scale** are used, this should be restricted only to data compiled in order to achieve the intended navigational purpose of the entire dataset. Datasets must have the same value for **minimum display scale** for all **Data Coverage** features in the dataset. Datasets may have different values populated for **maximum display scale** for the **Data Coverage** features in the dataset; these values are typically populated as the value corresponding to the next larger scale value to the value populated for **optimum display scale**, but are at the discretion of the Data Producer (for example, the value for **maximum display scale** may be set to the same value as **optimum display scale** to have the "grossly overscaled" warning appear at any larger user selected viewing scale than **optimum display scale**).

Where a series of differing optimum display scale ENC datasets are compiled covering the same geographic area, the smallest scale value populated for **optimum display scale** for **Data Coverage** feature(s) in the dataset should correspond to the **minimum display scale**, where populated, for the next largest optimum display scale ENC dataset. The largest scale value populated for **optimum display scale** for **Data Coverage**

Commented [TS17]: Refer email from Richard 26/06/2019. Consider that this is not an issue as the term is only used to describe a condition, not an attribute of the data (note that the term is not capitalized). Also in clauses 5 and 22.7.1.

feature(s) in the dataset must not be a larger scale value than the **optimum display scale** for the next largest optimum display scale ENC dataset, where such a dataset exists.

Remarks:

- This meta feature is intended to support an indication of coverage.
- Where more than one **Data Coverage** feature exists for a dataset, the dataset, when loaded, will be displayed in the ECDIS at a display scale corresponding to the largest scale value populated for **optimum display scale**.
- Where a dataset consists of only one **Data Coverage** feature, the value for the optimum display scale populated in the dataset discovery metadata must be the same as the value populated for **optimum display scale** on the **Data Coverage**.

Distinction:

3.6 Navigational system of marks

IHO Definition: **NAVIGATIONAL SYSTEM OF MARKS**. An area within which the navigational system of marks has been established in relation to a specific direction. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.214, November 2000).

S-101 Metadata Feature: Navigational System of Marks *(M_NSYS)*

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130

3.6.1 Buoyage systems (see S-4 – B-461)

The buoyage system of the dataset must be encoded using the meta feature **Navigational System of Marks**:

All parts of the dataset containing data must be covered by **Navigational System of Marks** features, with the attribute **marks navigational – system of** indicating the buoyage system in operation. **Navigational System of Marks** features must not overlap.

Individual buoys and beacons may not be part of the general buoyage system. This should be encoded using the attribute **marks navigational – system of** on these buoy and beacon features.

Remarks:

- For guidance regarding the encoding of aids to navigation in the IALA maritime buoyage system, see clause 18.3.1.1.
- If it is required to encode an area within which the navigational system of marks has been established in relation to a specific direction, it must be done using the feature **Local Direction of Buoyage** (see clause 3.7).

Distinction: Local Direction of Buoyage.

Formatted: Italian (Italy)

Commented [TS18]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

3.7 Local direction of buoyage

IHO Definition: **LOCAL DIRECTION OF BUOYAGE**. An area within which the navigational system of marks has been established in relation to a specific direction. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.214, November 2000).

S-101 Metadata Feature: Local Direction of Buoyage *(M_NSYS)*

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	1,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.2

3.7.1 Local direction of buoyage (see S-4 – B-461.5)

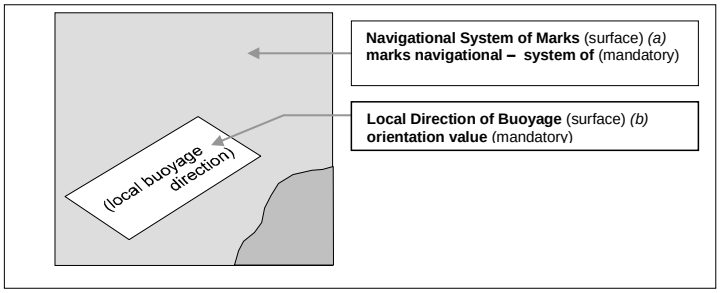


Figure 3-1 – Buoyage system and direction

Formatted: Italian (Italy)

Commented [TS19]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

Within a dataset, there may be some areas where the direction of buoyage is defined by local rules and must, therefore, be specified. If required, these areas must be encoded as **Local Direction of Buoyage** features, with the mandatory attribute **orientation value** indicating the direction of buoyage. **Local Direction of Buoyage** features must not overlap, but in areas where local buoyage directions apply, **Local Direction of Buoyage** features must overlap **Navigational System of Marks** features (see clause 3.6) (see Figure 3-2 above).

Remarks:

- The mandatory attribute **marks navigational – system of** is required for ECDIS portrayal, and must be populated with the same value as populated for the **marks navigational – system of** on the underlying **Navigational System of Marks** feature.

Distinction: Navigational System of Marks.

3.8 Quality of bathymetric data

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF BATHYMETRIC DATA**. An area within which a uniform assessment of the quality of the bathymetric data exists. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.216, November 2000).		
S-101 Metadata Feature: Quality of Bathymetric Data (M_QUAL)		
Primitives: Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of temporal variation		1 : extreme event 2 : likely to change and significant shoaling expected 3 : likely to change but significant shoaling not expected 5 : unlikely to change 6 : unassessed	EN	1,1
data assessment		1 : assessed 2 : assessed (oceanic) 3 : unassessed	EN	1,1
depth range maximum value	(DRVAL2)		RE	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
features detected			C	1,1
least depth of detected features measured			(S) BO	1,1
significant features detected			(S) BO	1,1
size of features detected			(S) RE	0,1
full seafloor coverage achieved			BO	1,1
survey date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	1,1
date end	*(SUREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(SURSTA)*		(S) TD	0,1
zone of confidence			C	1,*
category of zone of confidence in data	CATZOC	1 : zone of confidence A1 2 : zone of confidence A2 3 : zone of confidence B 4 : zone of confidence C 5 : zone of confidence D 6 : zone of confidence U	EN	1,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	(S) C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1

file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Defines	**Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12)	**Spatial Quality**	Composition	1,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of fixed date range, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.8.1 Quality, reliability and uncertainty of bathymetric data (see S-4 – B-297)

Information about quality, reliability and uncertainty of bathymetric data is given using:

- the meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** and the Information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5) for an overall assessment of the quality of bathymetric data;
- the meta feature **Quality of Survey** for additional information about individual surveys (see clause 3.11);
- the attributes **quality of vertical measurement** and **technique of vertical measurement** on groups of soundings or individual features;
- the attributes **horizontal position uncertainty**, **quality of horizontal measurement** and **vertical uncertainty** on the spatial types (see clauses 2.4.7 and 24.5).

Bathymetric data quality comprises the following:

- completeness of data (for example, seafloor coverage);
- currency of data (for example, temporal degradation);
- uncertainty of data;
- source of data.

For the Mariner, **Quality of Bathymetric Data** provides the most useful information. Therefore, the use of **Quality of Bathymetric Data** is mandatory for areas containing depth data or bathymetry on ENC datasets at optimum display scale 1:700000 and larger.

In order to provide an indication of the horizontal position and vertical accuracies of the features to which applies, each instance of **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must be associated to an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5), using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12).

More detailed information about a survey may be given using **Quality of Survey** (see clause 3.11). For example, in incompletely surveyed areas, lines of passage soundings may be indicated as such using a curve **Quality of Survey** feature. This information is more difficult for the Mariner to interpret, therefore the use of **Quality of Survey** is optional.

For individual features (wrecks, obstructions etc), or individual/small groups of soundings, **quality of vertical measurement**, **technique of vertical measurement**, **horizontal position uncertainty** and **vertical uncertainty** may be used to provide additional information about quality and uncertainty.

The meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** defines areas within which uniform assessment exists for the quality of bathymetric data, and must be used to provide an assessment of the overall quality of bathymetric data to the Mariner. Areas of a dataset containing depth data or bathymetry must be covered by one or more **Quality of Bathymetric Data**, which may overlap vertically in order to define the quality of bathymetric data at varying depths in the water column.

Commented [TS20]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24. Needs discussion?

Commented [TS21]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

Commented [TS22]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: optximum

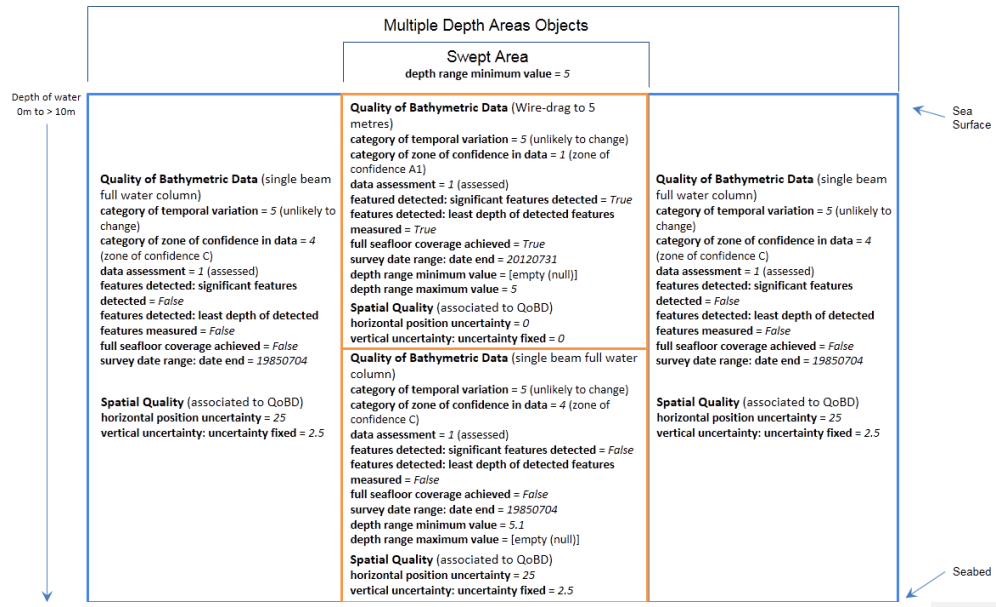


Figure 3-2 – Adjoining and overlapping Quality of Bathymetric Data features

The Figure above demonstrates the encoding for varying quality of bathymetric data in the water column, in this example a mechanically swept area to a depth of 5 metres that has also been previously surveyed using single beam echo sounder to the seabed. For the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature that defines the data quality for the swept area, it is important to note that the recommended attribution shown above is intended to provide the highest (best) quality indicator for vessels navigating at a safety depth of less than 5 metres in the area. For vessels navigating at a safety depth of greater than 5 metres in the area, or at any depth outside the area, the lower quality indicator will be provided.

Remarks:

- The mandatory attribute **data assessment** provides an overall indicative level of assessment of bathymetric data from which further attribution is derived, and assists with portrayal of bathymetric data quality information in ECDIS:
  - Where the value for **data assessment** is set to *1* (assessed), all additional attribution for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature must be indicative of the quality of bathymetric data for the area.
  - Where the value for **data assessment** is set to *2* (assessed (oceanic)), all additional attribution for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature should be indicative of the quality of bathymetric data for the area for a Mariner's ECDIS pick report, however no portrayal of the quality information will display on the ECDIS. This value should only be used to cover open ocean (oceanic) depths in waters deeper than 200 metres.
  - Where the value for **data assessment** is set to *3* (unassessed), the mandatory attributes **category of temporal variation** = *6* (unassessed); **features detected** (**least depth of detected features measured** and **significant features detected**) = *False*; **full seafloor coverage achieved** = *False*; and **category of zone of confidence in data** = *6* (zone of confidence U) must be populated.
- Wherever possible, meaningful and useful values for the attributes **category of temporal variation**, **full seafloor coverage achieved**, and the complex attribute **features detected** must be used for areas of bathymetry. For areas of unstable seafloors, the complex attribute **survey date range** (**date end**) must be used to indicate the date of the survey of the underlying bathymetric data.
- As a result of some disasters, for example earthquakes, tsunamis, hurricanes, it is possible that large areas of seafloor have moved and/or become cluttered with dangerous obstructions. Emergency surveys may subsequently be conducted over essential shipping routes and inside harbours. Outside these surveys, all existing detail is now suspect, whatever the quality of the previous surveys. In such cases, the attribute **category of temporal variation** should be reclassified to value *1* (extreme event), the Boolean attribute **full**

seafloor coverage achieved set to *False*; complex attribute **features detected**, Boolean sub-attributes **least depth of detected features measured** and **significant features detected** set to *False*; the **zone of confidence** sub-attribute **category of zone of confidence in data** reclassified to *5* (zone of confidence D); and the sub-attributes **horizontal position accuracy** (**uncertainty fixed**) and **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) on the associated **Spatial Quality** populated with an empty (null) value in the affected areas outside the area covered by emergency surveys.

- To express completeness of bathymetric data, the complex attribute **features detected** must be encoded. **features detected** indicates that a systematic method of exploring the seafloor, or the water column to the depth indicated by population of the attribute **depth range maximum value**, was undertaken to detect significant features. The sub-attributes **size of features detected** and **least depth of detected features measured** must not be encoded unless the sub-attribute **significant features detected** is set to *True*.
- The mandatory complex attribute **zone of confidence** is used on a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature to provide an overall indication of the accuracy of the bathymetric data in the area. Where **category of temporal variation** is set to values *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected), multiple instances of **zone of confidence** should be encoded to provide an indication of the degradation of the overall accuracy of the charted bathymetric information over time.
  - Wherever possible, meaningful and useful values of the mandatory sub-attribute **category of zone of confidence in data** should be used (that is, values other than **category of zone of confidence in data** = *6* (zone of confidence U)) for areas of bathymetry. These values must be determined from the **category of zone of confidence in data** definition table (see clause 27.73) in accordance with the values populated for the attribute **full seafloor coverage achieved**, the complex attribute **features detected** and the sub-complex attributes **horizontal position uncertainty** and **vertical uncertainty** on the associated **Spatial Quality**.
  - The sub-complex attribute **fixed date range** is used to define the date range(s) where the quality is degraded over time. Where multiple date ranges are specified, the **date start** of an instance must be equal to the **date end** of the previous instance. Within the sequence, the **date start** of the first instance and the **date end** of the last instance should not be populated; the values populated for **fixed date range** must not result in the removal of the indication of bathymetric data quality for an area from the Mariner.
- The sub-complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** on the associated **Spatial Quality** is used to specify the vertical uncertainty of the depths covered by the surface within a specified date range (where encoded). When **depth range minimum value** is specified on **Quality of Bathymetric Data**, **vertical uncertainty** refers only to the uncertainty of the swept depth defined by **depth range minimum value**.
- The sub-complex attribute **horizontal position uncertainty** on the associated **Spatial Quality** is used to specify the positional uncertainty of the depths covered by the surface within a specified date range (where encoded).
- **depth range minimum value** must only be used on a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature where a swept area occupies the entire **Quality of Bathymetric Data** surface, or **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features overlap. Where these features overlap such that varying bathymetric data qualities exist at different depths in the water column, the **depth range minimum value** for a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must be set to a value 0.1 metres deeper than the **depth range maximum value** for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature defining the quality for the level above; and the topmost **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must have **depth range minimum value** set to an empty (null) value (see Figure 3-2 above).
- **depth range maximum value** must only be used on a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature to specify the maximum depth to which all other attributes for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature applies. When **depth range maximum value** is specified, values populated for all other attributes apply only to depths equal to or shoaler than **depth range maximum value**. No quality information is provided for depths deeper than **depth range maximum value**. Where **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features overlap such that varying bathymetric data qualities exist at different depths in the water column, the **depth range maximum value** for a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must be set to a value 0.1 metres shoaler than the **depth range minimum value** for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature defining the quality for the level below; and the bottommost **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must have **depth range maximum value** set to an empty (null) value (see Figure 3-2 above).
- **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must be encoded over **Unsurveyed Area** features that contain any depth data or bathymetry (depth contours, obstructions, soundings, underwater rocks, wrecks); and must have mandatory attributes **data assessment** = *1* (assessed) **category of temporal variation** = *6* (unassessed); **features detected** (**least depth of detected features measured** and **significant features detected**) = *False*; **full seafloor coverage achieved** = *False*; and **zone of confidence** (**category of zone of confidence in data**) = *5* (zone of confidence D). The **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) and

horizontal position uncertainty (**uncertainty fixed**) for the associated **Spatial Quality** should be populated with an empty (null) value.

- For **Unsurveyed Area** features that do not contain any depth data or bathymetry, it is not required to encode a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature that covers the area.
- If the attribute **technique of vertical measurement** is required, it must be encoded on either the meta feature **Quality of Survey** (see clause 3.11) or on individual geo features (for example **Sounding**).
- When the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** surface contains data from only one survey, the date of survey must be specified using the complex attribute **survey date range**, sub-attribute **date end**. When the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** surface contains data from two or more surveys, the date of the most recent and the oldest survey must be specified using the complex attribute **survey date range**.
- **Quality of Bathymetric Data** areas must not be encoded over land.
- **Spatial Quality** (**horizontal position uncertainty**) associated to the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12) applies to bathymetric data situated within the surface, while **Spatial Quality** (**quality of horizontal measurement**) or (**horizontal position uncertainty**) on the associated spatial types using the association **Spatial Association** (see clause 24.5) qualifies the location of the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature itself.
- Meta features **Quality of Bathymetric Data** and **Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data** may overlap.
- Additional quality information may be given using the meta feature **Quality of Survey**.

3.8.1.1 Temporal variation

The changeability of the bathymetry must be encoded using **category of temporal variation**. In order for a time reference to be given for the expression of temporal variation, the relevant dates of the bathymetric data must be encoded using the complex attribute **survey date range** if **category of temporal variation** is set to *1* (extreme event), *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected).

3.8.1.2 Feature detection

In the context of bathymetry, a feature is any object, whether manmade or not, projecting above the seafloor, which may be considered a danger to surface navigation. Refer to IHO Publication S-44.

The ability to detect bathymetric features must be encoded using the complex attribute **features detected**. The sub-attribute **significant features detected** indicates whether the survey was capable of detecting features of a size indicated by the sub-attribute **size of features detected**. The sub-attribute **least depth of detected features measured** indicates whether the least depth of detected features was found. For instance, if a wreck was found, but it is not certain that the least depth of that wreck was measured, **least depth of detected features measured** must be set to *False*.

3.8.1.3 Sounding uncertainty

Sounding uncertainty is encoded using an associated instance of the information type **Spatial Quality**, complex attribute **spatial accuracy** (see clause 24.5) and using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12). If it is required to encode additional sounding uncertainty information, it must be done using the attributes **quality of vertical measurement** and **technique of vertical measurement** on groups of soundings or individual features; or by associating another instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** to the spatial type associated with the individual geo features. Note that this is a mandatory requirement for the features **Sounding** and **Underwater/Awash Rock**; and **Foul Ground**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction** and **Wreck** of type point, of depth 30 metres or less.

The vertical and horizontal position uncertainty values populated on the instance of **Spatial Quality** associated to the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must reflect the most commonly associated values for the **Foul Ground**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction**, **Sounding**, **Underwater/Awash Rock** and **Wreck** features within the area.

Distinction: Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data; Quality of Survey; Spatial Quality.

3.9 Sounding datum

IHO Definition: **SOUNDING DATUM**. The horizontal plane or tidal datum to which soundings have been reduced. Also called datum for sounding reduction. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Metadata Feature: Sounding Datum (M_SDAT)				
Primitives: Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	1 : mean low water springs 2 : mean lower low water springs 3 : mean sea level 4 : lowest low water 5 : mean low water 6 : lowest low water springs 7 : approximate mean low water springs 8 : indian spring low water 9 : low water springs 10 : approximate lowest astronomical tide 11 : nearly lowest low water 12 : mean lower low water 13 : low water 14 : approximate mean low water 15 : approximate mean lower low water 19 : approximate mean sea level 22 : equinoctial spring low water 23 : lowest astronomical tide 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 27 : lower low water large tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
Feature Associations				

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS23]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.9.1 Sounding datum

For depth information that is encoded using the attributes **value of sounding**, **depth range minimum value**, **depth range maximum value** and **value of depth contour** the sounding datum is encoded using the meta feature **Sounding Datum**, and must be constant over large areas.

All parts of the dataset containing depth data or bathymetry must be covered by **Sounding Datum** features, with the attribute **vertical datum** indicating the sounding datum. **Sounding Datum** features must not overlap.

For sounding features both the position and depth information is encoded by means of coordinates, with the depth information stored in the Z-coordinate. The sounding datum is defined by the Coordinate Reference System (CRS) for the Z-Coordinate ("Coordinate in Z Axis" [ZCOO] subfield of the "3-D Integer Coordinate Tuple" [C3IT] field or the "3-D Integer Coordinate List" [C3IL] field).

The definition of the CRS is stored in the "Dataset Coordinate Reference System" record and referred by the "Vertical CRS Id" [VCID] subfield of the "3-D Integer Coordinate Tuple" [C3IT] field or the "3-D Integer Coordinate List" [C3IL] field.

The CRS for the Z-coordinate should also have the subfield "Axis Type" [AXTY] of the corresponding "Coordinate System Axes" [CSAX] field set to *12* (Gravity Related Depth).

Note, that because every ZCOO value is explicitly linked to sounding datum there is no default value.

Remarks:

- The default sounding datum of the dataset must be encoded using the meta feature **Sounding Datum**, and must be equivalent to the definition of the CRS as stored in the "Dataset Coordinate Reference System" record for the dataset.
- If an area of the dataset is referenced to a different sounding datum than the default, a separate **Sounding Datum** feature must be encoded. All parts of the dataset covered by **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features (see clause 3.8) must be covered by **Sounding Datum** features, with the attribute **vertical datum** indicating the sounding (depth) datum.
- Sounding groups, depth contours and depth areas going across areas having different values of sounding datum must be split at the border of those areas. Other features that should be split include **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction** and **Wreck**, but only where the value of **value of sounding** is known; and **Berth**, **Cable Submarine**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Dredged Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Fairway**, **Floating Dock**, **Gate**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Swept Area**, **Two-Way Route Part** and **Quality of Bathymetric Data**, but only if the value of **depth range minimum value** and/or **depth range maximum value** is known.

Distinction: Vertical Datum.

3.10 Vertical datum of data

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL DATUM OF DATA**. Any level surface (for example Mean Sea Level) taken as a surface of reference to which the elevations within a data set are reduced. Also called datum level, reference level, reference plane, levelling datum, datum for heights. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Metadata Feature: Vertical Datum of Data (M_VDAT)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS24]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.10.1 Vertical datum

Vertical datum information is encoded using the meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data**, or by populating the attribute **vertical datum** on individual geo features. The values encoded in the attributes **elevation**, **height**

and **clearance vertical** (positive values up) are referenced to the specified datum(s). **vertical datum** must not be encoded on any feature unless at least one of the above attributes is also encoded on that feature.

The vertical datum of the dataset must be encoded using the meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data**:

All parts of the dataset containing data must be covered by **Vertical Datum of Data** features, with the attribute **vertical datum** indicating the vertical (height) datum. **Vertical Datum of Data** features must not overlap.

Commented [TS25]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Various height datums may be used within an ENC. For example, different datums may be used for the following:

- altitude of spot heights, height contours, landmarks,
- elevation of lights,
- vertical clearance.

Where different vertical datums are used for the various vertical measurements, the default value given in the metadata for the **Vertical Datum of Data** applies to the first group of the above list. The attribute **vertical datum** on an individual feature applies to the elevation of lights and vertical clearances and must only be populated if different from the value given by **Vertical Datum of Data**.

Remarks:

- Height contours, going across areas having different values of vertical datum, must be split at the border of these areas.

Distinction: Sounding Datum.

3.11 Quality of survey

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF SURVEY**. An area within which a uniform assessment of the reliability of source survey information exists. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.218, November 2000).		
S-101 Metadata Feature: Quality of Survey (M_SREL)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range maximum value	(DRVAL2)		RE	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
features detected			C	0,1
least depth of detected features measured			(S) BO	1,1
significant features detected			(S) BO	1,1
size of features detected			(S) RE	0,1
full seafloor coverage achieved			BO	0,1
line spacing maximum			IN	0,1
line spacing minimum			IN	0,1
measurement distance maximum	(SDISMX)		RE	0,1
measurement distance minimum	(SDISMN)		RE	0,1
quality of horizontal measurement	(QUAPOS)	4 : approximate	EN	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed) 10 : maintained depth 11 : not regularly maintained	EN	0,*
scale value maximum	(SCVAL1)	scale value maximum < scale value minimum	IN	0,1
scale value minimum	(SCVAL2)	scale value minimum > scale value maximum	IN	0,1
survey authority	(SURATH)		TE	1,1
survey date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	1,1
date end	*(SUREND)*		(S) TD	1,1

date start	*(SURSTA)*		(S) TD	0,1
survey type	(SURTYP)	1 : reconnaissance/sketch survey 2 : controlled survey 4 : examination survey 5 : passage survey 6 : remotely sensed 7 : full coverage 8 : systematic survey 9 : non-systematic survey 10 : inadequately surveyed 11 : spot-sounding survey 12 : acoustically swept survey 13 : mechanically swept survey	EN	1,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found be lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry 11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by levelling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS26]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.11.1 Survey reliability and source of bathymetric data

The survey reliability and/or details of the source surveys used in compilation may be encoded using the meta feature **Quality of Survey**.

Quality of Survey can apply to bathymetry (for example, underwater rocks), non-bathymetry (for example, navigational aids) and a combination of these (for example, LIDAR survey).

Remarks:

- To express completeness of bathymetric data, the complex attribute **features detected** should be encoded.

features detected indicates that a systematic method of exploring the seafloor was undertaken to detect significant features. The sub-attributes **size of features detected** and **least depth of detected features measured** must not be encoded unless the sub-attribute **significant features detected** is set to *True*.

- If it is required to encode a vertical uncertainty value, it must be encoded using the complex attribut **vertical uncertainty** on an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5), associated t the relevant feature(s) point, multipoint and curve geometry, or an instance of the meta feature **Quality o Bathymetric Data** (see clause 3.8).
- If the attribute **measurement distance maximum** is set to *0* (zero) for the full area of the survey, the attribute **full seafloor coverage achieved** should be set to *yes*.
- Where populated, the value for the attribute **measurement distance minimum** must not be larger than the value populated for **measurement distance maximum**.
- **quality of horizontal measurement** on the **Quality of Survey** applies to bathymetric data situated within the area, while **quality of horizontal measurement** or **horizontal position uncertainty** on the associated spatial types qualifies the location of the **Quality of Survey** feature itself.
- The attributes **depth range maximum value** and **depth range minimum value** may be used to define the quality of individual surveys at varying depths in the water column, similar to the method used for indicating the overall quality of bathymetry using **Quality of Bathymetric Data** (see clause 3.8).

Deleted: the complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** is requiredit is required

Commented [TS27]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

3.11.2 Quality of sounding

If it is required to encode the quality of sounding, it must be done using the attribute **quality of vertical measurement** on either the **Quality of Survey** or on individual geo features (for example **Sounding**).

The quality of sounding must not be encoded using **quality of vertical measurement** on the depth geo feature, unless it is different from the value of **quality of vertical measurement** encoded on **Quality of Survey** (see Table 11-1 at clause 11.3.1 and Table 13-1 at clause 13.3).

3.11.3 Technique of vertical measurement

If it is required to encode the technique of sounding measurement, it must be done using the attribute **technique of vertical measurement** on either **Quality of Survey** or on individual geo features (for example **Sounding**).

technique of vertical measurement must not be populated with multiple values to indicate the technique of sounding measurement for multiple surveys. **technique of vertical measurement** may be populated with multiple values only where the area is covered by a survey that has used multiple techniques, for example an area covered by a survey using a modern echosounder combined with a sonar or mechanical sweep system.

The technique of sounding measurement must not be encoded using **technique of vertical measurement** on the depth geo feature, unless it is different from the value of **technique of vertical measurement** encoded on an overlapping **Quality of Survey**; and the information is considered to be important to navigation.

Remarks:

- No remarks.

Distinction: Accuracy of Data; Quality of Bathymetric Data.

3.12 Update information

IHO Definition: **UPDATE INFORMATION**. The Update Information metadata feature is used to represent a change to the information shown.

S-101 Metadata Feature: Update Information

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1 †
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1
update number			IN	1,1
update type		1 : insert 2 : delete 3 : modify 4: move	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
source			TE	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Identifies	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	Most meta features and all Geo features	Association	0,*

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

fixed date range and/or **scale minimum** are mandatory if **fixed date range** and/or **scale minimum** are populated for the associated Geo feature, and must be identical to the values populated for the associated Geo feature.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

3.12.1 Update information

The meta feature **Update Information** is used by the ECDIS to provide, on request, a visual indication to the Mariner of information that has changed in the System Database when an ENC Update is applied. Therefore, an associated instance of **Update Information** corresponding to each feature instance included in an ENC

Commented [TS28]: Refer to iForInsight FC review comments received 15/02/23.

Deleted: All

Update dataset (ER Application Profile) is mandatory for all changes that impact on navigation*. **Update Information** must be associated with features that have changed using the association **Updated Information** (see clause 25.19).

* Data producers may consider the non-inclusion of an instance of **Update Information** for minor changes to a feature that have no impact on navigation, such as correction of spelling/syntax errors in text strings or associated text files. For further guidance see Section 31.

Remarks:

- The mandatory attribute **update number** must be used to indicate the Update number of the Update dataset that the changed information is included in, as indicated in the file extension of the Update dataset.
- The mandatory attribute **update type** must be used to indicate the type of update applicable to the feature (insertion, deletion, modification, move).
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to provide a brief textual description of the changes to the associated feature as included in the Update.
- Where the changed information is related to an information type, the **Update Information** should be associated with the features to which the information type is associated.
- The attribute **source** may be used to indicate the related paper chart Notice to Mariner's number.
- At each New Edition of an ENC cell, **Update Information** features which are no longer relevant must be deleted; and for the next Update to an ENC cell **Update Information** features included in the previous Update dataset should be considered for deletion. Where a new Update impacts a feature that has previously been updated, any existing instance of **Update Information** associated to the feature must be deleted as part of the new Update; this must be done by deleting the existing **Update Information** from the dataset.
- The creation of **Update Information** meta feature instances and the corresponding **Updated Information** association instances may be substantively automated in ENC production systems and associated databases, with automated population of the mandatory attributes **update number** and **update type** based on the change made to the data; and the complex attribute **fixed date range** and attribute **scale minimum** based on the attribution of the associated geo feature. Any additional information populated for **Update Information** is at the discretion of the Data Producer.

Distinction: Information Area; Caution Area.

Commented [TS29]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: ;

4 Geo Features – Magnetic Data

4.1 Magnetic variation

IHO Definition: **MAGNETIC VARIATION**. The angle between the magnetic and geographic meridians at any place, expressed in degrees east or west to indicate the direction of magnetic north from true north. Also called magnetic declination. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Magnetic Variation (MAGVAR)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Commented [TS30]: Suggestion is to remove point as an allowable geometric primitive for **Magnetic Variation** in S-101. Issue would be the capability of Producing Authorities to apply this change to their ENC portfolio. To be discussed.

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
reference year for magnetic variation	(RYRMGV)	See clause 2.4.8 (YYYY----)	TD	1,1
value of annual change in magnetic variation	(VALACM)	+/- minutes. Positive (unsigned) value indicates easterly. Negative value indicates westerly	RE	1,1
value of magnetic variation	(VALMAG)	+/- degrees. Positive (unsigned) value indicates easterly. Negative value indicates westerly	RE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: B 68, 70-71

4.1.1 Magnetic variation (see S-4 – B-261; B-270 to B-273)

Of the various magnetic data, magnetic variation is the most important element for the Mariner. Until a world magnetic model is universally available for inclusion in ECDIS, if it is required to encode magnetic variation, it must be done using the feature **Magnetic Variation**. As a minimum, updates to the magnetic variation should be supplied to coincide with changes of epoch (that is, every five years).

Remarks:

- There remains a requirement to include magnetic variation information in ENCs whilst SOLAS regulations include the requirement for a magnetic compass and deviation card. User feedback indicates that it can be difficult to access magnetic variation information in ECDIS where it has been encoded using the point or curve primitive. In order to make magnetic variation information easily accessible to ECDIS users, it is recommended to encode this information as **Magnetic Variation** features of type surface. Encoding this information using the surface primitive ensures that the user can interrogate the ENC data using the ECDIS Pick Report function at any chart location to identify the value of magnetic variation at that location.
- The mandatory attribute **reference year for magnetic variation** must be used to populate the year value only (see clause 2.4.8 for format of date type attributes).
- Magnetic models are typically updated every five years (for example 2005, 2010… termed epochs). Magnetic variation can be calculated from computer models, or derived from charts produced by certain Hydrographic Offices or mapping authorities, which show the spatial distribution of magnetic variation values worldwide for the current epoch, by means of lines of equal magnetic variation (termed isogonals). The rate-of-change curves, which are over-printed on such charts, enable values for any point to be extrapolated for any time within the current epoch.
- Magnetic variation information in high latitudes (polar regions) is highly variable and unreliable, and as such is not normally used for navigation. It is therefore not considered to be a requirement to include magnetic variation information in ENCs covering polar waters.

Distinction: Local Magnetic Anomaly.

4.2 Local magnetic anomaly

IHO Definition: **LOCAL MAGNETIC ANOMALY**. An anomaly of the magnetic field of the Earth, extending over a relatively small area, due to local magnetic influences. Also called local attraction or magnetic anomaly. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Local Magnetic Anomaly (LOCMAG)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
value of local magnetic anomaly			C	1,2
magnetic anomaly value	(VALLMA)		(S) RE	1,1
reference direction		5 : east 13 : west	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

Where there are two instances of the complex attribute **value of local magnetic anomaly**, the sub-attribute

reference direction is mandatory for each instance.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: B 82.1-2

4.2.1 Local magnetic anomaly (see S-4 – B-274)

Local magnetic anomalies are local effects superimposed on the Earth's normal magnetic field which cause anomalous variation values. Permanent anomalies are caused by concentrations of ferromagnetic material in the Earth's crust or, to a more limited extent, by wrecks or man-made structures on the sea bed. They should not be charted unless they exceed 3° from the norm for the area (see clause 4.1), because diurnal and seasonal fluctuations in the Earth's magnetic field can change the stated variation by up to 1° and, in some parts of the world, the data on which isogonals are based may not ensure the accuracy of charted values to better than ±2°.

If it is required to encode an abnormality in magnetic variation for a localised area, it must be done using the feature **Local Magnetic Anomaly**.

If the area cannot be defined, the feature should be represented as a point.

Remarks:

- If it is required to indicate a local magnetic anomaly that is the same magnitude for both east and west, a single instance of the mandatory complex attribute **value of local magnetic anomaly** must be encoded, with the value of the anomaly populated in the mandatory sub-attribute **magnetic anomaly value** in decimal degrees. The sub-attribute **reference direction** must not be encoded in this case.
- If it is required to indicate a local magnetic anomaly that is in a single direction, a single instance of **value of local magnetic anomaly** must be encoded, with the value of the anomaly populated in **magnetic anomaly value** and the direction encoded using the sub-attribute **reference direction**.
- If it is required to indicate a local magnetic anomaly that is of a different magnitude for east and west, two instances of **value of local magnetic anomaly** must be encoded, with the values of the anomaly and the direction populated for each instance in **magnetic anomaly value** and **reference direction** respectively.
- If the value of the local magnetic anomaly is unknown, a single instance of **value of local magnetic anomaly** must be encoded, with **magnetic anomaly value** populated with an empty (null) value and the complex attribute **information** containing textual information relevant to the local magnetic variation.

Distinction: Magnetic Variation.

5 Geo Features – Natural Features

The use of Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) as an integral component of ECDIS has raised questions as to the level of topographic detail that is required in ENCs to enable safe navigation using ECDIS. When determining the topographic information necessary for inclusion in ENC, all operational conditions of vessels must be taken into consideration, including the potential for corruption or failure of a vessel's GNSS reception. Such a failure would require the Mariner to navigate by fixing their position using traditional methods, necessitating a sufficient level of depiction of topographic detail in the ENC to facilitate navigation using these methods, appropriate to the Navigational Purpose of the ENC.

In addition, Mariners will continue to use visual or radar fixing as an independent method of confirming the position of their vessel as shown on the ECDIS, in order to gain a greater level of confidence in terms of their navigation.

Encoders are advised, therefore, that when determining the level of depiction of topographic detail required for ENC, this should be done in accordance with the following principles:

- The types of features charted and the distance inland to which they are shown will vary with the optimum display scale of the ENC data, type of terrain, availability of source data and, possibly, adequacy of regular navigational aids. The significance to the Mariner must be judged by the requirements of both visual and radar navigation.
- The navigator sees the coast in profile; the cartographer compiles it in plan and must always be aware that the navigator's interest in land detail is at its greatest at the coastline and falls off rapidly inland. On a low-lying coast, even minor clues to position near the coast, for example sand dunes, hillocks, low bluffs, may be very useful on most detailed ENC datasets. On steep coasts with deep water close inshore, sea traffic is likely to be concentrated off projecting points of land, and the nature of each headland must be made clear, whether it has vertical cliffs, or a sloping or low profile, for example.
- Off coasts inadequately marked by navigational aids, detailed topography in the coastal belt will allow the Mariner to clear dangers with the aid of improvised visual transits of charted topographical features.

No definite standards can be stated but the following principles should be observed:

- The density of topographic detail shown should be kept to a minimum consistent with providing navigators with all identifiable features and with a general picture of the relief as far as the probable skyline. This practice should enable landmarks to stand out from less important detail.
- Treatment of detail should vary with distance inland, for example inconspicuous features such as marshes and minor lakes and streams should be shown only when within about a mile of the coast.

Additional guidance regarding the level of depiction of topographic detail in regard to specific features is included in the following clauses.

5.1 Cliffs (see S-4 – B-312.3)

A coast backed by rock or earth cliffs gives a good radar return and is useful for visual identification from a considerable distance off, where cliffs alternate with low lying coast along the shoreline. Where cliffs are prominent features they should be encoded on the larger optimum display scale for the ENC data; as an exception, where cliffs predominate over extensive stretches of coastline, it may be neither feasible nor particularly useful to insert a cliff throughout. Cliff top heights are useful for calculating or estimating distance off, (for clearing inshore dangers) and should be encoded where possible.

If it is required to encode a non-coastal cliff, it must be done using the feature **Sloping Ground** (see clause 5.14) and/or using the feature **Slope Topline** (see clause 5.15), with attribute **category of slope** = *6* (cliff). For example:

Sloping Ground may be used at large scale to indicate the horizontal extent of the cliff.

Slope Topline should be used on its own to encode cliffs at small scale, or in conjunction with **Sloping Ground** to indicate the crest of the cliff when it is considered useful to know its elevation, and/or to encode a cliff on land distant from the coastline.

Remarks:

- When the cliff is coincident with the coastline, a **Coastline** feature, with attribute **category of coastline** = *1* (steep coast) should be encoded, and there should be no **Sloping Ground** or **Slope Topline** encoded.

5.2 Cuttings and embankments (see S-4 – B-363.2 and B-364.1)

If it is required to encode cuttings and embankments, this must be done in the same way as cliffs; using **Sloping Ground** and/or **Slope Topline** features (see clauses 5.14 and 5.15), with attribute **category of slope** = *1* (cutting) or *2* (embankment).

Remarks:

- Cuttings and embankments should be encoded only when likely to be visible from seaward.

5.3 Coastline

IHO Definition: **COASTLINE**. The line where shore and water meet. Shoreline and coastline are generally used synonymously. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Coastline (COALNE)		
Primitives: Curve		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of coastline	(CATCOA)	1 : steep coast 2 : flat coast 6 : glacier, seaward end 7 : mangrove 8 : marshy shore 10 : ice coast	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 11 : orange 13 : pink	EN	0,*
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	1 : mud 2 : clay 3 : silt 4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 8 : cobbles 9 : rock 11 : lava 14 : coral 17 : shells	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1

file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 1-8, 25, 32-33

5.3.1 Coastline (see S-4 – B-310 and B-311)

Natural sections of coastlines, lakeshores and riverbanks should be encoded as **Coastline**, whereas artificial sections of coastlines, lakeshores, riverbanks, canal banks and basin borders should be encoded as **Shoreline Construction** (see clause 8.6). The exception to this general rule is when a lake, river, canal, or basin is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, in which case the boundary of the lake, river, canal, or basin must not be encoded as **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction** as the boundary of these specific areas (**Lake**, **River**, **Canal**, **Dock Area**, **Lock Basin**) create the portrayal of the bank or shoreline.

Coastline and **Shoreline Construction** features form the border of the **Land Area** feature (see clause 5.4).

5.3.2 Natural coastline (see S-4 – B-312 and B-353.8)

Spatial types associated with coastlines considered to be inadequately surveyed at the optimum display scale for the ENC data (see S-4 – B-311) should be encoded using spatial attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate).

If it is required to encode a description of the nature of the coastline, it must be done using the attributes **category of coastline** and **nature of surface**. Other surface features may be used to describe the land region adjacent to the coastline (see clause 5.11).

A steep coast may give a good radar return and is useful for visual identification from a considerable distance off, particularly where cliffs alternate with low lying coast along the shoreline.

Remarks:

- **Coastline** must only exist at the boundary of **Land Area** of type surface.
- **Coastline** and **Shoreline Construction** of type curve must not overlap. Similarly, **Coastline** should not share an edge with a **Shoreline Construction** of type surface (see clause 8.6) having attribute **water level effect** undefined or populated with the values *2* (always dry) or *1* (partly submerged at high water), which is covered by **Land Area**.
- If the seaward edge of an encoded saltpan area is coincident with the coastline, it should be encoded using **Coastline**, with **category of coastline** = *2* (flat coast).
- If the seaward edge of a marsh area or glacier is coincident with the coastline, the coastline should be encoded as **Coastline**, with attribute **category of coastline** = *8* (marshy shore) or *9* (glacier, seaward end). The coastline's spatial type should have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate). If it is required to encode the area behind the coastline, this must be done using a **Vegetation** feature (for marsh – see clause 5.12) or an **Ice Area** feature (for glacier – see clause 5.13).
- If it is required to encode mangroves in the intertidal area, this should be done using an **Obstruction**

feature (see clause 13.6). However, on smaller optimum display scale ENC datasets where the mangroves are required to be encoded to indicate the seaward edge of a mangrove area only as the "apparent" coastline, this must be done using **Coastline** with **category of coastline** = *7* (mangrove). The coastline's spatial type should have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate).

- Where the source indicates the top of a cliff is coincident with the coastline at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, a **Coastline** feature, with **category of coastline** = *1* (steep coast) should be encoded. In such cases, there should be no **Slope Topline** or **Sloping Ground** features encoded, in order to avoid clutter. If it is required to indicate that such a section of the coastline provides a good radar return, it must be done using attribute **radar conspicuous** on the **Coastline** feature. If it is required to encode a section of the coastline that is visually conspicuous, it must be done using attribute **visual prominence** on the **Coastline** feature.
- If the source indicates that the top of a coastal cliff is offset inshore from the coastline at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, a **Slope Topline** feature (see clause 5.15) and/or a **Sloping Ground** feature (see clause 5.14) may be encoded. In such cases, the **Coastline** feature should not have a value populated for **category of coastline**. If it is required to indicate that such a section of the coastline provides a good radar return, it must be done using attribute **radar conspicuous** on the **Slope Topline** and/or **Sloping Ground** feature. If it is required to encode a section of the coastline that is visually conspicuous, it must be done using attribute **visual prominence** on the **Slope Topline** and/or **Sloping Ground** feature.

Distinction: Shoreline Construction; Slope Topline; Sloping Ground.

5.4 Land area

Commented [TS31]: ENC Conversion Sub-Group meeting 31/01/24: Suggest adding attribute reportedDate to facilitate encoding of works in progress or planned. Refer to S-101 Documentation and FC Issue #111.

IHO Definition: **LAND AREA**. The solid portion of the Earth's surface, as opposed to sea, water. (IHO Publication S-32 – 5th Edition – Hydrographic Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Land Area (LNDARE)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Island Aggregation** (see clause 25.9)	**Island Group**	Association	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: K 10

5.4.1 Land area

Land areas that are never covered by the sea must be encoded using the feature **Land Area**. **Land Area** features of type surface are part of the Skin of the Earth.

Rivers, canals, lakes, basins and docks, which are not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, must be encoded on top of **Land Area** features (see clause 5.4).

Remarks:

- If it is required to describe the natural scenery of the land, it must be done using the feature **Land Region** (see clause 5.11).
- **Land Area** is usually of type surface; it may, however, be of type point (for example islet, rock that does not cover), or of type curve (for example islet, offshore bar, isthmus).
- **Land Area** of type curve or point must not be encoded on top of **Land Area** of type surface, unless it is also covered by a **Lake**, **River**, **Dock Area**, **Lock Basin** or **Canal** feature of type surface.
- The limits of a **Land Area** of type surface must share the geometry of at least one of the following features:
  - **Coastline**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Gate**, **Dam** of type curve;
  - **Data Coverage**, **Gate**, **Dam**, **River**, **Tunnel**, **Dry Dock**, **Canal**, **Lake**, **Lock Basin**, **Dock Area**, **Land Area** of type surface;
  - **Causeway**, **Dolphin**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Wreck**, **Obstruction**, **Pylon/Bridge Support** of type surface; and having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partly submerged at high water), *2* (always dry) or *6* (subject to inundation or flooding).

5.4.2 Rocks which do not cover (islets) (see S-4 – B-421.1)

A surface feature must be encoded using:

- A **Land Area** feature of type surface (mandatory)
- **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction** features of type curve (mandatory)
- **Land Elevation** features of type curve and/or point (optional)

A curve feature must be encoded using:

- A **Land Area** feature of type curve (mandatory)
- **Land Elevation** features of type point (optional)

A point feature must be encoded using:

- A **Land Area** feature of type point (mandatory)
- A **Land Elevation** feature of type point (optional)

Distinction: Canal; Coastline; Depth Area; Lake; Land Region; River; Seabed Area; Shoreline Construction; Vegetation.

5.5 Island group

IHO Definition: **ISLAND GROUP**. A named group of islands, including archipelago's.

S-101 Geo Feature: Island Group *(C_AGGR)*

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	1,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Island Aggregation** (see clause 25.9)	**Land Area**, **Island Group**	Aggregation	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

5.5.1 Island groups

If it is required to encode the name of a group of islands, it must be done using the feature **Island Group** of type surface, associated with all relevant **Land Area** features (see clause 5.4) included in the named group of islands using the association **Island Aggregation** (see clause 25.9).

Remarks:

- The extent of the surface should cover the extent of all the islands contained in the named group of islands.
- If it is required to encode the extent of an unnamed group of islands, this may be done using an **Island Group** feature having no geometry, associated with all relevant **Land Area** features included in the group of islands using the association **Island Aggregation**.
- Names of individual islands within an island group must be encoded using the attribute **feature name** on the relevant **Land Area** feature.

Distinction: Land Area; Land Region.

5.6 Land elevation

IHO Definition: **LAND ELEVATION**. An elevation is the vertical distance of a point or a level, on, or affixed to, the surface of the earth, measured from a specified vertical datum. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Land Elevation (LNDELV)

Primitives: Point, Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 10-13

5.6.1 Height contours, spot heights (see S-4 – B-351 and B-352.1-2)

It is assumed that Mariners will understand most methods of representation of relief with little difficulty. In general, it is assumed that Producing Authorities will choose the representation of relief most suitable to the terrain being charted and the navigational requirements. It is therefore left to national discretion to:

- omit all relief representation, except dykes and sea walls;
- omit all relief representation, except spot heights and cliffs;
- show relief by contours (and spot heights); or
- show relief by form lines (and spot heights).

Spot heights on ENC datasets should be confined to summits of hills, mountains and cliffs, particularly on datasets from which contours and form lines have been omitted; navigators will generally assume that heights selected for ENC are summits.

If it is required to encode a height contour or spot height, it must be done using the feature **Land Elevation**.

Land Elevation features must be covered by a **Land Area** feature of type surface; or a **Wreck** feature of type surface having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partially submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry); or fall on a **Land Area** feature of type curve; or share the geometry of a **Land Area** of type point or a **Wreck** feature of type point having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partially submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry).

Spatial types associated with approximate contours or spot heights should be encoded using the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate).

Remarks:

- Where it would not be worthwhile to contour ENC data of smaller optimum display scale, form lines (emphasizing a few 'remarkable' hills) and/or spot heights may be used to emphasize individual features.
- Contours should reflect the nature of the topography; that is, they should not be rounded or smoothed (by generalisation) when they should really be angular.
- The contour interval must be uniform for any dataset, or series of datasets of the same or similar optimum display scale, except that the lowest contour may be a supplementary one, for example 25 metres where the basic interval is every 50 metres; or 10 metres where the basic interval is every 25 metres. Ideally the contour interval should be chosen so that not more than 10 contours are needed for the full range of height on a single dataset or particular series of datasets (for clarity and economy).
- If it is required to encode the elevation of an observation spot, benchmark or horizontal control station, it must be done using **Land Elevation**. If it is required to encode the elevation of a triangulation mark or boundary mark, it must be done using the feature **Landmark** (see clause 7.2).

Distinction: Slope Topline; Sloping Ground.

5.7 River

IHO Definition: **RIVER**. A relatively large natural stream of water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32)

S-101 Geo Feature: River (RIVERS)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	5 : periodic/intermittent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 20, 21

5.7.1 Rivers (see S-4 – B-353)

Inland navigable waters must be compiled as fully as practicable, consistent with the optimum display scale of the ENC data. Other rivers should be compiled only in a limited way to assist in providing a general indication of the topography (except close to the coastline where they may be of direct significance to the Mariner).

If it is required to encode a non-navigable river, stream or creek, it must be done using the feature **River**.

Remarks:

- If the river is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be encoded using the feature **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** (see clause 11.4) or **Unsurveyed Area**, and the riverbanks must be encoded using the feature **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**. The river must not be encoded as a **River** feature in this case. If it is required to encode the name of the river, it must be done using a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature with attribute **category of sea area** = *53* (river).
- Where the river is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, special consideration should be given to encoding features specific to the river such as minimum depths within the navigable area; overhead clearances; distances along the river; and locks and lock gates (and any associated traffic signals).
- If it is required to encode a river that is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be done using **River**, covered by a **Land Area** feature. The name of the river should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name** on the **River** feature.
- Intermittent rivers are those that are dry most of the time, and where required must be encoded as a **River** feature with attribute **status** = *5* (periodic/intermittent).
- If it is required to encode an island in a non-navigable river encoded on **Land Area**, this must be done by encoding a “hole” in the **River** feature if the island is a surface at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, or encoding **Land Area** of type point if the island is a point at the optimum display scale for the ENC data. Encoders must not encode **Land Area** surfaces on top of **Land Area** surfaces. If it is required to encode an island in a non-navigable river encoded on **Unsurveyed Area**, this must be done by encoding a “hole” in both the **River** and **Unsurveyed Area** features and replacing with **Land Area** if the island is a surface at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, or encoding **Land Area** of type point if the island is a point at the optimum display scale for the ENC data. Encoders must not encode **Land Area** surfaces on top of **Unsurveyed Area** surfaces.
- Some dry riverbeds, known as wadi’s, may be prominent topographic features. If it is required to encode a wadi, it should be done using a **Land Region** feature (see clause 5.11), with the name of the wadi encoded using the complex attribute **feature name**.

Distinction: Canal; Lake; Sea Area/Named Water Area; Tideway.

5.8 Rapids

IHO Definition: **RAPIDS**. Portions of a stream with accelerated current where it descends rapidly but without a break in the slope of the bed sufficient to form a waterfall. Usually used in the plural. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Rapids (RAPIDS)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 22

5.8.1 Rapids (see S-4 – B-353.5)

If it is required to encode rapids within a river, it must be done using the feature **Rapids**.

Remarks:

- The area covered by rapids must also be covered by a **River** feature (see clause 5.7) and a **Land Area**

feature if there is no navigable water adjoining the **Rapids**; or an **Unsurveyed Area** feature if there is navigable water adjacent to the **Rapids**.

Distinction: Current – Non-Gravitational; River; Tidal Stream Panel Data; Water Turbulence; Waterfall.

5.9 Waterfall

IHO Definition: **WATERFALL**. A vertically descending part of a watercourse where it falls from a height (for example: over a rock or a precipice). In place names, commonly shortened to fall or falls, for example Niagara Falls. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Waterfall (WATFAL)

Primitives: Point, Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 22

5.9.1 Waterfalls (see S-4 – B-353.5)

If it is required to encode a waterfall within a river, it must be done using the feature **Waterfall**.

Remarks:

- The area covered by a waterfall must also be covered by a **River** feature (see clause 5.7) and a **Land Area**.

Distinction: Rapids; River.

5.10 Lake

IHO Definition: **LAKE**. A large body of water entirely surrounded by land. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Lake (LAKARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	5 : periodic/intermittent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 23

5.10.1 Lakes (see S-4 – B-353.6)

Inland navigable waters must be compiled as fully as practicable, consistent with the optimum display scale of the ENC data. Other lakes should be compiled only in a limited way to assist in providing a general indication

of the topography (except close to the coastline where they may be of direct significance to the Mariner).

If it is required to encode a non-navigable lake, it must be done using the feature **Lake**.

Remarks:

- If the lake is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be encoded using the feature **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** (see clause 11.4) or **Unsurveyed Area**, and the lake shore must be encoded using the feature **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**. The lake must not be encoded as a **Lake** feature in this case. If it is required to encode the name of the lake, it must be done using a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature, with attribute **category of sea area** = *52* (lake).
- If it is required to encode a lake that is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be done using **Lake**, covered by a **Land Area** feature. The name of the lake should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name** on the **Lake** feature.
- If it is required to encode an island in a non-navigable lake encoded on **Land Area**, this must be done by encoding a "hole" in the **Lake** feature if the island is a surface at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, or encoding **Land Area** of type point if the island is a point at the optimum display scale for the ENC data. Encoders must not encode **Land Area** surfaces on top of **Land Area** surfaces. If it is required to encode an island in a non-navigable lake encoded on **Unsurveyed Area**, this must be done by encoding a "hole" in both the **Lake** and **Unsurveyed Area** features and replacing with **Land Area** if the island is a surface at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, or encoding **Land Area** of type point if the island is a point at the optimum display scale for the ENC data. Encoders must not encode **Land Area** surfaces on top of **Unsurveyed Area** surfaces.
- Intermittent lakes are those that are dry most of the time, and where required must be encoded as a **Lake** feature with attribute **status** = *5* (periodic/intermittent).

Distinction: Canal; Depth Area; River.

5.11 Land region

IHO Definition: **LAND REGION**. An area of natural or cultivated scenery defined by its geographical characteristics and may be known by its proper name. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.92, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Land Region (LNDRGN)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of land region	(CATLND)	1 : fen 2 : marsh 3 : bog 4 : heathland 5 : mountain range 6 : lowlands 7 : canyon lands 8 : paddy field 9 : agricultural land 10 : savanna/grassland 11 : parkland 12 : swamp 13 : landslide 14 : lava flow 15 : salt pan 16 : moraine 17 : crater 18 : cave 19 : rock column or pinnacle 20 : cay 21 : wadi	EN	0,* †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,* †
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	1 : mud 2 : clay 3 : silt 4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 8 : cobbles 9 : rock 11 : lava 14 : coral 17 : shells 18 : boulder	EN	0,*

water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 6 : subject to inundation or flooding	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† At least one of the attributes **category of land region** or **feature name** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 24, 26, 33

5.11.1 Natural sceneries (see S-4 – B-350)

If it is required to describe the natural scenery of the land, or to give the geographic name of an area on land, it should be encoded using the feature **Land Region**.

Remarks:

- This feature has a use similar to that of the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area** (see clause 9.1), but for the land.
- Sand dunes, hills and cliffs must be encoded, where required, using the feature classes **Sloping Ground** and/or **Slope Topline** (see clauses 5.14 and 5.15).
- A **Land Region** surface should be bounded, if possible, by existing curves used by other features (for example **Coastline**). If necessary, however, this surface may be bounded by other curves created to close the surface, or to describe a new surface.
- For named capes, points, peninsulas and other types of **Land Region** where there is no specific value for the attribute **category of land region**, the generic term “Cape”, “Point”, “Peninsula”, etc may be included on the complex attribute **feature name**, unless the name has been populated on an underlying **Land Area**, in which case **Land Region** should not be encoded.
- **Land Region** features of type surface may overlap.
- For additional guidance on encoding geographic names, see clause 2.5.8.

5.11.1.1 Marsh (see S-4 – B-312.2)

If it is required to encode a marshy area behind the coastline, it must be done using a **Land Region** feature, with attribute **category of land region** = *2* (marsh).

If the seaward edge of a marsh area is coincident with the coastline, the coastline should be encoded as a **Coastline** feature, with attribute **category of coastline** = *8* (marshy shore), and the coastline’s spatial type should have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate) for the visible coastline.

Commented [TS32]: Attribute **water level effect** currently only has values 1 or 6 for feature **Land Region**, however some of the values for **category of land region** may, by definition, be in the intertidal area.
IHO Sec: Comment is specific to marsh - by definition, marsh is "An area of wet, often spongy ground that is subject to frequent flooding or tidal inundations, but not considered to be continually under water. ...". This to me is **water level effect** = *6*.

5.11.1.2 Salt pans (see S-4 – B-353.7)

If it is required to encode an area on land in which seawater is evaporated, it must be done using a **Land Region** feature, with attribute **category of land region** = *15* (salt pan) covered by a **Land Area** feature (that is, the salt pan must not form a hole in the land area).

If the seaward edge of an encoded salt pan area is coincident with the coastline, this edge should also be encoded using a **Coastline** feature, with attribute **category of coastline** = *2* (flat coast).

5.11.1.3 Lava flow (see S-4 – B-355)

If it is required to encode a lava flow, it must be done using a **Land Region** feature, with attribute **category of land region** = *14* (lava flow).

If the seaward edge of an encoded lava flow area is coincident with the coastline, this edge should also be encoded using a **Coastline** feature (see clause 5.3), with attribute **nature of surface** = *11* (lava). If the source indicates that the lava flow is active, the coastline's spatial type should have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate).

Distinction: Land Area; Sea Area/Named Water Area; Slope Topline; Sloping Ground; Vegetation.

5.12 Vegetation

IHO Definition: **VEGETATION**. Plants collectively or individually, especially those dominating a particular area or habitat. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Vegetation (VEGATN)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of vegetation	(CATVEG)	3 : bush 4 : deciduous wood 5 : coniferous wood 6 : wood in general (inc. mixed wood) 11 : reed 13 : tree in general 14 : evergreen tree 15 : conifer tree 16 : palm tree 17 : nipa palm tree 18 : casuarinas tree 19 : eucalypt tree 20 : deciduous tree 22 : filao tree	EN	1,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations				
S-101 Role	**Association Type**	**Associated to**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 14, 30, 31.1-8, 33

5.12.1 Vegetation (see S-4 – B-352.4 and B-354)

In most areas the vegetation cover is of negligible importance on charts with the exception of:
- Areas where trees or marsh form the apparent coastline; see S-4 – B-312;
- Isolated trees or clumps of trees forming landmarks;
- Where, near the coast, wooded areas alternate with areas without tree cover and so may assist in identifying headlands or other stretches of coastline.

The following features should be omitted from even the largest optimum display scale ENC data:
- Grassland, cultivated fields (including paddy fields), bushes.
- Trees along roads, fences, ditches, and scattered trees (unless landmarks).
- Woodland cover within urban areas (unless adjacent to the coast).
- Woodland cover which is the general ground cover and therefore useless for identification of position.

If it is required to encode an isolated tree used as a landmark, it must be done using a **Vegetation** feature, with attribute **category of vegetation** = *13* to *22*.

Remarks:
- The attribute **height** is used to encode the approximate altitude of the highest point of the top of the vegetation. Where the source shows an island with the approximate height of the top of the vegetation above height datum (see INT1 - C14), a **Vegetation** feature should be encoded co-incident with the **Land Area** feature of the island, with attribute **height** corresponding to the value shown on the source.
- Where it is required to encode a mangrove area or tree located in the intertidal area, this should be done using the feature **Obstruction** (see clauses 13.6 and 13.6.1.1), with attribute **category of obstruction** = *23* (mangrove). Where it is required to encode the generalised seaward edge only of a mangrove area to represent the "apparent" coastline, this must be done using the feature **Coastline** (see clause 5.3).

Distinction: Seabed Area; Seagrass; Weed/Kelp.

Commented [TS33]: Suggestion to replace Remarks 2nd bullet (related to encoding mangroves in the intertidal area) with diagram. Also need to sort out portrayal for Standard display such that the seaward edge of the intertidal mangrove displays in ECDIS (rather than encoding **Coastline** within the intertidal area).
SHOM: Agree with a diagram and for improving S-101 encoding and portrayal.

5.13 Ice area

IHO Definition: **ICE AREA**. An area of ice over land or water. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.84, November 2000).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Ice Area (ICEARE)				
Primitives: Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of ice	(CATICE)	1 : fast ice 5 : glacier 8 : polar ice	EN	1,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
Feature Associations				

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 25; N 60.1-2

5.13.1 Ice areas (see S-4 – B-353.8 and B-449.1)

If it is required to encode an ice area, it must be done using the feature **Ice Area**.

Remarks:

- **Ice Area** features that are located in the sea must be covered by an **Unsurveyed Area** feature, if the depth of water beneath them is unknown, or covered by a **Depth Area** feature, if the depth is known.
- As ice fronts move, a date when the limit was surveyed should be included, if possible, using the attribute **reported date**.

5.13.1.1 Glaciers (see S-4 – B-353.8)

If it is required to encode the portion of a glacier that is on land, it must be done using an **Ice Area** feature, with attribute **category of ice** = *5* (glacier) covered by a **Land Area** feature (that is, the glacier does not form a hole in the land area).

If the seaward edge of an encoded glacier is coincident with the coastline, this edge should be encoded using a **Coastline** feature, with attribute **category of coastline** = *6* (glacier, seaward end), and the coastline's spatial type should have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate) for the visible coastline.

Distinction: Depth Area; Land Area.

5.14 Sloping ground

IHO Definition: **SLOPING GROUND**. An inclined surface. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.161, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Sloping Ground (SLOGRD)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of slope	(CATSLO)	1 : cutting 2 : embankment 3 : dune 4 : hill 5 : pingo 6 : cliff 7 : scree	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 11 : orange 13 : pink	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 9 : rock 11 : lava	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 3, 4, 8; D 14, 15

5.14.1 Sloping ground (see S-4 – B-312.1; B-312.3; B-363.2 and B-364.1)

If it is required to encode the characteristics of a prominent or visually conspicuous inclined land surface, it must be done using the feature **Sloping Ground**.

Remarks:
- For guidance on the encoding of cuttings and embankments, see clause 5.2.

5.14.1.1 Dunes, sand hills (see S-4 – B-312.3)

If it is required to encode a sand dune or sand hill, it must be done using the feature **Sloping Ground** with attribute **category of slope** = *3* (dune) or *4* (hill) and attribute **nature of surface** = *4* (sand). If these features are positioned along the coastline, a **Coastline** feature must also be encoded.

If it is required to encode the height of a dune or sand hill, a **Land Elevation** feature (see clause 5.6) must also be encoded.

Distinction: Land Elevation; Slope Topline.

5.15 Slope topline

IHO Definition: **SLOPE TOPLINE**. The upper marking of a slope, for example the ridge line or the separation line between two different gradients. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.160, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Slope Topline (SLOTOP)		
Primitives: Curve		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of slope	(CATSLO)	1 : cutting 2 : embankment 6 : cliff	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 11 : orange 13 : pink	EN	0,*
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 9 : rock 11 : lava	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: C 3; D 14, 15

5.15.1 Slope topline (see S-4 – B-312.1; B-363.2 and B-364.1)

If it is required to encode the upper marking of a prominent or visually conspicuous land slope, it must be done using the feature **Slope Topline**.

Remarks:

- For guidance on the encoding of cliffs, see clause 5.1. For guidance on the encoding of cuttings an embankments, see clause 5.2.

Distinction: Coastline; Land Elevation; Sloping Ground.

Commented [TS34]: Do we have to restrict the use of **Slope Topline** to "on the land" only? What if a HO considers it important to encode an ocean cliff (that cannot be represented in the depth contour range) on its ENCs?
SHOM: If the ocean cliff is useful on the chart nothing against adding it, but I think this should first go to the NCWG as I see nothing in S-4 or INT1 on this possibility. Text in 5.15.1 would then have to be changed to include the "sea" case.

5.16 Tideway

IHO Definition: **TIDEWAY**. A channel through which a tidal current runs. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Tideway (TIDEWY)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

5.16.1 Tideways (see S-4 – B-413.3)

If it is required to encode a natural watercourse in intertidal areas, for example formed by the outflow of a stream or by tidal action, it must be done using the feature **Tideway**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Canal; River; Sea Area/Named Water Area.

6 Geo Features – Cultural Features

6.1 Built-up area

IHO Definition: **BUILT-UP AREA.** An area of land or construction over the water containing a concentration of buildings and/or other structures. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Built-Up Area (BUAARE)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of built-up area	(CATBUA)	1 : urban area 2 : settlement 3 : village 4 : town 5 : city 6 : holiday village	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
Feature Associations				

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 1-4

6.1.1 Built-up areas (see S-4 – B-370.3-4, B-370.6-7 and B-370.9)

When representing built-up areas, the aim of the compiler must be to create the correct impression of the extent of the built-up area.

If it is required to encode a built-up area, it must be done using the feature **Built-Up Area**.

Remarks:

- A built-up area crossed by curve features (for example roads, streets, railways) should not be divided into multiple features, unless separate sections of the built-up area have at least one different attribute value.
- However, for presentation purposes, a built-up area of type surface crossed by a river or canal of type surface must be divided into several features, with the built-up area features not overlapping the river or canal feature. A built-up area of type surface should not overlap a lake, dock or lock basin feature of type surface.
- Several buildings or built-up areas may be referred to by the same settlement, village or town name on the source. In such cases, the individual buildings or built-up areas should be encoded as separate unnamed features, using the features **Building** or **Built-Up Area**, and additionally, an **Administration Area** feature (see clause 16.8) covering the whole named area should be created with the name encoded using the attribute **feature name**. The encoded **Administration Area** feature should also have the attribute **jurisdiction** = *3* (national sub-division).
- **Built-Up Area** should be covered by **Land Area** features of type surface, or be coincident with **Land Area** features of type point.
- Where the source indicates that a built-up area extends into navigable water (over **Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** object(s)), an encoded **Built-Up Area** feature of type surface, where required, should be extended over the water area. The seaward edge of the built-up area ("apparent" coastline) must be encoded using a **Coastline** feature having no value populated for the attribute **category of coastline**, and the corresponding spatial edge(s) should be associated to an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5) having the spatial attribute **quality of position** = *4* (approximate). The actual coastline should be encoded as **coastline**, having no value populated for **category of coastline** and no value for **quality of position** on the related spatial edge(s). Underlying bathymetry (depth contours, soundings) should be encoded as required. Exceptionally, encoders may extend the underlying **Land Are** feature seaward to the "apparent" coastline, which should have the corresponding spatial edge(s) populate with the spatial attribute **quality of position** = *4* (approximate). This encoding should be considered fo generalization purposes on smaller scale ENCs.
- For encoding individual buildings over navigable water, see clause 6.2.1.

Distinction: Building; Landmark; Railway; Road.

Commented [TS35]: Consideration should be given to amending the encoding of built-up areas over water to be similar as for buildings, landmarks, etc. That is, adding the "system" attribute **in the water** and amending the encoding guidance accordingly.
SHOM: Quite agree with Editor Comments. Encoding of **Coast Line** should be supressed.

6.2 Building

IHO Definition: **BUILDING**. A free-standing self-supporting construction that is roofed, usually walled, and is intended for human occupancy (for example: a place of work or recreation) and/or habitation. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Building (BUISGL)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
building shape	(BUISHP)	5 : high-rise building 6 : pyramid 7 : cylindrical 8 : spherical 9 : cubic	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
function	(FUNCTN)	2 : harbour-masters office 3 : customs office 4 : health office 5 : hospital 6 : post office	EN	0,*

		7 : hotel 8 : railway station 9 : police station 10 : water-police station 11 : pilot office 12 : pilot lookout 13 : bank office 14 : headquarters for district control 15 : transit shed/warehouse 16 : factory 17 : power station 18 : administrative 19 : educational facility 20 : church 21 : chapel 22 : temple 23 : pagoda 24 : Shinto shrine 25 : Buddhist temple 26 : mosque 27 : marabout 28 : lookout 29 : communication 30 : television 31 : radio 32 : radar 33 : light support 34 : microwave 35 : cooling 36 : observation 37 : timeball 38 : clock 39 : control 40 : airship mooring 41 : stadium 42 : bus station 44 : sea rescue control 45 : observatory 46 : ore crusher 47 : boathouse 48 : pumping station		
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 12 : glass	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1

vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*

Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS36]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buildings that have more than one value populated for the sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 5-6, 8, 13; E 10.1, 10.3, 11, 13-18; F 51, 60-63

6.2.1 Buildings (see S-4 – B-325; B-328.1; B-362.2; B-370.3; B-370.5; B-372 and B-373.1-4)

Waterfront, landmark and some public buildings should be encoded precisely and individually on the larger optimum display scale ENC data. When representing buildings generally, forming urban and suburban areas, villages, and other built-up areas, the aim of the compiler must be to create the correct impression of the extent of the built-up area and the density of the buildings.

Within built-up areas, only waterfront, landmark, and certain public buildings of interest should be encoded individually.

Scattered buildings of no individual importance must be omitted when more than about 1 mile (or 2 kilometres) inland. Nearer the shore they may be generalised by encoding a few representative buildings, sufficient to give the correct impression of building density.

Public buildings, with the possible exception of Post Offices and Hospitals, are charted mainly as visual features or points of reference ashore, not for their interest for particular functions. Except where they could be useful landmarks for navigation, they should be encoded only on largest optimum display scale ENC data.

Buildings constructed as places of worship often form significant landmarks; their size and structure incorporating towers, spires, cupolas, etc often render them conspicuous. These buildings when known to be prominent or conspicuous should be encoded up to several miles inland, with sufficient information to enable them to be easily identified. When the optimum display scale for the ENC data permits, the building should be encoded as a surface feature with attention being drawn to any significant features (landmarks).

If it is required to encode a building (other than a landmark, tank or silo), it must be done using the feature **Building**.

Remarks:

- For landmarks, see clause 7.2; for silos, tanks and water towers, see clause 7.3. For common encoding combinations, see clause 7.1.
- The feature association **Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15) must only be used with **Building** features if the main purpose of the building is to act as an aid to navigation (for example a lighthouse).
- A ruined building should be encoded in the same way as the feature in good condition, but with attribute **condition** = *2* (ruined).
- For covered boathouses and other buildings that are located in or partially overlap the navigable water area, any associated features should be encoded as they exist in the "real world"; for example jetties as **Shoreline Construction**, pontoons as **Pontoon**, mooring posts as **Pile**. The roofed area may be covered by a **Building** feature of type surface, with attribute **function** = *47* (boathouse). If the service being provided by the structure is known, features **Small Craft Facility** (see clause 22.8) or **Harbour Facility** (see clause 22.7) may also be encoded.

- For buildings located in or over navigable water, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located over the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles, stilts).
- The complex attribute **vertical clearance fixed** must not be populated, unless the building is located over navigable water (that is, attribute **in the water** set to *True*), for example, for boathouses.
- When a building is shown as a surface, indicating its true shape, and it is required to encode a prominent feature such as a tower or spire that is part of the structure, two features must be created (see Figure 6-1 below):
  - a **Building** feature of type surface for the main building,
  - a **Landmark** feature of type point for the prominent feature.

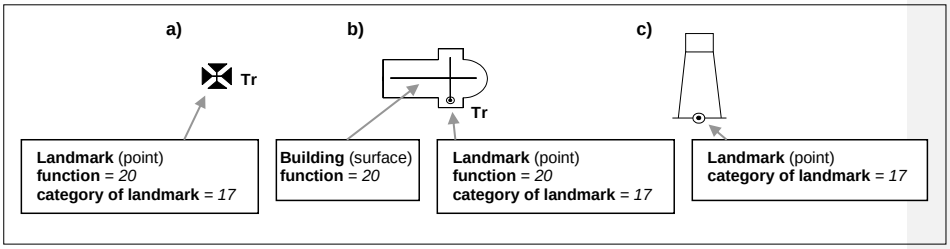


Figure 6-1 – Landmarks

- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

6.2.2 Harbour offices (see S-4 – B-325)

If it is required to encode a harbour office, it must be done using a **Building** feature, with the attribute **function** taking at least one of the values:

2 - harbour-masters office
3 - customs office
4 - health office
11 - pilot office

6.2.3 Transit sheds and warehouses (see S-4 – B-328.1)

If it is required to encode a transit shed or warehouse, it must be done using a **Building** feature, with attributes **function** = *15* (transit shed/warehouse), and if it is required, **feature name** (**name**) = name or number of the shed.

Distinction: Built-Up Area; Coast Guard Station; Landmark; Rescue Station; Silo/Tank.

6.3 Airport/airfield

IHO Definition: **AIRPORT/AIRFIELD**. A defined area on land (including any buildings, installations and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure and surface movement of aircraft. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Airport/Airfield (AIRARE)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of airport/airfield	(CATAIR)	1 : military aeroplane airport 2 : civil aeroplane airport 3 : military heliport 4 : civil heliport 5 : glider airfield 6 : small planes airfield 8 : emergency airfield 9 : search and rescue airfield	EN	0,*
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 17

6.3.1 Airfields (see S-4 – B-366)

Airfields (or airports) within a few miles of the coast must be charted on larger and medium optimum display scale ENC data; they are significant to coastal navigation because of the many visual and audible features associated with them and the related air traffic.

For ENC data at larger optimum display scales, an airport should be encoded using a combination of the following features: **Airport/Airfield** (surface), **Runway** (surface or curve), **Building** (surface or point) and **Landmark** (surface or point). At least one **Airport/Airfield** or **Runway** must be in this set of features.

For ENC data at smaller optimum display scales, an airport should be encoded as an **Airport/Airfield** of type point.

Remarks:

- If individual buildings are visually conspicuous, they must be encoded as separate features.
- If it is required to encode the control tower, it must be done using a **Landmark** feature, with attributes **function** = *39* (control) and **category of landmark** = *17* (tower). If it is required to encode other buildings, this must be done using the feature **Building**.
- If it is required to encode a seaplane landing area, it must be done using the feature **Seaplane Landing Area** (see clause 16.5).
- For navigational aids associated with air navigation, and air obstruction lights, see clauses related to navigational aids.

Distinction: Runway; Seaplane Landing Area.

6.4 Runway

IHO Definition: **RUNWAY**. A defined area, on a land aerodrome, prepared for the landing and take-off run of aircraft. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Runway (RUNWAY)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 18

6.4.1 Airfields (see S-4 – B-366)

Airfields (or airports) within a few miles of the coast must be encoded on large and medium optimum display scale ENC data; they are significant to coastal navigation because of the many visual and audible features associated with them and the related air traffic.

For larger optimum display scale ENC data, an airport should be encoded using a combination of the following features: **Airport/Airfield** (surface), **Runway** (surface or curve), **Building** (surface or point) and **Landmark** (surface or point). At least one **Airport/Airfield** or **Runway** must be in this set of features.

Remarks:

- Two or more crossing runways may be encoded as one surface.
- If it is required to encode a seaplane landing area, it must be done using the feature **Seaplane Landing Area** (see clause 16.5).
- For navigational aids associated with air navigation, and air obstruction lights, see clauses related to navigational aids.

Distinction: Airport/Airfield; Helipad; Seaplane Landing Area.

6.5 Helipad

IHO Definition: **HELIPAD**. A site on which helicopters may land and take off. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Helipad *(RUNWAY)*		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NINFOM)			

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 17

6.5.1 Helipads (see S-4 – B-366.3)

If it is required to encode a helipad, it must be done using the feature **Helipad**.

Remarks:

- Heliports must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Airport/Airfield** (see clause 6.3). Where a heliport has been encoded, there is no requirement to indicate the individual helipads using **Helipad**.
- If it is required to encode an area where helicopters may st down on water, it must be done using the feature **Seaplane Landing Area** (see clause 16.5).
- For navigational aids associated with air navigation, and air obstruction lights, see clauses related to navigational aids.

Distinction: Airport/Airfield; Runway; Seaplane Landing Area.

6.6 Bridge

IHO Definition: **BRIDGE**. A structure erected over a depression or an obstacle such as a body of water, railroad, etc., to provide a roadway for vehicles or pedestrians. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Bridge (BRIDGE)

Primitives: Curve, Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
bridge construction	*(CATBRG)*	1 : arch 2 : viaduct 3 : pontoon bridge 4 : suspension bridge 5 : transporter bridge	EN	0,1
bridge function	*(CATBRG)*	1 : vehicular 2 : rail 3 : pedestrian 4 : aqueduct	EN	0,*
category of opening bridge	(CATBRG)	3 : swing bridge 4 : lifting bridge 5 : bascule bridge 6 : pontoon bridge 7 : drawbridge	EN	0,1 †
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display	(S) EN	0,1 †

Commented [TS37]: Refer email from Tom B 15/09/23. Change name to bridgeStructureType?

		2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display		
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
opening bridge	*(CATBRG)*		BO	0,1 †
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4)	**Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**	Association	0,1
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS38]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For bridges encoded over navigable water, the attribute **opening bridge** is mandatory.

The attribute **category of opening bridge** is mandatory if **opening bridge** = *True*.

The sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for bridges that have more than one value populated for the sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 20-24

6.6.1 Bridges (see S4 – B-381)

If it is required to encode a bridge, it should be done using the feature **Bridge**. Bridges may be encoded over water that is navigable or non-navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data. Where the bridge is encoded over navigable water, the spans and pylons of the bridge must be associated with the feature **Bridge** using the association **Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4) (that is, the **Bridge** feature has geometry of type curve or surface, or has no geometry). Where the bridge is encoded over non-navigable water, then it must be encoded, where required, using a **Bridge** feature having no component features (that is, the **Bridge** feature has geometry of type curve or surface); or as a **Landmark** feature (see clause 7.2) if the bridge has geometry of type point.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any fixed overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the bridge, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. For bridges over navigable water, the value for the vertical clearance(s) must be encoded using the features **Span Fixed** or **Span Opening** (see clauses 6.6 and 6.7), with the clearance(s) populated using the complex attributes **vertical clearance fixed**, **vertical clearance closed** and/or **vertical clearance open**, and sub-attributes populated relevant to the span. In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode the name of a bridge over navigable water, the **Bridge** should be encoded using geometry of type curve or surface, associated with all relevant components of the bridge using the association **Bridge Aggregation**. The extent of the geometry of the **Bridge** should utilise the geometry of all the components of the bridge so as to cover its full extent.
- If it is required to encode the extent of an unnamed bridge over navigable water, this may be done using a **Bridge** feature having no geometry, associated with all relevant components of the bridge using the association **Bridge Aggregation**.
- Water under a bridge must be encoded using the features **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** (and appropriate **Depth Contour** and **Sounding** features) if the waterway is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, or using the features **Land Area** if the waterway is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data.
- When there is a fixed vertical clearance, closed vertical clearance, or open vertical clearance given for a bridge, it should be applied only to the portion of the bridge to which the clearance refers, using the features **Span Fixed** or **Span Opening** (see clauses 6.6 and 6.7). All encoded bridge spans must be associated with the **Bridge** feature using the association **Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4). See examples in the Figures below. If there are no vertical clearances given for a bridge and it is over water that is navigable at

the optimum display scale of the ENC data, a single **Span Fixed** or **Span Opening** feature must be encoded covering the area of the bridge, having mandatory vertical clearance attributes populated with an empty (null) value.

- The attribute **height** is used, where required, to encode the height of the highest point on the bridge structure (see clause 2.5.7).
- If it is required to encode a bridge for which part or the entire span is moved aside or backwards, it must be done using a **Bridge** feature, with attributes **opening bridge** = *True* and **category of opening bridge** = *7* (drawbridge).
- If it is required to encode a pontoon bridge where a pontoon section may be temporarily removed or rotated so as to allow passage of vessels, this must be done using a **Bridge** feature, with attributes **bridge construction** = *3* (pontoon bridge), **opening bridge** = *True* and **category of opening bridge** = *6* (pontoon bridge).
- If it is required to encode a distance mark that is included on or associated with a bridge, this must be done using the feature **Distance Mark** (see clause 8.9).
- In navigable water, bridge supports must be encoded, where possible, using a **Pylon/Bridge Support** feature (see clause 6.12), with attribute **category of pylon** = *4* (bridge/pylon tower) or *5* (bridge pier).
- It is not mandatory to encode roads or railways on bridges.

Deleted: 11

6.6.2 Examples of Encoding Common Bridge Types

Commented [JW39]: New Figures added for bridge encoding examples (refer to emails from Herman 05/12/23 and 07/12/23.

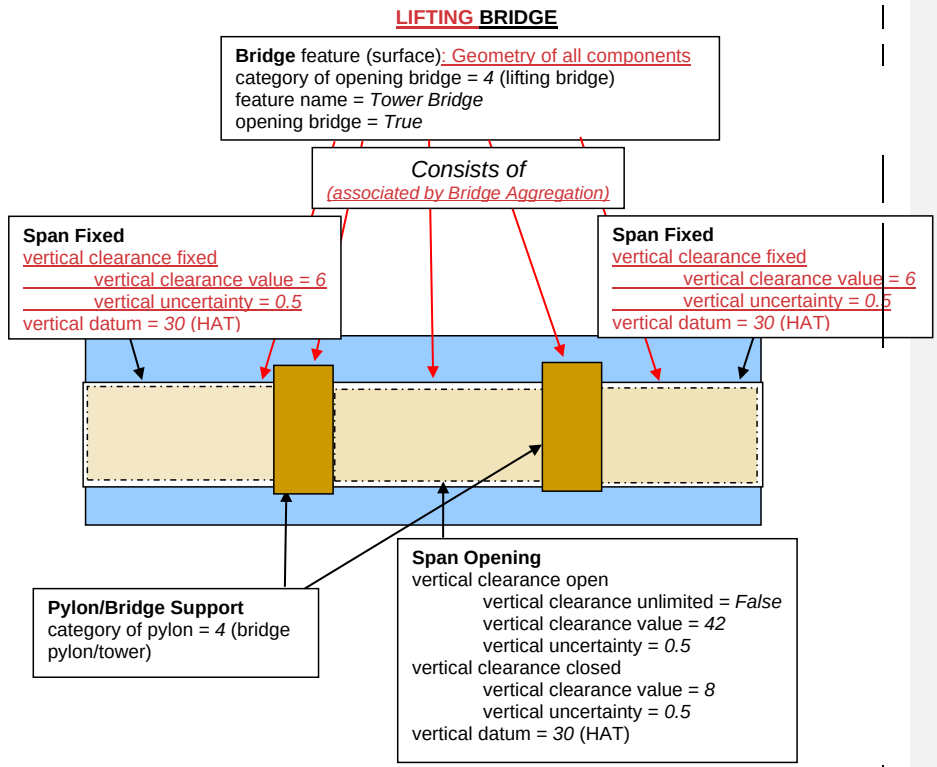
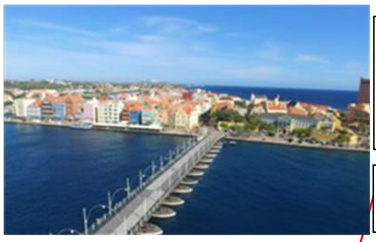


Figure 6-2 - Lifting bridge – Example

Deleted: *Opening*

PONTOON BRIDGE (Opening)

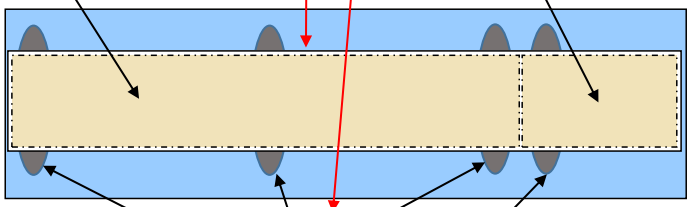


Bridge feature (surface): Geometry of all components
bridge construction = *3* (pontoon bridge)
category of opening bridge = *6* (pontoon bridge)
feature name = *Koningin Emmabrug*
opening bridge = *True*

Consists of
(associated by Bridge Aggregation)

Span Opening
vertical clearance open
vertical clearance unlimited = *True*
vertical clearance closed
vertical clearance value = *0.0*
information
text = *Span rotates on central pontoon*

Span Fixed
vertical clearance fixed
vertical clearance value = *0.0*



Pontoon

Figure 6-3 – Pontoon bridge (opening) – Example

PONTOON BRIDGE (Fixed)

Bridge feature (surface): Geometry of all components
bridge construction = *3* (pontoon bridge)
feature name = *Grolsch Emmabrug*
opening bridge = *False*

Consists of
(associated by Bridge Aggregation)

Pontoon

Span Fixed
vertical clearance fixed
vertical clearance value = *0.0*

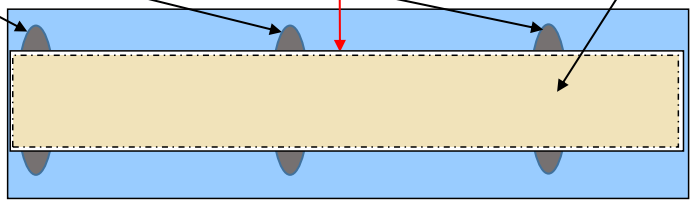


Figure 6-4 – Pontoon bridge (fixed) – Example

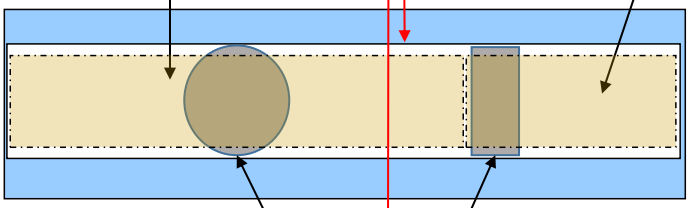
SWING BRIDGE

Bridge feature (surface): Geometry of all components
category of opening bridge = *3* (swing bridge)
feature name = *Draaibrug Sas van Gent*
opening bridge = *True*

Consists of
(associated by Bridge Aggregation)

Span Opening
vertical clearance open
vertical clearance unlimited = *True*
vertical clearance closed
vertical clearance value = *7.0*
vertical uncertainty = *0.5*
horizontal clearance fixed
horizontal clearance value = *60.0*
vertical datum = *3* (Mean Sea Level)

Span Fixed
vertical clearance fixed
vertical clearance value = *6.5*
vertical uncertainty = *0.5*
vertical datum = *3* (Mean Sea Level)



Pylon/Bridge Support
category of pylon = *4* (bridge pylon/tower)

Figure 6-5– Swing bridge) – Example

Distinction: Pipeline Overhead; Pylon/Bridge Support; Span Fixed; Span Opening.

6.7 Span fixed

IHO Definition: **SPAN FIXED**. A fixed component of the deck of a bridge spanning successive bridge piers. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2013).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Span Fixed *(BRIDGE)*		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
vertical clearance fixed			C	1,1
vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4)	**Bridge**	Aggregation	0,*
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Opstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS40]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

6.7.1 Span fixed

If it is required to encode the clearance characteristics (vertical or horizontal) for any fixed part of a bridge between piers or supports, it must be done using the feature **Span Fixed**, which must be associated with the feature **Bridge** (see clause 6.5) using the association **Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4). See clause 6.5 for examples of **Span Fixed** features aggregated to **Bridge**.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any fixed overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the overhead obstruction, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. Clearances must be populated using the complex attribute **vertical clearance fixed** and sub-attributes populated relevant to the feature, rounded down to the nearest whole metre (unless under 10m, when metres and decimetres may be quoted). In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Remarks:

- **Span Fixed** features should only be encoded if the span is entirely or partly over navigable water at the optimum display scale for the ENC data.
- Where the optimum display scale of the ENC data is such that individual spans on a fixed bridge over navigable water cannot be indicated, the entire bridge should be covered by a single **Span Fixed** feature, having attributes populated according to the most navigationally important span.
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty

associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Bridge; Cable Overhead; Conveyor; Pipeline Overhead; Span Opening.

6.8 Span opening

IHO Definition: **SPAN OPENING**. An opening component of the deck of a bridge spanning successive bridge piers. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2013).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Span Opening *(BRIDGE)*		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
vertical clearance closed			C	1,1
vertical clearance value	*(VERCCL)*		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical clearance open			C	1,1
vertical clearance unlimited			(S) BO	1,1
vertical clearance value	*(VERCOP)*		(S) RE	0,1 †
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum	EN	0,1

		2000		
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4)	**Bridge**	Aggregation	0,*
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Opstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **vertical clearance value** for the complex attribute **vertical clearance open** is mandatory if the sub-attribute **vertical clearance unlimited** is set to *False*.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

6.8.1 Span opening

If it is required to encode the clearance characteristics (vertical or horizontal) for an opening part of a bridge between piers or supports, it must be done using the feature **Span Opening**, which must be associated with the feature **Bridge** (see clause 6.5) using the association **Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4). See clause 6.5 for examples of **Span Opening** features used in conjunction with **Bridge** features.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any opening overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the overhead obstruction, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. Clearances must be populated using the complex attributes **vertical clearance closed** and **vertical clearance open** for the span and sub-attributes populated relevant to the feature, rounded down to the

Commented [TS41]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

nearest whole metre (unless under 10m, when metres and decimetres may be quoted). In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Remarks:

- **Span Opening** features should only be encoded if the span is entirely or partly over navigable water at the optimum display scale for the ENC data.
- Where the optimum display scale of the ENC data is such that individual spans over navigable water cannot be indicated, the entire bridge should be covered by a single **Span Opening** feature, having attributes populated according to the opening span.
- The complex attributes **vertical clearance closed** and **vertical clearance open** must be encoded for both the opening (vertical open) and closed (vertical closed) clearance values. Where the open vertical clearance is unlimited, the Boolean sub-attribute **vertical clearance unlimited** must be set to *True*.
- Where it is required to encode time schedule information relating to the opening and closing times for the span, including any scheduled closure times or amended schedules for festivals or national holidays, this should be done using an associated instance of the information types **Service Hours** (see clause 24.2) and/or **Non-Standard Working Day** (see clause 24.3).
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Bridge; Cable Overhead; Conveyor; Pipeline Overhead; Span Fixed.

6.9 Conveyor

IHO Definition: **CONVEYOR**. A mechanical device for conveying bulk material or people using an endless moving belt or series of rollers. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Conveyor (CONVYR)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of conveyor	(CATCON)	1 : aerial cableway 2 : belt conveyor 3 : flume 4 : lift/elevator	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
lifting capacity	(LIFCAP)		RE	0,1

multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	4 : stone 5 : coal 6 : ore 10 : bauxite 11 : coke 12 : iron ingots 13 : salt 14 : sand 15 : timber 16 : sawdust/wood chips 17 : scrap metal 21 : cement 22 : grain 25 : clay	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1 †
vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : International great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [TS42]: Refer to email from Christian 07/02/24.

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS43]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for conveyors that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

For conveyors encoded over navigable water, the attribute **vertical clearance fixed** is mandatory.

INT 1 Reference: D 25

6.9.1 Conveyors (see S-4 – B-382.3)

If it is required to encode a conveyor, it must be done using the feature **Conveyor**.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any fixed overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the obstruction, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. The value for the vertical clearance must be encoded for conveyors located over navigable water using the complex attribute **vertical clearance fixed**, and sub-attributes populated relevant to the feature, rounded down to the nearest whole metre (unless under 10m, when metres and decimetres may be quoted). In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode an overhead cable car, it must be done using a **Conveyor** feature, with attribute **category of conveyor** = *1* (aerial cableway).
- In navigable water, conveyor supports must be encoded, where possible, using a **Pylon/Bridge Support**

feature (see clause 6.11), with attribute **category of pylon** = *3* (aerial cableway pylon).
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Cable Overhead; Crane; Pylon/Bridge Support.

6.10 Overhead cable

IHO Definition: **OVERHEAD CABLE**. A single continuous rope-like bundle consisting of multiple strands of fiber, plastic, metal, and/or glass, which is supported by structures such as poles or pylons and passing over or nearby navigable waters. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2012).

S-101 Geo Feature: Cable Overhead (CBLOHD)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of cable	(CATCBL)	1 : power line 3 : transmission line 4 : telephone 5 : telegraph	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
ice factor	(ICEFAC)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 12 : illuminated 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1 †
vertical clearance value	*(VERCLR)*		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1

Commented [TS44]: Suggest that these values for **category of cable** are replaced with new value *10* (telecommunications cable).

vertical clearance safe			C	0,1 †
vertical clearance value	*(VERCSA)*		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Radar Reflector**	Association	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For overhead cables over navigable water, one of the attributes **vertical clearance fixed** or **vertical clearance safe** must be populated.

At least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 26, 27

6.10.1 Overhead cables (see S-4 – B-382)

If it is required to encode an overhead cable, it must be done using the feature **Cable Overhead**.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any fixed overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the obstruction, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. The value for the vertical clearance must be encoded using the complex attributes **vertical clearance fixed** or **vertical clearance safe**, and sub-attributes populated relevant to the feature, rounded down to the nearest whole metre (unless under 10m, when metres and decimetres may be quoted). In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

For power cables or transmission lines carrying very high voltages, an additional vertical clearance of from 2 to 5 metres may be needed to avoid an electrical discharge. When known, the authorised safe clearance (known as the safe vertical clearance), which is the physical clearance minus a safety margin, must be populated using **vertical clearance safe**, having the sub-attribute **vertical clearance value** populated with the safe clearance value.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode telepheric cables, this must be done using **Conveyor** features (see clause 6.8), with attribute CATCON = *1* (aerial cableway).
- Where a cable has radar reflectors at known positions, they must be encoded as separate **Radar Reflector** features (see clause 20.18). If the whole cable is radar conspicuous, the optimum display scale for the ENC data is too small to show individual reflectors, or the positions of the radar reflectors are not known, the **Cable Overhead** should be encoded with attribute **radar conspicuous**.
- In navigable water, overhead cable supports must be encoded, where possible, using a **Pylon/Bridge Support** feature (see clause 6.12), with attribute **category of pylon** = *1* or *2*.
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Cable Area; Cable Submarine; Conveyor; Pylon/Bridge Support.

6.11 Overhead pipeline

IHO Definition: **OVERHEAD PIPELINE**. A string of interconnected pipes, supported by pylons and passing over or nearby navigable waters, used for the transport of matter, nowadays mainly oil or gas. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32 and S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.119, November 2000).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Pipeline Overhead (PIPOHD)				
Primitives: Curve				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of pipeline/pipe	(CATPIP)	2 : outfall pipe 3 : intake pipe 4 : sewer 6 : supply pipe	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 9 : milk 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas 20 : wine 22 : grain	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 7 : temporary 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1 †

vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : International great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Radar Reflector**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For overhead pipelines over navigable water, the attribute **vertical clearance fixed** is mandatory.

At least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

Commented [TS45]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 28

6.11.1 Overhead pipelines (see S-4 – B-383)

If it is required to encode an overhead pipeline passing over or nearby navigable waters, it must be done using the feature **Pipeline Overhead**.

The value of the vertical clearance between (high) water level and any fixed overhead obstruction must always be given, where known, on the largest optimum display scale ENC data intended for navigation under the obstruction, and for detailed passage planning. The datum above which clearances are given must be a high water level, preferably Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT), where the tide is appreciable. The value for the vertical clearance must be encoded using the complex attribute **vertical clearance fixed**, and sub-attributes populated relevant to the feature, rounded down to the nearest whole metre (unless under 10m, when metres and decimetres may be quoted). In areas where the tidal range is not appreciable the datum above which clearances are given should be Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Remarks:

- Where an overhead pipeline is disused, it should be encoded with the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use), and the attributes **category of pipe** and **product** must not be encoded.
- Where a pipeline has radar reflectors at known positions, they must be encoded as separate **Radar Reflector** features (see clause 20.18). If the whole pipeline is radar conspicuous, the optimum display scale for the ENC data is too small to show individual reflectors, or the positions of the radar reflectors are not known, the **Pipeline Overhead** should be encoded with attribute **radar conspicuous**.
- In navigable water, overhead pipeline supports must be encoded, where possible, using a **Pylon/Bridge Support** feature (see clause 6.12), with attribute **category of pylon** = *6* (pipeline pylon).
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Pipeline Submarine/On Land, Submarine Pipeline Area.

6.12 Pylon/bridge support

IHO Definition: **PYLON/BRIDGE SUPPORT**. A vertical construction consisting, for example, of a steel framework or pre-stressed concrete to carry cables, a bridge, etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.125, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Pylon/Bridge Support (PYLONS)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of pylon	(CATPYL)	1 : power transmission pylon/pole 2 : telephone/telegraph pylon/pole 3 : aerial cableway pylon 4 : bridge pylon/tower 5 : bridge pier 6 : pipeline pylon	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †

date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash 6 : subject to inundation or flooding	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of of	**Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4)	**Bridge**	Aggregation	0,*
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Opstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*

Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for pylons that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 26

6.12.1 Pylons and bridge supports (see S-4 – B-381.5 and B-382.1)

The actual position of pylons supporting bridges, pipelines and cables must be indicated on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC data, where they are positioned in the navigable channel or where likely to be useful for position-fixing.

Remarks:

- A **Pylon/Bridge Support** feature of type surface with attribute **water level effect** = *1*, *2* or *6* must be covered by a **Land Area** feature of type surface (see clause 5.4).

Distinction: Landmark.

Commented [TS46]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

6.13 Fence/wall

IHO Definition: **FENCE/WALL**. A man-made barrier used as an enclosure or boundary or for protection. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2013).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Fence/Wall (FNCLNE)		
Primitives: Curve		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of fence	(CATFNC)	1 : fence 3 : hedge 4 : wall	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 6 : wooden 7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*

radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 7 : temporary 12 : illuminated 13 : historic	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for fences or walls that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

6.13.1 Fences and walls

If it is required to encode a fence or wall, it must be done using the feature **Fence/Wall**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Fortified Structure.

6.14 Railway

IHO Definition: **RAILWAY**. A rail or set of parallel rails on which a train, tram, or rail wagon runs. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Railway (RAILWY)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

INT 1 Reference: D 13

6.14.1 Railways (see S-4 – B-328.4 and B-362)

In urbanized areas, depiction of railways within some miles of the coast is part of the ENCs' function in giving a general indication of the degree of land development. In largely undeveloped areas, the depiction of railways to isolated ports draws attention to such ports and may be of some maritime interest for transport purposes. Railways should be encoded on larger and medium optimum display scale ENC data.

Where railways run just inshore of the coast, or down to it, together with associated bridges, signal posts and other structure, they provide essential identification features. It should not generally be necessary to depict the smaller associated features - posts, gantries etc.

If it is required to encode a railway, it must be done using the feature **Railway**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a railway station, it must be done using a **Building** feature, with attribute **function** = *8* (railway station). On the largest optimum display scale ENC data, the names of railway terminals or main stations may be populated using the attribute **feature name** for the **Building**.
- Abandoned railways (those which are mostly still intact) should be encoded, if required, as **Railway** with the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use).

Distinction: Road; Shoreline Construction; Tunnel.

6.15 Road

IHO Definition: **ROAD**. A route with a specially prepared surface that is intended for use by wheeled vehicles or pedestrians. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2013).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Road (ROADWY)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of road	(CATROD)	1 : motorway 2 : major road 3 : minor road 4 : track/path 5 : major street 6 : minor street	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of construction	(NATCON)	4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations				
S-101 Role	**Association Type**	**Associated to**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 7, 10-12

6.15.1 Roads and tracks (see S-4 – B-365)

On the largest optimum display scale continuous coastal series of ENCs, and larger optimum display scale ENC data, all roads and tracks running down to the coastline should be encoded where the optimum display scale permits. Particular attention must be given to local roads serving minor piers, boat hards and landings. Inland, major roads within a few miles of the coast should be encoded to give a general indication of the degree of development, but tracks and all or some of the minor roads should be omitted. In largely undeveloped areas, with very few roads, it may be desirable to encode even minor roads inland.

On smaller optimum display scale ENC data, roads must be omitted.

If it is required to encode a road or track, it must be done using the feature **Road**.

Remarks:
- No remarks

Distinction: Causeway; Railway.

6.16 Tunnel

IHO Definition: **TUNNEL**. A passage that is open to the atmosphere at both ends, buried under the seabed or laid over the seafloor or bored under the ground or through mountains. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.191, November 2000).
S-101 Geo Feature: Tunnel (TUNNEL)
Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1
vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985	EN	0,1

		26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000		
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 16

6.16.1 Tunnels (see S-4 – B-363.1)

If it is required to encode a tunnel, it must be done using the feature **Tunnel**.

Remarks:

- If there is a waterway inside the tunnel, and the waterway is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be encoded as if it were a navigable canal (see clause 8.8.1), using the features **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** in conjunction with the **Tunnel** feature. There must be no **Land Area** feature in the area covering the waterway.
- If it is required to encode a waterway inside a tunnel that is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be done using the feature **Canal** (see clause 8.8) in conjunction with the **Tunnel** feature. A **Land Area** feature must cover the tunnel. The complex attributes **horizontal clearance fixed** and **vertical clearance fixed** must not be encoded on the **Tunnel** feature in this case.
- If it is required to encode a tunnel that has no waterway inside it (but a railway, road etc), only the **Tunnel** feature must be encoded (the section of railway or road inside the tunnel must not be encoded), covered by **Land Area**, **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features as appropriate. The complex attributes **horizontal clearance fixed** and **vertical clearance fixed** must not be encoded on the **Tunnel** feature in this case.
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Railway; Road.

7 Geo Features – Landmarks

7.1 Buildings, landmarks, tanks, silos: Common encoding combinations

In the following Table, the symbol '/' indicates that this attribute does not exist for that particular feature class. A blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the attribute. The Table contains the most common examples of coding; other coding combinations are possible.

Feature	INT1	Feature class	function	category of landmark	product	category of silo/tank
Administrative		**Building**	*18*	/	/	/
Bank office		**Building**	*13*	/	/	/
Boundary mark		**Landmark**		*23*	/	/
Buddhist temple	E16	**Building**	*25*	/	/	/
Bus station		**Building**	*42*	/	/	/
Cairn	Q100	**Landmark**	/	*1*	/	/
Cemetery	E19	**Landmark**		*2*	/	/
Chapel	E11	**Building**	*21*	/	/	/
Chimney	E22	**Landmark**		*3*	/	
Church	E10.1	**Building**	*20*	/	/	/
Church dome, Cupola	E10.4	**Landmark**	*20*	*15*	/	/
Church spire	E10.3	**Landmark**	*20*	*20*	/	/
Church tower	E10.2	**Landmark**	*20*	*17*	/	/
Clock tower		**Landmark**	*38*	*17*	/	/
Column	E24	**Landmark**	/	*10*	/	/
Communication mast		**Landmark**	*29*	*7*	/	/
Communication tower		**Landmark**	*29*	*17*	/	/
Control tower		**Landmark**	*39*	*17*	/	/
Cooling tower		**Landmark**	*35*	*17*	/	/
Cross, Calvary	E12	**Landmark**		*14*	/	/
Customs office	F61	**Building**	*3*	/	/	/
Dish aerial	E31	**Landmark**		*4*	/	/
Dome or cupola, part of a building		**Landmark**		*15*	/	/
Educational facility		**Building**	*19*	/	/	/
Factory		**Building**	*16*	/	/	/
Flagstaff, Flagpole	E27	**Landmark**		*5*	/	/
Flare stack on land	E23	**Landmark**		*6*	/	/
Grain elevator		**Silo/Tank**	/	/	*22*	*3*
Harbour-masters office	F60	**Building**	*2*	/	/	/
Headquarters for district control		**Building**	*14*	/	/	/
Health office	F62.1	**Building**	*4*	/	/	/
Hospital	F62.2	**Building**	*5*	/	/	/
Hotel	D6	**Building**	*7*	/	/	/

Feature	INT1	Feature class	function	category of landmark	product	category of silo/tank
House, Building	D5	**Building**		/	/	/
Large rock or boulder on land		**Landmark**	/	21	/	/
Light house (tower)	P1	**Landmark**	33	17	/	/
Light house (other shapes)	P1	**Building**	33	/	/	/
Lookout station in general		**Building**	28	/	/	/
Lookout tower		**Landmark**	28	17	/	/
Marabout	E18	**Building**	27	/	/	/
Mast in general		**Landmark**		7	/	/
Memorial plaque		**Landmark**		11	/	/
Microwave tower		**Landmark**	34	17	/	/
Minaret	E17	**Landmark**	26	20	/	/
Monument	E24	**Landmark**		9	/	/
Mooring mast		**Landmark**	40	7	/	/
Mosque	E17	**Building**	26	/	/	/
Obelisk	E24	**Landmark**	/	12	/	/
Observation tower		**Landmark**	36	17	/	/
Observation wheel		**Landmark**	/	24	/	/
Pagoda	E14	**Building**	23	/	/	/
Pilot lookout	T2	**Building**	12	/	/	/
Pilot office	T3	**Building**	11	/	/	/
Police station		**Building**	9	/	/	/
Post office	F63	**Building**	6	/	/	/
Power station		**Building**	17	/	/	/
Radar dome	E30.4	**Landmark**	32	15	/	/
Radar mast	E30.1	**Landmark**	32	7	/	/
Radar scanner	E30.3	**Landmark**		16	/	/
Radar tower	E30.2	**Landmark**	32	17	/	/
Radio mast	E28	**Landmark**	31	7	/	/
Radio tower	E29	**Landmark**	31	17	/	/
Railway station	D13	**Building**	8	/	/	/
Shinto shrine	E15	**Building**	24	/	/	/
Silo	E33	**Silo/Tank**	/	/		1
Spire, part of a building		**Landmark**		20	/	/
Stadium		**Building**	41	/	/	/
Statue	E24	**Landmark**		13	/	/
Tank	E32	**Silo/Tank**	/	/		2
Television mast	E28	**Landmark**	30	7	/	/
Television tower	E29	**Landmark**	30	17	/	/
Temple	E13	**Building**	22	/	/	/
Timeball tower		**Landmark**	37	17	/	/

Feature	INT1	Feature class	function	category of landmark	product	category of silo/tank
Torii		**Landmark**	/	*25*	/	/
Tower	E20	**Landmark**		*17*	/	/
Tower, part of a building		**Landmark**		*17*	/	/
Transit shed, Warehouse	F51	**Building**	*15*	/	/	/
Triangulation mark		**Landmark**		*22*	/	/
Water tower	E21	**Silo/Tank**	/	/	*3* or *8*	*4*
Water-police station		**Building**	*10*	/	/	/
Windmill	E25	**Landmark**		*18*	/	/
Windmotor	E26.1 L5.1	**Wind Turbine**	/	/	/	/

Table 7-1 – Buildings, landmarks, tanks and silos – Encoding

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode an offshore landmark (as defined by the attribute **category of landmark**), the ECDIS system attribute **in the water** (see clause 30.3) must be populated to ensure the feature is always displayed on the ECDIS. Where fitted, lights should be encoded as described in Section 19, with the **Building**, **Wind Turbine**, **Landmark** or **Silo/Tank** being used as the structure feature for the relevant light equipment feature(s) (see clause 18.1).
- For encoding wind turbines, see clause 7.4.

7.2 Landmark

IHO Definition: **LANDMARK**. Any prominent object at a fixed location on land which can be used in determining a location or a direction. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Landmark (LNDMRK)		
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of landmark	(CATLMK)	1 : cairn 2 : cemetery 3 : chimney 4 : dish aerial 5 : flagstaff 6 : flare stack 7 : mast 8 : windsock 9 : monument 10 : column/pillar 11 : memorial plaque 12 : obelisk 13 : statue 14 : cross 15 : dome 16 : radar scanner 17 : tower 18 : windmill 20 : spire/minaret 21 : large rock or boulder on land 22 : triangulation mark 23 : boundary mark 24 : observation wheel 25 : torii 26 : bridge 27 : dam	EN	1,*
category of special purpose mark	(CATSPM)	16 : leading mark 17 : measured distance mark 41 : clearing mark	EN	0,*
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes	EN	0,1 †

		3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe		
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 4 : wingless 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
function	(FUNCTN)	2 : harbour-masters office 3 : customs office 4 : health office 5 : hospital 6 : post office 7 : hotel 8 : railway station 9 : police station 10 : water-police station 11 : pilot office 12 : pilot lookout 13 : bank office 14 : headquarters for district control 15 : transit shed/warehouse 16 : factory 17 : power station 18 : administrative 19 : educational facility 20 : church 21 : chapel 22 : temple 23 : pagoda 24 : Shinto shrine 25 : Buddhist temple 26 : mosque 27 : marabout 28 : lookout 29 : communication 30 : television 31 : radio 32 : radar 33 : light support 34 : microwave 35 : cooling 36 : observation 37 : timeball 38 : clock 39 : control 40 : airship mooring 41 : stadium 42 : bus station 44 : sea rescue control 45 : observatory 46 : ore crusher	EN	0,*

		47 : boathouse 48 : pumping station		
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed 12 : glass	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association**	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS47]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

	(see clause 25.2)	**System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**		
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for landmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 8; E 10.2-10.4, 22-31; L 11; Q 100

7.2.1 Buildings, landmarks, tanks, silos (see S-4 – B-373; B-373.6; B-374.3-5; B-374.7; B-375.1-2; B-456.2; B-487.3)

Depending on height and the topographic relief, structures considered to be landmarks should be encoded up to several miles inland.

Waterfront, landmark and some public buildings should be encoded precisely and individually on the larger optimum display scale ENC data. When representing buildings generally, including urban and other built-up areas, the aim of the compiler must be to create the correct impression of the extent of the built-up area and the density of the buildings.

If it is required to encode a landmark (other than a tank or silo), it must be done using the feature **Landmark**.

Remarks:

- For buildings, see clause 6.2; for silos, tanks and water towers, see clause 7.3. For common encoding combinations, see clause 7.1. For wind turbines, see clause 7.4. For flare stacks on offshore platforms, see clause 14.1.1.
- The feature association **Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15) must only be used with **Landmark** features if the main purpose of the structure is to act as an aid to navigation (for example a lighthouse).
- A water tower must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Silo/Tank** (see clause 7.3).
- A ruined landmark should be encoded in the same way as the feature in good condition, but with attribute **condition** = *2* (ruined).
- Radio and television masts and towers are likely to be visible over long distances and should be encoded as landmarks, even when well inland. They will usually carry air obstruction lights.
- To aid identification of landmarks by the Mariner it may be useful to add the height of the top of the structure above ground level (**vertical length**) or above the general height datum (**height**).
- Buildings constructed as places of worship often form significant landmarks; their size and structure incorporating towers, spires, cupolas, etc often render them conspicuous. These buildings when known to be prominent or conspicuous should be encoded up to several miles inland (see Figure 7-1 below, examples (a) and (b)).
- The attribute **category of special purpose mark** should only be used if the **Landmark** is used as the front or rear lead for a transit, clearing line or measured distance, or for a leading line. Values for **category of special purpose mark** such as *16* (leading mark), *17* (measured distance mark) or *41* (clearing mark) in particular should be used for these purposes.
- Values **category of landmark** = *26* (bridge) and *27* (dam) must only be used if the feature is encoded using point geometry; and must not be encoded over navigable water. Bridges and dams encoded using curve or surface geometry must be encoded using features **Bridge** (see clause 6.6) and **Dam** (see clause 8.11) respectively.

- For landmarks located in navigable water, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located in the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles).
- When a building is shown as a surface, indicating its true shape, and it is required to encode a prominent feature such as a tower or spire that is part of the structure, two features must be created (see Figure 7-1 (b) below):
  - a **Building** feature of type surface for the main building,
  - a **Landmark** feature of type point for the prominent feature.

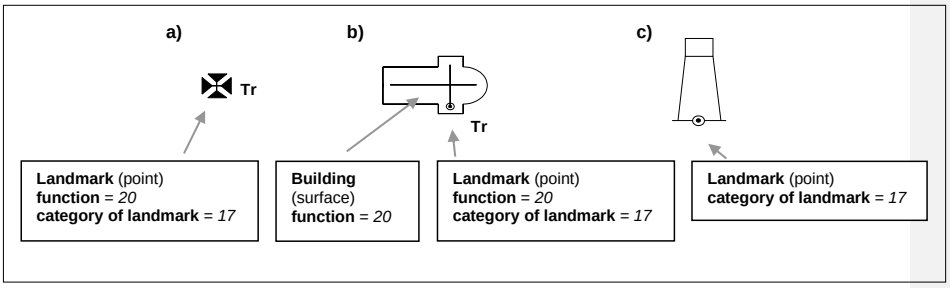


Figure 7-1 – Landmarks

- Not all landmarks are visually conspicuous. If a feature is visually conspicuous (that is, it is distinctly and noticeably visible from seaward), the attribute **visual prominence** must be encoded (see S-4 – B-340).

Distinction: Building; Daymark; Pylon/Bridge Support; Silo/Tank; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Wind Turbine.

7.3 Silo/tank

IHO Definition: **SILO/TANK**. A large storage structure used for storing loose materials, liquids and/or gases. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2012).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Silo/Tank (SILTNK)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
building shape	(BUISHP)	5 : high-rise building 6 : pyramid 7 : cylindrical 8 : spherical 9 : cubic	EN	0,1
category of silo/tank	(CATSIL)	1: silo in general 2: tank in general 3: grain elevator 4: water tower	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1

multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 5 : coal 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 9 : milk 13 : salt 14 : sand 16 : sawdust/wood chips 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas 20 : wine 21 : cement 22 : grain 24 : ice	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 12 : illuminated 13 : historic	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal**	Association	0,*

		Station Traffic, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS48]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for silos or tanks that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: E 2, 32-33

7.3.1 Tanks, silos (see S-4 – B-340.2 and B-376)

Isolated tanks or gasholders may be good landmarks and should be represented true to scale (that is, as surface) where possible, to enable them to be used as fixing marks. Groups of tanks, as at a refinery, may be useful for general identification of position but cannot usually be used for precise position-fixing because of uncertainty of the location of individual tanks.

If it is required to encode a tank or silo, it must be done using the feature **Silo/Tank**.

Remarks:

- For buildings, see clause 6.2; for landmarks, see clause 7.2. For common encoding combinations, see clause 7.1.
- Groups of silos or tanks (tank farm) in close proximity must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Production/Storage Area** (see clause 7.6). Individual, visually conspicuous silos, or tanks within a tank farm, may be encoded as **Silo/Tank** within the **Production/Storage Area**. Multiple silos contained within a single structure may be indicated using the complex attribute **multiplicity of features**.
- For tanks or silos located in or over navigable water, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located in the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles).

Distinction: Building; Landmark; Production/Storage Area.

7.4 Wind turbine

Commented [TS49]: Consider adding attribute horizontal width (for blade diameter) to feature Wind Turbine.
IHO Sec: Could this be a new attribute, e.g. **blade length**?
IHO Sec: There is currently no requirement identified in S-4 for encoding the blade width. Should the requirement to include this information on charts be identified by NCWG?

IHO Definition: **WIND TURBINE**. A tower and associated equipment that generates electrical power from wind. They can be sited offshore and may be either fixed or floating. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Wind Turbine *(LNDMRK)*

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 4 : wingless 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1

nature of construction	(NATCON)	2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1
vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	2 : always dry 7 : floating	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS50]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for bridges that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 2, 10-15, 17

7.4.1 Wind turbines (see S-4 – B-374.6; B-445.8-9)

Wind turbines are generally tall, multi-bladed structures, usually with two or three blades, which may pose as obstacles to navigation if located offshore but are often visible over long distances and therefore useful as visual references. Their purpose is to generate electricity for large communities, or to feed a national grid. They are often in groups (known as wind farms). Floating wind turbines are held in position by ground tackle and consequently may be subject to significant lateral and some vertical movement.

If it is required to encode a wind turbine, it must be done using the feature **Wind Turbine**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **elevation** is only applicable for wind turbines on land.
- To aid identification of wind turbines on land by the Mariner it may be useful to add the height of the top of the structure above ground level (**vertical length**) or above the general height datum (**height**).
- For offshore wind turbines, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located in the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles).
- For offshore wind turbines (attribute **in the water** = *True*), the attribute **height** is only relevant for fixed turbines, and is referred to the vertical datum (see clause 2.5.7).
- For offshore wind turbines, the attribute **vertical length** is only relevant for floating wind turbines, and is

referred to the sea level.

- A ruined wind turbine should be encoded in the same way as the feature in good condition, but with attribute **condition** = *4* (wingless).
- If it is required to encode sites of dismantled offshore wind turbines, this must be done using **Foul Ground** features (see clause 13.7), unless the source indicates that any remaining structure protrudes far enough above the seabed so as to be an obstruction to surface navigation, in which case this must be encoded using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6).
- If it is required to encode an offshore wind farm, it must be done using the feature **Offshore Production Area** (see clause 14.6). An onshore wind farm must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Production/Storage Area** (see clause 7.6).
- Wind turbines may carry lights (see Section 19) or fog signals (see clause 20.19). Where fitted, lights should be encoded as described in Section 19, with the **Wind Turbine** being used as the structure feature for the light equipment feature(s).
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.
- For encoding offshore safety zones around offshore wind turbines, see clause 14.1.3.

Distinction: Building; Daymark; Landmark; Offshore Platform; Offshore Production Area; Pylon/Bridge Support; Silo/Tank; Special Purpose/General Beacon.

7.5 Fortified structure

IHO Definition: **FORTIFIED STRUCTURE**. A structure that is specifically designed or reinforced to provide for defence from armed attack. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fortified Structure (FORSTC)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of fortified structure	(CATFOR)	1 : castle 2 : fort 3 : battery 4 : blockhouse 5 : fortified tower 6 : redoubt 8 : fortified submarine shelter 9 : rampart	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1

information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS51]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: E 34.1-3

7.5.1 Fortified structures (see S-4 – B-379)

Some coastlines have prominent defensive structures, often disused, decayed, or used for non-defence purposes. Such structures range from major castles and forts to minor lookout posts and may be the main distinctive features of headlands or stretches of coastline. National regulations permitting, any such features as are likely to be visible from seaward and should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data.

If it is required to encode a fortified structure, it must be done using the feature **Fortified Structure**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a Martello tower, it must be done using **Fortified Structure** with attribute **category of fort** = *5* (fortified tower).
- Where fitted, lights should be encoded as described in Section 19, with the **Fortified Structure** being used as the structure feature for the relevant light equipment feature(s) (see clause 18.1).
- For fortified structures located in navigable water, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located in

the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles).

Distinction: Building; Fence/Wall; Landmark.

7.6 Production/storage area

IHO Definition: **PRODUCTION/STORAGE AREA**. An area on land for the exploitation or storage of natural resources. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.124, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Production/Storage Area (PRDARE)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of production area	(CATPRA)	1 : quarry 2 : mine 3 : stockpile 4 : power station area 5 : refinery area 6 : timber yard 7 : factory area 8 : tank farm 9 : wind farm 10: slag heap/spoil heap 11 : production plant 12 : solar farm	EN	1,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 4 : stone 5 : coal 6 : ore 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 9 : milk 10 : bauxite 11 : coke 12 : iron ingots 13 : salt	EN	0,*

		14 : sand 15 : timber 16 : sawdust/wood chips 17 : scrap metal 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas 20 : wine 21 : cement 22 : grain 23 : electricity 25 : clay		
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	4 : not in use 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: E 26.2, 35.1-2, 36; F 52

7.6.1 Production and storage areas (see S-4 – B-328.2; B-367; B-374.6)

Production or storage areas located in close proximity to the coast are often prominent landmarks used by Mariners to assist in position-fixing. Features such as quarry faces, stockpiles, power stations, refineries, timber stacks in timber yards, factories, groups of tanks, groups of wind turbines, and slag heaps should be shown on the largest optimum display scale ENC data.

If it is required to encode production or storage area, it must be done using the feature **Production/Storage Area**.

Remarks:

- If there are individual buildings or equipment features contained within this area, they should be encoded as separate features such as **Building, Crane, Landmark** or **Silo/Tank** within the **Production/Storage Area** feature of type surface if the optimum display scale of the ENC data permits.
- If visible from seaward, a quarry face should be encoded as for a cliff (see clause 5.1), with attribute **category of slope** = *6* (cliff).

Distinction: Free Port Area; Offshore Production Area.

8 Geo Features – Ports

8.1 Works in progress and projected (see S-4 – B-329)

An ENC can seldom show the exact state of work under construction because it may not be known by the encoder and, even if known, may be expected to change between ENC updates (see Section 31). Where it is possible to provide the Mariner with an indication of the status of work under construction, under reclamation or planned, it must be done using the appropriate feature (for example **Shoreline Construction**, **Causeway**, **Dock Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**), with the attribute **condition** populated as *1* (under construction), *3* (under reclamation) or *5* (planned construction). Where the encoder wishes to provide such information to the Mariner and the details of the works are not known (nature and extent of the works), this should be done using the feature **Caution Area** (see clause 16.10), with known details of the works encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

If it is required to provide the Mariner with an indication of the date to which information regarding the works is current, it must be done using the attribute **reported date** (see clause 27.153).

The coastline existing before the beginning of the works should remain encoded as a **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction** feature until the completion of the works.

As the works progress and further information is supplied to the Producing Authority, ENC datasets should be updated appropriately through the issue of updates to the dataset or publication of New Editions of the dataset (see clause 31.2.3).

On completion of the works, full encoding of the new feature(s) in accordance with the relevant clauses in this document must be achieved, and incorporated in the relevant ENC dataset through the issue of an update to the dataset or publication of a New Edition of the dataset (see Section 31).

8.1.1 Works on land (see S-4 – B-329.1)

Features likely to be prominent from seaward should be encoded as described above, where possible. New docks, locks, canals, etc, being excavated should be encoded similarly. The works must be covered by the feature **Land Area** (see clause 5.4) until completion of the works.

8.1.2 Works at sea (see S-4 – B-329.2-5)

Works at sea which will extend the coastline seaward, where the line of the future coastline (including piers, etc) is known, must be encoded, where required, as described in clause 8.1 above, using the appropriate features. The existing coastline should remain until the works are completed and the new coastline has been established. The area of reclamation or construction must also be covered by the appropriate feature(s) from the Skin of the Earth. This may be **Depth Area** at commencement of the works, or if the works are planned and have not yet commenced; **Unsurveyed Area** while reclamation/construction is in progress but the area is still covered by water; or **Land Area** where the area of the works has been reclaimed (that is, is always dry).

Works at sea which will be wholly or partly submerged when completed, such as training walls or pipelines must be encoded, if required, using the appropriate feature relevant to the completed feature, in accordance with clause 8.1 above. The appropriately attributed depth information, if known, or **Unsurveyed Area**, must cover the works as appropriate.

Where the extent or nature of the works is unknown, they must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Caution Area** as described in clause 8.1 above.

Because lights and buoys marking the limits of works at sea may be moved without notice, they should be encoded only where it is considered safe to do so. Alternatively, this information may be included by encoding the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **text**, for instance, *Outer end marked by red lights*.

8.2 Checkpoint

IHO Definition: **CHECKPOINT**. An official location at which to register, declare and/or inspect goods and/or people. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Checkpoint (CHKPNT)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of checkpoint	(CATCHP)	1 : custom	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

8.2.1 Checkpoints

If it is required to encode an official place to register, declare and/or check goods and people, it must be done using the feature **Checkpoint**.

Remarks:

- The **Checkpoint** must only be used to encode the function. In addition, if it is required to encode a physical feature (for example building, fence, gate), it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).

Distinction: Custom Zone.

8.3 Hulk

IHO Definition: **HULK**. The hull of a wrecked or condemned ship, from which the fittings and superstructure have usually been removed, which is moored in a permanent position or grounded. It may be abandoned or put to some other use. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Hulk (HULKES)				
Primitives: Point, Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of hulk	(CATHLK)	1 : floating restaurant 2 : historic ship 3 : floating museum 4 : floating accommodation 5 : floating breakwater 6 : casino 7 : training vessel	EN	0,*
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	1,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for hulks that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

Commented [TS52]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

INT 1 Reference: F 34

8.3.1 Hulks (see S-4 – B-330)

If it is required to encode a permanently moored ship, it must be done using the feature **Hulk**.

Remarks:

- A **Hulk** feature of type surface must not be bound by curve features **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**, unless the edge associated with the curve feature is also the boundary of a **Land Area** feature of type surface.
- If it is required to encode a floating production, storage and off-loading vessel, it must be done using the feature **Offshore Platform** (see clause 14.1), with attribute **category of offshore platform** = *8* (floating production, storage and off-loading vessel).
- If it is required to encode a hulk serving the purpose of a floating breakwater, it must be done using a **Hulk** feature, with attribute **category of hulk** = *5* (floating breakwater). If it is required to encode a floating breakwater of any other construction, it must be done using the feature **Shoreline Construction** (see clause 8.6), with attributes **category of shoreline construction** = *1* (breakwater) and **water level effect** = *7* (floating).

Distinction: Offshore Platform; Shoreline Construction; Wreck.

8.4 Pile

IHO Definition: **PILE**. A long heavy timber or section of steel, wood, concrete, etc., forced into the earth or seafloor to serve as a support, as for a pier, or to resist lateral pressure; or as a free standing pole within a marine environment. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Pile (PILPNT)				
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of pile	(CATPLE)	1 : stake 3 : post 4 : tripodal 5 : piling 6 : area of piles 7 : pipe 8 : mooring post	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for piles that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

Commented [TS53]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 22

8.4.1 Piles (see S-4 – B-327.3)

If it is required to encode a pile or post that is not used as a dolphin or an aid to navigation, it must be done using the feature **Pile**.

Remarks:

- Stumps of piles or posts that are dangerous to navigation must be encoded, where required, using **Obstruction** features (see clause 13.6), with attribute **category of obstruction** = *1* (snag/stump), and must not be encoded using **Pile**.
- **Pile** of type curve must only be used for **Pile** having **category of pile** = *5* (piling), which is sometimes termed “row of piles” or “sheet piling”. Point primitive may be used to encode piling for smaller optimum display scale ENC data.
- **Pile** of type surface must only be used for **Pile** having **category of pile** = *6* (area of piles). Point primitive may be used to encode an area of piles for smaller optimum display scale ENC data.
- Stakes and posts that are identified on the source to serve the purpose of aids to navigation must be encoded, where required, using the appropriate beacon feature (for example **Special Purpose/General Beacon**), with attribute **beacon shape** = *1* (stake, pole, perch, post).

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Dolphin; Isolated Danger Beacon; Lateral Beacon; Obstruction; Safe Water Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon;.

8.5 Dyke

IHO Definition: **DYKE**. A dyke (or dike) is an artificial embankment to contain or hold back water. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Dyke (DYKCON)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 1

8.5.1 Dykes (see S-4 – B-313.1)

Dykes and seawalls are primarily designed to prevent inundation, and generally have regular outlines.

If it is required to encode a dyke, it must be done using the feature **Dyke**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a dyke whose seaward edge is coincident with the coastline, it must be done using **Dyke**, and with a **Shoreline Construction** feature of type curve along its seaward edge, with no value populated for attribute **category of shoreline construction**.
- When a **Dyke** feature is of type surface, it must be covered by a **Land Area** feature.
- At large optimum display scales, the dyke crown (the topline of the dyke) may be encoded as a **Slope Topline** feature (see clause 5.15), with attribute **category of slope** = *2* (embankment).

Distinction: Dam; Sloping Ground; Slope Topline.

8.6 Shoreline construction

IHO Definition: **SHORELINE CONSTRUCTION**. A fixed artificial structure in the water and/or adjoining the land. It may also refer to features such as training walls, which are not necessarily connected to, nor form part of the shoreline. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.154, November 2000, as amended).

S-101 Geo Feature: Shoreline Construction (SLCONS)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of shoreline construction	(CATSLC)	1 : breakwater 2 : groyne 3 : mole 4 : pier (jetty) 5 : promenade pier 6 : wharf 7 : training wall 8 : rip rap 9 : revetment 10 : sea wall 11 : landing steps 12 : ramp 13 : slipway 14 : fender 15 : solid face wharf 16 : open face wharf 17 : log ramp 20 : swimming facility 22 : quay 23 : tie-up wall	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1

feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash 6 : subject to inundation or flooding 7 : floating	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1

information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS54]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for shoreline constructions that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 2.1, 2.2, 4.1-6.3, 12-15, 23, 30-33.2

8.6.1 Coastline

Natural sections of coastlines, lakeshores and riverbanks should be encoded as **Coastline** (see clause 5.3), whereas artificial sections of coastlines, lakeshores, riverbanks, canal banks and basin borders should be encoded as **Shoreline Construction**. The exception to this general rule is when a lake, river, canal, dock or basin is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, in which case the boundaries must not be encoded as **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**.

These features form the border of the **Land Area** feature.

8.6.2 Artificial coastline (see S-4 – B-313; B-320-322; B-324 and B-329)

If it is required to encode artificial sections of coastlines; or lakeshores, riverbanks, canal banks and basin borders that are navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, this must be done using the feature **Shoreline Construction**.

The largest optimum display scale ENC data should make clear whether any shoreline construction along the coastline is intended for ships to berth alongside or not. In most instances, the associated detail (name or berth number, depths alongside, dolphins, cargo sheds, cranes or railway lines), in addition to the usually

distinctive outline of such features as piers and jetties, will be sufficient to show that ships may come alongside. For shoreline constructions not intended to berth alongside (such as breakwaters and seawalls), an indication that ships do not go alongside may be given by encoding the sloping sides (for example the intertidal portion of the structure). If there is a possibility of misinterpretation by the Mariner, the danger may be indicated by encoding an **Obstruction** surface feature (see clause 13.6) with the seaward edge running parallel to the shoreline construction.

Figure 8-1 below represents a shoreline construction such as a mole, including a berthing facility (INT1 - F12), with a relatively flat top (*abcdlmna*), and sloping sides partly above high water (*nmldefgn*) and partly intertidal (*dopqrhgfed*).

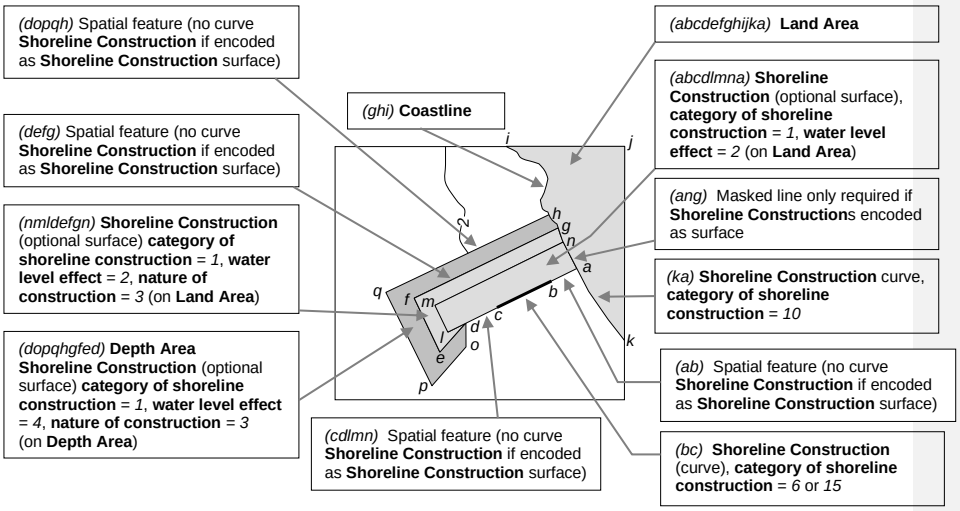


Figure 8-1 – Shoreline constructions

Remarks:

- Each of the three surface parts of the example shoreline construction above may be encoded as separate **Shoreline Construction** features of type surface; the masked curve (*ang*) must be encoded; and, if part of the **Shoreline Construction** boundary has a different characteristic (for example (*bc*) attribute **category of shoreline construction** = *6* or *15*), it should be encoded as a separate **Shoreline Construction** feature of type curve. Alternatively, all the boundaries of the components of the shoreline construction may be encoded as **Shoreline Construction** features of type curve.
- In this example, the shoreline construction surface above the high water line must also be covered by a **Land Area** feature of type surface, and the intertidal shoreline construction surface must also be covered by a **Depth Area** feature of type surface with attribute **depth range minimum value** = -H (see clause 11.7.3).
- **Shoreline Construction** features must be broken into their constituent parts where possible, and categorised using attributes such as **category of shoreline construction** and **water level effect** as indicated on the source.
- If the presence of a feature is only indicated on the source by a textual reference, without a clear symbol (for example 'pier', 'groyne', 'post'), it should be encoded using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) or an **Information Area** feature (see clause 16.11), with the textual reference encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). **Caution Area** should be used if the information is considered essential for safe navigation.
- Intertidal or submerged artificial rock walls, such as training walls that are not attached to the shoreline, must be encoded, if required, as **Shoreline Construction** using the appropriate value for **category of shoreline construction**, and **water level effect** = *3* (always under water/submerged) or **water level effect** = *4* (covers and uncovers).

Distinction: Causeway; Coastline; Dry Dock; Floating Dock; Gridiron; Land Area; Pontoon.

8.7 Causeway

IHO Definition: **CAUSEWAY**. A raised way across low or wet ground or water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Causeway (CAUSWY)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 4 : hard surfaced 5 : unsurfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash 6 : subject to inundation or flooding	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 3

8.7.1 Causeways (see S-4 – B-313.3)

A causeway is a raised roadway of solid structure built primarily to provide a route across wet ground or an intertidal area.

If it is required to encode a causeway, it must be done using the feature **Causeway**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Dam; Road.

8.8 Canal

IHO Definition: **CANAL**. An artificial waterway with no flow, or a controlled flow, used for navigation, or for draining or irrigating land (ditch). (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Canal (CANALS)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of canal	(CATCAN)	1 : transportation 2 : drainage 3 : irrigation	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 40

8.8.1 Canals (see S-4 – B-361)

If it is required to encode a non-navigable canal, it must be done using the feature **Canal**.

Remarks:

- If the canal is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be encoded using the features **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** (see clauses 11.7 and 11.4), and the canal banks must be encoded using the features **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**. The canal must not be encoded as a **Canal** feature. If it is required to encode the name of the canal, it must be done using a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature, with attribute **category of sea area** = *51* (canal).
- Where the canal is navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, special consideration should be given to encoding features specific to the canal such as minimum depths within the navigable area; overhead clearances; distances along the canal; and locks and lock gates (and any associated traffic signals).
- If it is required to encode a canal that is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, it must be done using **Canal**, covered by a **Land Area** feature. The name of the canal should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name** on the **Canal** feature.

Distinction: River; Lake; Tideway.

8.9 Distance mark

IHO Definition: **DISTANCE MARK**. A distance mark indicates the distance measured from an origin and consists of either a solid visible structure or a distinct location without special installation. Usually found on canals. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.55, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Distance Mark (DISMAR)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
distance mark visible	(*CATDIS*)		BO	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
measured distance value	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		C	1,1
distance unit of measurement		1 : metres 2 : yards 3 : kilometres 4 : statute miles 5: nautical miles	(S) EN	1,1
reference location			(S) TE	0,1
waterway distance			(S) RE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**,	Composition	0,1

		Crane, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**		
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: B 25.1-2

8.9.1 Distance marks (see S-4 – B-307 and B-361.3)

Marks which indicate distances along a channel in nautical miles, kilometres or some other unit of measure are considered to be useful on the largest optimum display scale ENC data.

If it is required to encode a distance mark, it must be done using the feature **Distance Mark**.

Remarks:

- The origin from which the distance has been measured is indicated using the sub-attribute **reference location**.
- Where an encoded distance mark has the Boolean type attribute **distance mark visible** populated as *True*, the **Distance Mark** must be associated to the structure supporting the mark using a **Structure/Equipment** feature association (see clause 25.15). If the nature of the structure is unknown, it should be encoded as **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature (see clause 20.13) or **Daymark** feature (see clause 20.14), wit attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *17* (measured distance mark).
- For encoding a measured distance between two transits of marks established on the shore, see clause 15.4.2.

Distinction: Special Purpose/General Beacon.

Commented [TS55]: Refer to NL review comment 15/01/24. Consider that the suggested change is not relevant as the mark is visible, therefore there must be a structure.

8.10 Gate

IHO Definition: **GATE**. A structure that may be swung, drawn, or lowered to block an entrance or passageway on a watercourse. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2012).

S-101 Geo Feature: Gate (GATCON)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of gate	(CATGAT)	2 : flood barrage gate 3 : caisson 4 : lock gate 5 : dyke gate 6 : sluice	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
horizontal clearance open			C	0,1 †
horizontal clearance value	*(HORCLR)*		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
vertical clearance open			C	0,1
vertical clearance unlimited			S (BO)	1,1

Commented [TS56]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24. Sub-attributes different between SpanOpening and Gate.

vertical clearance value	*(VERCLR)*		(S) RE	0,1 †
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For encoded gates that are navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, the attribute **horizontal clearance open** is mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

The sub-attribute **vertical clearance value** for the complex attribute **vertical clearance open** is mandatory

Deleted: 1

if the sub-attribute **vertical clearance unlimited** is set to *False*.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 27, 41.1-2, 42-43

8.10.1 Gates (see S-4 – B-326.5-7)

If it is required to encode a gate that controls the flow of water, it must be done using the feature **Gate**. Gates should always be encoded in the closed (to the sea) position.

Remarks:

- **Gate** of type surface must also be covered by a **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area**, **Unsurveyed Area** or **Land Area** feature.
- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the minimum depth over the sill, where known.
- Where the vertical clearance of the gate in the open position is unlimited, the Boolean sub-attribute **vertical clearance unlimited** must be set to *True*.

Distinction: Dry Dock; Floating Dock.

Commented [JW57]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24. Sub-attributes different between SpanOpening and Gate.

Commented [JW58]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24. Sub-attributes different between SpanOpening and Gate.

8.11 Dam

IHO Definition: **DAM**. A barrier to check or confine anything in motion; particularly one constructed to hold back water and raise its level to form a reservoir, or to prevent flooding. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Dam (DAMCON)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of dam	(CATDAM)	1 : weir 2 : dam 3 : flood barrage	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted	EN	0,*

		3 : loose boulders 6 : wooden 7 : metal		
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 6 : subject to inundation or flooding	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for dams that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 43, 44

8.11.1 Dams (see S-4 –B-364.2)

If it is required to encode a dam, weir or flood barrage, it must be done using the feature **Dam**; or as a **Landmark** feature (see clause 7.2) if the dam has geometry of type point.

Remarks:

- **Dam** features must be covered by a **Land Area** feature.
- The geometry of the dam includes any gates. Gates should be encoded as separate **Gate** features.
- If it is required to encode a dam whose seaward edge is coincident with the coastline, it must be done using **Dam**, with a **Shoreline Construction** feature of type curve along its seaward edge, with no value populated for the attribute **category of shoreline construction**.
- If it is required to encode a submerged weir, it should be done using a **Dam** feature, with attribute **water level effect** = *3* (always under water/submerged).

8.11.2 Flood barrages (see S-4 –B-326.7)

If it is required to encode the fixed part of a flood barrage, and the flood barrage is inside an area which is navigable at the optimum display scale for the data, it must be done using a **Dam** feature, with attribute **category of dam** = *3* (flood barrage), and must be covered by a **Land Area** feature. If it is required to encode the opening part of the flood barrage, it must be done using a **Gate** feature, with attribute **category of gate** = *2* (flood barrage gate), and must be covered by a **Depth Area** feature.

When an encoded flood barrage is inside an area that is not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, the gates need not be encoded. In this case, the **Dam** feature must go all the way across the river or lake.

Remarks:

- None.

Distinction: Causeway; Dyke; Oil Barrier; Road.

8.12 Crane

IHO Definition: **CRANE**. A machine for lifting, shifting and lowering objects or materials by means of a swinging boom or with a lifting apparatus supported on an overhead track. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Crane (CRANES)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of crane	(CATCRN)	2 : container crane/gantry 3 : sheerlegs 4 : travelling crane 5 : A-frame 6 : goliath crane	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
lifting capacity	(LIFCAP)		RE	0,1
orientation			C	0,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1

orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		(S) RE	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
radius	(RADIUS)	Metres	RE	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical clearance fixed			C	0,1
vertical clearance value	(VERCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
vertical uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(VERACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : Mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
in the water			BO	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air**	Association	0,*

		Obstruction, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for cranes that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 53.1-3

8.12.1 Cranes (see S-4 – B-328.3)

If it is required to encode a crane, it must be done using the feature **Crane.**

Remarks:

- The purpose of charting these features is primarily to assist the Mariner in identifying particular berths, etc.
- The complex attribute **orientation** is used, where required, to encode the angular distance from true north to the axis of the crane's jib (generally perpendicular to the wharf).
- The position of a sheerleg or a travelling crane is defined as its resting position. If it is required to encode the track, it must be done using the feature **Railway** (see clause 6.14).
- Where fitted, lights should be encoded as described in Section 19, with the **Crane** being used as the structure feature for the relevant light equipment feature(s) (see clause 18.2).
- For cranes located in navigable water, the Boolean attribute **in the water** must be set to *True* to indicate that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display. Where such structures are located in the water it is not required to encode any supporting structures (for example piles, stilts).
- If available and considered important for route planning and/or monitoring, the vertical uncertainty associated with encoded vertical clearance values should also be encoded.

Distinction: Conveyor.

Commented [TS59]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

8.13 Berth

IHO Definition: **BERTH**. A place, generally named or numbered, where a vessel may moor or anchor. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Berth (BERTHS)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of cargo		1 : bulk 2 : container 3 : general 4 : liquid 5 : passenger 6 : livestock 7 : dangerous or hazardous 8 : heavy lift 9 : ballast 10 : dry bulk cargo 11 : liquid bulk cargo 12 : reefer container cargo 13 : Ro-Ro cargo 14 : project cargo 15 : break bulk cargo	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	1,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance length			RE	0,1
horizontal clearance width			RE	0,1
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
minimum berth depth	*(DRVAL1)*		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional	EN	0,*

		5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory 12 : illuminated		
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10)	**Mooring Trot**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 12, 19

8.13.1 Berths (see S-4 – B-321; B-321.6-8)

Numbered, named or lettered berth information must be encoded on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC data, in order to assist the Mariner in berthing activities within ports and harbours.

If it is required to encode a berth, it must be done using the feature **Berth**.

Remarks:

- The berth encodes the named place where a vessel can be moored adjacent to a shoreline construction. The shoreline construction itself should be encoded using the feature **Shoreline Construction** (see clause 8.6).
- The attributes **horizontal clearance length** and **horizontal clearance width** are used to encode the regulatory length and width of the navigable part of the berth as declared by a competent authority, where known.
- The mandatory complex attribute **feature name** is used to encode the name or number of the berth. The attributes **minimum berth depth** and **maximum permitted draught** are used to encode the shoalest physical depth and maximum draught permitted at the berth respectively, where known.
- Terminal facilities (for example container, tanker, ferry) must be encoded, where required, using the feature

Harbour Facility (see clause 22.7).

- Landing places for boats should be encoded as small craft facilities (see clause 22.8).
- For encoding anchor berths, see clause 16.4.

Distinction: Anchor Berth; Bollard; Dock Area; Dolphin; Mooring Area; Mooring Buoy; Shoreline Construction.

8.14 Dolphin

IHO Definition: **DOLPHIN**. A post or group of posts, used for mooring or warping a vessel, or as an aid to navigation. The dolphin may be in the water, on a wharf or on the beach. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: **Dolphin *(MORFAC)***

Primitives: **Point, Surface**

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of dolphin	*(CATMOR)*	1 : mooring dolphin 2 : deviation dolphin 3 : berthing dolphin 4 : fender or breasting dolphin	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS60]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for dolphins that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 20,21

8.14.1 Dolphins (see S-4 – B-327.1-2)

If it is required to encode a dolphin, it must be done using the feature **Dolphin**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a dolphin beacon, this must be done using a beacon feature (see clauses 20.9-13), or a **Pile** feature (see clause 8.4).
- Dolphins that are disused and/or have fallen into disrepair must be encoded, where required, using **Obstruction** or **Pile** features.

Distinction: Pile; Shoreline Construction; Special Purpose/General beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

Deleted: ;

8.15 Bollard

IHO Definition: **BOLLARD**. Small shaped post, mounted on a wharf or dolphin used to secure ship's lines. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: **Bollard *(MORFAC)***

Primitives: **Point**

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Dolphin**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Landmark**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Shoreline Construction**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

8.15.1 Bollards (see S-4 – B-327.4)

If it is required to encode a bollard, it must be done using the feature **Bollard**.

Remarks:

- The identifier of designator for a bollard must be encoded, where required, using the complex attribute **feature name**.
- Bollards should be associated to the feature on which they are mounted using the association **Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15).

Distinction: Pile; Shoreline Construction.

8.16 Dry dock

IHO Definition: **DRY DOCK**. An artificial basin fitted with a gate or caisson, into which vessels can be floated and the water pumped out to expose the vessel's bottom. Also called graving dock. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Dry Dock (DRYDOC)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance length			RE	0,1
horizontal clearance width	*(HORCLR)*		RE	0,1
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private	EN	0,*

		12 : illuminated 14 : public		
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 25

8.16.1 Dry docks (see S-4 – B-326.1)

A dry dock (or graving dock) is an artificial basin into which a ship can be floated for cleaning and repairs. The entrance can be closed by gate or caisson and the water pumped out to expose the vessel's bottom.

If it is required to encode a dry dock, it must be done using the feature **Dry Dock**.

Remarks:

- A dry dock must also be covered by a **Land Area** feature. The boundary of a dry dock must not be encoded as a separate feature (**Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**), except for the gate feature (**Gate**), which may be encoded.
- The attributes **horizontal clearance length** and **horizontal clearance width** are used to encode the regulatory length and width of the navigable part of the dry dock when the gate is open as declared by a competent authority, where known. If required, the minimum physical length and width of the dry dock itself must be populated using the attributes **horizontal length** and **horizontal width**.
- The attributes **depth range minimum value** and **maximum permitted draught** are used to encode the shoalest physical depth in the dock when the gate is open and maximum draught permitted in the dock respectively, where known.

Distinction: Dock Area; Floating Dock; Gate; Shoreline Construction.

8.17 Floating dock

IHO Definition: **FLOATING DOCK**. A form of dry dock consisting of a floating structure of one or more sections which can be partly submerged by controlled flooding to receive a vessel, then raised by pumping out the water so that the vessel's bottom can be exposed. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Floating Dock (FLODOC)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance length			RE	0,1
horizontal clearance width	*(HORCLR)*		RE	0,1
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1

lifting capacity	(LIFCAP)		RE	0,1
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for floating docks that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be

Commented [TS61]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 26

8.17.1 Floating docks (see S-4 – B-326.2)

If it is required to encode a floating dock, it must be done using the feature **Floating Dock**.

Remarks:

- A **Floating Dock** feature must also be covered by **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features. The boundary of a **Floating Dock** feature of type surface must not be encoded as a separate feature (**Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**).
- The attributes **horizontal clearance length** and **horizontal clearance width** are used to encode the regulatory length and width of the navigable part of the floating dock as declared by a competent authority, where known. If required, the minimum physical length and width of the dry dock itself must be populated using the attributes **horizontal length** and **horizontal width**.
- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the shoalest depth of the dock when flooded, and the attribute **maximum permitted draught** is used to encode the maximum draught permitted in the dock, where known.

Distinction: Dock Area; Dry Dock.

8.18 Pontoon

IHO Definition: **PONTOON**. A floating structure, usually rectangular in shape which serves as landing, pier head, bridge support, etc. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Pontoon (PONTON)		
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Bridge Aggregation** (see clause 25.4)	**Bridge**	Aggregation	0,*
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 16

8.18.1 Pontoons (see S-4 – B-324.3)

If it is required to encode a pontoon, it must be done using the feature **Pontoon**.

Remarks:

- A **Pontoon** feature must also be covered by **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features. A **Pontoon** feature of type surface must not be bound by curve features **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**, unless the edge associated with the curve feature is also the boundary of a **Land Area** feature of type surface.

Distinction: Bridge; Dolphin; Mooring Buoy; Shoreline Construction.

Commented [TS62]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

8.19 Dock area

IHO Definition: **DOCK AREA**. An artificially enclosed area within which ships may moor and which may have gates to regulate water level. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.56, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Dock Area (DOCARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of dock	(CATDOC)	1: tidal 2: wet dock	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
horizontal clearance length			RE	0,1
horizontal clearance width			RE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 27, 28

8.19.1 Tidal and non-tidal basins (see S-4 – B-326.3-4)

If it is required to encode a non-navigable dock area, it must be done using the feature **Dock Area**.

Remarks:

- If the dock is navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, it must be encoded using the features **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** (see clause 11.7.4), and the geo features making up the dock limits must be encoded using appropriate features such as **Coastline**, **Shoreline Construction** or **Gate**. The dock must not be encoded as **Dock Area**. If it is required to encode the name of the dock, it must be done using the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area**.
- If it is required to encode a dock which is not navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, it must be done using the feature **Dock Area**, covered by a **Land Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** feature. The name of the dock should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name** on the **Dock Area**. The boundary of a dock must not be encoded as a separate feature (for example **Coastline, Shoreline Construction**), except for the gate feature (**Gate**) for a wet dock, which may be encoded.
- The complex attribute **horizontal clearance fixed** is used to encode the size of the entrance to the dock area, where required.
- The attributes **horizontal clearance length** and **horizontal clearance width** are used to encode the regulatory length and width of the navigable part of the dock area as declared by a competent authority, where known.
- In a non-tidal basin (wet dock), depths may refer to a sounding datum different from that in open waters. If this area is navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, the value of this datum must be encoded using the meta feature **Sounding Datum**, with attribute **vertical datum** = *24* (local datum), co-incident with the area covered by the dock.
- In reality, smaller named, non-navigable dock areas (at the optimum display scale of the ENC data) may be included in major navigable dock areas, with different names or characteristics. To encode this fact, sea areas (**Sea Area/Named Water Area**) may overlap a **Dock Area**.

Distinction: Berth; Cargo Transhipment Area; Dry Dock; Floating Dock; Gate; Harbour Area (Administrative); Harbour Facility.

8.20 Gridiron

IHO Definition: **GRIDIRON**. A structure in the intertidal zone serving as a support for vessels at low stages of the tide to permit work on the exposed portion of the vessel's hull. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Gridiron (GRIDRN)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity

Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 24

8.20.1 Gridirons (see S-4- B-326.8)

If it is required to encode a gridiron, it must be done using the feature **Gridiron**.

Remarks:

- Due to gridirons normally being located in intertidal areas, it is only required to encode **Gridiron** on the largest optimum display scale ENC data.

Distinction: Dry Dock; Floating Dock.

8.21 Lock basin

IHO Definition: **LOCK BASIN**. A wet dock in a waterway, permitting a ship to pass from one level to another. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Lock Basin (LOKBSN)		
Primitives: Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal clearance fixed			C	0,1
horizontal clearance value	(HORCLR)		(S) RE	1,1
horizontal distance uncertainty	(HORACC)		(S) RE	0,1
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private 13 : historic 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NINFOM)			

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 41.1

8.21.1 Locks (see S-4 – B-326.6)

A lock is an enclosure at the entrance to a canal or non-tidal basin. Its ends are closed by lock gates.

If it is required to encode a non-navigable lock basin, it must be done using the feature **Lock Basin**.

Remarks:

- If the lock is navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, it must be encoded using the features **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** (see clause 11.7.4), and the geo features making up the limits of the lock must be encoded using appropriate features such as **Coastline**, **Shoreline Construction** or **Gate**. The lock must not be encoded as **Lock Basin**. If it is required to encode the name of the lock, it must be done using the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area**.
- It if is required to encode a lock that is not navigable at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, it must be done using **Lock Basin**, covered by a **Land Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** feature. The name of the lock should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name** on the **Lock Basin** feature.
- The gates should be encoded as a **Gate** feature (see clause 8.10) with attribute **category of gate** = *4* (lock gate) or *3* (caisson). For smaller optimum display scale ENC data, a lock may be encoded using **Gate** only, without using **Lock Basin**.

Distinction: Canal; Gate.

8.22 Mooring trot

IHO Definition: **MOORING TROT**. A mooring is a place where a vessel may be secured. (IHI Dictionary – S-32).

A mooring trot is a mooring that is composed of ground tackle, mooring cables, buoys and mooring berths on junction cables.

S-101 Geo Feature: Mooring Trot *(C_AGGR)*

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [JW63]: Refer to inconsistency comment at clause 15.8.

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10)	**Berth**, **Cable Submarine**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Obstruction**	Association	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 42

8.22.1 Mooring trots (see S-4 – B-431.6)

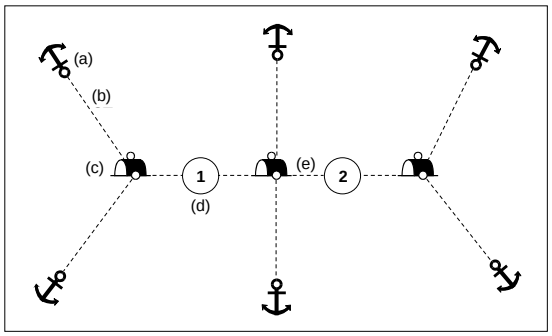


Figure 8-2 – Mooring trot

A complete mooring trot is composed of ground tackle, mooring cables, buoys and mooring berths on junction cables. The following remarks refer to the annotations in Figure 8-2 above:

(a) Ground tackle should be encoded using **Obstruction** features (see clause 13.6), with attribute **category of obstruction** = *9* (ground tackle).
(b) Mooring cables should be encoded using **Cable Submarine** features (see clause 14.2), with attribute **category of cable** = *6* (mooring cable).
(c) Buoys should be encoded using **Mooring Buoy** features.
(d) Mooring berths should be encoded using **Berth** features.
(e) Junction cables should be encoded using **Cable Submarine** features, with attribute **category of cable** = *9* (junction cable).

All these features should be aggregated in a **Mooring Trot** feature, using the association **Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10), with the name of the mooring trot being populated using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Mooring Trot**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode the name of a mooring trot, the **Mooring Trot** should be encoded using geometry of type surface. The extent of the surface should cover the extent of all the components of the mooring trot.
- If it is required to encode the extent of an unnamed mooring trot, this may be done using a **Mooring Trot** feature having no geometry.
- Names or numbers of individual moorings within the mooring trot must be encoded using the attribute **feature name** on the relevant **Berth** feature.

Distinction: Berth; Mooring Buoy; Mooring Area.

9 Geo Features – Topographic Terms

9.1 Sea area/named water area

IHO Definition: **SEA AREA/NAMED WATER AREA**. A geographically defined part of the sea or other navigable waters. It may be specified within its limits by its proper name. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.151, November 2000).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Sea Area/Named Water Area (SEAARE)				
Primitives: Point, Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of sea area	(CATSEA)	2 : gat 3 : bank 4 : deep 5 : bay 6 : trench 7 : basin 8 : mud flats 9 : reef 10 : ledge 11 : canyon 12 : narrows 13 : shoal 14 : knoll 15 : ridge 16 : seamount 17 : pinnacle 18 : abyssal plain 19 : plateau 20 : spur 21 : shelf 22 : trough 23 : saddle 24 : abyssal hill 25 : apron 26 : archipelagic apron 27 : borderland 28 : continental margin 29 : continental rise 30 : escarpment 31 : fan 32 : fracture zone 33 : gap 34 : guyot 35 : hill 36 : hole 37 : levee 38 : median valley 39 : moat 40 : mountains 41 : peak 42 : province 43 : rise 44 : sea channel 45 : seamount chain	EN	0,1 †

		46 : shelf-edge 47 : sill 48 : slope 49 : terrace 50 : valley 51 : canal 52 : lake 53 : river 54 : reach 55 : intertidal cay 56 : submarine volcano		
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,* †
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† At least one of the attributes **category of sea area** or **feature name** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

9.1.1 Sea areas (see S-4 – B-550)

Undersea features and sea areas in general, including intertidal areas, may be identified by their names and may be delimited by the spatial types used by other geo features (for example depth contours, coastlines). If it is required to encode these areas, this must be done using the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area**.

Remarks:

- This feature has a use similar to that of the feature **Land Region** (see clause 5.11), but for the sea.
- A **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature of type surface should be bounded, if possible, by existing curves used by other features (for example **Depth Contour**, **Coastline**). If necessary, however, this surface may be bounded by other curves created to close the surface, or to describe a new surface.
- **Sea Area/Named Water Area** features of type surface may overlap.

- Inactive submarine volcanos must be encoded, if required, as **Sea Area** with **category of sea area** = *56* (submarine volcano). Active submarine volcanos must be encoded, if required, using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6).
- For additional guidance on encoding geographic names, see clause 2.5.8.

Distinction: Administration Area; Depth Area; Seabed Area.

10 Geo Features – Tides, Currents

10.1 Tidal data (see S-4 – B-406 to B-408)

The inclusion of tidal information in ECDIS is optional. As such, for ENC only tidal stream and current information is required to be encoded. The implementation of tidal models based on predictions or applications to incorporate real-time tidal observations in ECDIS will be the subject of additional Product Specifications utilising the S-100 Universal Hydrographic Data Model.

10.2 Tidal stream – flood/ebb

IHO Definition: **TIDAL STREAM**. Approximate tidal stream rates given as discrete rate values for flood and ebb flow during springs. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.173, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb (TS_FEB)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of tidal stream	(CAT_TS)	1 : flood stream 2 : ebb stream 3 : other tidal flow	EN	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
orientation			C	1,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		(S) RE	1,1
speed			C	1,1
speed maximum	(CURVEL)	10.0 >= speed maximum > speed minimum	(S) RE	1,1
speed minimum		0.1 <= speed minimum < speed maximum	(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity

Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: H 40, 41

10.2.1 Tidal stream (flood/ebb) (see S-4 – B-407 and B-407.4)

The term “tidal streams” (French: “courants de marée”, US usage: “tidal currents”), is used to designate the periodical horizontal movements of the water, which are astronomical in origin. These are distinguished from “currents” (French: “courants généraux”), which are not dependent on astronomical conditions. In practice the navigator experiences a combination of tidal stream and current. Tidal streams are defined by the direction towards which they flow. The terms “flood stream” and “ebb stream” are used for designating the horizontal movement of the water when the tide is respectively rising or falling. To avoid any ambiguity, in the case of streams which do not turn at about the time of local high or low water, an indication must be given of the direction towards which the stream flows.

Where data are inadequate for tabulated information (**Tidal Stream Panel Data** – see clause 10.5), or where otherwise required, single observations comprising flood and ebb directions and/or rates, preferably corresponding to maximum rates at the spring tide, should be encoded.

If it is required to encode tidal stream information that is limited to flood and ebb directions and/or values, it must be done using the feature **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**.

Remarks:

- Maximum directions and rates (velocities) of tidal streams during springs, where known, must be encoded in knots using the complex attributes **orientation** and **speed**, and should be quoted to one decimal place. In rivers and estuaries where there are permanent currents caused by the flow of river water, such currents must be included in the calculation of the rate. Where the speed of the current in a river or estuary is so variable as to make it impractical to indicate a value, **speed** (sub-attribute **speed maximum**) should be populated with an empty (null) value.

Distinction: Current – Non-Gravitational; Tidal Stream Panel Data.

10.3 Current – non-gravitational

IHO Definition: **CURRENT – NON-GRAVITATIONAL**. Any current that is caused by other than tide producing forces. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Current – Non-Gravitational (CURENT)				
Primitives: Point				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
orientation			C	1,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		(S) RE	1,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
speed			C	1,1
speed maximum	(CURVEL)	15.0 >= speed maximum > speed minimum	(S) RE	1,1
speed minimum		0.1 <= speed minimum < speed maximum	(S) RE	0,1
status	(STATUS)	5 : periodic/intermittent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
Feature Associations				

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: H 42, 43

10.3.1 Current data (see S-4 – B-408)

The term “current(s)” in this document is used to describe water movements which are generally constant in direction, and are not dependent on astronomical conditions (that is, are non-gravitational). A current is described by the direction towards which it is running. For tidal streams, see clauses 10.2 and 10.5.

Currents occur as:
- The flow of river water in rivers and estuaries;
- Permanent flows in other restricted waters, for example İstanbul Boğazı (Bosporus);
- Permanent or seasonal oceanic currents;
- Temporary wind-induced currents.

It is particularly important to depict currents (both the main flows and permanent eddies) which could set a vessel towards dangers.

If it is required to encode a non-gravitational current, it must be done using the feature **Current – Non-Gravitational**.

Remarks:
- Maximum rates (velocities) of currents, where known, must be encoded in knots using the complex attributes **orientation** and **speed**, and should be quoted to one decimal place. Ideally, the minimum and maximum strengths should be quoted, where known, if the strength varies.
- In tidal waters where the flow of river water alternately reinforces the ebb tidal stream and reduces the flood, the combined effect must be encoded, where required, for the convenience of the navigator; that is, the combined current must be encoded using the features **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb** or **Tidal Stream Panel Data** (see clauses 10.2 and 10.5). In restricted waters where tides are negligible, the direction and/or rate of flow should be encoded using **Current – Non-Gravitational**.
- Ocean currents are permanent or seasonal, are somewhat variable in strength and direction, and generally cover broad areas. In cases where the current strength and direction are subject to seasonal variations, this should be indicated using the complex attribute **periodic date range**. This may require multiple **Current – Non-Gravitational** features with attributes populated in accordance with the seasonal variations to be coincident in the ENC. Where the direction of an ocean current is so variable that it is not practicable to show this information, the complex attribute **orientation** (**orientation value**) must be populated with an empty (null) value.
- Local weather conditions can produce significant temporary wind-induced currents which cannot be charted. If there is a known hazard, for example if winds from a particular direction have been found to endanger vessels by setting them on to shoals unexpectedly, a cautionary note may be added using the feature **Caution Area** (see clause 16.10). If considered necessary, the note may refer to further information in other publications, such as Sailing Directions.

Distinction: Tidal Stream (Flood/Ebb); Tidal Stream Panel Data.

10.4 Water turbulence

IHO Definition: **WATER TURBULENCE**. The disturbance of water caused by the interaction of any combination of waves, currents, tidal streams, wind, shoal patches and obstructions. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Water Turbulence (WATTUR)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of water turbulence	(CATWAT)	1 : breakers 2 : eddies 3 : overfalls 4 : tide rips 5 : bombora	EN	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: H 44, 45; K 17

10.4.1 Overfalls, races, breakers, eddies (see S-4 – B-423)

If it is required to encode a disturbance of water, it must be done using the feature **Water Turbulence**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a breaker over an off-lying shoal, it must be done using a **Water Turbulence** feature at the same position as the feature causing the breaker (for example **Underwater/Awash Rock**).
- A **Water Turbulence** feature of type surface must be covered by **Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features as appropriate.

Distinction: Rapids; Waterfall.

10.5 Tidal stream panel data

IHO Definition: **TIDAL STREAM PANEL DATA**. Approximate tidal stream characteristics given as discrete value sets at a specified interval before and/or after a high or low water. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.176, November 2000).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Tidal Stream Panel Data (TS_PAD)				
Primitives: Point, Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
station name	*(TS_TSP)*		TE	1,1
station number	*(TS_TSP)*		TE	0,1
tidal stream panel values	*(TS_TSP)*		C	1,* (ordered)
reference tide		1 : high water 2 : low water	(S) EN	1,1
reference tide type		1 : springs 2 : neaps 3 : mean	(S) EN	1,1
stream depth			(S) RE	0,1
tidal stream value			(S) C	1,* (ordered)
orientation			(S) C	1,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
orientation value			(S) RE	1,1
speed maximum		10.0 >= speed maximum	(S) RE	1,1
time relative to tide			(S) RE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
Feature Associations				

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: H 31,46

10.5.1 Tidal stream panels (see S-4 – B-407 and B-407.2-3)

The term “tidal streams” (French: “courants de marée”, US usage: “tidal currents”), is used to designate the periodical horizontal movements of the water, which are astronomical in origin. These are distinguished from “currents” (French: “courants généraux”), which are not dependent on astronomical conditions. In practice the navigator experiences a combination of tidal stream and current. Tidal streams are defined by the direction towards which they flow. The terms “flood stream” and “ebb stream” are used for designating the horizontal movement of the water when the tide is respectively rising or falling. To avoid any ambiguity, in the case of streams which do not turn at about the time of local high or low water, an indication must be given of the direction towards which the stream flows.

If it is required to encode the information generally shown on paper charts as a tidal stream panel and stations, it must be done using the feature **Tidal Stream Panel Data**.

Tidal stream values encoded in this way should be spring rates; that is, the tidal stream rates associated with a tidal range which is defined as the difference in height between MHWS and MLWS.

Remarks:

- The mandatory complex attribute **tidal stream panel values** is structured such that, in combination with attributes **station name** and **station number**, the equivalent layout of a paper chart tidal stream panel can be reproduced in an ECDIS Pick Report display. An example of the encoding of a **Tidal Stream Panel Data** feature as compared to the S-57 object class **TS_PAD** is included below:

  S-57 Encoding: Population of attribute TS_TSP

  0014,PLYMOUTH (DEVONPORT),HW,113,0.1,332,0.6,331,1.1,342,1.0,347,0.7,333,0.5,317,0.3,178,0.3,146,0.6,140,1.0,143,1.1,143,0.8,138,0.3

  S-101 Encoding: (Complex attributes in italics, encoded values in blue text)

Tidal Stream Panel Data (feature)			
station name	Plymouth (Devonport)		
station number	0014		
tidal stream panel values			
reference tide	high water		
reference tide type	springs		
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	113
	speed maximum		0.1
	time relative to tide		-6
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	332
	speed maximum		0.6
	time relative to tide		-5
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	331
	speed maximum		1.1

	time relative to tide		-4
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	342
	speed maximum		1.0
	time relative to tide		-3
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	347
	speed maximum		0.7
	time relative to tide		-2
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	333
	speed maximum		0.5
	time relative to tide		-1
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	317
	speed maximum		0.3
	time relative to tide		0
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	178
	speed maximum		0.3
	time relative to tide		1
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	146
	speed maximum		0.6
	time relative to tide		2
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	140
	speed maximum		1.0
	time relative to tide		3
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	143
	speed maximum		1.1
	time relative to tide		4
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	143
	speed maximum		0.8
	time relative to tide		5
tidal stream value	*orientation*	orientation value	138
	speed maximum		0.3
	time relative to tide		6

Table 10-1 – Tide Stream Panel Data - Example

- Where an encoded complex attribute **tidal stream value**, sub-attribute **speed maximum** has a value of zero (indicating slack water), the corresponding sub-attribute **orientation** / **orientation value** must be populated with an empty (null) value.

Distinction: Current – Non-Gravitational; Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb.

11 Geo Features – Depths

11.1 Generalisation of depth portrayal

When a survey or chart is reduced in scale the generalization that is required has several effects:

a. Deeper soundings tend to be eliminated while the shoaler ones are retained for safety. Sufficient numbers of deeper soundings should be retained to show the full range of depth. This is to assist the navigator who uses their echo sounder to help verify their position, or the Mariner choosing an anchorage of suitable depth.

b. Generalization proceeds by the inclusion of shoals lying to seaward of the principal contour, and by the smoothing of severely indented contours, with the effect of pushing the contours seaward. However, as a shoal which rises steeply from deep water is much more of a hazard than one which rises gradually, the encoder must ensure that the contours are not pushed seaward unduly. If the encoder gives the impression that a Mariner will get warning of too close an approach to the danger, by relying on their echo sounder to show gradually shoaling depth - when the danger is, in fact “steep-to” - they may seriously mislead and endanger the ENC user.

c. With the “expansion” of shoals, described above, it may become increasingly difficult to find space on an ENC dataset to show the line of deepest soundings through a channel, or even to show a channel at all. Yet even at small optimum display scales it is important to show the usable channels and indicate their least depth. The encoder may have to make greater use of depth contours than soundings in depicting narrow channels.

d. Even such dangers as drying rocks and islets require generalization in coastal areas. This is in recognition of the principle that, whereas they are particularly dangerous in isolation and must then be shown as precisely as possible, where they occur in groups a representative depiction is permissible, showing the outermost features as individually as space permits.

11.2 Representation of depth: General

Some of the principles of depth depiction are summarized below:

a. The least depth over shoals and banks, and over sills (bars) in navigable channels, must be shown. Particular attention should also be paid to full and accurate representation of all other “critical” areas, for example on and adjacent to leading lines, controlling depths in fairways and along recommended tracks, in anchorages, alongside jetties, quays and berths and in the entrances to harbours and basins. Maximum as well as minimum depth should be shown where possible, for example to show the line of deepest water in narrow channels. However, deeper soundings on the sloping side of a bank near to the crest line should not be selected if they could give the impression that there is a deeper passage across the crest between shoaler soundings.

b. Soundings and contours must be used to complement each other in giving a reasonable representation of the seabed, including all significant breaks of slope.

c. The density of soundings should be determined by the type of seabed. Flat or evenly sloping areas, and banks of unconsolidated sediment, should have a minimum of soundings, fairly evenly spaced, but gradually becoming more widely spaced as the depth increases. Irregular seabed topography should be represented by a denser, and probably irregular, pattern of soundings. A steep gradient should be represented by close contours, undistorted by soundings.

d. In changeable areas, where surveys of different dates adjoin and do not match exactly, gaps in the contours may be left to indicate the discontinuity of depth to the navigator.

e. Where practicable, soundings on smaller optimum display scale ENCs should be selected from those shown on the larger optimum display scale ENCs.

f. In areas navigable only at high water, drying heights must be selected according to the same principles as soundings.

g. Where surveys are inadequate, it may be advisable to omit some of the standard contour lines.

11.3 Sounding

IHO Definition: **SOUNDING**. Measured or charted depth of water (may be a drying height), or the measurement of such a depth, which has been reduced to a vertical datum. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Sounding (SOUNDG)		
Primitives: Pointset		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
display uncertainties			BO	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,1
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry 11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by levelling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 10, 14, 15

11.3.1 Soundings (see S-4 – B-412 and B-413.1)

A sounding associated with a rock or coral pinnacle which is an obstruction to navigation must be encoded using the feature **Underwater/Awash Rock** (INT1 – K14, see clause 13.4) with attribute **value of sounding** populated with the value of the sounding.

The geometry of soundings and no bottom found depths (see clause 11.8) is held in a 3-dimensional array (latitude, longitude, depth). In the interests of efficiency, multiple soundings should be encoded in one spatial type (known as “grouping” of soundings), provided that all the spatial and geo feature attributes are common to the group.

As the sounding multiplication factor (CMFZ) for ENC is 10, soundings may be encoded to one decimal place of a metre. Drying soundings must be indicated by a negative value.

For soundings surrounded by a danger line, see clauses 13.1 and 13.2.

Population of the attributes **quality of vertical measurement**, **source date** and the spatial attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** are described in the Table below:

Sounding	S-4	INT 1	**quality of horizontal measurement**	**quality of vertical measurement**	Remarks
In true position	B-412.1	I10		*1* or *<undefined>*	
Out of position on paper chart	B-412.2	I11 I12		*1* or *<undefined>*	Spatial type must be encoded at the true position. There is no “sounding, out of position” in an ENC.
Lower reliability	B-412.4	I14	*4*	*4*	
Drying	B-413	I15		*1* or *<undefined>*	Negative value
Doubtful	B-424.4	I2		*3*	Existence doubtful should be encoded using **status** = *18*
Reported but not confirmed		I3 I4	*5*	*9*	If available, the year of report must be encoded using the attribute **reported date**

Table 11-1 – Soundings – Attribute encoding

Remarks:

- Encoders are advised to use caution when considering encoding soundings that are shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area, as **Sounding** features will not be displayed when utilising some ECDIS display settings. Where it is considered that a sounding that is shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area may be a hazard to navigation, encoders should preferably conduct further investigation of source material in order to encode additional depth contour and depth area information more relevant to the sounding. Alternatively, encoders may consider using an alternate feature (for example **Obstruction**) to encode the depth.
- The attribute **technique of vertical measurement** must only be populated for **Sounding** features if it is different from the value of **technique of vertical measurement** encoded on an overlapping **Quality of Survey** feature (see clause 3.11); and the information is considered to be important to navigation.
- Where **Sounding** features are covered by the meta feature **Quality of Survey**, the attribute **quality of vertical measurement** must not be populated unless different from the value of **quality of vertical measurement** populated for the **Quality of Survey**.
- For all **Sounding** features of depth 30 metres or less, an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 25.4) must be associated to the sounding geometry, using the association **Spatial Association**. See also clause 3.8.1.3 (**Quality of Bathymetric Data**).
- The attribute **display uncertainties** is a cartographic attribute intended to reduce screen clutter in some ECDIS display settings by limiting the display of the horizontal position accuracies of a sounding to those considered by the encoder to be important to the Mariner, and is mandatory for all **Sounding** of depth 30 metres or less. Factors to be considered in populating this attribute include depth in relation to the general nature of the seabed, proximity to other dangers, intention of the ENC, proximity to routes taken by vessels, and the types of vessels intended to utilise the ENC.
- Encoders must exercise caution when using the option to group soundings; particularly where they are included in an ENC Update as this may impact negatively on ECDIS performance regarding Mariner interrogation of Updates. When grouping soundings in an ENC dataset, creation of excessively large sounding groups should be avoided so as to reduce the impact when a sounding is to be removed by ENC Update; and new soundings to be added by ENC Update should not be added to already existing sounding groups.
- For depths indicated as no bottom found, see clause 11.8.

Distinction: Depth Area; Depth – No Bottom Found; Obstruction; Underwater/Awash Rock; Wreck.

11.4 Dredged area

IHO Definition: **DREDGED AREA**. An area of the bottom of a body of water which has been deepened by dredging. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Dredged Area (DRGARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range maximum value	(DRVAL2)	DRVAL2 >= DRVAL1	RE	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)	DRVAL1 <= DRVAL2	RE	1,1
dredged date	*(SORDAT)*		TD	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	10 : maintained depth 11 : not regularly maintained	EN	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar	EN	0,*

		3 : found by multi beam 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept		
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 20-23

11.4.1 Dredged areas (see S-4 – B-414)

If it is required to encode dredged areas, this must be done using the feature **Dredged Area**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **depth range minimum value** must be used to encode the dredged depth for the dredged area. Where required, the attribute **depth range maximum depth** must be used to encode the deeper depth where a range of depths for the dredged area is indicated on the source.
- The boundary of a dredged area should not have coincident curve geo features encoded, unless part of the boundary corresponds to the shoreline (see clause 5.3.1).
- Dredged areas are often subject to siltation, resulting in shoaler depths being identified in the dredged area than the designed dredged depth. Where required, the shoal depths should be encoded using **Sounding**, with the appropriate underlying depth information (**Depth Area** and, if required, **Depth Contour**) to support the depths. Alternatively, the attribute **depth range maximum value** for the **Dredged Area** may be set to the designed dredged depth for the dredged area, and the attribute **depth range minimum value** set to the value of the shoalest depth, or a **Caution Area** feature may be encoded covering the shoaler depth area with the depth information provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). Where the shoal depths are close to the edge of the dredged area, the dredged area limit may be adjusted

to exclude the shoal depths from the surface. See also S-4 – B-414.5.

- The attribute **source date** may be used to encode the year of the latest control survey for dredged areas where the dredged depth is not maintained. For dredged areas where the dredged depth is maintained, it is not required to indicate the year of dredging.
- Where the complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** is populated for a **Dredged Area** feature, it must not be equivalent to or degrade the uncertainty indicated by the complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** for the instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** associated to the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** meta feature (see clauses 3.8 and 24.5).
- **Dredged Area** features are part of the Skin of the Earth.

Distinction: Depth Area; Dumping Ground; Swept Area.

11.5 Swept area

IHO Definition: **SWEPT AREA**. An area that has been determined to be clear of navigational dangers to a specified depth. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Swept Area (SWPARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	1,1
swept date	*(SORDAT)*		TD	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 24

11.5.1 Swept areas (see S-4 – B-415)

If it is required to encode a swept area, it must be done using the feature **Swept Area**.

Spot soundings and depth contours shown in these areas must be encoded using **Sounding** and **Depth Contour** features. A meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must be encoded to provide quality information for the **Swept Area** (see clause 3.8). The **depth range maximum** value for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature must be equal to the swept depth (**depth range minimum**) value for the **Swept Area**. The complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** may be used on the associated **Spatial Quality** feature (see clause 24.5) to specify the uncertainty of the swept depth value, or otherwise must be populated as *0*; **horizontal position uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) on the associated **Spatial Quality** must be populated as *0*. Where required, a separate **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature must be encoded to provide depth or positional accuracy information for any underlying bathymetry within the swept area.

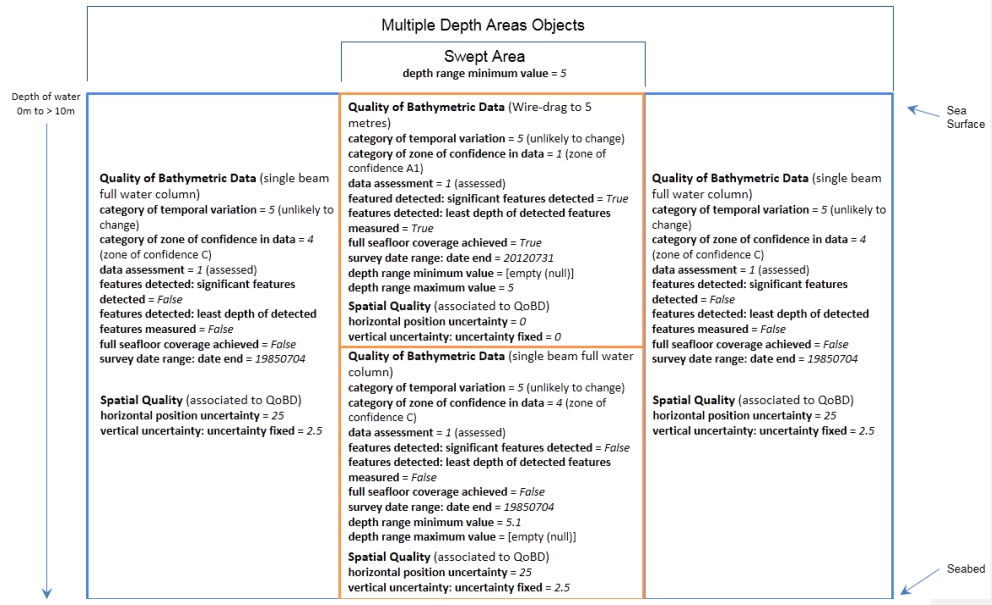


Figure 11-1 – Swept areas – Quality of bathymetric data

Even if the area contains no spot soundings or depth contours, a **Swept Area** feature must overlap **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** features. If there is insufficient depth information to allow the attributes **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** to be encoded on a **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** feature, **depth range minimum value** should be set to the swept depth and **depth range maximum value** should be set to an empty (null) value.

Remarks:

- The attribute **depth range minimum value** must be used to encode the swept depth for the swept area.
- Where required, the date of sweeping must be populated using the attribute **swept date**.
- **Swept Area** features must not overlap.

Distinction: Depth Area; Dredged Area; Unsurveyed Area.

11.6 Depth contour

IHO Definition: **DEPTH CONTOUR**. A line connecting points of equal water depth which is sometimes significantly displaced outside of soundings, symbols, and other chart detail for clarity as well as generalization. Depth contours, therefore, often represent an approximate location of the line of equal depth as related to the surveyed line delineated on the source. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Depth Contour (DEPCNT)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
value of depth contour	(VALDCO)		RE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 15, 30, 31

11.6.1 Depth contours (see S-4 – B-404.2; B-410; B-411 to B-411.5; B-413 and B-413.1)

The standard series of depth contour lines to be encoded for ENC is: drying line (0 contour – where tides are appreciable), 2, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 50, 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 1000, 2000 metres, etc. The 2, 5 and/or 15 metre contours may be omitted where they serve no useful purpose, and on smaller optimum display scale ENC data all depth contours to 30 metres (1:1500000 and 1:3000000 optimum display scales) or 200 metres (1:10000000 optimum display scale) should be omitted. It is not necessary for the complete sequence of contours to be shown, for example on steep slopes and around isolated pinnacles.

Supplementary contours, for example at 3, 8, 25, 40, 75 metres and multiples of 10 or 100 metres may be shown, if the available data permit, to delineate particular bathymetric features where soundings would otherwise be the only depth information over a large area, or for the benefit of particular categories of shipping. The 2500 metre contour may be required for measuring Continental Shelf limits (see UNCLOS Article 76).

On the larger optimum display scale ENC datasets, for example datasets intended for harbour navigation or berthing; or in areas where vessel under keel clearance is critical, a smaller contour interval may be used (for example 1 metre, or 0.1 metre if it is desired to provide the same depth accuracy as for soundings) in the depth range suitable for the deepest draught vessels that may navigate in the area. Such encoding is intended

to best utilize the safety depth indication functionality of the ECDIS.

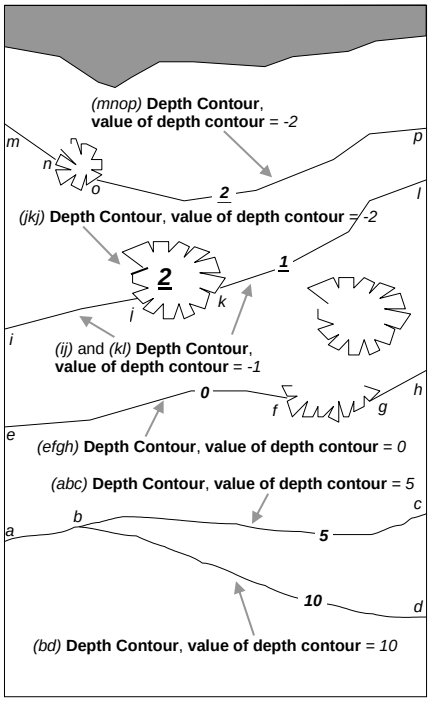


Figure 11-2 – Depth contours

The boundary of a drying rocky area (see INT1 - J20) or coral reef (see INT1 - J22) may be coincident with the zero metre contour (see '*fg*' in the Figure). If it is required to encode this boundary, it must be done using the feature **Depth Contour** with the attribute **value of depth contour** = *0*.

On the source, the presentation of contours in areas of steep slope is sometimes generalised so that closely spaced contours are removed to leave a single contour (see '*ab*' in Figure). In such cases, this contour must be encoded using the shallowest depth of the slope.

Wherever possible, contours must be closed, or connected to the border of the dataset, a coastline feature or another contour, in order to define closed areas.

Spatial quality associated with contours may be encoded using the **Spatial Quality** information type, attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** (see clause 28.13). This should only be encoded if the spatial quality of the contour(s) is different to that indicated for the overall quality of the bathymetric data in the area as described for the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** meta feature (see clause 3.8). However, in order to provide an additional indication to the mariner of areas of lower reliability bathymetric data, contours in depths of 30 metres or less may have the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** on the associated **Spatial Quality** information type populated with value *4* (approximate).

Remarks:

- Encoded drying contours must be indicated by negative values for the attribute **value of depth contour**.

Distinction: Coastline; Depth Area; Sounding.

11.7 Depth area

IHO Definition: **DEPTH AREA**. A water area whose depth is within a defined range of values. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.51, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Depth Area (DEPARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range maximum value	(DRVAL2)	DRVAL2 > DRVAL1	RE	1,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)	DRVAL1 < DRVAL2	RE	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

11.7.1 Depth areas (see S-4 – B-410)

The sea area, the intertidal area and the navigable parts of rivers, lakes and canals must be divided into depth areas, each of them having a range of depth.

As many depth areas as possible must be created using encoded depth contours.

Remarks:

- The value of **depth range maximum value** for the deepest **Depth Area** on the ENC dataset should be encoded with the next deepest depth contour from the standard range of depth contours appropriate to the optimum display scale of the ENC data (see clause 11.6.1), noting that the depth ranges used for adjoining ENC datasets of the same or similar optimum display scale must also be considered.
- **Depth Area** features are part of the Skin of the Earth.

11.7.2 Geometry of depth areas

Where surfaces are not closed on the source, it may be necessary to close these surfaces using edges without associated curve features. This is mandatory at the boundary of a dataset (see Figure 11-3 below).

In Figure 11-3 below, the annotation "**min**" equates to the attribute **depth range minimum value** and the annotation "**max**" equates to the attribute **depth range maximum value**.

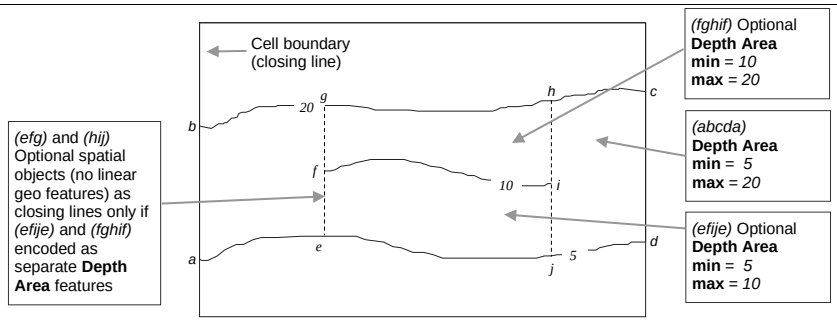


Figure 11-3 – Geometry of depth areas

Remarks:

- For short isolated sections of **Depth Contour** features such as (*fi*), it is up to the producing authority whether to encode the small areas (*efije* and *fghif*) as separate **Depth Area** features, or to encode only the curve (*fi*) as a floating **Depth Contour** feature within a single **Depth Area** (*abcda*) having attributes **depth range minimum value** = *5* and **depth range maximum value** = *20*. NOTE: In Figure 11-3, if the optional **Depth Area** features are encoded, the depth area (*abcda*) will be split into two separate **Depth Area** features (*abgea*) and (*jhcdj*), both having **depth range minimum value** = *5* and **depth range maximum value** = *20*.

11.7.3 Use of attributes depth range minimum value and depth range maximum value for depth areas in general

For each depth area, **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** should be encoded with the values corresponding to the shallowest and deepest depths in that area. These values, except for the shallowest and deepest areas, should be chosen from the values of the depth contours encoded in the dataset, however the values for isolated shallow or deep areas may be taken from the shallowest or deepest measured depth (see items 2 and 3 in Figure 11-4 below).

A drying area, within which a drying height is indicated without a true position, should be encoded using a **Depth Area** feature, with **depth range minimum value** set to the value of the drying height and **depth range maximum value** set to a dataset contour value (usually zero). Alternatively, **depth range minimum value** for the **Depth Area** may be set to –H (see NOTE (a) associated with Figure 11-4 below for definition of H), with the drying height encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text** (for example *Dries 1.4*).

If a depth area is adjacent to a non-navigable waterway, a closing curve (that is, no curve geo feature) should be encoded at the boundary between navigable and non-navigable waters. See clause 11.7.4.

In Figure 11-4 below, the annotation "**min**" equates to the attribute **depth range minimum value** and the annotation "**max**" equates to the attribute **depth range maximum value**.

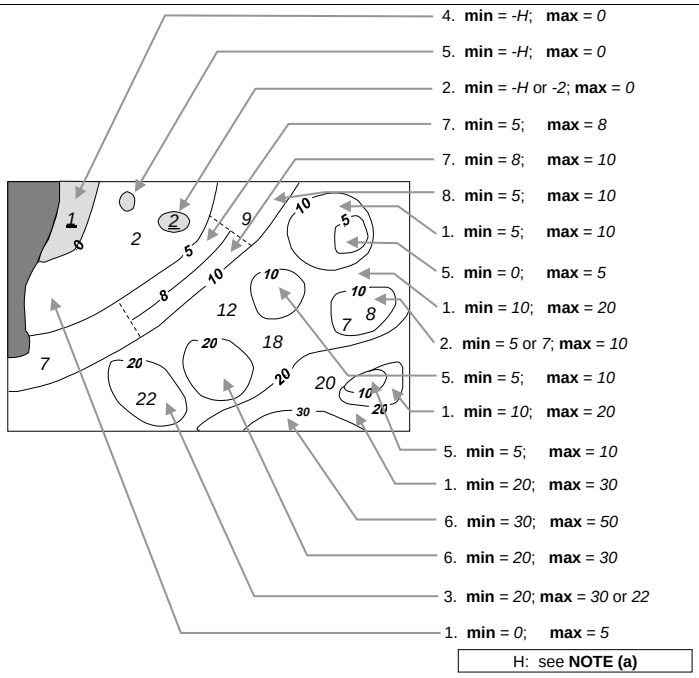


Figure 11-4 – Depth areas

NOTE (a): H = Height of the coastline datum above sounding datum, or a rounded value (for example (1) the value of the highest drying contour indicated on the source document; or (2) zero, if the coastline datum is the same as the sounding datum).

In the following clauses, the paragraph numbers refer to the item numbers in Figure 11-4. These clauses do not cover all encoding scenarios.

1. If the depth area is bounded by two or more depth contours:
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the dataset depth contour immediately shallower than the value of **depth range maximum value**.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the deepest depth contour bounding the area.
2. If the depth area is only bounded by one depth contour and the deepest depth is shown by a depth contour, and the shallowest depth is shown by a sounding (an isolated shoal area):
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the dataset depth contour immediately shallower than the value of the sounding or -H. However if the shallowest sounding within the area is considered to be the least depth of the shoal, **depth range minimum value** may be populated with the value of this sounding.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the depth contour.

   NOTE: In the case where the shallowest depth in the area is equal to the bounding depth contour, both **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** may be populated with the value of the depth contour.
3. If the depth area is only bounded by one depth contour and the deepest depth is shown by a sounding and the shallowest depth is shown by a depth contour (an isolated deep area):
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the depth contour.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the dataset depth contour immediately deeper than or equal to the value of the sounding. However if the deepest sounding within the area is considered to be the deepest depth of the deep, **depth range maximum value** may be populated with the value of this sounding.
4. If the shallowest depth is defined by the coastline:

- **depth range minimum value** should take the value of -H.
- **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the shallowest dataset depth contour bounding the area.

5. If the depth area is bounded by only one depth contour, contains no soundings, and is a shoal:
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the dataset depth contour immediately shallower than the value of the depth contour, or -H.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the depth contour.
6. If the depth area is bounded by only one depth contour, contains no soundings, and is a deep:
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the depth contour.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the standard depth contour immediately deeper than the value of the depth contour.
7. If the depth area is bounded by an incomplete depth contour on one side (such as in incompletely surveyed area), and a complete depth contour on the other:
   - These areas are optional. See clause 11.7.2 above and associated Figure 11-3.
8. If the depth area is bounded by complete depth contours, but contains an incomplete (floating) depth contour:
   - **depth range minimum value** should take the value of the shallowest depth contour.
   - **depth range maximum value** should take the value of the deepest depth contour.

   NOTE: Where the optional depth areas in paragraph 7 above are encoded, this will result in two discrete **Depth Area** features, one on each side of the encoded optional depth areas. See clause 11.7.2 above and associated Figure 11-3.

11.7.4 Rivers, canals, lakes, basins, locks

Where these areas are navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, they must be encoded using the Skin of the Earth features **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area**, and coastline-type features **Coastline** or **Shoreline Construction**. If it is required to encode the nature and name of the area, it must be done using the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area**.

Where these areas are required and are not navigable at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, they must be encoded using the features **River**, **Canal** or **Lake**. These features must be covered by **Land Area** features.

11.7.5 Areas of continual change (see S-4 – B-416)

If it is required to encode an area of continually changing bathymetry, it must be done by populating the attribute **category of temporal variation** = *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected) for the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature (see clause 3.8).

Such areas must always overlap **Depth Area** features.

An area on the source with the indication "Less water" should be encoded using the feature **Caution Area** (see clause 16.10). Caution notes in such areas must be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

If it is required to encode sandwaves, this must be done using the feature **Sandwave** (see clause 12.4).

Distinction: Depth Contour; Dredged Area; Obstruction; Sea Area/Named Water Area; Sounding; Unsurveyed Area; Wreck.

11.8 Depth – no bottom found

IHO Definition: **DEPTH – NO BOTTOM FOUND**. Upon investigation the bottom was not found at this depth. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Depth – No Bottom Found *(SOUNDG)*

Primitives: Pointset

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 13

11.8.1 No bottom found depths (see S-4 – B-412.3)

If it is required to encode a depth at a point at which it is indicated as having no bottom found at the value shown, it must be done using the feature **Depth – No Bottom Found**.

The geometry of soundings (see clause 11.3.1) and no bottom found depths is held in a 3-dimensional array (latitude, longitude, depth). In the interests of efficiency, multiple no bottom found depths should be encoded in

one spatial type, provided that all the spatial and geo feature attributes are common to the group.

Even though the sounding multiplication factor (CMFZ) for ENC is {10}, no bottom found depths must be encoded to a whole metre value.

Remarks:

- For encoding areas that have been systematically surveyed and for which the depth has not been found (for example, for LIDAR surveys), see clause 11.5.1.

Distinction: Depth Area; Sounding; Swept Area.

11.9 Areas with inadequate depth information

11.9.1 Inadequately surveyed areas (see S-4 – B-417)

Inadequately surveyed areas may be defined as those areas where bathymetry is based on older lead line surveys or other surveys which are either open in nature (for example reconnaissance surveys), or are not hydrographic surveys (for example seismic surveys). These types of surveys are inadequate for identifying all shoals that may exist between lines of soundings, or may not be "shoal-biased" in their selection of recorded depths.

An inadequately surveyed area should be encoded using either an **Unsurveyed Area** feature, within which soundings and contours may be encoded (but not depth areas), or using **Depth Area** features. The attributes **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** for such depth areas should have explicit values.

The area must also be covered by **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features (see clause 3.8), having appropriate attribute values, usually **category of temporal variation** = *6* (unassessed), **features detected** (**significant features detected**) = *False*, and **full seafloor coverage achieved** = *False*. Further information may be given using the meta feature **Quality of Survey** (see clause 3.11), where appropriate.

A cautionary note should also be encoded using a **Caution Area** feature of type surface (see clause 16.10), complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

11.9.2 Bathymetry in areas of minimal depiction of detail on paper charts

Where areas of little or no depth information exist within a specified ENC usage, they should be encoded using one of the following options:

11.9.2.1 Areas of omitted bathymetry

Encoders are advised that when encoding areas of bathymetry from paper charts containing minimal depth detail at scales that correspond to the optimum display scale for the data, to consult larger scale paper charts or optimum display scale ENC datasets and generalise the bathymetry from this data. This is done to ensure that sufficient information is encoded so as not to conflict with larger optimum display scale coverage. The following is the recommended minimum encoding requirement in such cases:

Where larger optimum display scale ENC coverage is available, the larger scale datasets should be examined to determine the shallowest **Depth Area** feature, other than the intertidal area, within the whole of the area. Intertidal areas should then be generalised from the larger optimum display scale coverage, and one **Depth Area** feature may then be created, with attributes **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** encoded from the values obtained from the larger scale, corresponding to the remaining area of bathymetry.

Where larger optimum display scale coverage does not exist, a single **Depth Area** feature may be created to cover the area of omitted bathymetry. The **depth range minimum value** of the **Depth Area** feature should be set to the shallowest value appropriate to the colour tint that is applied to it (for example if blue tint is used for 5-20m areas, the **depth range minimum value** for the area of omitted bathymetry should be set to *5*). The **depth range maximum value** should be set to the shallowest value of the surrounding Skin of the Earth polygons.

In either case, the areas should be covered by a **Caution Area** feature, the boundary of which follows exactly the surrounding Skin of the Earth features (see clause 2.5.3.2).

Encoders should consider the effect of over-generalising areas of omitted bathymetry on the ECDIS display as the Mariner "zooms out" through the ENC display scales.

11.9.2.2 Areas of very simplified bathymetry

In these areas, information relating to bathymetry (for example depth contours, dangers, rocky areas, isolated rocks, nature of the seabed, dredged areas, unsurveyed areas) should be individually encoded as normal.

A **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) should be created covering the **Depth Area** features within the area of simplified bathymetry, with a cautionary note encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

11.9.3 Depth discontinuities between surveys (see S-4 – B-416.1)

Depth discontinuities between adjoining or overlapping source bathymetric surveys may be caused by:

- Surveys in areas of continually changing depth (see clause 11.7.5) conducted with a significant time gap between the surveys; or
- Adjoining areas having significant differences in the quality of bathymetric data (see clause 3.8).

It may not be possible to safely resolve significant depth discontinuity by interpolating approximate depth contours, which may compromise the ability for the compiler to adequately encode complete, non-overlapping Skin of the Earth coverage of the area of the ENC cell covered by data. Where it is required to indicate these significant depth discontinuities, it should be done by encoding a "very narrow" **Unsurveyed Area** feature.

The "very narrow area" should be at least 0.3mm in width at optimum display scale for the ENC data.

Remarks:

- An indication of the purpose of the **Unsurveyed Area** may be done by population of the complex attribute **information** (se clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text**, for example *Discontinuity between surveys*.
- In order to provide an indication to the Mariner of the more reliable encoded bathymetry in an area of continually changing depth, the defining attributes should be downgraded for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature (see clause 3.8) corresponding to the less reliable (or older) data.

11.9.4 Satellite imagery as source information

In some areas source information may be limited to shallow water depth information derived from satellite imagery. Where defined depths can be interpolated from satellite imagery (for example the drying line, 5 metre or 10 metre depth contours), and little or no reliable source survey information exists in the area, consideration should be given to showing this information in ENCs.

If it is required to encode shoal areas which have been derived from satellite imagery, **Depth Area** and **Depth Contour** features of an appropriate depth range should be used. This should only be done in areas which have not been systematically surveyed. Areas of depth information derived from satellite imagery must be covered by **Quality of Bathymetric Data** meta features (see clause 3.8). Recommended attribute values for the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** include **category of temporal variation** = *6* (unassessed); **features detected** (**significant features detected**) = *False*; and **full seafloor coverage achieved** = *False*. Optionally, the area may also be covered by a **Quality of Survey** feature (see clause 3.11), having attribute **technique of vertical measurement** = *11* (satellite imagery).

In some cases satellite imagery provides evidence that existing charted information derived from source survey data has changed over time. If required, the attribute **category of temporal variation** on the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** meta feature should be amended to *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected). Alternatively, if the quality of the charted bathymetry is considered by the Producing Authority to be poor, consideration may be given to replacing the existing charted detail using the satellite derived data, as described above, however with **category of temporal variation** = *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected).

Commented [TS64]: Note that there is a proposal for a **Depth Discontinuity** feature that is awaiting completion of the work of the DQWG on data quality before it is discussed further.
SHOM: Not seen anything in DQWG reports on this… I'm in favour of a new feature. More generally, in favour of deleting the "pseudo" lines (0.3mm large areas) (Caution areas and Maritime jurisdiction areas).

11.10 Unsurveyed area

IHO Definition: **UNSURVEYED AREA**. An area where hydrographic survey data is non-existent. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Unsurveyed Area (UNSARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: I 25

11.10.1 Unsurveyed areas (see S-4 – B-418)

Unsurveyed areas may be defined as those within which there is no available data derived from a systematic hydrographic survey. This may include areas which only have lines of passage soundings and/or other miscellaneous data such as isolated ship's reports.

Areas with little or no bathymetric survey information must be encoded using the feature **Unsurveyed Area**.

The area must also be covered, where required, by **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features (see clause 3.8), with attributes **category of temporal variation** = *6* (unassessed), **data assessment** = *1* (assessed), **features detected** (**least depth of detected features measured** and **significant features detected**) = *False* and **full seafloor coverage achieved** = *False*, The instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5) associated to the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** must have attributes **horizontal position uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) = [empty (null] and **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) = [empty (null)].

Remarks:

- **Unsurveyed Area** features are part of the Skin of the Earth.
- **Unsurveyed Area** features containing no depth data or bathymetry are not required to be covered by **Quality of Bathymetric Data** features (see clause 3.8).

Distinction:

12 Geo Features – Nature of the Seabed

12.1 Seabed area

IHO Definition: **SEABED AREA**. A region of the seabed including the material of which it is composed and its physical characteristics. Also called nature of bottom, character (or characteristics) of the bottom, or quality of the bottom. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Seabed Area (SBDARE)		
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM) (NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
surface characteristics			C	1,* (ordered)
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	1 : mud 2 : clay 3 : silt 4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 8 : cobbles 9 : rock 11 : lava 14 : coral 17 : shells 18 : boulder	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface – qualifying terms	(NATQUA)	1 : fine 2 : medium 3 : coarse 4 : broken 5 : sticky 6 : soft 7 : stiff 8 : volcanic 9 : calcareous 10 : hard	(S) EN	0,3 †
underlying layer			(S) IN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **surface characteristics**, at least one of the sub-attributes **nature of surface** or **nature of surface – qualifying terms** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: J 1-12, 30-39

12.1.1 Description of the seabed (see S-4 – B-425 to B-427)

The nature (quality) of the seabed (bottom) must be shown in sufficient detail, where known and on the appropriate optimum display scale ENC data, for such purposes as:

- to give some guidance on holding characteristics when anchoring;
- to help in assessing the stability of shoals and to distinguish rocks from unconsolidated material, when navigating in shoal areas;
- to show where vessels may safely take the ground at low water in tidal areas; or
- to give an indication of the nature of the seabed in deeper waters for fishermen and submariners.

If it is required to encode an area of the sea where the nature of the seabed is homogeneous, it must be done using the feature **Seabed Area**.

Remarks:

- Generally, it is not possible to define a seabed area by its real extent, due to seabed samples usually being obtained at discrete locations. For that reason, the characteristics of the seabed area may be represented at one single position.
- Where the seabed comprises a mixture of material, **surface characteristics** must be populated as multiple iterations, with the main constituent given first.
- Where the seabed comprises layered material that is of relevance to navigation or anchoring, **surface characteristics** must be populated as multiple iterations, with the surface constituent given first, with a value for the attribute **underlying layer** of *0*. Successive layers below the surface must have **underlying layer** set to *1*, *2*, … .

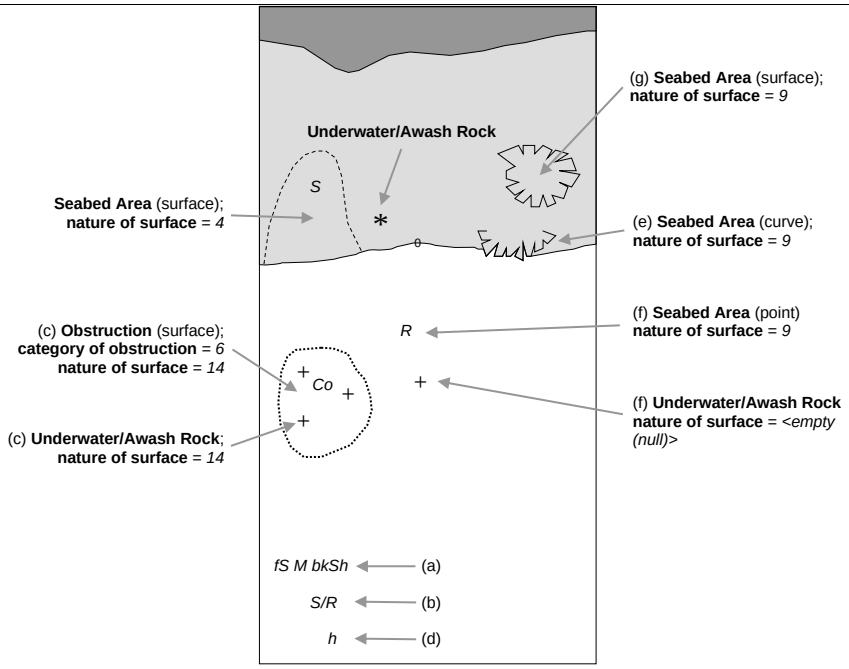


Figure 12-1 – Seabed areas

- In the following clauses, the paragraph prefixes refer to the examples shown in Figure 12-1.

(a) Mixed natures: The dominant nature of the seabed (**nature of surface**) should be populated first, along with its associated qualifying term (**nature of surface – qualifying terms**), if required, using the complex attribute **surface characteristics**. Other natures should then be populated, in order of dominance, using further ordered instances of **surface characteristics**,

(b) Underlying material: Should be encoded in the same way as mixed natures, and populating the sub-attribute **underlying layer** with the appropriate level of the layer below the surface layer. The surface layer must be encoded first, followed by the underlying layers.

(c) Coral reef, which is always covered, represented as a surface (INT1 – K16): An **Obstruction** feature of type surface must be encoded with attributes **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area), **nature of surface** = *14* (coral) and **water level effect** = *3* (always underwater/submerged). This feature must be covered by a **Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** feature as appropriate. In this area, some point dangers may be shown. An **Underwater/Awash Rock** feature should be encoded for each individual point danger, with **nature of surface** = *14* (coral).

(d) Hard bottom: The attribute **nature of surface – qualifying terms** = *10* (hard) should be encoded, with the associated **nature of surface** populated with an empty (null) value.

(e) On the source, in the intertidal area or along the drying line, the nature of surface is sometimes shown by an open line rather than a closed area. In such cases, a **Seabed Area** feature of type curve should be encoded, with attribute **water level effect** = *4* (covers and uncovers).

(f) If it is required to encode a rock pinnacle which is dangerous to navigation, it must be done using the feature **Underwater/Awash Rock**, while a rocky nature of seabed should be encoded using a **Seabed Area** feature.

(g) Where a **Seabed Area** feature of type surface is located in an intertidal area, it should be encoded with **water level effect** = *4* (covers and uncovers), in order for the intertidal rock or coral symbol to be displayed in ECDIS.

- The nature of the seabed should be shown in depths of 2000m and less. The nature of the seabed may be shown in greater depths if thought to be useful.

Table 12-1 below contains the most common encoding combinations of **nature of surface** and **nature of surface – qualifying terms**; other coding combinations are possible.

- Qualifying Terms **Nature of Surface**	*1* fine	*2* medium	*3* coarse	*4* broken	*5* sticky	*6* soft	*7* stiff	*8* volcanic	*9* calcareous	*10* hard
1 Mud					x	x	x	x	x	
2 Clay					x	x	x			
3 Silt					x	x	x			
4 Sand	x	x	x			x		x	x	
5 Stone								x	x	
6 Gravel								x	x	
7 Pebbles								x	x	
8 Cobbles								x	x	
9 Rock								x	x	
11 Lava								x		
14 Coral				x		x				
17 Shells				x					x	
18 Boulder								x	x	

Table 12-1 – Seabed area – Common encoding combinations

Distinction: Sandwave; Sea Area/Named Water Area; Seagrass; Weed/Kelp.

12.2 Weed/kelp

IHO Definition: **WEED/KELP**. Any macroscopic marine alga. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Weed/Kelp (WEDKLP)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of weed/kelp	(CATWED)	1 : kelp 2 : seaweed 4 : sargasso	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: J 13.1, 13.2

12.2.1 Weed - Kelp (see S-4 – B-428.2)

If it is required to encode marine weed or kelp, it must be done using the feature **Weed/Kelp**.

Remarks:

- For the Mariner, the presence of kelp is also generally an indication of the presence of submerged rocks.

Distinction: Seabed Area; Seagrass; Vegetation.

12.3 Seagrass

IHO Definition: **SEAGRASS**. Any of various submerged monocotyledonous plants (such as eelgrass, tape grass, and turtle grass) of tropical to temperate usually shallow coastal waters that have narrow grass-like leaves and often form dense underwater meadows. (Merriam-Webster on-line dictionary).

S-101 Geo Feature: Seagrass *(WEDKLP)*

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: J 13.1

12.3.1 Seagrass (see S-4 – B-425.6)

If it is required to encode seagrass, it must be done using the feature **Seagrass**.

Remarks:

- Many seagrass beds are subject to strict protection measures. Such measures must be encoded, where

required, using the features **Restricted Area** (see clause 17.8).
- If considered necessary, the type of seagrass may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

Distinction: Seabed Area; Vegetation; Weed/Kelp.

12.4 Sandwave

IHO Definition: **SANDWAVE**. Large mobile wave-like sediment feature in shallow water and composed of sand. The wave length may reach 100 metres; the amplitude may be up to 20 metres. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Sandwave (SNDWAV)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: J 14

12.4.1 Sandwaves (see S-4 – B-428.1)

Sandwave areas may be dangerous to Mariners, as the depth may be less than charted, because surveys are not necessarily conducted at the ideal time for sandwave building. Some research has shown that sandwave mobility is most evident in the vertical plane and high spots may occur on crest lines in response to calm weather, and possibly during particular times within the tidal cycle. It is therefore important to warn the Mariner of the presence of sandwaves, and provide them with as much information as is available and can be included in the ENC.

If it is required to encode sandwaves, this must be done using the feature **Sandwave**.

Remarks:

- The shifting nature of the seabed resulting from sandwave activity should be indicated on the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** (see clause 3.8), using the attribute **category of temporal variation**.
- The attribute **vertical length** is used to populate the amplitude of the sandwave above the seafloor, where known.
- Care must be taken not to over-generalize depth depiction in sandwave areas, as the typically convoluted contour pattern, and significant depth changes between soundings selected from crests and troughs, help to draw attention to these features. However, this will not usually be sufficient warning, as the variance

between crest and trough may fall between standard contours, or the optimum display scale for the ENC data may be insufficient to show the sandwaves individually, or anything but the shoalest soundings. Attention should therefore be drawn to the area by encoding a **Sandwave** feature. If considered necessary, the nature of any navigational hazard presented by the sandwaves may be incorporated using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

- Where frequently repeated surveys show variations in least depth, the shoalest soundings obtained over a period of years should be encoded. This blending of details from surveys of differing dates must be done with care; in particular, long-term deepening must not be overlooked.

Distinction: Seabed Area.

12.5 Spring

IHO Definition: **SPRING**. A natural issue of water or other substances from the earth. One on the bottom of the sea is called a submarine spring. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Spring (SPRING)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: J 15

12.5.1 Springs in the seabed (see S-4 – B-428.3)

Springs in the seabed may cause false echo-soundings. If it is required to encode a spring in the seabed, it must be done using the feature **Spring**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction:

13 Geo Features – Rocks, Wrecks, Foul Ground, Obstructions

Full details of all dangers to navigation must be encoded except in those areas for which the ENC is clearly inappropriate for navigation. The fullest possible information on clearance depths must be given irrespective of their depths, in preference to making any arbitrary distinction between "dangerous" and "non-dangerous" depths. This will allow navigators of all classes of vessels, including deep-draught ships and submarines, to make their own assessments of what is dangerous to them.

Due to possible ECDIS display issues isolated dangers of type point (feature types **Underwater Rock**, **Wreck** and **Obstruction**) should be encoded as isolated nodes; that is, they should not be encoded on connected nodes. Similarly, isolated dangers should not be encoded on an edge of a **Depth Area**, **Dredged Area** or **Unsurveyed Area**; where this occurs the geometry of the Skin of the Earth features should be amended.

Commented [TS65]: Refer to email from Klas Östergren 15/12/23 and reply from Dave Grant 19/12/23.

13.1 Danger line limiting an area of wrecks or obstructions

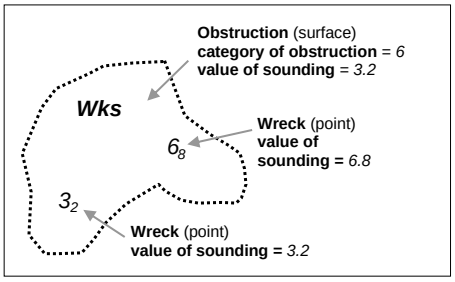


Figure 13-1 – Area of wrecks

The area enclosed by the danger line must be encoded using **Wreck** (see clause 13.5) or **Obstruction** (see clause 13.6) features of type surface, with the attribute values, when encoded, reflecting the characteristics of the shallowest point feature encoded in the area. The area must also be covered by **Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features as appropriate.

If it is required to encode one or more least depths in such an area, it must be done using a point feature for each of the depths, in addition to the surface feature.

13.2 Danger line bordering an area through which navigation is not safe (see S-4 – B-420.1)

A danger line, bordering an area through which navigation is not safe, should be encoded using an **Obstruction** feature of type surface, with attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area).

13.3 Doubtful dangers (see S-4 – B-424)

The fact that a danger is doubtful should be encoded using the feature attributes **quality of vertical measurement** and **status** and the spatial attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** for the feature:

	S-4	INT 1	quality of horizontal measurement	quality of vertical measurement	status
Position approximate	B-424.1	B7	*4*		
Position doubtful	B-424.2	B8	*5*		
Existence doubtful	B-424.3	I1			*18*
Doubtful sounding	B-424.4	I2		*3*	
Reported danger	B-424.5	I3.1, 3.2	*5*	*8* or *9*	

Table 13-1 – Doubtful dangers – Attribute encoding

Remarks:

- The same notions of approximate or doubtful positions and doubtful existence also apply to features other than dangers (for example landmarks, buoys).
- The text "Discoloured water" on the source indicates the probable existence of shallow water. This must be encoded, where required, using a **Discoloured Water** feature (see clause 13.8).

13.4 Underwater/awash rock

IHO Definition: **UNDERWATER/AWASH ROCK**. A concreted mass of stony material or coral which dries, is awash or is below the water surface. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.194, November 2000).
S-101 Geo Feature: Underwater/Awash Rock (UWTROC)
Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
display uncertainties			BO	0,1
exposition of sounding	(EXPSOU)	1 : within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 2 : shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	14 : coral	EN	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,1
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry	EN	0,*

		11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by leveling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept		
value of sounding	(VALSOU)		RE	1,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
default clearance depth			RE	0,1 †
surrounding depth			RE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The ECDIS "system" attributes **default clearance depth** and **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

INT 1 Reference: K 11-15

13.4.1 Rocks which may cover (see S-4 – B-421.2 to B-421.4)

Full details of all dangers to navigation must be encoded except in those areas for which the ENC is clearly inappropriate for navigation (see S-4 – B-401 and B-402). The fullest possible information on clearance depths must be given irrespective of their depths, where known, in preference to making any arbitrary distinction between “dangerous” and “non-dangerous” depths. This will allow navigators of all classes of vessels, including deep-draught ships and submarines, to make their own assessments of what is dangerous to them.

Underwater rocks may cover and uncover, may be awash, or may be always underwater.

Population of the attributes **quality of vertical measurement**, **water level effect**, **reported date** and the spatial attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** are described in the Table below:

Rock or coral reef	INT 1	water level effect	quality of vertical measurement	Comment
Covers and uncovers, depth unknown	K11	*4*	*2* or *<undefined>*	See Remarks below for population of the attribute **exposition of sounding**.
Covers and uncovers, depth known	K11	*4*	any value except *2*; or *<undefined>*	Negative value for **value of sounding**
Awash	K12	*5*		
Always submerged, depth unknown	K13	*3*	*2* or *<undefined>*	See Remarks below for population of the attribute **exposition of sounding**.
Always submerged, depth known	K14	*3*	any value except *2*; or *<undefined>*	
Reported, not confirmed	I3.1,3.2	*3,4* or *5*	*9*	If available, the year reported should be encoded in **reported date**. The attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** should be set to 5 (position doubtful).

Table 13-2 – Underwater rocks – Attribute encoding

Remarks:

- For rocks which do not cover (islets), see clause 5.4.2.
- All **Underwater/Awash Rock** features should be encoded using one of the above combinations of attributes.
- The minimum depth, if known, over any submerged rock, must be encoded using the attribute **value of sounding**. Where **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, display of the rock in ECDIS as an underwater hazard, in accordance with the Mariner's selected safety depth, will be dependent on the value populated for the ECDIS "system" attribute **default clearance depth** (see clauses 2.4.5.1 and 30.1); however see exception in 9th bullet below.
- For all **Underwater/Awash Rock** features of depth 30 metres or less an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 25.4) must be associated to the rock point geometry, using the association **Spatial Association**. Where **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, the value for the attribute **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) on the associated **Spatial Quality** feature must also be populated as empty (null). See also clause 3.8.1.3 (**Quality of Bathymetric Data**).
- The attribute **display uncertainties** is a cartographic attribute intended to reduce screen clutter in some ECDIS display settings by limiting the display of the horizontal position accuracies of a sounding to those considered by the encoder to be important to the Mariner, and is mandatory for all **Underwater/Awash Rock** of depth 30 metres or less. Factors to be considered in populating this attribute include depth in relation to the general nature of the seabed, proximity to other dangers, intention of the ENC, proximity to routes taken by vessels, and the types of vessels intended to utilise the ENC.
- Where **Underwater/Awash Rock** is encoded, there must be no **Sounding** feature encoded coincident.
- For area rock and coral reef features, see clause 12.1.1.
- When a group of rocks is surrounded by a danger line, each rock should be encoded as a separate **Underwater/Awash Rock** feature covered by an obstruction area feature (**Obstruction** – see clause 13.6).
- If it is required to encode an **Underwater/Awash Rock** feature where the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, but the source information indicates the depth of the feature is within the range of the surrounding depth area, the value **exposition of sounding** = *1* (within the range of the surrounding depth area) must be populated in order to avoid the unnecessary display of isolated danger symbols in ECDIS.

Distinction: Obstruction; Seabed Area; Sounding; Wreck.

Commented [TS66]: How is Remarks final bullet going to work in terms of getting rid of the CSPs? [Same at 13.5.1 and 13.6.1].
SHOM: Is the issue still valid as Lua admits CSPs?
IHO Sec: Assume that this will be handled based on the population of the "system" attribute **default clearance depth**?

13.5 Wreck

IHO Definition: **WRECK**. The ruined remains of a stranded or sunken vessel which has been rendered useless. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Wreck (WRECKS)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of wreck	(CATWRK)	1 : non-dangerous wreck 2 : dangerous wreck 3 : distributed remains of wreck 4 : wreck showing mast/masts 5 : wreck showing any portion of hull or superstructure	EN	0,1 †
display uncertainties			BO	0,1
exposition of sounding	(EXPSOU)	1 : within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 2 : shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 3 : deeper than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1

reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	7 : temporary 13 : historic 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry 11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by levelling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
value of sounding	(VALSOU)		RE	0,1 †
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1
default clearance depth			RE	0,1 †
surrounding depth			RE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal**	Association	0,*

		Station Warning		
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† Exactly one of the attributes **category of wreck** or **value of sounding** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The ECDIS "system" attributes **default clearance depth** and **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

INT 1 Reference: K 20-31

13.5.1 Wrecks (see S-4 – B-422, B-422.1 to B-422.8)

Wrecks must be encoded to whatever depth they are considered to be of interest, also taking account of the needs of submarines and fishing vessels where appropriate, but not generally in water deeper than 2000m. (Trawling regularly takes place in depths of 400m and occasionally in depths as great as 2000m).

Population of the attributes **category of wreck**, **quality of vertical measurement**, **technique of vertical measurement** and **water level effect** are described in Table 13-3 below.

In the following Table, the symbol '/' indicates that this attribute is not relevant for the wreck instance and therefore must not be encoded. A blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the attribute.

Wrecks…	**S-4**	**INT 1**	**category of wreck**	**water level effect**	**quality of vertical measurement**	**technique of vertical measurement**
Showing any part of hull or superstructure (visible at high water)	B-422.2	K24 K20	*5*	*1* or *2*	/	/
Showing any part of hull or superstructure (visible at low water)	B-422.2	K24 K21	*5*	*4*		
Covers and uncovers	B-422.2	K24 K21	*4* or *5*	*4*		
Awash				*5*		
Only the mast is visible at high water	B-422.2	K25	*4* or *5*	*1*	/	/
Only the mast is visible at low water	B-422.2	K25	*4*	*4*		
Measured depth	B-422.4	K26		*3*	*1, 6* or *<undefined>*	
Depth measured and mechanically swept	B-422.3	K27		*3*	*6*	*18*
Depth measured by diver	B-422.3	K27		*3*	*1* or *6*	*4*
Depth unknown, considered dangerous by the responsible producing authority	B-422.6	K28	*2*	*3*	*2** or *<undefined>*	/
Depth unknown, not considered dangerous by the responsible producing authority	B-422.6	K29	*1*	*3*	*2* or <undefined>*	/
Depth unknown, with a safe clearance	B-422.5	K30		*3*	*7*	/
Distributed remains of wreck	B-422.8	K31	*3*			
Reported, not confirmed	B-424.5	I3.1 I3.2			*9*	

Table 13-3 – Wrecks – Attribute encoding

All wrecks should be encoded using one of the above combinations of attributes.

* For a wreck where the least depth is unknown, the attribute value *2* (depth or least depth unknown) for **quality of vertical measurement** does not apply to the depth of the seabed near the wreck.

The provision of more quantitative information for wrecks where possible is particularly important in terms of the portrayal of wrecks in ECDIS, as the classification of wrecks as "dangerous" or "non-dangerous" is not taken into account in ECDIS when symbolizing **Wreck** features outside **Unsurveyed Area**. This often results in wrecks located in **Depth Area** or **Dredged Area** being symbolized as an obstruction to navigation where they are actually non-dangerous. Where the depth of the wreck is unknown, compilers should consider determining an estimated safe clearance value (see S-4 – B-422.5) and populating **quality of vertical measurement** = *7* (least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown).

Remarks:

- The attribute **height** is only relevant for wrecks having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partly submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry).
- The minimum depth, if known, over any submerged wreck, must be encoded using the attribute **value of sounding**. Where **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, display of the wreck in ECDIS as an underwater hazard, in accordance with the Mariner's selected safety depth, will be dependent on the value populated for the ECDIS "system" attribute **default clearance depth** (see clauses 2.4.5.1 and 30.1); however see exception in 8th bullet below.
- For all **Wreck** features of type point and of depth 30 metres or less, an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 25.4) must be associated to the wreck point geometry, using the association **Spatial Association**. Where **height** (when **water level effect** = *1* (partly submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry)) or **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, the value for the complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) on the associated **Spatial Quality** feature must also be populated as empty (null). See also clause 3.8.1.3 (**Quality of Bathymetric Data**).
- The attribute **display uncertainties** is a cartographic attribute intended to reduce screen clutter in some ECDIS display settings by limiting the display of the horizontal position accuracies of a sounding to those considered by the encoder to be important to the Mariner, and is mandatory for all **Wreck** of depth 30 metres or less. Factors to be considered in populating this attribute include depth in relation to the general nature of the seabed, proximity to other dangers, intention of the ENC, proximity to routes taken by vessels, and the types of vessels intended to utilise the ENC. For **Wreck** of type surface, **display uncertainties** must be set to *False*.
- For reported, not confirmed wrecks, the date of the report must be populated, where known, using the attribute **reported date**.
- The distributed remains of a wreck must be encoded, where required, as a **Wreck** feature with attribute **category of wreck** = *3* (distributed remains of wreck). Even though the wreck may be safe for surface vessels to navigate over the wreck, it must not be encoded as foul ground (see clause 13.7).
- When encoding a **Wreck** feature, the attributes populated should adhere to the guidance in S-4 clause B-422. Where possible, this includes the population of the attributes **value of sounding** and **quality of vertical measurement** where the depth of a wreck is known, or the depth is unknown but an estimated safe clearance can be determined. Where the depth is known, or the depth is unknown but an estimated safe clearance has been determined, it is not required to populate the attribute **category of wreck** = *1* (non-dangerous wreck) or *2* (dangerous wreck), as the Mariner has the quantitative information in order to determine whether the wreck may be dangerous to their type of vessel.
- If it is required to encode a submerged **Wreck** feature where the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, but the source information indicates the depth of the feature is within the range of the surrounding depth area, the value **exposition of sounding** = *1* (within the range of the surrounding depth area) must be populated in order to avoid the unnecessary display of isolated danger symbols in ECDIS.
- For wrecks visible or partly visible at sounding datum, the height or drying height should be encoded, if known. This helps to distinguish wrecks which are always visible from wrecks which are only visible at low tide.

13.5.1.1 Where a wreck is shown with its true shape (large scale ENCs) (see S-4 – B-422.1)

Soundings and heights are often given inside a wreck to show the highest points of the hull or superstructure (for example mast, funnel). If it is required to encode such features, they must be done using:

- A **Wreck** feature of type surface with all populated attributes applying to the highest point of the wreck.

- **Land Elevation** features of type point to encode the features of the wreck that are always dry; the type of each feature (for example mast, funnel) may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- **Sounding** features to encode the features of wrecks which are always submerged, or cover and uncover; the type of each feature (for example mast, funnel) may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), which means that these soundings must be encoded individually.

13.5.1.2 Changing criteria for wrecks

Historically the criteria used for differentiating between “dangerous” and “non-dangerous” wrecks were often based on a threshold value for the estimated depth over the wreck (for example 20m, 28m). Criteria have varied between nations and over time (due to the increasing draught of large vessels). The term “non-dangerous wreck” may be applied even though a wreck may be dangerous to some vessels capable of navigating in the vicinity. Unfortunately, the Mariner is not necessarily aware of that fact or that, due to the changing criteria, wrecks encoded as “non-dangerous” may have different meanings. Ideally, therefore, all encoded “dangerous” and “non-dangerous” wrecks having no known depth should be re-assessed to conform to the guidance provided in S-4 – B-422.

13.5.2 Historic wrecks (see S-4 – B-422)

Many nations have designated areas around certain wrecks of historical or cultural (for example sea graves) importance to protect the wrecks from unauthorised interference (for example by diving, salvage or anchoring). Such areas should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data covering the wreck.

If it is required to encode a restricted area around a historic wreck, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *10* (historic wreck area).

In addition, the wreck itself should be encoded as a **Wreck** feature, with attribute **status** = *13* (historic).

Distinction: Depth Area; Hulk; Obstruction; Sounding; Underwater/Awash Rock.

13.6 Obstruction

IHO Definition: **OBSTRUCTION.** In marine navigation, anything that hinders or prevents movement, particularly anything that endangers or prevents passage of a vessel. The term is usually used to refer to an isolated danger to navigation, such as a sunken rock or pinnacle. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).
S-101 Geo Feature: Obstruction (OBSTRN)
Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of obstruction	(CATOBS)	1 : snag/stump 2 : wellhead 3 : diffuser 4 : crib 5 : fish haven 6 : foul area 8 : ice boom 9 : ground tackle 10 : boom 12 : wave energy device 13 : subsurface ocean data acquisition system (ODAS) 14 : artificial reef 15 : template 16 : manifold 17 : submerged pingo 18 : remains of platform 19 : scientific instrument 20 : underwater turbine 21 : active submarine volcano 22 : shark net 23 : mangrove	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
display uncertainties			BO	0,1
exposition of sounding	(EXPSOU)	1 : within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 2 : shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 3 : deeper than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display	(S) EN	0,1 †

		2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display		
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1 †
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
nature of surface	(NATSUR)	1 : mud 2 : clay 3 : silt 4 : sand 5 : stone 6 : gravel 7 : pebbles 8 : cobbles 9 : rock 11 : lava 14 : coral 17 : shells 18 : boulder	EN	0,*
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 8 : drinking water 23 : electricity	EN	0,*
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 13 : historic 18 : existence doubtful 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry 11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by levelling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*

value of sounding	(VALSOU)		RE	0,1 †
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash 7 : floating	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
default clearance depth			RE	0,1 †
surrounding depth			RE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10)	**Mooring Trot**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† Exactly one of the attributes **height** or **value of sounding** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The ECDIS "system" attributes **default clearance depth** and **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

INT 1 Reference: C 32, K 1, 31, 40-43, 46; L 21, 23; Q 42

13.6.1 Obstructions and foul areas (see S-4 – B-312.4, B-327.5, B-420.1, B-422.8-9, B-431.6, B-445.1, B-447.5 and B-447.7)

If it is required to encode features considered to be an obstruction or hazard to surface navigation that cannot be encoded using any other S-101 specific feature (for example **Underwater Rock**, **Wreck**), it must be done using the feature **Obstruction**.

Population of the attributes **quality of vertical measurement**, **technique of vertical measurement** and **water level effect** are described in Table 13-4 below.

In the following Table, the symbol '/' indicates that this attribute is not relevant for the obstruction instance and therefore must not be encoded. A blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the

attribute.

Obstruction...	INT 1	water level effect	quality of vertical measurement	technique of vertical measurement
Depth unknown	K40	*3* or *4*	*2** or <*undefined*>	*/*
Least depth known	K41	*3* or *4*	*1* or *6*	
Mechanically swept to the depth shown	K42	*3*	*6*	*18*
Measured by diver	K42	*3*	*1 or 6*	*4*

Table 13-4 – Obstructions – Attribute encoding

All obstructions should be encoded using one of the above combinations of attributes.

* For an obstruction where the least depth is unknown, the attribute value *2* (depth or least depth unknown) for **quality of vertical measurement** does not apply to the depth of the seabed near the obstruction.

It is important when encoding obstructions to be aware of the distinction between attribute value **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area) and foul ground:

Foul areas are defined as areas of numerous uncharted dangers to navigation. When encoded on ENC, **Obstruction** features of type surface with attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area) will display in the ECDIS "base display" as an obstruction to navigation, with all associated alarms to indicate that it is unsafe for vessels to enter or transit the area.

Foul ground is defined as an area over which it is safe to navigate but which should be avoided for anchoring, taking the ground or ground fishing. When encoded on ENC, **Foul Ground** features (see clause 13.7) of type surface will display in the ECDIS "other" display as a "foul area of seabed safe for navigation but not for anchoring", indicating to the Mariner that it is safe to enter or transit the area but hazardous to take the ground or undertake other subsurface activities.

In some cases areas on the source indicated to be foul ground have been misinterpreted as foul areas, which has resulted in encoding in ENC of **Obstruction** with **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area). This encoding results in the incorrect indication in the ECDIS that the area is unsafe for navigation, which is potentially confusing to the Mariner.

Foul ground, over which it is safe to navigate but which should be avoided for anchoring, taking the ground or ground fishing, should be encoded using a **Foul Ground** feature (see clause 13.7). Although the source may depict a "Foul Area", it should be determined whether it is in fact "Foul Ground" before encoding the appropriate feature.

Remarks:

- The minimum depth, if known, over any submerged obstruction, must be encoded using the attribute **value of sounding**. Where **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, display of the obstruction in ECDIS as an underwater hazard, in accordance with the Mariner's selected safety depth, will be dependent on the value populated for the ECDIS "system" attribute **default clearance depth** (see clauses 2.4.5.1 and 30.1); however see exception in 12th bullet below.
- Where obstructions such as fish havens have a declared maximum authorised draught for vessels passing over the feature, this must be populated, where known, using the attribute **maximum permitted draught**.
- The attribute **height** must be populated for **Obstruction** features having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partly submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry).
- **Obstruction** features having attribute **water level effect** = *7* (floating) must have the attribute **height** populated with an empty (null) value.
- The attribute **vertical length** is used to populate the distance of an obstruction above the seabed; or the height of a floating obstruction above the sea surface.
- For all **Obstruction** features of type point and of depth 30 metres or less, an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 25.4) must be associated to the obstruction point geometry, using the association **Spatial Association**. Where **height** or **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, the value for the attribute **vertical uncertainty** (**uncertainty fixed**) on the associated **Spatial Quality** feature must also be populated as empty (null). See also clause 3.8.1.3 (**Quality of Bathymetric Data**).
- The attribute **display uncertainties** is a cartographic attribute intended to reduce screen clutter in some

ECDIS display settings by limiting the display of the horizontal position accuracies of a sounding to those considered by the encoder to be important to the Mariner, and is mandatory for all **Obstruction** of depth 30 metres or less. Factors to be considered in populating this attribute include depth in relation to the general nature of the seabed, proximity to other dangers, intention of the ENC, proximity to routes taken by vessels, and the types of vessels intended to utilise the ENC. For **Obstruction** of type curve or surface, **display uncertainties** must be set to *False*.

- For reported, not confirmed obstructions, the date of the report must be populated, where known, using the attribute **reported date**.
- If the nature of a dangerous underwater feature, dangerous underwater area, or floating feature is not explicitly known, it must be encoded using **Obstruction**.
- An **Obstruction** feature of type surface must be covered by a surface feature from Skin of the Earth as appropriate.
- An area containing numerous dangers, through which navigation is not safe at the optimum display scale for the ENC data, should be encoded using an **Obstruction** feature of type surface, with attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area).
- If it is required to encode a submerged **Obstruction** feature where the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, but the source information indicates the depth of the feature is within the range of the surrounding depth area, the value **exposition of sounding** = *1* (within the range of the surrounding depth area) must be populated in order to avoid the unnecessary display of isolated danger symbols in ECDIS.
- Active submarine volcanos can be a significant navigational hazard; and harmful concentrations of volcanic gases emanating from active submarine volcanos can cover an extensive area (see S-4 – clause B-428.4). If it is required to encode an active submarine volcano, it must be done using an **Obstruction** feature of type point, with attributes **category of obstruction** = *21* (active submarine volcano), **exposition of sounding** = *2* (shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area) and **quality of vertical measurement** = *2* (depth or least depth unknown). To indicate the unpredictable nature of the volcano (it may be periodically submerged or extend above the surface), the mandatory attributes **value of sounding** and **water level effect** must be populated with an empty (null) value. In order to raise the level of indication of the hazard in the ECDIS to the Mariner so as to generate an alarm, a small **Depth Area** feature having attribute **depth range minimum value** = *0* may also be encoded. The area that can be potentially covered by harmful volcanic gases, which may cover an area of up to 10 NM from the volcano, should be encoded using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10), having the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attributes **text** = *Volcanic activity* and **file reference** carrying a reference to an appropriate cautionary note similar to:

  Active submarine volcanos exist in this area. Some volcanos have been reported to erupt breaking the surface of the sea and projecting ashes, other volcanic materials and harmful gases into the air. Changes to charted depths, uplifting of reefs and emerging of volcanic islets may occur throughout the area. Due to the unpredictable nature of these events Mariners are strongly recommended to avoid the area.

  Inactive submarine volcanos must be encoded, if required, using a **Sea Area** feature (see clause 9.1).
- Platforms which have been cut-off above the seabed must be encoded as **Obstruction**, while platforms which have been cut-off to the level of the seabed should be encoded as **Foul Ground** (see clause 13.7).
- In certain circumstances where an obstruction is always dry (for example cribs), it must be covered by a **Land Area** feature.
- Features that are considered to be subsurface Fish Aggregating Devices (FAD) must be encoded as **Obstruction**, with **category of obstruction** = *5* (fish haven), unless the feature is a vessel that has bee deliberately sunk to perform the function of a fish haven, which should be encoded as a **Wreck** feature (see clause 13.5).
- If it is required to encode a subsurface ocean data acquisition system (ODAS), whether on the seabed suspended in the water column by a subsurface float, it must be done using **Obstruction** with **category obstruction** = *14* (subsurface ocean data acquisition system (ODAS)). An ODAS buoy must be encoded as a **Special Purpose/General Buoy** feature (see clause 20.5).

Deleted: FAD

Commented [TS67]: DCEG SubWG meeting 3: Remarks 15th bullet needs more work. Distinction required between FAD and fish haven.
SHOM: Shom:

13.6.1.1 Mangroves (see S-4 – B-312.4)

Where the source indicates that a mangrove area is in the intertidal area, an **Obstruction** feature of type area, with attribute **category of obstruction** = *23* (mangrove) should be encoded on top of the portion of the intertidal area (**Depth Area** with attributes **depth range minimum value** = *-H* and **depth range maximum value** = *0* – see clause 11.7.3) where the mangrove coverage exists. The mandatory attribute **water level effect** should be populated with *1* (partially submerged at high water); and the conditional mandatory attribute

height populated with the approximate altitude of the highest point of the top of the mangroves if known or an empty (null) value if not. The seaward spatial type(s) of the mangrove area should be associated to an instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5) having the attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate). The landward edge of the mangrove area representing the high water line should be encoded as **Coastline** (see clause 5.3), having no value populated for the attribute **category of coastline**, and no value for **quality of horizontal measurement** on the related spatial type(s).

If it is required to encode an individual mangrove tree within the intertidal area, this must be done using an **Obstruction** feature of type point, with attribute **category of obstruction** = *23* (mangrove).

Where mangrove areas are required to be generalised on smaller optimum display scale ENC datasets such that the seaward edge of the mangrove only is to be indicated as the “apparent” coastline, this must be done using the feature **Coastline** (see clause 5.3).

Remarks:

- The encoding of **Obstruction** of type curve and having attribute **category of obstruction** = *23* (mangrove) is prohibited.

Distinction: Depth Area; Fishing Facility; Foul Ground; Marine Farm/Culture; Underwater/awash Rock; Water Turbulence; Wreck.

Commented [TS68]: Refer to S-164 Sub-Group GitHub Issue #65

13.7 Foul ground

IHO Definition: **FOUL GROUND**. Areas over which it is safe to navigate but which should be avoided for anchoring, taking the ground or ground fishing. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Foul Ground *(OBSTRN)*

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	13 : historic 18 : existence doubtful 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 4 : found by diver 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 10 : photogrammetry 11 : satellite imagery 12 : found by levelling 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*

value of sounding	(VALSOU)		RE	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [TS69]: Refer to NL review comment 15/01/24. To be discussed. I think this is OK. This feature is not subject to the requirement to populate displayUncertainties so is different to the other underwater hazards.

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: K 31

13.7.1 Foul ground (see S-4 – B-422.9)

If it is required to encode an area where seabed operations are unsafe, but over which it is safe to navigate for surface vessels, it must be done using the feature **Foul Ground**. Such areas are distinct from the feature **Obstruction**, attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area), where navigation is considered to be unsafe for surface vessels (see clause 13.6).

It is important when encoding foul ground to be aware of the distinction between foul ground and the feature **Obstruction**, attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area) :

Foul ground is defined as an area over which it is safe to navigate but which should be avoided for anchoring, taking the ground or ground fishing. When encoded on ENC, **Foul Ground** features of type surface will display in the ECDIS "other" display as a "foul area of seabed safe for navigation but not for anchoring", indicating to the Mariner that it is safe to enter or transit the area but hazardous to take the ground or undertake other subsurface activities.

Foul areas are defined as areas of numerous uncharted dangers to navigation. When encoded on ENC, **Obstruction** features of type surface with attribute **category of obstruction** = *6* (foul area) will display in the ECDIS "base display" as an obstruction to navigation, with all associated alarms to indicate that it is unsafe for vessels to enter or transit the area.

It is recommended that if there is any doubt as to whether a feature should be encoded as **Obstruction** or **Foul Ground**, preference should be given to encoding the feature as **Obstruction** (see clause 13.6).

Remarks:

- For reported, not confirmed foul ground, the date of the report must be populated, where known, using the attribute **reported date**.
- A **Foul Ground** feature of type surface must be covered by a surface feature from Skin of the Earth as appropriate.

- Platforms which have been cut-off to the level of the seabed should be encoded as **Foul Ground**, while platforms which have been cut-off above the seabed must be encoded as **Obstruction** (see clause 13.6).
- The distributed remains of wrecks must be encoded using the feature **Wreck** (see clause 13.5), and must not be encoded as **Foul Ground**.

Distinction: Depth Area; Fishing Facility; Marine Farm/Culture; Obstruction; Seabed Area; Underwater/Awash Rock; Water Turbulence; Wreck.

13.8 Discoloured water

IHO Definition: **DISCOLOURED WATER**. Unnatural coloured areas in the sea which may or may not indicate the existence of shoals. (NOAA – Nautical Chart Manual, Volume 1).

S-101 Geo Feature: Discoloured Water *(CTNARE)*

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

13.8.1 Discoloured water (see S-4 – B-424.6)

If it is required to encode the possible existence of shoal water as indicated by an area of discoloured water, it must be done using the feature **Discoloured Water**.

Remarks:

- The feature **Discoloured Water** must only be used to indicate an area of possible shoal water where an observation of the discolouration has been made and there is no supporting bathymetric data to support the possible shoaling.
- A **Discoloured Water** feature must be covered by **Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area** features.

Distinction: Caution Area; Obstruction; Underwater/Awash Rock; Wreck.

13.9 Fishing facility

IHO Definition: **FISHING FACILITY**. A structure for fishing purposes which can be an obstruction to ships in general. The position of these structures may vary frequently over time. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.70, November 2000, as amended).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fishing Facility (FSHFAC)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of fishing facility	(CATFIF)	1 : fishing stake 2 : fish trap 3 : fish weir 4 : tunny net	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: K 44, 45

13.9.1 Fishing facilities (see S-4 – B-447 and B-447.1-3)

Fishing facilities are usually sited in shallow water, but tunny nets are often located in deeper water. They can be very large and extend up to several miles offshore; and form an obstruction to navigation.

If it is required to encode a fishing facility it must be done using the feature **Fishing Facility**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **vertical length** is used to populate the distance of the facility above the seabed.
- Certain types of fishing facilities such as tunny nets in deep water may be an obstruction to navigation. If **Fishing Facility** features are considered to be an obstruction or hazard to navigation, they should also be encoded with an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6). Although this is contrary to ENC encoding principles (that is, double encoding), this solution is recommended for portraying dangers to navigation of this nature in the ECDIS.
- Floating fish aggregating devices (FAD) must be encoded, where required, as **Special Purpose/General Buoy** features (see clause 20.5). Subsurface FADs (fish havens) must be encoded, where required, as **Obstruction** features (see clause 13.6).

Distinction: Marine Farm/Culture; Obstruction.

Commented [TS70]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

13.10 Marine farm/culture

IHO Definition: **MARINE FARM/CULTURE**. An assemblage of cages, nets, rafts and floats or posts where fish, including shellfish, are artificially cultivated. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Marine Farm/Culture (MARCUL)

Primitives: Point, Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of marine farm/culture	(CATMFA)	1 : crustaceans 2 : edible bivalve molluscs 3 : fish 4 : seaweed 5 : pearl culture farm	EN	0,1
exposition of sounding	(EXPSOU)	1 : within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area 2 : shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown 8 : value reported (not surveyed) 9 : value reported (not confirmed)	EN	0,*
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited	EN	0,*

		2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
value of sounding	(VALSOU)		RE	0,1 †
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	1 : partly submerged at high water 2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 5 : awash 7 : floating	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1

file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
default clearance depth			RE	0,1 †
surrounding depth			RE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† Exactly one of the attributes **height** or **value of sounding** must be populated.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

The ECDIS "system" attributes **default clearance depth** and **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value.

INT 1 Reference: K 47, 48

13.10.1 Marine farms (see S-4 – B- 447.4 and B-447.6)

Marine farms are collections of cages, nets, rafts and floats, or posts, where fish, including shellfish, are reared. They may obstruct navigation, and are likely to be marked by buoys and possibly lights. They are not always confined to inshore locations. Shellfish beds are found in shallow water. Depending on vessel draught and tidal range, it is usually possible to navigate over them, at high water, but they can be damaged by vessels anchoring or grounding on them.

If it is required to encode a marine farm, it must be done using the feature **Marine Farm/Culture**.

Remarks:

- When it is required to encode the minimum depth of the feature, the attributes **exposition of sounding** and **quality of vertical measurement** and the mandatory attribute **value of sounding** must be used. When a **Marine Farm/Culture** feature covers an area of the seafloor at the optimum display scale of the data, the value of the attribute **value of sounding** represents the minimum depth, if known, over any structure used to form or support the marine farm, or within the area of the marine farm itself. The mandatory attribute **water level effect** must be used to encode the water level of the shallowest section of the area, if partly or completely under water.
- The minimum depth, if known, over any submerged marine farm, must be encoded using the attribute **value of sounding**. Where **value of sounding** is populated with an empty (null) value, display of the marine farm in ECDIS as an underwater hazard, in accordance with the Mariner's selected safety depth, will be dependent on the value populated for the ECDIS "system" attribute **default clearance depth** (see clauses 2.4.5.1 and 30.1).
- The attribute **height** must be populated for **Marine Farm/Culture** features having attribute **water level effect** = *1* (partly submerged at high water) or *2* (always dry).
- The attribute **vertical length** is used to populate the distance of the marine farm above the seabed.
- Where required, ground tackle associated with marine farms must be encoded as **Obstruction** features

(see clause 13.6).

13.10.2 Fish havens (see S-4 – B- 447.5)

If it is required to encode a fish haven, it must be done using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6), with attribute **category of obstruction** = *5* (fish haven).

Distinction: Fishing Facility; Obstruction.

14 Geo Features – Offshore Installations

14.1 Offshore platform

IHO Definition: **OFFSHORE PLATFORM**. A permanent offshore structure, either fixed or floating. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Offshore Platform (OFSPLF)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of offshore platform	(CATOFP)	1 : oil rig 2 : production platform 3 : observation/research platform 4 : articulated loading platform 5 : single anchor leg mooring 6 : mooring tower 7 : artificial island 8 : floating production, storage and off-loading vessel 9 : accommodation platform 10 : navigation, communication and control buoy 11 : floating oil tank	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1

feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
flare stack	***(LNDMRK)***		BO	0,1
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas 23 : electricity	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bollard**, **Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal**	Association	0,*

		Station Traffic, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS71]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for offshore platforms that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 2, 10-15, 17

14.1.1 Offshore platforms (see S-4 – B-445.2; B-445.4 and B-445.5)

Several different types of platforms are in use. They are normally piled steel or concrete structures, the latter held in position on the seafloor by gravity. Tension Leg Platforms (TLP) consist of semi-submersible platforms secured to flooded caissons on the seafloor vertically below them by wires kept in tension by the buoyancy of the platform.

Platforms may serve a number of purposes. They may carry any of the following equipment: drilling and production equipment; oil and gas separation and treatment plants; pump-line stations; and electricity generators. They may be fitted with cranes, a helicopter landing deck, and accommodation for up to 350 people. Platforms may stand singly or in groups connected by pipelines. Some stand close together in a complex, with bridges and underwater cables connecting them. Unwanted gas or oil is sometimes burnt from a flaring boom extending from the platform or from a nearby flare stack.

If it is required to encode a permanent offshore platform, it must be done using the feature **Offshore Platform**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **height** is only relevant for fixed platforms, and is referred to the vertical datum (see clause 2.5.7).
- The attribute **vertical length** is only relevant for floating platforms, and is referred to the sea level.
- If it is required to encode sites of dismantled platforms, this must be done using **Foul Ground** features (see clause 13.7), unless the source indicates that any remaining structure protrudes far enough above the seabed so as to be an obstruction to surface navigation, in which case this must be encoded using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6).
- Platforms may carry lights (see Section 19), fog signals (see clause 20.19), helicopter landing pads (see clause 6.5) and flare stacks. Where fitted, lights should be encoded as described in Section 19, with the **Offshore Platform** being used as the structure feature for the light equipment feature(s).

14.1.2 Wellheads (see S-4 – B-445.1)

In the course of developing an oil or gas field, numerous wells may be drilled. Some, which will not be required again, may be sealed at or below the seafloor and abandoned; such wells must not be encoded, as they have no relevance to navigation.

A submerged wellhead is a submarine structure projecting some distance above the seafloor and capping a temporarily abandoned (or “suspended”) oil or gas well. Their associated pipes and other equipment usually project some 2 - 6 metres, but in some cases as much as 15 metres, above the seafloor. Some may be covered by steel cages to avoid snagging trawling gear. In certain instances, a wellhead may project above the sea surface. Wellheads must be encoded on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC data, together with associated buoys, as a hazard to fishing and, dependent on depth, as a hazard to deep-draught vessels

and towed structures.

If it is required to encode wellheads, this must be done using **Obstruction** features of type point (see clause 13.6), with attributes:

category of obstruction	-	*2* - wellhead
height		
status	-	*4* - not in use (disused)
value of sounding		
vertical length	-	vertical length of the wellhead above the seabed
water level effect	-	*2* - always dry (for wellheads that protrude at high water) *3* - always under water/submerged

14.1.3 Offshore safety zones (see S-4 – B-445.6)

Under UNCLOS, a coastal State may establish safety zones around artificial islands, installations and structures in their EEZ and on their continental shelf. These installations include drilling rigs, production platforms, wellheads, moorings and other associated structures. Safety zones normally extend 500 metres from the outermost points of the installations. Within these zones, appropriate measures can be taken to ensure the safety of navigation and of the installations.

If it is required to encode an offshore safety zone, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *1* (offshore safety zone).

14.1.4 Offshore flare stacks (see S-4 – B-445.2)

As with refineries on land, offshore terminals may burn off gas from production platforms or from “flare stacks” set up as separate structures at a short distance from the production platforms.

If it is required to indicate the presence of a flare stack on an offshore platform, it must be done through population of the Boolean attribute **flare stack** = *True*.

Remarks:

- Flare stacks on land must be encoded, if required, using a **Landmark** feature (see clause 7.2).

Distinction: Hulk; Landmark; Installation Buoy; Offshore Production Area; Wind Turbine.

14.2 Submarine cable

IHO Definition: **SUBMARINE CABLE**. An assembly of wires or fibres, or a wire rope or chain, which has been laid underwater or buried beneath the seafloor. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Cable Submarine (CBLSUB)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buried depth	(BURDEP)		RE	0,1
category of cable	(CATCBL)	1 : power line 6 : mooring cable 7 : ferry 9: junction cable 10 : telecommunications cable	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 13 : historic 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity

Component of	**Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10)	**Mooring Trot**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 30.1, 31.1, 32; Q 42

14.2.1 Submarine cables (see S-4 – B-443; B-443.1-2 and B-443.7-8)

Submarine cables are used to carry power or telecommunications. All power cables and most telecommunication cables carry dangerous voltages. Submarine cables are potential hazards to both vessels and life, particularly to fishing vessels engaged in trawling the seabed. Where possible, submarine cables are now buried beneath the seafloor in water depths of less than 1000 metres; however there remains a large percentage unburied. Submarine cables are vulnerable to damage from anchoring, trawling or other seabed operations; even small craft anchors can penetrate a soft seabed sufficiently to foul a cable. Damage to telecommunication cables can lead to extensive disruption of national and international communications, whilst damage to power cables can disrupt electricity supply.

Submarine cables, including disused cables, should be encoded to indicate their presence to vessels engaged in anchoring, trawling or seabed activities in order to:

- Warn Mariners of the potential hazard to their vessel, including electric shock to any vessel fouling or breaking the cable, possible capsize of a small vessel if its fishing gear or anchor is trapped under the cable, or loss of gear (trawls or anchor cables).
- Prevent damage to the cable and avoid disrupting the service the cable may be providing.

Active cables should be encoded to a depth of 2000 metres (which is the deepest depth of water to which vessels may be endangered by fouling the cable).

If it is required to encode a submarine cable, it must be done using the feature **Cable Submarine**.

Remarks:

- If the buried depth varies along the cable, the cable must be encoded as several features.
- Telecommunications cables such as telephone and optic fibre cable must be populated, where required, by populating attribute **category of cable** = *10* (telecommunications cable).
- Where a cable is disused, it should be encoded with the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use), and the attribute **category of cable** should not be encoded. Few disused cables are recovered and so to encode them all would lead to clutter in the data. Also, accurate records of their positions are likely to be incomplete (some cables having been cut or dragged out of position), so there is a case for encoding them very selectively. Where disused cables traverse possible anchorages or where there is known seabed activity, for example trawling grounds, they should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data covering the area, provided they do not obscure more important information.
- In certain circumstances, high voltage power cables may cause a deviation in a ship's magnetic compass; in these cases, where reports have been received, they should be treated as local magnetic anomalies (see clause 4.2).
- If it is required to provide the contact details of cable owners/operators (in cases of damage to a cable or for reparation for loss of an anchor in order to avoid such damage), this must be done using an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1).
- Cables, buried so deep that they are not vulnerable to damage from anchoring, should not be encoded (so that Mariners are not unnecessarily inhibited from anchoring or fishing). In marginal cases they may be encoded as **Cable Submarine** with the nominal depth to which they are buried encoded using the attribute **buried depth**.

- For encoding cables for mooring trots, see clause 8.22.

Distinction: Cable Overhead; Cable Area.

14.3 Submarine cable area

IHO Definition: **SUBMARINE CABLE AREA**. An area which contains one or more submarine cables. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.70, November 2000, as amended).

S-101 Geo Feature: Cable Area (CBLARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of cable	(CATCBL)	1 : power line 7 : ferry 10 : telecommunications cable	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 20 : drilling prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 7 : temporary 13 : historic	EN	0,*

scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 30.2, 31.2

14.3.1 Submarine cable areas (see S-4 – B-439.3 and B-443.3)

Cable areas should be encoded where:
- cables (including disused cables) are so numerous in an area that it would be impossible to encode them individually without impairing the legibility of the ENC; or
- a regulatory authority designates an area for the protection of a cable, or cables.

If it is required to encode a submarine cable area, it must be done using the feature **Cable Area**.

Remarks:
- Where populated, the attribute **status** must only be used to encode the status of the area and not the status of the cables in the area.
- The outer limits of a cable area must enclose the area in which anchoring and certain forms of fishing are prohibited or inadvisable; that is, the limits must lie a safe distance beyond the actual lines of the outermost cables.
- If it is required to provide the contact details of cable owners/operators (in cases of damage to a cable or for reparation for loss of an anchor in order to avoid such damage), this must be done using an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Cable Overhead; Cable Submarine.

14.4 Pipeline

IHO Definition: **PIPELINE**. A connected set of pipes for conveying liquids, slurries, or gases. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2012).

S-101 Geo Feature: Pipeline Submarine/On Land (PIPSOL)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buried depth	(BURDEP)		RE	0,1
category of pipeline/pipe	(CATPIP)	2 : outfall pipe 3 : intake pipe 4 : sewer 5 : bubbler system 6 : supply pipe 7 : bubble curtain	EN	0,*
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)	DRVAL1 <= DRVAL2	RE	0,1
depth range maximum value	(DRVAL2)	DRVAL2 >= DRVAL1	RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features			(S) IN	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 9 : milk 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas	EN	0,*
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited	EN	0,*

		8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 20 : drilling prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 7 : temporary 12 : illuminated	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: D 29; L 40.1, 41.1, 42, 44

14.4.1 Pipelines, submarine or on land (see S-4 – B-377; B-444; B-444.1-2; B-444.4-5 and B-444.7)

Submarine pipelines can be divided into two main categories:

- Oil, chemical, gas and water supply pipelines are an important feature of many areas. The pipes are generally encased in concrete for protection and to give them negative buoyancy, which can significantly increase their external diameter. Pipelines are generally laid directly on the seabed, with sections over local dips or hollows being supported physically from beneath. In some cases (for example in shallow water or

near the shore), where the external diameter of the pipeline would represent a significant reduction in the water depth above it, the pipelines may be laid in trenches and possibly buried.
In all cases it must be assumed that the pipes are vulnerable to damage from anchoring or trawling, although in a few cases concrete domes are used to protect particularly vulnerable junctions. Gas pipes present a severe hazard to ships damaging them (by fire, explosion, or possibly loss of buoyancy). Oil and chemical pipes are a danger to the environment if fractured. Damage to water pipes supplying residential areas, mainly islands, results in disruption or contamination of the water supply. In the above cases, submarine pipelines must be encoded on all appropriate optimum display scale ENC datasets.
- Outfalls and intakes such as sewers, and cooling water intakes, are mainly a feature of inshore waters. For small craft, in particular, such pipes are a potential danger to navigation. The pipes are also vulnerable to damage. They should be encoded on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC datasets.

If it is required to encode a submarine or land pipeline, it must be done using the feature **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**.

Remarks:
- A pipeline that extends vertically from the seabed must be encoded, if required, as an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6). A vertical pipeline on land must be encoded, if required, as a **Landmark** feature (see clause 7.2).
- If the buried depth varies along a submerged pipeline, the pipeline must be encoded as several features.
- The attributes **depth range minimum value** and **depth range maximum value** are used to encode the shallowest and deepest depth over the pipeline.
- Where a bubble curtain pipeline is intended for the retention of oil, this must be encoded as an **Oil Barrier** feature (see clause 16.21), with attribute **category of oil barrier** = *1* (oil retention – high pressure pipe).
- Where a pipeline is disused, it should be encoded with the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use), and the attributes **category of pipeline/pipe** and **product** should not be encoded.
- The term “sub-surface pipeline” is used to describe a pipeline that is “floating” in the water column (see S-4 – B-444.9). If it is required to encode a sub-surface pipeline, this should be done using a **Pipeline Submarine/On Land** feature, with the attribute **depth range minimum value** populated with the minimum design depth over the pipeline. The attribute **depth range maximum value** may be populated with the maximum design depth over the pipeline. A picture file may be referenced using the attribute **pictorial representation** (see clause 2.4.12.2) if it is considered useful, for example a schematic diagram showing the clearances along the pipeline.
- If it is required to provide the contact details of submerged pipeline owners/operators (in cases of damage to a pipeline or for reparation for loss of an anchor in order to avoid such damage), this must be done using an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1).
- Submarine pipes, buried so deep that they are not vulnerable to damage from anchoring, should not be encoded (so that Mariners are not unnecessarily inhibited from anchoring or fishing). In marginal cases they may be encoded as **Pipeline Submarine/On Land** with the nominal depth to which they are buried encoded using the attribute **buried depth**.
- Buried pipelines on land should not be encoded.

14.4.2 Diffusers, cribs

If it is required to encode diffusers and cribs, this must be done using **Obstruction** features (see clause 13.6), with attribute **category of obstruction** = *3* (diffuser) or *4* (crib).

Distinction: Pipeline Overhead, Submarine Pipeline Area.

14.5 Submarine pipeline area

IHO Definition: **SUBMARINE PIPELINE AREA**. An area containing one or more submarine pipelines. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.118, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Submarine Pipeline Area (PIPARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of pipeline/pipe	(CATPIP)	2 : outfall pipe 3 : intake pipe 4 : sewer 5 : bubbler system 6 : supply pipe	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 3 : water 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas	EN	0,*
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited	EN	0,*

		19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 7 : temporary	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 40.2, 41.2

14.5.1 Submarine pipeline areas (see S-4 – B-439.3 and B-444.3)

Submarine pipeline areas should be encoded where:

- pipelines (including disused pipelines) are so numerous in an area that it would be impossible to encode them individually without impairing the legibility of the ENC; or
- a regulatory authority designates an area for the protection of a pipeline, or pipelines.

If it is required to encode a submarine pipeline area, it must be done using the feature **Submarine Pipeline Area**.

Remarks:

- Where populated, the attribute **status** must only be used to encode the status of the area and not the status of the pipelines in the area.
- The outer limits of a pipeline area must correspond to the area in which anchoring, trawling and dredging are prohibited or inadvisable; that is, the limits must lie at a safe distance beyond the actual lines of the

outermost pipes.

- Where a pipeline area is disused, the **Submarine Pipeline Area** should be encoded with the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use), and the attributes **category of pipeline/pipe** and **product** should not be encoded.
- If it is required to provide the contact details of submerged pipeline owners/operators (in cases of damage to a pipeline or for reparation for loss of an anchor in order to avoid such damage), this must be done using an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Pipeline Overhead; Pipeline Submarine/On Land.

14.6 Offshore production area

IHO Definition: **OFFSHORE PRODUCTION AREA**. An area at sea within which there are production facilities. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.113, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Offshore Production Area (OSPARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of offshore production area	*(CATPRA)*	1 : wind farm 2 : wave farm 3 : current farm 4 : tank farm 5 : seabed material extraction area 6 : solar farm	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 4 : wingless 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 4 : stone 6 : ore 10 : bauxite 14 : sand 23 : electricity	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited	EN	0,*

		10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
water level effect	(WATLEV)	2 : always dry 3 : always under water/ submerged 4 : covers and uncovers 7 : floating	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [TS72]: Allowable values need to be confirmed for binding of this attribute to OffshoreProductionArea.

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides	**Additional Information** (see clause	**Contact Details**, **Nautical**	Association	0,1

Information	25.1)	**Information**		

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 4, 5.2

14.6.1 Offshore production areas (see S-4 – B-445.3; B-445.7; B-445.9; B-445.11 and B-445.12)

Oil and gas fields are exploited in many parts of the world. Although the basic methods for extracting oil and gas are well established, details of the systems and structures may vary with the characteristics of the different fields and are continually being developed. In a typical field, oil or gas is obtained from wells drilled from fixed production platforms, usually standing on the seabed. From each production platform, the oil or gas is carried in pipes to a facilities platform where primary processing, compression and pumping are carried out. The oil or gas is then transported through pipelines to a nearby storage tank, tanker loading buoy or floating terminal, or direct to a tank farm on shore. One facilities platform may collect the oil or gas from several production platforms, and may supply a number of tanker loading buoys or storage units. Such facilities platforms are sometimes termed Field Terminal Platforms. Converted tankers or purpose-built vessels are often permanently moored and used as facilities platforms, floating terminals, and for storage.

Other offshore energy production facilities include wind turbines and underwater current turbines. Other methods of harnessing tidal wave and solar energy are also in use.

If it is required to encode an offshore production area, it must be done using the feature **Offshore Production Area**.

Remarks:

- General information about a wind farm such as blade diameter and blade vertical clearance should be encoded, if required, using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). If it is required to encode individual offshore wind turbines, it should be done using a **Wind Turbine** feature (see clause 7.4).
- If it is required to encode individual wave energy devices or underwater turbines within a wave or curre farm (or turbine field), it should be done using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6) or, if there ar associated surface structures, using appropriate features, for example **Offshore Platform** or **Specia Purpose/General Beacon** (see clauses 14.1 and 20.12). The extent and nature of any restricted are related to the feature should be encoded using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8).
- If it is required to encode an offshore development area, it should be done using an **Offshore Productio Area** feature, with attributes **category of offshore production area** and **product** populated with th appropriate value; and **condition** = *1* (under construction). A note describing the activities taking place within the area may be included using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). At the conclusion of the development of the area, the attribute **condition** and any associated note can then be removed from the feature.

Commented [TS73]: Remarks bullet 1 of clause 14.6.1. Appears to have been overlooked in modelling? Consider adding attribute **vertical clearance** (and possibly **horizontal width** (for blade diameter)) to feature **Offshore Production Area**.
IHO Sec: Suggest that current modelling is OK. This information should be encoded on the **Wind Turbine** features themselves as the "standard" encoding, and should be considered to be "additional information" for **Offshore Production Area** particularly as the suggested new attributes are only relevant for a single category of offshore production area.

14.6.2 Offshore tanker loading systems (see S-4 – B-445.4)

Although the oil and gas from some fields are sent ashore by submarine pipeline, a variety of mooring systems have been developed for use in deep water and in the vicinity of certain ports, to allow the loading of large vessels and the permanent mooring of floating storage vessels or units. These offshore systems include large mooring buoys, designed for mooring vessels up to 500,000 tonnes, and platforms on structures fixed at their lower ends to the seafloor. They allow a vessel to moor forward or aft to them, and to swing to the wind or stream. Those which are fixed are termed Single Point Moorings (SPM). Those which are a form of mooring buoy are termed Single Buoy Moorings (SBM). Like production platforms, SPM and SBM normally have lights and fog signals.

If it is required to encode an offshore tanker loading system, it must be done using the feature **Installation Buoy** (see clause 20.7).

If it is required to encode an articulated tower, it must be done using an **Offshore Platform** feature (see clause 14.1), with attribute:

category of offshore platform - *4* - articulated loading platform
5 - single anchor leg mooring

	8 - floating production, storage and off-loading vessel *10* - navigation, communication and control buoy (which may include storage facilities)
Distinction: Exclusive Economic Zone; Offshore Platform; Wind Turbine.	

15 Geo Features – Tracks and Routes

15.1 Leading, clearing and transit lines and recommended tracks (see S-4 – B-433 and B-434)

If it is required to encode leading, clearing and transit lines and recommended tracks, it must be done using the features **Navigation Line** and **Recommended Track** (see clauses 15.4 and 15.5), and related point navigational aids features (see Section 20). This applies for visual and radio navigational aids.

NB. In North America the word “range” is used instead of “transit” and “leading line”.

15.1.1 Range systems - relationship

To encode a range system, the features **Navigation Line**, **Recommended Track** and the navigational aids features should be associated with the feature **Range System** (see clause 15.6) using the association **Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13).

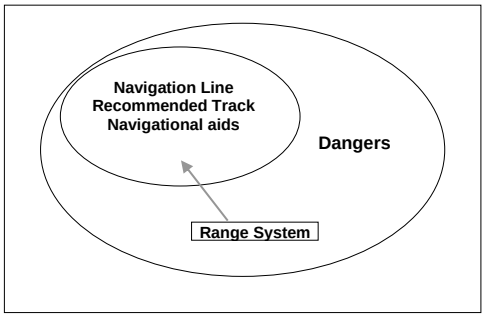


Figure 15-1 – Range systems

Remarks:

- All features comprising a range system must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).

15.2 Traffic Lanes

A traffic lane is an area within defined limits in which one way traffic is established. Natural obstacles, including those forming separation zones may constitute a boundary (IMO Ships’ Routeing). These lanes of travel may be composed of the following features: **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** and **Deep Water Route Part**.

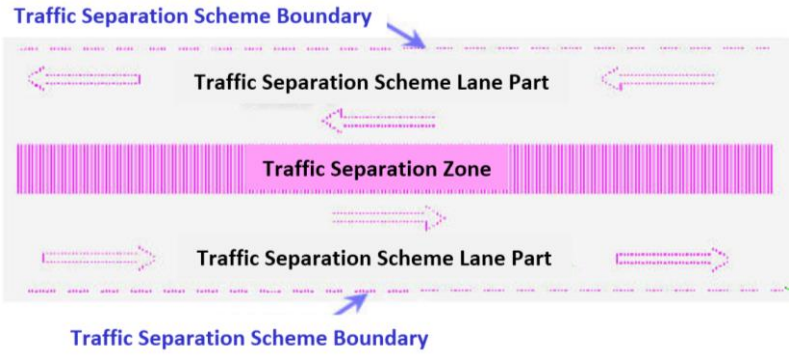


Figure 15-2 – Traffic lanes – Example

15.3 Traffic separation schemes and traffic separation scheme systems (see S-4 – B-435.1-3)

A traffic separation scheme is a routeing measure aimed at the separation of opposing streams of traffic by appropriate means and by the establishment of traffic lanes (IMO Ships' Routeing). A traffic separation scheme separates opposing streams of marine traffic by the establishment of separation zones or lines and traffic lanes. It may include inshore traffic zones or Deep Water routes. A separation zone or line separates:

1) The traffic lanes in which ships are proceeding in opposite or nearly opposite directions,
2) A traffic lane from the adjacent sea area, or
3) Traffic lanes designated for particular classes of ships proceeding in the same direction.

If it is required to encode a traffic separation scheme, it must be done using:

- Deep Water routes (DW – a route within defined limits which has been accurately surveyed for clearance of sea bottom and submerged obstacles as indicated on the chart (IMO Ships' Routeing)). Deep Water routes are encoded using **Deep Water Route Centreline**; **Deep Water Route Part** and **Deep Water Route** features (see clauses 15.13 to 15.15);
- **Inshore Traffic Zone** (see clause 15.16);
- **Precautionary Area** (see clause 15.17);
- **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout** and **Traffic Separation Scheme** (see clauses 15.18 to 15.23); and
- Navigational aids features (see Sections 18 to 21).

For guidance on provision of advance notification of changes to traffic separation schemes, see clause 31.1.1.

To encode a traffic separation scheme (TSS) system, the **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Precautionary Area**, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout** features must be associated with the **Traffic Separation Scheme** (see clause 15.23) using the association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17). The **Traffic Separation Scheme** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the Scheme (if they are stated in the regulation defining the TSS or Deep Water route) using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2). Where it is required to indicate the name of the complete TSS, this must be done using the attribute feature name for the **Traffic Separation Scheme**. Where it is required to populate textual information for the TSS, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Traffic Separation Scheme**.

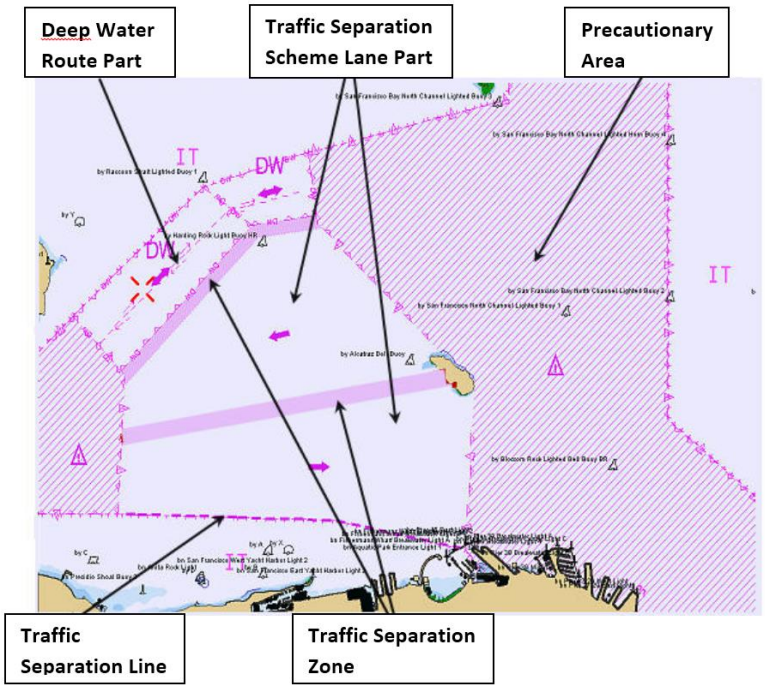


Figure 15-3 – Sample Traffic Separation Scheme (TSS) and Deep Water route (DW)

Remarks:

- Traffic separation scheme systems may be included with other routeing measures such as Deep Water or two-way routes, or another traffic separation scheme system, to comprise a complete traffic routeing system. To encode the relationship between routeing measures, the named association defining each routeing measure within the system (or the relevant feature if the routeing measure consists of a single feature) may be associated using a **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** to form a hierarchical relationship (see clause 25.17). The individual elements comprising different routeing measures must not be aggregated into a single named association.
- All features comprising a TSS, TSS system or deep water route must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).

15.4 Navigation line

IHO Definition: **NAVIGATION LINE**. A straight line extending towards an area of navigational interest and generally generated by two navigational aids or one navigational aid and a bearing. (Service Hydrographique et Oceanographique de la Marine, France).

S-101 Geo Feature: Navigation Line (NAVLNE)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of navigation line	(CATNAV)	1 : clearing line 2 : transit line 3 : leading line bearing a recommended track	EN	1,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
measured distance			IN	0,1
orientation			C	1,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		(S) RE	1,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1

	clause 25.13)			
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 1-2; Q 122

15.4.1 Navigation lines (see S-4 – B-433)

Clearing Lines are important in rocky areas where dangers are not guarded by buoys and where sailing vessels (which are not always able to keep to a direct track) and other small craft may navigate close inshore. Transits marking isolated dangers are based on beacons or other marks which are erected on shore to indicate (approximately, unless there are two pairs of beacons) the position of an isolated danger. Leading lines based on beacons or lights must be encoded where the optimum display scale for the ENC data permits. Leading lines based on natural features should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data where they appear to be useful, particularly if other navigational aids seem inadequate.

If it is required to encode a navigation line, it must be done using the feature **Navigation Line**.

The use of **Navigation Line** and **Recommended Track** (see clause 15.5) is defined in more detail in the following Table, and in Figure 15-4 below:

Figure		Navigation Line	Recommended Track	Navigational Aids
1	Recommended track on a leading line	**category of navigation line** = *3*	**based on fixed marks** = *True*	at least 2
2	Clearing line on marks in line	**category of navigation line** = *1*	none	at least 2
3	Transit line on marks in line	**category of navigation line** = *2*	none	at least 2
4	Recommended track on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *3*	**based on fixed marks** = *True*	1
5	Clearing line on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *1*	none	1
6	Transit line on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *2*	none	1
7	Recommended track not based on fixed marks	none	**based on fixed marks** = *False*	none

Table 15-1 – Navigation lines – Attribute encoding

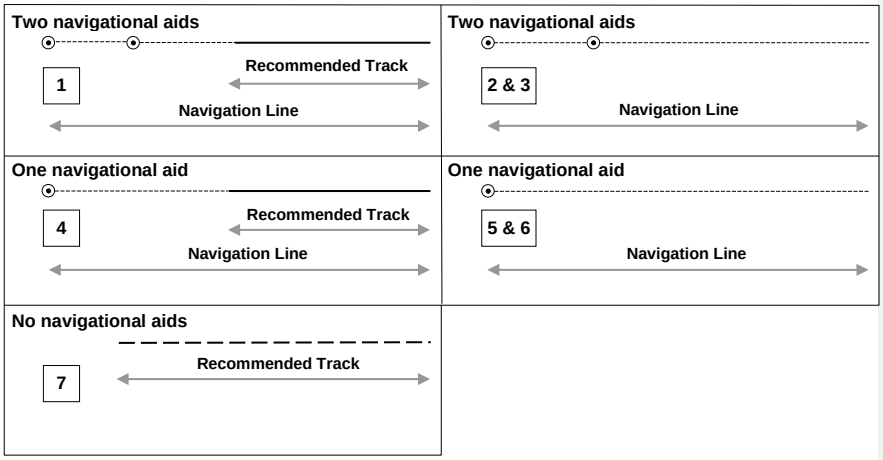


Figure 15-4 – Navigation lines – Geometry encoding

Remarks:
- The value populated for the mandatory attribute **orientation value** must be the value of the bearing from seaward.
- The extent of the navigation line depends on the visibility of the navigational aids.
- The recommended track is that portion of a navigation line that a ship should use for navigation.

15.4.2 Measured distances (see S-4 – B-458)

If the track to be followed is on a leading line or a bearing, it must be encoded in the way described in the Table and Figure 15-4 above (cases 1 or 4). If the track is not on a leading line or bearing, it must be encoded only as a **Navigation Line** feature with the attribute **category of navigation line** being set to an empty (null) value. In either case, if it is required to encode the measured distance, it must be done using the attribute **measured distance**.

If it is required to encode the transit lines, they must be done using **Navigation Line** features, with **category of navigation line** = *2* (transit line).

If it is required to encode the beacons, they must be done using **Special Purpose/General Beacon** features, with attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *17* (measured distance mark).

On occasions, one or more of the transits used for the measured distance may incorporate an existing landmark as the front or rear mark. In this case, if **Landmark** is encoded, **category of special purpose mark** = *17* must also be populated.

Where the entire measured distance system exists within a single dataset, each transit line with its beacons must be associated with the feature **Range System** (see clause 15.6) using the association **Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13). These two associations and the track to be followed must be associated with another instance of **Range System** to form a hierarchical relationship.

Remarks:
- All features comprising a measured distance must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).

Distinction: Recommended Route Centreline; Recommended Track.

15.5 Recommended track

IHO Definition: **RECOMMENDED TRACK**. A route which has been specially examined to ensure so far as possible that it is free of dangers and along which ships are advised to navigate. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Recommended Track (RECTRC)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
based on fixed marks	*(CATTRK)*		BO	1,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	1,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 6 : least depth known	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 2 : found by side scan sonar 3 : found by multi beam 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor	EN	0,*

		13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept		
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	1,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 3-6

15.5.1 Recommended tracks (see S-4 – B-432.1; B-434 and B-434.1-4)

Recommended tracks and fairways usually comprise a number of sections (sometimes termed “legs”) which lead between dangers lying close on both sides of the track or fairway. Tracks commonly include some sections which are leading lines (see clause 15.1). The distinction between tracks and fairways, in this context, is that tracks have no specified outer limits and fairways do have specified outer limits.

It is important to recognise that it is not the role of cartographers to create “recommended” tracks and other “recommended” routeing measures; such recommendations are made by other authorities. The word “Recommended”, used in connection with recommended tracks and other recommended routeing measures usually implies that it has been recommended by a competent authority (such as a port authority within its port limits or a maritime safety authority) and may be adopted by IMO. Occasionally, the recommendation may be based on advice directly from a competent surveyor or established by precedent.

Recommended tracks include all channels recommended for hydrographic reasons to lead safely between shoal depths. The use of such tracks is generally left to the discretion of the Mariner and will depend on the vessel's draught, the state of the tide, adequacy of navigational aids and so on.

If it is required to encode a recommended track, it must be done using the feature **Recommended Track**.

The use of **Navigation Line** and **Recommended Track** is defined in more detail in the following Table, and in Figure 15-5 below.

Figure		Navigation Line	Recommended Track	Navigational Aids
1	Recommended track on a leading line	**category of navigation line** = *3*	**based on fixed marks** = *True*	at least 2
2	Clearing line on marks in line	**category of navigation line** = *1*	none	at least 2
3	Transit line on marks in line	**category of navigation line** = *2*	none	at least 2
4	Recommended track on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *3*	**based on fixed marks** = *True*	1
5	Clearing line on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *1*	none	1
6	Transit line on a bearing	**category of navigation line** = *2*	none	1
7	Recommended track not based on fixed marks	none	**based on fixed marks** = *False*	none

Table 15-2 – Recommended tracks – Attribute encoding

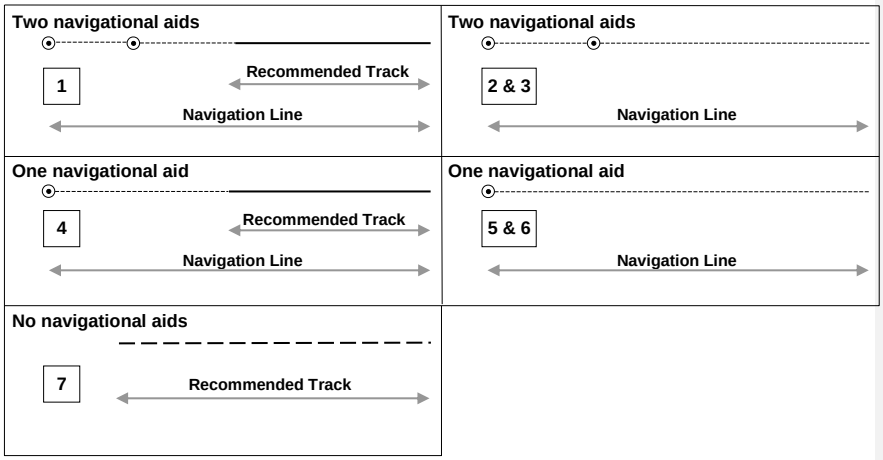


Figure 15-5 – Recommended tracks – Geometry encoding

Remarks:

- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the shallowest depth along the track, where required.
- The attribute **maximum permitted draught** is used to encode the maximum draught permitted on the track, where required.
- The recommended track is that portion of a navigation line (see clause 15.4) that a ship should use for navigation (see Figure 15-5 above).
- In the case of a two-way recommended track, only one value of orientation is encoded (in the mandatory attribute **orientation value**); the other value can be deduced (that is, the value in **orientation value** + 180

degrees). The value of orientation encoded on **orientation value** should be the value of the bearing from seaward. If it is not possible to define a seaward direction, the value that is less than 180° should be used.

- When the traffic flow along a recommended track is one way (attribute **traffic flow** = *1*, *2* or *3*), the resultant direction of the line (accounting for the direction of digitising and any subsequent reversal of the line) associated with the **Recommended Track** must be the same as the direction of the traffic flow, in order to ensure the correct representation in the ECDIS of the direction to be followed.

Distinction: Fairway; Navigation Line; Recommended Route Centreline; Recommended Traffic Lane Part.

15.6 Range system

IHO Definition: **RANGE SYSTEM**. Two or more features in the same horizontal direction, particularly those features so placed as navigational aids to mark any line of importance to vessels, as a channel. The one nearest the observer is the front mark and the one farthest from the observer is the rear mark. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Range System *(C_AGGR)*		
Primitives: Curve, Surface, None		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [JW74]: Refer to inconsistency comment at clause 15.8.

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Building**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Fortified Structure**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Light All Around**, **Light Sectored**, **Navigation Line**, **Pile**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Range System**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Safe**	Aggregation	0,*

		Water Beacon, **Silo/Tank**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**		
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

15.6.1 Range systems (see S4 – B-433)

If it is required to encode leading, clearing and transit lines and recommended tracks, it must be done using the features **Navigation Line** and **Recommended Track** (see clauses 15.4 and 15.5), and related point navigational aids features (see Sections 18-21). This applies for visual and radio navigational aids.

To encode a range system, the features **Navigation Line**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track** and the navigational aids features should be associated with the feature **Range System** using the association **Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13).

Remarks:

- The name of the range system may be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Range System** must be encoded using curve or surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Range System** should utilise the geometry of the components of the system so as to cover its full extent.
- All features comprising a range system must have the same value populated for the attribute **scal minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).
- Multiple **Range System** features may be further aggregated hierarchically to define a higher level range system.

Distinction:

Commented [TS75]: Suggest a Figure may be good here to demonstrate (examples of curve and surface).

15.7 Fairway

IHO Definition: **FAIRWAY**. That part of a river, harbour and so on, where the main navigable channel for vessels of larger size lies. It is also the usual course followed by vessels entering or leaving harbours, called "ship channel". (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fairway (FAIRWY)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	0,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 6 : least depth known	EN	0,*
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted	EN	0,*

		20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Fairway Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Fairway System**	Aggregation	0,1
Has auxiliary	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Caution Area**, **Daymark**, **Dredged Area**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Landmark**, **Pile**, **Range System**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Restricted Area**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Swept Area**	Aggregation	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 18

15.7.1 Fairways (see S-4 – B-432.1(c) and B-434.5)

A fairway, sometimes called Ship Channel, is the main navigable channel in the approaches to, or within, a river or harbour. Fairways which are designated by a regulatory authority are treated as Routeing Measures.

If it is required to encode a fairway, it must be done using the feature **Fairway**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the shallowest depth in the fairway, where known.
- The attribute **maximum permitted draught** is permitted on **Fairway** only where the **Fairway** defines the entire system (that is, the **Fairway** has not been associated with other **Fairway** features and the feature **Fairway System** (see clause 15.8) to define a complete fairway system).
- Where beacons or buoys marking a fairway are offset from the actual fairway limits, this should be indicated using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- To encode a complete fairway system, the **Fairway** features may be associated with the feature **Fairway System** using the association **Fairway Aggregation** (see clause 25.7). The navigational aids features defining a fairway section may be associated with the **Fairway** using the association **Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8). Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete fairway system, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Fairway System** feature; or on a single **Fairway** feature where this feature defines the entire system. Where it is required to encode textual information for the fairway system, this should be done using the complex attribute **information**.

Distinction: Deep Water Route Centreline; Deep Water Route Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part.

15.8 Fairway system

IHO Definition: **FAIRWAY SYSTEM**. That part of a river, harbour and so on, where the main navigable channel for vessels of larger size lies. It is also the usual course followed by vessels entering or leaving harbours, called “ship channel”. (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

A fairway system is an aggregation of connected fairway features making up a complex fairway system.

S-101 Geo Feature: Fairway System *(C_AGGR)*

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Building**, **Bridge**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**,	Association	0,*

Commented [TS76]: There is a difference in the modelling of the binding attributes for Fairway System and other similar "no geometry" features (Deep Water Route, Two-Way Route, Traffic Separation Scheme) in that the date attributes have been included. Needs to be discussed as to how this all works.
IHO Sec: Need advice as to which way to go on this one. May be dependent on further actions based on proposal to assign geometry to these features.

		Fortified Structure, **Hulk**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**		
Consists of	**Fairway Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	1,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 18

15.8.1 Fairway systems (see S-4 – B-432.1(c) and B-434.5)

A fairway, sometimes called Ship Channel, is the main navigable channel in the approaches to, or within, a river or harbour. Fairways which are designated by a regulatory authority are treated as Routeing Measures.

A fairway system is composed of two or more **Fairway** features that comprise a complex fairway routeing system, for instance a long fairway comprising several bends. To define the complete fairway system, the **Fairway** features must be aggregated in a **Fairway System** feature, using the association **Fairway Aggregation** (see clause 25.7).

Remarks:

- The name of the complete fairway system must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Fairway System** must be encoded using surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Fairway System** should utilise the geometry of the components of the system so as to cover its full extent.
- Where it is required to populate textual information for the fairway system, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), or if the information is considered essential for safe navigation, using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10).

Distinction: Deep Water Route; Traffic Separation Scheme; Two-Way Route.

15.9 Recommended route centreline

IHO Definition: **RECOMMENDED ROUTE CENTRELINE**. The recommended route centreline indicates the "centreline" of a recommended route. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.137, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Recommended Route Centreline (RCRTCL)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
based on fixed marks	*(CATTRK)*		BO	1,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 3 : found by multi beam 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar	EN	0,*

		15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept		
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 28.1

15.9.1 Recommended routes (see S-4 – B-435.4)

A recommended route is a route of undefined width, for the convenience of ships in transit, which is often marked by centreline buoys. (IMO Ships Routeing, 2010). IMO-designated recommended routes are listed in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part E. This type of routeing measure was adopted to include such features as the "transit routes" (through former minefields) in the entrances to the Baltic Sea. In contrast to recommended tracks (see clause 15.5), there is usually ample sea-room for vessels to keep well starboard (to the right) of the centreline.

If it is required to encode the centreline of a recommended route, it must be done using the feature **Recommended Route Centreline**.

Remarks:

- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the shallowest depth on the route, where

known.

- In the case of a recommended route centreline, only one value of orientation is encoded (in the attribute **orientation value**); the other value can be deduced (that is, the value in **orientation value** + 180 degrees). The value of orientation encoded on **orientation value** should be the value of the bearing from seaward. If it is not possible to define a seaward direction, the value that is less than 180° should be used.
- When the traffic flow is one way (attribute **traffic flow** = *1*, *2* or *3*), the resultant direction of the line (accounting for the direction of digitising and any subsequent reversal of the line) associated with the **Recommended Route Centreline** must be the same as the direction of traffic flow, in order to ensure the correct representation in the ECDIS of the direction to be followed.

Distinction: Recommended Track; Recommended Traffic Lane Part.

15.10 Two-way route part

IHO Definition: **TWO-WAY ROUTE PART**. An area of a two-way route within which traffic flow is generally along one bearing (and possibly its reciprocal). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.193, November 2000).
S-101 Geo Feature: Two-Way Route Part (TWRTPT)
Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
based on fixed marks	*(CATTRK)*		BO	0,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	(ORIENT)		RE	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 3 : found by multi beam 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	1,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1

uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Two-Way Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.18)	**Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 28.2

15.10.1 Two-way Routes (see S-4 – B-435.6)

A two way route is a route within defined limits inside which two way traffic is established, aimed at providing safe passage of ships through waters where navigation is difficult or dangerous (IMO Ships Routeing, 2010). It consists of one or more areas within which traffic flows in two directions along one bearing and/or its reciprocal. Such routes are established by regulatory authorities and may be adopted by IMO. IMO-designated two-way routes are listed in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part E. When it is required to encode these areas, this must be done using the feature **Two-Way Route Part**. These route parts will generally be two-way, but some may be restricted to one-way traffic flow.

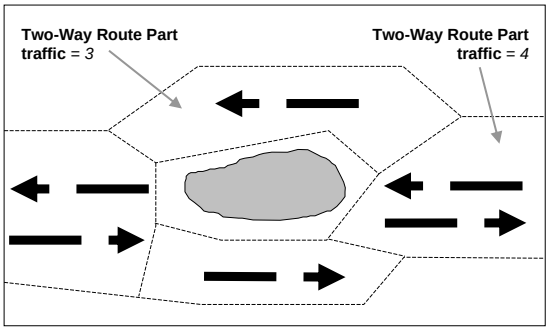


Figure 15-6 – One-way traffic flow in a two-way route

If it is required to encode a two-way route with one-way sections, separate **Two-Way Route Part** features must be encoded for the different parts, with attribute **traffic flow** = *3* (one-way) or *4* (two-way). In one-way sections, the mandatory attribute **orientation value** must indicate the true direction of traffic flow, not its

reciprocal. In two-way sections, **orientation value** may indicate either direction of traffic flow.

Remarks:

- The orientation of the two-way route part is defined by the centreline of the part and is related to the general direction of the two-way route.
- The attribute **depth range minimum value** is used to encode the shallowest depth on the part, where required.
- To encode a complete Two-way route, the **Two-Way Route Part** features must be associated with the feature **Two-Way Route** (see clause 15.11) using the association **Two-Way Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.18). Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete two-way route, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Two-Way Route** feature. Where it is required to encode textual information for the complete two-way route, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Two-Way Route** feature.
- All **Two-Way Route Part** features comprising a complete two-way route must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).
- Two-way routes may be included with other routeing measures such as traffic separation schemes to comprise a complete traffic routeing system. To encode the relationship between routeing measures, the feature defining each routeing measure within the system (or the relevant feature if the routeing measure consists of a single feature) may be associated with the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme** (see clause 15.23) using the **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17) to form a hierarchical relationship. The individual elements comprising different routeing measures must not be collected into a single **Traffic Separation Scheme** feature.

Distinction: Deep Water Route Part; Recommended Traffic Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part.

15.11 Two-way route

IHO Definition: **TWO-WAY ROUTE**. A route within defined limits inside which two way traffic is established, aimed at providing safe passage of ships through waters where navigation is difficult or dangerous. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Two-Way Route

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Building**, **Bridge**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**,	Association	0,*

Commented [JW77]: Refer to inconsistency comment at clause 15.8.

		Offshore Platform, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**		
Consists of	**Two-Way Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.18)	**Two-Way Route Part**	Aggregation	1,*
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 28.2

15.11.1 Two-way routes (see S4 – B-435.6)

To define the complete two-way system, the **Two-Way Route Part** features must be aggregated with a **Two-Way Route** feature using the association **Two-Way Route Aggregation**.

Remarks:

- The name of the two-way route, where required, must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Two-Way Route** must be encoded using surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Two-Way Route** should utilise the geometry of the components of the route so as to cover its full extent.
- Where it is required to populate textual information for the two-way route, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Two-Way Route**; or if the information is considered essential for safe navigation, using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10).

Distinction: Deep Water Route; Fairway System; Traffic Separation Scheme; Two-Way Route Part.

15.12 Recommended traffic lane part

IHO Definition: **RECOMMENDED TRAFFIC LANE PART**. A traffic flow pattern indicating a recommended directional movement of traffic where it is impractical or unnecessary to adopt an established direction of traffic flow. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Recommended Traffic Lane Part (RCTLPT)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 26.1-2

15.12.1 Recommended traffic lane part (see S-4 – B-435.5)

Recommended direction of traffic flow is a traffic flow pattern indicating a recommended directional movement of traffic where it is impractical or unnecessary to adopt an established direction of traffic flow. (IMO Ships Routeing, 2010). IMO-designated recommended directions of traffic flow are listed in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part E. Several hydrographic offices, in consultation with their Ministries of Transport, have added

recommended directions in areas such as the outer approaches to major ports in order to show the best routes for crossing traffic or to minimise the risk of head-on encounters.

The feature **Recommended Traffic Lane Part** must be used, where required, to encode areas with a recommended direction of traffic flow which is generally along one bearing:

- between two traffic separation schemes (TSS) (INT1 – M 26.1);
- in the entrance area of a TSS; or
- along the outside of a Deep Water route (INT1 – M 26.2).

Remarks:

- When the area is not defined, a point feature should be encoded.
- The orientation of the recommended traffic lane part is defined by the centreline of the part and is related to the general direction of traffic flow in the recommended traffic lane.

Distinction:

15.13 Deep water route centreline

IHO Definition: **DEEP WATER ROUTE CENTRELINE**. The Deep Water route centreline indicates the centreline of a route, the width of which is not explicitly defined. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.49, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Deep Water Route Centreline (DWRTCL)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
based on fixed marks	*(CATTRK)*		BO	1,1
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
IMO adopted	*(CATTSS)*		BO	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 3 : found by multi beam 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR	EN	0,*

		16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept		
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	1,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6)	**Deep Water Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 27.3

15.13.1 Deep Water route centrelines (see S-4 – B-435.3)

A complete Deep Water route (DW) consists of one or more areas within which the flow of traffic either follows one defined direction for one-way traffic, or follows one defined direction and its reciprocal for two-way traffic.

If it is required to encode the centreline of a Deep Water route, the width of which is not explicitly defined, it must be done using the feature **Deep Water Route Centreline**.

Remarks:

- In the case of a deep water route centreline, only one value of orientation is encoded (in the mandatory attribute **orientation value**); the other value can be deduced (that is, the value in **orientation value** + 180 degrees). The value of orientation encoded on **orientation value** should be the value of the bearing from seaward. If it is not possible to define a seaward direction, the value that is less than 180° should be used.
- When the traffic flow is one way (attribute **traffic flow** = *1*, *2* or *3*), the resultant direction of the line

(accounting for the direction of digitising and any subsequent reversal of the line) associated with the **Deep Water Route Centreline** must be the same as the direction of traffic flow, in order to ensure the correct representation in the ECDIS of the direction to be followed.

- The complex attribute **feature name** should only be used if the individual feature is not included in an association (see clause 15.15.1).
- To encode a complete Deep Water route, the **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part** features, and the navigational aids features (if they are stated in the regulation defining the DW), may be associated with the feature **Deep Water Route** (see clause 15.15) using the associations **Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6) and **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2). Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete DW, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Deep Water Route** feature; or on a single **Deep Water Route Centreline** feature where this feature defines the entire DW. Where it is required to encode textual information for the DW, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Deep Water Route** feature; or on a single **Deep Water Route Centreline** feature where this feature defines the entire DW.
- Deep Water routes, unlike dredged areas, are likely to be designated in offshore waters outside the immediate supervision of harbour authorities (although some do form the outer approaches to deep water ports). No least depth quoted can be fully guaranteed in most cases. Least depths within the route should be encoded by soundings as elsewhere on the ENC dataset so that the navigator will not assume that the depths are continually monitored. However, in those cases where a hydrographic authority feels confident to guarantee the existence of a minimum depth of water in a DW route, it must be populated using the attribute **depth range minimum value**.
- Deep water routes may be included with other routeing measures such as traffic separation schemes to comprise a complete traffic routeing system. To encode the relationship between routeing measures, the feature defining each routeing measure within the system (or the relevant feature if the routeing measure consists of a single feature) may be associated with the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme** (see clause 15.23) using the **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17) to form a hierarchical relationship. The individual elements comprising different routeing measures must not be collected into a single **Traffic Separation Scheme** feature.
- IMO-designated Deep Water routes are listed in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part C. Where **Deep Water Route Centreline** features are included in the associations **Deep Water Route Aggregation** or **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation**, the attribute **IMO adopted** must not be populated for the **Deep Water Route Centreline** features.

Distinction: Deep Water Route Part.

15.14 Deep water route part

IHO Definition: **DEEP WATER ROUTE PART**. An area of a deep water route within which ships proceed in the same direction.

S-101 Geo Feature: Deep Water Route Part (DWRTPT)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
depth range minimum value	(DRVAL1)		RE	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
IMO adopted	*(CATTSS)*		BO	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	(ORIENT)		RE	1,1
quality of vertical measurement	(QUASOU)	1 : depth known 2 : depth or least depth unknown 3 : doubtful sounding 4 : unreliable sounding 6 : least depth known 7 : least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown	EN	0,*
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited	EN	0,*

		19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
technique of vertical measurement	(TECSOU)	1 : found by echo sounder 3 : found by multi beam 5 : found by lead line 8 : swept by vertical acoustic system 9 : found by electromagnetic sensor 13 : swept by side scan sonar 15 : found by LIDAR 16 : synthetic aperture radar 17 : hyperspectral imagery 18 : mechanically swept	EN	0,*
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	1,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6)	**Deep Water Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 27.1-2

15.14.1 Deep Water route parts (see S-4 – B-435; B-435.3 and B-436.3)

A complete Deep Water route (DW) consists of one or more areas within which the flow of traffic either follows one defined direction for one-way traffic, or follows one defined direction and its reciprocal for two-way traffic.

If it is required to encode these areas, this must be done using the feature **Deep Water Route Part**.

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **feature name** should only be used if the individual feature is not included in an association (see clause 15.15.1).
- The route must be covered by **Depth Area** features.
- A Deep Water route part may overlap a **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** feature.
- To encode a complete Deep Water route, the **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part** features, and the navigational aids features (if they are stated in the regulation defining the DW), may be associated with the feature **Deep Water Route** (see clause 15.15) using the associations **Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6) and **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2). Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete DW, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Deep Water Route** feature; or on a single **Deep Water Route Part** feature where this feature defines the entire DW. Where it is required to encode textual information for the DW, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Deep Water Route** feature; or on a single **Deep Water Route Part** feature where this feature defines the entire DW.
- Deep Water routes, unlike dredged areas, are likely to be designated in offshore waters outside the immediate supervision of harbour authorities (although some do form the outer approaches to deep water ports). No least depth quoted can be fully guaranteed in most cases. Least depths within the route should be encoded by soundings as elsewhere on the ENC dataset so that the navigator will not assume that the depths are continually monitored. However, in those cases where a hydrographic authority feels confident to guarantee the existence of a minimum depth of water in a DW route, it must be populated using the attribute **depth range minimum value**.
- The orientation of the Deep Water route part is defined by the centreline of the part and is related to the general direction of traffic flow in the Deep Water route.
- Deep water routes may be included with other routeing measures such as traffic separation schemes to comprise a complete traffic routeing system. To encode the relationship between routeing measures, the feature defining each routeing measure within the system (or the relevant feature if the routeing measure consists of a single feature) may be associated with the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme** (see clause 15.23) using the **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17) to form a hierarchical relationship. The individual elements comprising different routeing measures must not be collected into a single **Traffic Separation Scheme** feature.
- IMO-designated Deep Water routes are listed in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part C. Where **Deep Water Route Part** features are included in the associations **Deep Water Route Aggregation** or **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation**, the attribute **IMO adopted** must not be populated for the **Deep Water Route Part** features.

Distinction: Deep Water Route Centreline; Two-Way Route Part.

15.15 Deep Water route

IHO Definition: **DEEP WATER ROUTE**. A route within defined limits which has been accurately surveyed for clearance of sea bottom and submerged obstacles as indicated on the chart. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Deep Water Route *(C_AGGR)*

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
IMO adopted	*(CATTSS)*		BO	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Building**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Crane**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fortified Structure**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water**	Association	0,*

Commented [JW78]: Refer to inconsistency comment at clause 15.8.

		Buoy, **Silo/Tank**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**		
Component of	**Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6)	**Deep Water Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 27.1-3

15.15.1 Deep Water routes (see S4 – B-435.3)

If it is required to define a complete Deep Water route (DW) system, the features **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part** and any associated navigation aids must be associated with the feature **Deep Water Route** using the associations **Deep Water Route Aggregation** (see clause 25.6) and **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)

Remarks:

- The name of the DW, where known, must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Deep Water Route** must be encoded using surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Deep Water Route** should utilise the geometry of the components of the route so as to cover its full extent.
- Where it is required to populate textual information for the DW, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Deep Water Route**; or if the information is considered essential for safe navigation, using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10).

Distinction: Fairway System; Traffic Separation Scheme; Two-Way Route.

15.16 Inshore traffic zone

IHO Definition: **INSHORE TRAFFIC ZONE**. A routeing measure comprising a designated area between the landward boundary of a traffic separation scheme and the adjacent coast, to be used in accordance with the provisions of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea. (Adapted from IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Inshore Traffic Zone (ISTZNE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 25.1, 25.2

15.16.1 Inshore traffic zones (see S-4 – B-435.1)

The feature **Inshore Traffic Zone** must only be used to encode the designated area between the landward boundary of a traffic separation scheme and the adjacent coast.

Remarks:

- Inshore traffic zones are used to exclude most classes of through traffic. Traffic in an inshore traffic zone is separated from traffic in the adjacent traffic lane by a separation zone or line (see clause 15.19). An inshore traffic zone may be adjacent to a precautionary area (see clause 15.17).

Distinction: Precautionary Area; Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout.

15.17 Precautionary area

IHO Definition: **PRECAUTIONARY AREA**. A routeing measure comprising an area within defined limits where ships must navigate with particular caution and within which the direction of traffic flow may be recommended. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Precautionary Area (PRCARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
IMO adopted	*(CATTSS)*		BO	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited	EN	0,*

		27 : speed restricted		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	1,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 16, 24

15.17.1 Precautionary areas (see S-4 – B-435.2)

Precautionary areas are commonly designated by IMO for certain areas of converging or crossing traffic, usually in association with traffic separation schemes. If it is required to encode such areas, it must be done using the feature **Precautionary Area**.

Remarks:

- To encode the relevant cautionary information, this must be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- A **Precautionary Area** feature may overlap other features encoded for the traffic separation scheme (for example **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part, Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**).
- Where a **Precautionary Area** feature is included in the association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation**, the attribute **IMO adopted** must not be populated for the **Precautionary Area** feature.

Distinction: Caution Area; Deep Water Route Part; Inshore Traffic Zone; Restricted Area; Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout; Two-Way Route Part.

15.18 Traffic separation scheme lane part

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME LANE PART**. An area within defined limits in which one-way traffic is established. Natural obstacles, including those forming separation zones, may constitute a boundary. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part (TSSLPT)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	(ORIENT)		RE	0,1 †
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **orientation value** is mandatory for all **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** features, unless the part is a junction.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 20.1-3, 22

15.18.1 Traffic separation scheme lanes (see S-4 – B-435.1)

A traffic lane is an area within defined limits in which one-way traffic flow is established. Natural obstacles, including those forming separation zones, may constitute a boundary. (IHO Dictionary – S-32). A complete traffic separation scheme lane consists of one or more areas within which the flow of traffic follows one defined direction. If it is required to encode these areas, this must be done using the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**.

Remarks:

- At junctions, other than crossings and roundabouts, a separate **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** feature must be encoded. For this feature, the attribute **orientation value** must be omitted, in order to avoid implying that one lane has priority over another (see INT1 – M22). Warning text may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). In some cases, a precautionary area is established where routes meet or cross (see clause 15.17.1).

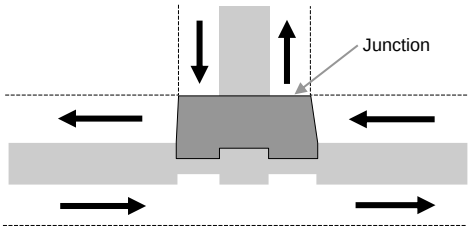


Figure 15-7 – Junction

- The orientation of the traffic separation scheme lane part is defined by the centreline of the part and is related to the general direction of traffic flow in the traffic separation lane.

Distinction: Recommended Traffic Lane Part; Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout.

15.19 Separation zone or line

IHO Definition: **SEPARATION ZONE OR LINE**. A zone or line separating the traffic lanes in which ships are proceeding in opposite, or nearly opposite directions; or separating a traffic lane from an adjacent sea area; or separating traffic lanes designated for particular classes of ships proceeding in the same direction. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Separation Zone or Line (*TSELNE*, *TSEZNE*)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 12, 13, 20.1, 20.3, 21

15.19.1 Separation zones and lines (see S-4 – B-435.1 and B-436.3)

The feature **Separation Zone or Line** must be used to encode the common boundary or separation areas

between routeing measures as specified in IMO Ships' Routeing, or to encode the centre part of a roundabout.

Remarks:

- No remarks.

Distinction: Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout.

15.20 Traffic separation scheme boundary

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME BOUNDARY**. The outer limit of a traffic lane part or a traffic separation scheme roundabout. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.185, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary (TSSBND)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 9 : mandatory 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 15

15.20.1 Traffic separation scheme boundaries (see S-4 – B-435.1)

The feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary** must only be used to encode the outer limits of traffic lanes or traffic separation scheme roundabouts.

Remarks:

- **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary** must not be used to encode the boundary between a traffic separation scheme lane or roundabout and a traffic separation zone; or a traffic separation zone and an inshore traffic zone.

Distinction: Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout.

15.21 Traffic separation scheme crossing

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME CROSSING**. A defined area where traffic lanes cross. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.186, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing (TSSCRS)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 23

15.21.1 Traffic separation scheme crossing (see S-4 – B-435.1)

The feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing** must only be used to encode the area where at least four traffic lanes cross.

Remarks:

- Junctions other than crossings and roundabouts should be encoded using the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** (see clause 15.18).
- A **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing** feature must not overlap a **Separation Zone or Line** feature of type surface at its centre.
- In some cases, a precautionary area is established where routes meet or cross (see clause 15.17.1).

Distinction: Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout.

15.22 Traffic separation scheme roundabout

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME ROUNDABOUT**. A routeing measure comprising a separation point or circular separation zone and a circular traffic lane within defined limits. Traffic within the roundabout is separated by moving in a counter-clockwise direction around the separation point or zone. (IMO Ships' Routeing).

S-101 Geo Feature: Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout (TSSRON)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1

file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 21

15.22.1 Traffic separation scheme roundabout (see S-4 – B-435.1)

The feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout** must only be used to encode the area in which traffic moves in a counter clockwise direction around a specified point or zone.

Remarks:

- Junctions other than crossings and roundabouts should be encoded using the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part** (see clause 15.18).
- A **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout** feature must not overlap a **Separation Zone or Line** feature of type surface at its centre.
- In some cases, a precautionary area is established where routes meet or cross (see clause 15.17.1).

Distinction: Separation Zone or Line; Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary; Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part.

15.23 Traffic separation scheme

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME**. A routeing measure aimed at the separation of opposing streams of traffic by appropriate means and by the establishment of traffic lanes. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Traffic Separation Scheme

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
IMO adopted	*(CATTSS)*		BO	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught			RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [JW79]: Refer to inconsistency comment at clause 15.8.

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Building**, **Bridge**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**,	Association	0,*

		Offshore Platform, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**		
Consists of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Precautionary Area**, ***Restricted Area***, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**	Aggregation	0,*
Component of	**Caution Area Association** (see clause 25.5)	**Caution Area**	Association	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 20.1-27.3, 29.1

15.23.1 Traffic separation schemes (see S4 – B-435.1-3)

If it is required to encode a traffic separation scheme (TSS), it must be done using:
- Deep Water routes (DW – a route within defined limits which has been accurately surveyed for clearance of sea bottom and submerged obstacles as indicated on the chart. (IMO Ships Routeing, 2010)). Deep Water routes are encoded using **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part** and **Deep Water Route** features (see clauses 15.13 to 15.15);
- **Inshore Traffic Zone** (see clause 15.16);
- **Precautionary Area** (see clause 15.17);
- **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout** (see clauses 15.18 to 15.22); and
- Navigational aids features (see Sections 18 to 21).

To define the complete traffic separation scheme system, these features must be associated with the feature **Traffic Separation Scheme** using the association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17); and any associated aids to navigation should be associated with the **Traffic Separation Scheme**

using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Remarks:

- The name of the TSS must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Traffic Separation Scheme** must be encoded using surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Traffic Separation Scheme** should utilise the geometry of the components of the scheme so as to cover its full extent.
- Where it is required to encode an IMO declared Area to be Avoided within a TSS, this must be done using the feature **Restricted Area** (see clause 17.8), with attribute **restriction** = *14* (area to be avoided).
- Where it is required to populate textual information for the TSS, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Traffic Separation Scheme**; or if the information is considered essential for safe navigation, using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10).

Distinction: Deep Water Route; Fairway System; Two-Way Route.

15.24 Archipelagic Sea Lane area

IHO Definition: **ARCHIPELAGIC SEA LANE AREA**. Sea lanes designated by an archipelagic State for the passage of ships and aircraft. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Archipelagic Sea Lane Area (ARCSLN)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**ASL Aggregation** (see clause 25.3)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

The attribute **nationality** is mandatory if **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area** is not associated with the feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane** using the association **ASL Aggregation**.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 17

15.24.1 Archipelagic Sea Lane area (see S-4 – B-435.10)

Article 53 of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) states that:
"an archipelagic State may designate sea lanes ..., suitable for the continuous and expeditious passage of foreign ships ... through ... its archipelagic waters and the adjacent Territorial Sea. ... All ships ... enjoy the right of archipelagic sea lanes passage in such sea lanes ... [which] include all normal passage routes used as routes for international navigation … through archipelagic waters". (Note: references to aircraft and air routes in UNCLOS have been omitted in these extracts from Article 53). (IHO S-4 B-435.10, C-51 Appendix 2 Part II).

Any archipelagic State which wishes to designate Archipelagic Sea Lanes (ASL) must propose them to IMO for adoption as ASL including all normal passage routes and navigational channels as required by UNCLOS. ASL are adopted by IMO in accordance with the relevant provisions of UNCLOS.

If it is required to encode an Archipelagic Sea Lane, it must be done using **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area** and/or **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis** (see clause 15.25) features, and possibly navigational aids features.

The unique character of Archipelagic Sea Lanes (ASLs) is specified by UNCLOS Article 53 and Part H, General Provision of IMO Ships Routeing. Further information is provided in the IHO publication C-51 (Manual on Technical Aspects of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea).

The encoding of relationships between these features is defined in clause 15.27.

Remarks:

- The feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area** encodes the area of an Archipelagic Sea Lane.
- In some cases only accurate information on the axes (**Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, see clause 15.25) may be available and in such cases the extents of the ASL (**Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**) may not be able to be encoded.
- To encode an Archipelagic Sea Lane (ASL) system, the **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area, Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis** features, and any navigational aids features (if they are stated in the regulation defining the ASL), may be associated with the feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane** (see clause 15.26) using the associations **ASL Aggregation** (see clause 25.3) and **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2). Where the association **ASL Aggregation** has been created, it is not required to populate the attribute **nationality** on **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**. Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete ASL system, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Archipelagic Sea Lane** feature. Where it is required to encode textual information for the ASL, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- Traffic within an ASL is not separated, except in any traffic separation schemes which may be designated in an ASL for the safe passage of ships.

Distinction: Administration Area; Archipelagic Sea Lane; Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis; Caution Area; Fairway; Inshore Traffic Zone; Recommended Traffic Lane Part; Restricted Area; Separation Zone or Line; Submarine Transit Lane; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Two-Way Route Part.

15.25 Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis

IHO Definition: **ARCHIPELAGIC SEA LANE AXIS**. The reference line used to determine the maximum extents of an Archipelagic Sea Lane. It may not indicate the deepest water nor any recommended route or track. (Adapted from United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS)).

S-101 Geo Feature: Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis (ASLXIS)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**ASL Aggregation** (see clause 25.3)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

The attribute **nationality** is mandatory if **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis** is not associated with the feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane** using the association **ASL Aggregation**.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 17

15.25.1 Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis (see S-4 – B-435.10)

Article 53 of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) states that:
"an archipelagic State may designate sea lanes ..., suitable for the continuous and expeditious passage of foreign ships ... through ... its archipelagic waters and the adjacent Territorial Sea. ... All ships ... enjoy the right of archipelagic sea lanes passage in such sea lanes ... [which] include all normal passage routes used as routes for international navigation … through archipelagic waters". (Note: references to aircraft and air routes in UNCLOS have been omitted in these extracts from Article 53). (IHO S-4 B-435.10, C-51 Appendix 2 Part II).

The axis line of an Archipelagic Sea lane (ASL) is encoded in ENCs only for the purpose of defining the sea lane. The axis line does not indicate any routes or recommended tracks as defined in IMO publication "*Ships' Routeing*" Part A.

Remarks:

- To encode an Archipelagic Sea Lane (ASL) system, the **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area, Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis** features, and any navigational aids features (if they are stated in the regulation defining the ASL), may be associated with the feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane** (see clause 15.26) using the associations **ASL Aggregation** (see clause 25.3) and **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2). Where the association **ASL Aggregation** has been created, it is not required to populate the attribute **nationality** on **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**. Where it is required to indicate the name of a complete ASL system, this should be done using the complex attribute **feature name** for the **Archipelagic Sea Lane** feature. Where it is required to encode textual information for the ASL, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- All features comprising an ASL system must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).

Distinction: Administration Area; Archipelagic Sea Lane; Archipelagic Sea Lane Area; Caution Area; Deep Water Route Centreline; Fairway; Inshore Traffic Zone; Navigation Line; Recommended Route Centreline; Recommended Track; Recommended Traffic Lane Part; Restricted Area; Separation Zone or Line; Submarine Transit Lane; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Two-Way Route Part.

15.26 Archipelagic Sea Lane

IHO Definition: **ARCHIPELAGIC SEA LANE**. Sea lanes designated by an archipelagic State for the passage of ships and aircraft. The Archipelagic Sea Lane aggregates all component parts of an Archipelagic Sea Lane system. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Archipelagic Sea Lane *(C_AGGR)*

Primitives: Surface, None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Daymark**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Pile**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**	Association	0,*

Consists of	**ASL Aggregation** (see clause 25.3)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**	Aggregation	0,*
Component of	**Caution Area Association** (see clause 25.5)	**Caution Area**	Association	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 17

15.26.1 Archipelagic Sea Lanes (see S4 – B-435.10)

To define the complete Archipelagic Sea Lane (ASL) system, the features **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis** and any associated navigation aids must be collected to the feature **Archipelagic Sea Lane**.

Remarks:

- The name of the ASL must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name**. Where it is required for the name to be displayed in the ECDIS, the **Archipelagic Sea Lane** must be encoded using surface geometry. The extent of the geometry of the **Archipelagic Sea Lane** should utilise the geometry of the components of the system so as to cover its full extent.
- Where it is required to populate textual information for the ASL, this should be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Archipelagic Sea Lane**; or if the information is considered essential for safe navigation, using a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10).

Distinction: Administration Area; Archipelagic Sea Lane Area; Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis; Caution Area; Fairway; Fairway System; Inshore Traffic Zone; Restricted Area; Separation Zone or Line; Submarine Transit Lane; Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part; Two-Way Route; Two-Way Route Part.

15.27 Radio calling-in point

IHO Definition: **RADIO CALLING-IN POINT**. A designated position at which vessels are required to report to a Traffic Control Centre. Also called reporting point or radio reporting point. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radio Calling-In Point (RDOCAL)

Primitives: Point, Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	0,2 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
traffic flow	(TRAFIC)	1 : inbound 2 : outbound 3 : one-way 4 : two-way	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

Commented [JW80]: Modelling consistency: Attribute **communication channel** has been included in S-101 (not a valid attribute for CGUSTA in S-57). Suggest that this should be modelled so as to require an associated instance of **Contact Details**.
IHO Sec: Given the proposed change to re-introduce complex attribute **information** to the individual geo features, suggest that a similar appoach may be taken for **communication channel**? If so, will need to revisit other features that formerly had communication channel as an allowable attribute.

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For radio calling-in points if type point, the attribute **orientation value** is mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 40.1-2

15.27.1 Radio calling-in (reporting) points (see S-4 – B-488.1 and B-488.2)

Radio reporting points, also called radio calling-in points, have been established in certain busy waterways and port approaches to assist traffic control. On passing these points or crossing a defined line vessels are required to report on VHF to a Traffic Control Centre.

If it is required to encode a radio reporting point or line, it must be done using the feature **Radio Calling-In Point**.

Remarks:

- Each **Radio Calling-In Point** feature of type point must carry at least one orientation, using the attribute **orientation value**. If it is required to encode the reciprocal orientation, to indicate that a bearing and its opposite apply to a **Radio Calling-In Point** feature, it must be done using attribute **traffic flow** = *4* (two-way). If the same position is used for another orientation (not opposite) of traffic flow, a second **orientation value** attribute must be encoded.
- The complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name** is used to encode the name and/or alphanumeric designator of the **Radio Calling-In Point**.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) is used to provide additional information, where required. For example, if the requirement to report by radio relates to certain classes of vessels only.
- **Radio Calling-In Point** features of type curve must be encoded such that resultant direction of the line (accounting for the direction of digitising and any subsequent reversal of the curve) is related such that the direction of traffic that is required to report is to the right. For curve features, it is not required to populate **orientation value**.
- If it is required to encode the area of a Vessel Traffic Service (VTS) containing radio reporting points or requiring periodic position reporting, this should be done using the feature **Vessel Traffic Service Area** (see clause 22.2).
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Radio Station; Pilot Boarding Place; Vessel Traffic Service Area.

15.28 Ferry route

IHO Definition: **FERRY ROUTE**. A route in a body of water where a ferry crosses from one shoreline to another. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Ferry Route (FERYRT)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of ferry	(CATFRY)	1 : free moving ferry 2 : cable ferry 3 : ice ferry 5 : high speed ferry	EN	1,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations				
S-101 Role	**Association Type**	**Associated to**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 50, 51

15.28.1 Ferries (see S-4 – B-438)

Ferry routes should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC datasets:
- where they cross fairly narrow channels, in order that through traffic is warned of their existence;
- where the ferry tracks are short enough to be reasonably accurately represented; and
- on ENCs used for harbour navigation, as part of the general information about the area.

If it is required to encode a ferry route, it must be done using the feature **Ferry Route**.

Remarks:
- Long distance ferries which have routes varying with weather, tide and traffic should not generally be encoded, although the terminals should be shown on appropriate optimum display scale ENC datasets, using the feature **Harbour Facility** (see clause 22.7), with attribute **category of harbour facility** = *1* (RoRo-terminal) or *3* (ferry terminal).

Distinction:

15.29 Radar line

IHO Definition: **RADAR LINE**. Recommended tracks along which ships can be guided by coastal radar stations in the event of bad visibility. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radar Line (RADLNE)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		RE	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 7 : temporary	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 32.1-2

15.29.1 Radar reference lines (see S-4 – B-487.2)

Radar reference lines are mid-channel lines corresponding to lines incorporated in Vessel Traffic Services (VTS) radar displays. A line is used as a positional reference so that the VTS authorities may easily provide a vessel with its position, relative to the line, when visibility is poor. These must be charted on appropriate optimum display scale ENC data.

If it is required to encode a radar reference line, it must be done using the feature **Radar Line**.

Remarks:

- The value of orientation encoded on the mandatory attribute **orientation value** should be the value of the bearing from seaward. If it is not possible to define a seaward direction, the value that is less than 180° should be used.
- If it is required to encode the area of a VTS containing radar lines, this should be done using the feature **Vessel Traffic Service Area** (see clause 22.2).

Distinction: Radar Range; Recommended Track; Vessel Traffic Service Area.

15.30 Radar range

IHO Definition: **RADAR RANGE**. Indicates the coverage of a sea area by a radar surveillance station. Inside this area a vessel may request shore-based radar assistance, particularly in poor visibility. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radar Range (RADRNG)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 7 : temporary	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 31

15.30.1 Radar ranges (see S-4 – B-487.1)

Many large ports have a radar surveillance system covering their approaches to provide guidance for vessels, particularly in poor visibility. The maximum range of the system forms an arc or series of overlapping arcs.

If it is required to encode a radar range, it must be done using the feature **Radar Range**.

Remarks:

- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Radar Line; Vessel Traffic Service Area.

15.31 Radar station

IHO Definition: **RADAR STATION**. A station with a transmitter emitting pulses of ultra-high frequency radio waves which are reflected by solid objects and are detected upon their return to the sending station. (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radar Station (RADSTA)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
call sign	(CALSGN)		TE	0,1
category of radar station	(CATRAS)	1 : radar surveillance station 2 : coast radar station	EN	0,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 7 : temporary 8 : private	EN	0,*
value of maximum range	(VALMXR)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: M 30; S 1

15.31.1 Radar station (see S-4 – B-485.1 and B-487.3)

If it is required to encode a radar station, it must be done using the feature **Radar Station**.

Remarks:

- Coast radar stations are shore-based stations which the Mariner can contact by radio to obtain a position. These stations are being increasingly replaced by other position-fixing methods.
- The **Radar Station** must only be used to encode the technical equipment itself, independent of the building or structure in which it is installed. If it is required to encode the building or structure (for example mast, tower, radar dome) it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**). There is no requirement to establish a Structure/Equipment association between the **Radar Station** feature and the structure in which it is installed.
- The attribute **height** is used to encode the height of the emitting part of the radar, where known.
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Radar Line; Radar Range; Radar Transponder Beacon.

16 Geo Features – Areas, limits

16.1 International boundaries and national limits (see S-4 – B-440)

The United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS), 1982 came into force on 16 November 1994. UNCLOS contains navigational provisions as well as provisions for determining the limits of various maritime zones. These provisions are binding to all states that have ratified the Convention. For technical aspects of UNCLOS, see IHO publication C-51.

IHO Member States should show, on selected series of their ENCs, their own baseline and maritime limits in accordance with UNCLOS.

The Mariner may be interested in the exact location of international maritime boundaries for two principal reasons:

- When crossing a boundary they could be subject to different laws and regulations which may affect their navigation; for example buoyage systems, pilotage regulations, fishing rights, reporting procedures, pollution regulations.
- Where a boundary passes through groups of offshore islands they may wish to know upon which side of the boundary a particular island falls.

16.2 Maritime jurisdiction areas

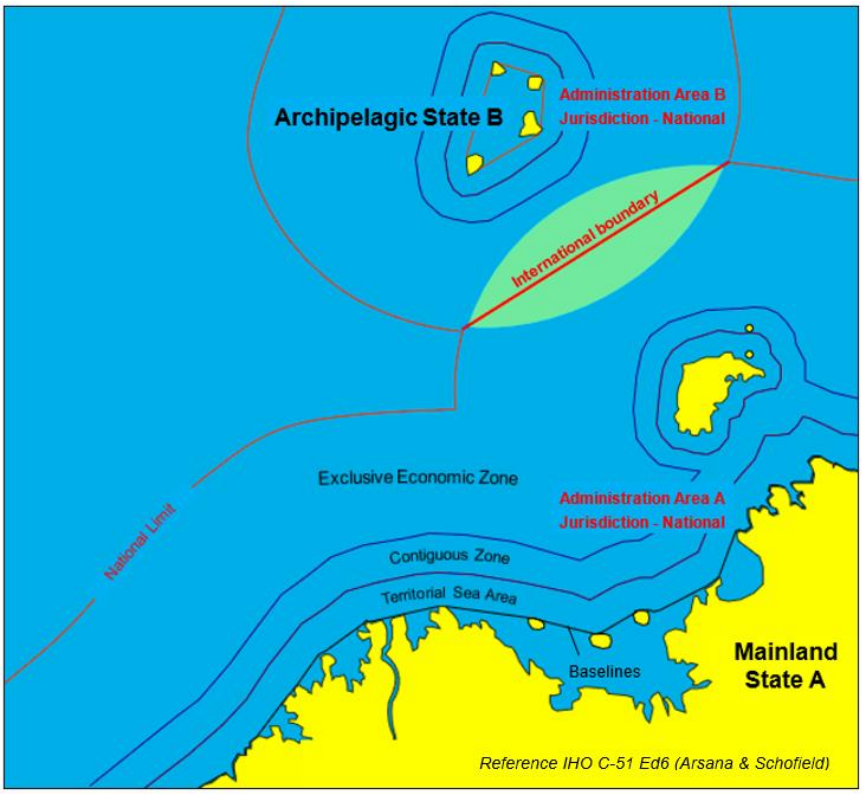


Figure 16-1 – Maritime jurisdiction areas

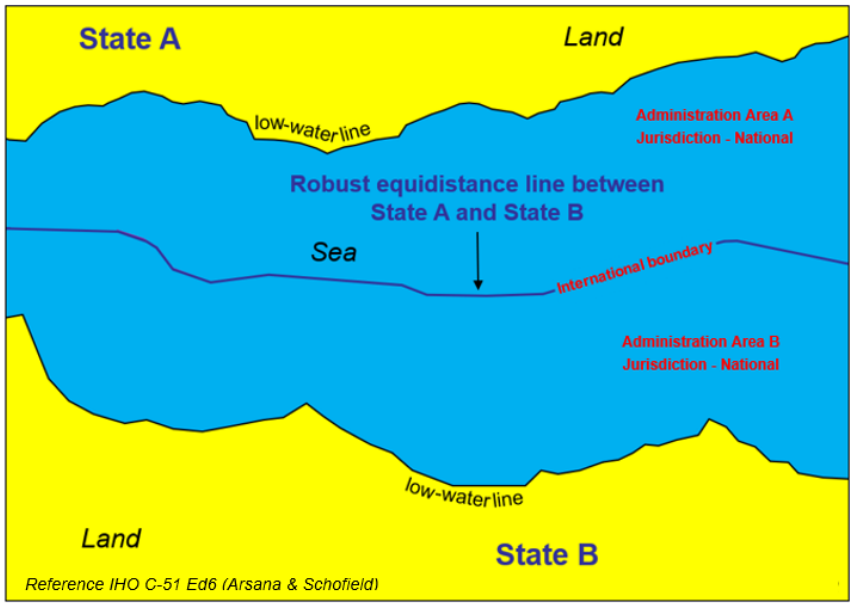


Figure 16-2 – Maritime jurisdiction areas in constrained waters

The clauses in Section 16 below provide guidance for the encoding of maritime jurisdiction areas. Occasionally, these “areas” may actually be defined as linear due to international treaties; or the areas may not be fully defined and it may therefore be necessary to encode the boundary as a linear feature (see example at Figure 16-3 below). Clause 2.3 defining features permitted for use in ENC and their geometric primitives allows relevant feature classes relating to maritime jurisdiction areas to be encoded as type curve; however this must only be done in circumstances where it is not possible to encode the feature using geometric primitive surface.

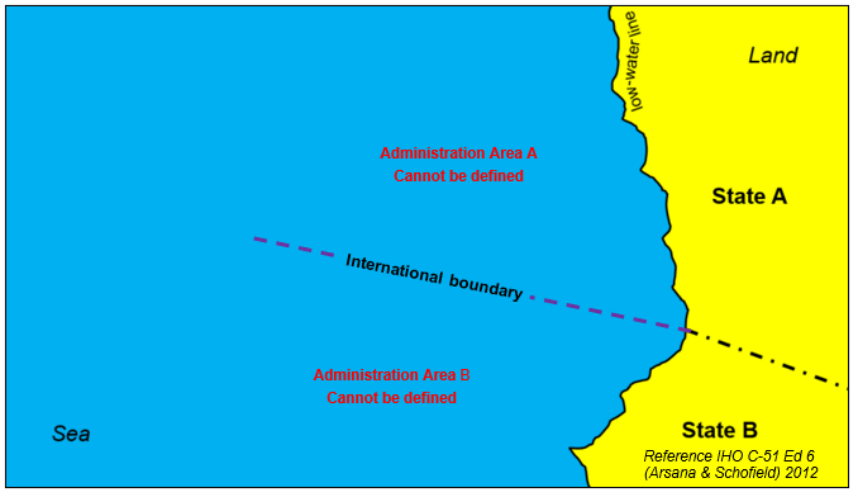


Figure 16-3 – Maritime jurisdiction – areas cannot be defined

In Figure 16-3, Administration Areas A and B cannot be encoded using geometric primitive surface as the seaward edge of the areas is not defined. In this case, the section of the international boundary

extending seaward from the low water line should be encoded as an **Administration Area** feature of type curve (see clause 16.8).

16.2.1 Maritime jurisdiction areas in dispute

In accordance with Article 55 of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS – 10 December 1982), a Coastal State's Territorial Sea Area and Exclusive Economic Zone must not overlap. Occasionally, small areas at the boundary of two or more Coastal States may be in dispute regarding the establishment of maritime jurisdiction, which may result in a small section of Territorial Sea overlapping an EEZ in the disputed area.

Where issues of maritime jurisdiction between two or more Coastal States are in dispute, the proposed Territorial Sea (**Territorial Sea Area**) of one Coastal State may overlap the proposed EEZ (**Exclusive Economic Zone**) of another Coastal State. In this case, the disputed area should be encoded with separate **Territorial Sea Area** and **Exclusive Economic Zone** features, with Boolean attribute **in dispute** set to *True* and the mandatory attribute **nationality** populated with the country codes (conforming to ISO 3166) of the disputing states (see clause 27.134).

16.3 Anchorage area

IHO Definition: **ANCHORAGE AREA**. An area in which vessels or seaplanes anchor or may anchor. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Anchorage Area (ACHARE)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of anchorage	(CATACH)	1 : unrestricted anchorage 2 : deep water anchorage 3 : tanker anchorage 5 : quarantine anchorage 6 : seaplane anchorage 7 : small craft anchorage 9 : anchorage for periods up to 24 Hours 10 : anchorage for a limited period of time 14 : waiting anchorage 15 : reported anchorage	EN	0,*
category of cargo		1 : bulk 2 : container 3 : general 4 : liquid 5 : passenger 6 : livestock 7 : dangerous or hazardous 8 : heavy lift 9 : ballast 10 : dry bulk cargo 11 : liquid bulk cargo 12 : reefer container cargo 13 : Ro-Ro cargo 14 : project cargo 15 : break bulk cargo	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1

restriction	(RESTRN)	2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 10, 12.1-9, 14; Q 44

16.3.1 Anchorages (see S-4 – B-431.1; B-431.3 and B-431.7)

Where the limits of anchorages are defined by a regulatory authority (for example harbour authority) they mus be shown on the largest optimum display scale ENC data. They may also be shown on other optimum displa scale ENC datasets where useful, for example, for planning purposes.

If it is required to encode an anchorage area, including anchorages for seaplanes, it must be done using the feature **Anchorage Area**.

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name** is used to encode the name and/or number of the **Anchorage Area**.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to provide additional information about the category of anchorage, where required.
- Individual recommended anchorages without defined limits should be encoded as **Anchorage Area** features of type point, with attributes **category of anchorage** = *1* (unrestricted anchorage) and **status** = *3* (recommended).
- If it is required to encode an anchorage at a location that has not been defined by a regulatory authority but has been reported to be suitable and safe for anchoring, this must be done using **Anchorage Area** of type point, with attribute **category of anchorage** = *15* (reported anchorage).
- Areas with numerous small craft moorings may be encoded as **Anchorage Area** features of type surface, with **category of anchorage** = *8* (small craft mooring area). For the encoding of mooring buoys, see clause 20.8.
- If it is required to encode an anchorage which may be used for a period of not more than 24 hours, it must be done using **category of anchorage** = *9* (anchorage for periods up to 24 hours).
- If it is required to encode an anchorage with a specific, limited time period, it must be done using **category of anchorage** = *10* (anchorage for limited period of time). The specific limit of time should be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text** (for example *Anchorage limited to 12 hours*).
- Areas where anchoring is prohibited must be encoded, where required, as **Restricted Area** (see clause 17.8) with attribute **restriction** = *1* (anchoring prohibited).

Distinction: Anchor Berth; Mooring Area.

Commented [TS81]: Note that the new guidance regarding display of the name for an anchorage area in ECDIS (UOC 3.1.0 - double encoding of SEAARE) has not been included in the DCEG. This is under the assumption that the portrayal will be modified in S-101.

16.4 Mooring area

IHO Definition: **MOORING AREA**. An area in which vessels may be secured to mooring buoys (adapted from IHO dictionary – S-32).
S-101 Geo Feature: Mooring Area (ACHARE)
Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of mooring area	(CATACH)	1 : small craft mooring area 2 : mooring area for visitors 3 : mooring area for tankers	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
maximum permitted vessel length	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral	EN	0,*

		exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited 42 : power-driven vessels prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
vessel speed limit			C	0,*
speed limit			(S) RE	1,1
speed units		2 : kilometres per hour 3 : miles per hour 4 : knots	EN	1,1
vessel class			(S) TE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 44

16.4.1 Mooring area (see S-4 – B-431.7)

Where the limits of a mooring area are defined by a regulatory authority (for example harbour authority) they must be shown on the largest optimum display scale ENC data. They may also be shown on other optimum display scale ENC datasets (at smaller scales, if required, using the point primitive) where useful; for example, for planning purposes.

If it is required to encode a mooring area, it must be done using the feature **Mooring Area**.

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name** is used to encode the name and/or number of the **Small Craft Mooring Area**.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to provide additional information about the category of anchorage, where required.
- For the encoding of mooring buoys, see clause 20.8. For encoding installation buoys used for loading or unloading tankers, see clause 20.7.

Distinction: Anchorage Area; Anchor Berth; Mooring Buoy; Mooring Trot.

16.5 Anchor berth

IHO Definition: **ANCHOR BERTH**. A designated area of water where a vessel, seaplane, etc... may anchor. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Anchor Berth (ACHBRT)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of anchorage	(CATACH)	1 : unrestricted anchorage 2 : deep water anchorage 3 : tanker anchorage 5 : quarantine anchorage 6 : seaplane anchorage 7 : small craft anchorage 9 : anchorage for periods up to 24 Hours 10 : anchorage for a limited period of time 14 : waiting anchorage	EN	0,*
category of cargo		1 : bulk 2 : container 3 : general 4 : liquid 5 : passenger 6 : livestock 7 : dangerous or hazardous 8 : heavy lift 9 : ballast 10 : dry bulk cargo 11 : liquid bulk cargo 12 : reefer container cargo 13 : Ro-Ro cargo 14 : project cargo 15 : break bulk cargo	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radius	(RADIUS)	Metres	RE	0,1

status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 11.1, 11.2

16.5.1 Anchor berths (see S-4 – B-431.2)

Where the positions or limits of anchorages, including anchor berths, are defined by a regulatory authority (for example harbour authority) they must be shown on the largest optimum display scale ENC data. They may also be shown on other optimum display scale data where useful, for example, for planning purposes.

If it is required to encode an anchor berth, it must be done using the feature **Anchor Berth**.

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name** is used to encode the name and/or number of the **Anchor Berth**. If a group of anchor berths is known by a single common name, the name should be encode using a **Sea Area/Named Water Area** feature (see clause 9.1) covering the area of the anchor berths.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to provide additional information about the category of anchorage, where required.
- If an anchor berth is defined by a centre point and a swinging circle, it should be of type point, with the radius of the swinging circle encoded using the attribute **radius**.

Distinction: Anchorage Area; Berth; Mooring Area.

16.6 Seaplane landing area

IHO Definition: **SEAPLANE LANDING AREA**. A designated portion of water for the landing and take-off of seaplanes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.152, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Seaplane Landing Area (SPLARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*

status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 13

16.6.1 Seaplane landing areas (see S-4 – B-449.6)

If it is required to encode a seaplane landing area, it must be done using the feature **Seaplane Landing Area**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode an area where seaplanes draw water for fire fighting activities, this must be done using **Seaplane Landing Area**.
- If it is required to encode an anchorage for seaplanes, it must be done using an **Anchorage Area** feature (see clause 16.3), with attribute **category of anchorage** = *6* (seaplane anchorage).

Distinction: Airport/Airfield; Helipad; Runway.

16.7 Dumping ground

IHO Definition: **DUMPING GROUND**. A sea area where dredged material or other potentially more harmful material, for example explosives, chemical waste, is deliberately deposited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.59, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Dumping Ground (DMPGRD)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of dumping ground	(CATDPG)	2 : chemical waste dumping ground 3 : nuclear waste dumping ground 4 : explosives dumping ground 5 : spoil ground 6 : vessel dumping ground	EN	0,*
date disused			TD	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited	EN	0,*

		25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 7 : temporary	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 23, 24, 62.1, 62.2

16.7.1 Dumping grounds (see S-4 – B-442; B-446 and B-446.1)

Materials deliberately dumped at sea in specified areas (other than those associated with reclamation works) may be classified, according to their significance to the Mariner, as follows:

- Materials which are generally dispersed before reaching the seabed, for example sewage sludge, are of little navigational significance and no charting action is usually required.
- Spoil from dredging operations or other works which might reduce charted depths significantly in the designated spoil ground.
- Harmful materials, including explosives and chemicals, which are likely to remain concentrated on the seabed.

Dumping of harmful materials is unlikely to affect depths substantially and such dumping grounds are encoded primarily as a warning against anchoring, trawling or other submarine operations.

If it is required to encode a dumping ground, it must be done using the feature **Dumping Ground**.

Remarks:

- A **Dumping Ground** feature of type surface must be covered by features from Skin of the Earth as appropriate (**Depth Area** or **Unsurveyed Area**).
- Disused dumping grounds for harmful materials are considered dangerous for an indefinite period and must therefore be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC datasets, with attribute **status** = *4* (not in use). The date when the area ceased to be used may be populated using the attribute **date disused**, if known.

16.7.2 Spoil grounds, dredging areas (see S-4 – B-446)

Spoil grounds are areas set aside, clear of shipping channels and in deep water where possible, for the

disposal of material (spoil) generally obtained by dredging. Their significance to the Mariner is that very large quantities of material may be dumped, decreasing the depth of water available. Where possible, charts should be updated in a timely manner so as to include the latest survey information covering the spoil ground.

Extraction (or dredging) areas are those areas where a concentration of dredging vessels may be encountered, taking up sand or shingle to be brought ashore (for example for construction purposes). Their significance is primarily as a collision hazard, although they also indicate the likelihood of finding a greater depth of water than charted. Channels dredged to provide an adequate depth of water for navigation are “dredged areas”, not to be confused with “dredging areas”.

If it is required to encode a spoil ground, it must be done using a **Dumping Ground** feature, with attribute **category of dumping ground** = *5* (spoil ground).

If it is required to encode a dredging area, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *21* (dredging area). An area in which seabed material (for example sand, shingle) is being extracted for purposes such as construction must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Offshore Production Area** (see clause 14.6), with attribute **category of production area** = *13* (seabed material extraction area).

Remarks:

- Within a spoil ground; if the depths within the area are liable to be very much less than charted after the discharge of spoil and post-dumping surveys are not available, they may be treated as unsurveyed areas (see clause 11.10), in which case soundings and depth contours may be omitted from the area. Alternatively, an indication of the discrepancy between charted depth information and the actual depths within the spoil ground may be provided by downgrading the information included in the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature (see clause 3.8).

Distinction: Dredged Area.

16.8 Military practice area

IHO Definition: **MILITARY PRACTICE AREA**. An area within which naval, military or aerial exercises are carried out. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Military Practice Area (MIPARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of military practice area	(CATMPA)	2 : torpedo exercise area 3 : submarine exercise area 4 : firing danger area 5 : mine-laying practice area 6 : small arms firing range	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
nationality	(NATION)		TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development	EN	0,*

		restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 30-33

16.8.1 Military practice areas (see S-4 – B-441.1-6)

Military practice (or exercise) areas at sea are of various types and may be classified as follows with regard to their significance for the Mariner:

- Firing danger areas, sometimes called firing practice areas; that is, permanent or temporary ranges, including bombing, torpedo and missile ranges.
- Mine-laying practice (and counter-measures) areas.
- Submarine exercise areas.
- Other exercise areas.

Some degree of restriction on navigation and other rights may be implied by the encoding of military practice areas. There may be varying interpretations of the validity of the restrictions and possible infringement of the

rights of innocent passage through territorial waters and elsewhere. Where it is thought desirable to depict such areas, even though clear range procedure may be observed, or the areas appear to be a derogation of the freedom of the seas, Mariners should be informed (not necessarily on ENCs) that publication of the details of a law or regulation is solely for the safety and convenience of shipping and implies no recognition of the international validity of the law or regulation. By this means infringements are not condoned but the Mariner receives a warning which may be necessary for their safety.

If it is required to encode a military practice area, it must be done using the feature **Military Practice Area**.

Remarks:

- Submarine exercise areas should generally not be encoded where submarines exercise over wide areas which it would not be practicable to depict, and over which cautions (to keep a good look out for them) are unlikely to be effective. They may, however, be encoded where they occur in or near major shipping lanes or port approaches.
- Firing danger areas at sea are frequently marked by IALA special buoys sometimes laid around the perimeter of the area and/or by specially erected lights, beacons and targets. If required, all such features which could assist the navigator in identifying their position, or could be a hazard, must be encoded in the normal way,
- The existence of mine laying (and counter-measures/clearance) practice areas implies the possibility of unexploded mines or depth charges on the seafloor, and also the presence of harmless practice mines.

Distinction: Caution Area; Restricted Area; Submarine Transit Lane.

16.9 Administration area

IHO Definition: **ADMINISTRATION AREA**. A defined area within which a jurisdiction applies. It may or may not be named.

S-101 Geo Feature: Administration Area (ADMARE)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
in dispute			BO	0,1
jurisdiction	(JRSDTN)	1 : international 2 : national 3 : national sub-division	EN	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nationality	(NATION)		TE	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 40, 41

16.9.1 International and national territories (see S-4 – B-440.1 and B-440.3)

International maritime boundaries are those which have been established by agreement between adjacent or opposite States. Boundaries are sometimes negotiated on the basis of the equidistance or “median” line principle. For various reasons, however, agreed boundaries even when negotiated on this principle are seldom true median lines.

Navigationally, international boundaries may vary in their significance over different parts of their lengths. Inshore, they may represent the delimitation of Territorial Seas of two states or “internal waters”, (for example within bay closing lines or straight baseline systems). Offshore, they may represent Exclusive Economic Zone and/or Continental Shelf boundaries.

If it is required to encode a named international or national territory, it must be done using the feature **Administration Area**.

Remarks:

- International land boundaries should be encoded, at least in the vicinity of coasts.
- **Administration Area** must only be encoded using the geometric primitive curve where the real-world instance is actually linear, and it is therefore not possible to encode the feature using the geometric primitive surface. See clause 16.2.

Distinction: Contiguous Zone; Continental Shelf Area; Exclusive Economic Zone; Fishery Zone; Land Region; Territorial Sea Area; Vessel Traffic Service Area.

16.10 Cargo transhipment area

IHO Definition: **CARGO TRANSHIPMENT AREA**. An area designated for the transfer of cargo from one vessel to another sometimes in order to reduce a vessel's draught. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Cargo Transhipment Area (CTSARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*

status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 64

16.10.1 Cargo transhipment areas (see S-4 – B-449.4)

Areas generally outside port limits may be specifically designated as suitable for the transhipment of oil or other materials from large ships to smaller vessels. The areas selected are relatively sheltered locations and lie off main shipping routes. As the purpose of transhipment is usually to reduce the draught of the larger vessel to allow it to proceed to port, the operation is often known as “lightening” and the areas may be known as “lightening areas” or “cargo transfer areas”.

If it is required to encode a cargo transhipment area, it must be done using the feature **Cargo Transhipment Area**.

Remarks:

- The encoding of cargo transhipment areas should be adequate to warn other vessels of the likelihood of encountering ships restricted in their ability to manoeuvre. Regulations governing the use of such areas should be encoded using the attribute **restriction** or the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

Distinction: Dock Area; Harbour Area (Administrative); Harbour Facility.

16.11 Caution area

IHO Definition: **CAUTION AREA**. Generally, an area where the mariner has to be made aware of circumstances influencing the safety of navigation. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.33, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Caution Area (CTNARE)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,* †
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Caution Area Association** (see clause 25.5)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**	Association	0,*
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be

populated.

At least one of the attributes **information** or **pictorial representation** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.11.1 Caution areas (see S-4 – B-242)

If it is required to identify an area in which the Mariner must be aware of circumstances influencing the safety of navigation (for example an area of continually changing depths), and which cannot be encoded using other feature types, it must be done using the feature **Caution Area**. This feature may be required to identify a danger, a risk, a rule or advice that is not directly related to a particular feature.

Remarks:

- If the information applies to a specific area the **Caution Area** feature should cover only that area.
- If the information to be encoded is spatially linear, this should be encoded using a "very narrow" **Caution Area** feature of type surface (approximately 0·3mm wide at the optimum display scale of the ENC data).
- Information which may be of use to the Mariner, but is not significant to safe navigation and cannot be encoded using other feature types, should be encoded using an **Information Area** feature (see clause 16.11). This encoding is intended to reduce the number of alarms or indications generated in the ECDIS due to the overuse of **Caution Area** features.
- Notes should be kept to a minimum and be as concise as is compatible with accuracy and intelligibility. Hydrographic terminology (jargon) should be avoided, giving preference to easily understood words, for example "depths" rather than "bathymetry".
- In order to ensure correct ECDIS display, **Caution Area** features of type surface should not share the geometry of features such as **Depth Contour** and other features with higher ECDIS display priorities, as the **Caution Area** will appear to be "open ended", which may confuse the Mariner. Where this occurs, the edge of the **Caution Area** should be extended outward to clear the "shared" edge, sufficient to avoid "duplicate geometry" validation errors (that is, at least 0.3mm at the optimum display scale for the ENC data).

Distinction: Collision Regulations Limit; Information Area; Obstruction; Underwater/Awash Rock; Unsurveyed Area; Wreck.

16.12 Information area

IHO Definition: **INFORMATION AREA**. An area for which general information regarding navigation, but not directly related to safety of navigation, is available.

S-101 Geo Feature: Information Area *(M_NPUB)*

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,* †
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

At least one of the attributes **information** or **pictorial representation** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.12.1 Information areas (see S-4 – B-242)

If it is required to encode information which may be of use to the Mariner, but is not significant to safety of navigation and cannot be encoded using existing features, it must be done using the feature **Information Area**.

Remarks:

- The feature **Information Area** encodes information which the Producing Authority determines is relevant to the Mariner, but does not warrant the triggering of ECDIS alarms through the encoding of **Caution Area** features.
- If the information applies to a specific area the **Information Area** feature should cover only that area.

Distinction: Caution Area; Collision Regulations Limit; Obstruction; Underwater/Awash Rock; Unsurveyed Area; Wreck.

16.13 Contiguous Zone

IHO Definition: **CONTIGUOUS ZONE**. A zone contiguous to a coastal State's Territorial Sea, which may not extend beyond 24 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the Territorial Sea is measured. The coastal State may exercise certain control in this zone subject to the provisions of International Law. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Contiguous Zone (CONZNE)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
in dispute			BO	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 44

16.13.1 Contiguous Zones (see S-4 – B-440.6)

The Contiguous Zone is a zone adjacent to the Territorial Sea where the coastal state may exercise the control necessary to prevent or punish infringement of its customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary laws and regulations within its territory or Territorial Sea. Under UNCLOS, the outer limits of this zone may not extend beyond 24 nautical miles measured from the Territorial Sea Baselines.

If it is required to encode the Contiguous Zone, it must be done using the feature **Contiguous Zone**.

Remarks:

- **Contiguous Zone** must only be encoded using the geometric primitive curve where the real-world instance is actually linear, and it is therefore not possible to encode the feature using the geometric primitive surface. See clause 16.2.
- For guidance regarding the encoding of areas in which the maritime jurisdiction between two or more Coastal States are in dispute, see clause 16.2.1.

Distinction: Administration Area; Continental Shelf Area; Exclusive Economic Zone; Fishery Zone; Territorial Sea Area.

16.14 Continental Shelf area

IHO Definition: **CONTINENTAL SHELF AREA**. The Continental Shelf of a coastal State comprises the seabed and subsoil of the submarine areas that extend beyond its Territorial Sea throughout the natural prolongation of its land territory to the outer edge of the continental margin, or to a distance of 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the Territorial Sea is measured where the outer edge of the continental margin does not extend up to that distance. (IHO Publication C-51).

S-101 Geo Feature: Continental Shelf Area (COSARE)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 46

16.14.1 Continental Shelf (see S-4 – B-440.8)

The delineation of the Continental Shelf beyond 200 nautical miles from the Territorial Sea baselines is complex. Details are given in UNCLOS (see IHO Publication C-51). The coastal State exercises sovereign rights over the Continental Shelf for the purpose of exploring it and exploiting its natural resources. Complex procedures exist within UNCLOS for the establishment of the limits of the Continental Shelf. Where these procedures have been followed the area should be encoded on suitable optimum display scale ENC data.

If it is required to encode the Continental Shelf, it must be done using the feature **Continental Shelf Area**.

Remarks:

- **Continental Shelf Area** must only be encoded using the geometric primitive curve where the real-world instance is actually linear, and it is therefore not possible to encode the feature using the geometric primitive surface. See clause 16.2.

Distinction: Administration Area; Contiguous Zone; Exclusive Economic Zone; Fishery Zone; Territorial Sea Area.

16.15 Custom zone

IHO Definition: **CUSTOM ZONE**. The area within which national custom regulations are in force. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.46, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Custom Zone (CUSZNE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 48

16.15.1 Custom Zones (see S-4 – B-440.2)

If it is required to encode a custom zone, it must be done using the feature **Custom Zone**.

Custom zones, where details are provided by a regulatory authority, should be encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data covering the area.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Checkpoint; Free Port Area.

16.16 Exclusive Economic Zone

IHO Definition: **EXCLUSIVE ECONOMIC ZONE**. An area, not exceeding 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the Territorial Sea is measured, subject to a specific legal regime established in the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea under which the coastal state has certain rights and jurisdiction. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Exclusive Economic Zone (EXEZNE)

Primitives: Curve, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
in dispute			BO	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 47

16.16.1 Exclusive Economic Zones (see S-4 – B-440.9)

In the Exclusive Economic Zone, the coastal State has sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring and exploiting, conserving and managing the natural resources, whether living or non-living, of the waters superjacent to the seabed and of the seabed and its subsoil, and with regard to other activities for the economic exploitation and exploration of the Zone, such as the production of energy from the water, currents and winds.

If it is required to encode an Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), it must be done using the feature **Exclusive Economic Zone**.

Remarks:

- **Exclusive Economic Zone** must only be encoded using the geometric primitive curve where the real-world instance is actually linear, and it is therefore not possible to encode the feature using the geometric primitive surface. See clause 16.2.
- For guidance regarding the encoding of areas in which the maritime jurisdiction between two or more

Coastal States are in dispute, see clause 16.2.1.

Distinction: Administration Area; Contiguous Zone; Continental Shelf Area; Fishery Zone; Territorial Sea Area.

16.17 Fishery zone

IHO Definition: **FISHERY ZONE**. The offshore zone in which exclusive fishing rights and management are held by the coastal nation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fishery Zone (FSHZNE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 45

16.17.1 Fishery zones (see S-4 – B-440.7)

A fishery zone is an area inside and beyond the Territorial Sea where a coastal State proclaims that it alone may regulate fishing. Where States have permitted others to fish in parts of the area, it may be desirable to encode the area of both the full area and the area of special concessionary rights. In some instances, claims are described as “conservation zones”; for practical purposes these may be classed with fishery zones since their intended function is to institute fishery conservation measures. Most of the fishery zone claims are limited by fixed distance (200 nautical miles in some cases) from the Territorial Sea baselines.

If it is required to encode a fishery zone, it must be done using the feature **Fishery Zone**.

Remarks:

- Fishery zones commonly coincide with other national jurisdiction areas such as Continental Shelf and Exclusive Economic Zone. Where this occurs, Producing Authorities may choose to omit the **Fishery Zone** from the area covered by these other national jurisdiction areas, as the fact that fishing regulations apply in these areas is implicit.
- An indication of the fishery zone limit (for example 6 mile, 12 mile) may be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name**.

Distinction: Administration Area; Contiguous Zone; Continental Shelf Area; Exclusive Economic Zone; Fishing Ground; Restricted Area; Territorial Sea Area.

16.18 Fishing ground

IHO Definition: **FISHING GROUND**. A water area in which fishing is frequently carried on. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fishing Ground (FSHGRD)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved	EN	0,*

		7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched 28 : buoyed		
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.18.1 Fishing grounds

If it is required to encode a fishing ground, it must be done using the feature **Fishing Ground**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Fishery Zone; Marine Farm/Culture.

16.19 Free port area

IHO Definition: **FREE PORT AREA**. A port where certain import and export duties are waived (unless goods pass into the country) to facilitate reshipment to other countries. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Free Port Area (FRPARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.19.1 Free port areas

If it is required to encode a free port area, it must be done using the feature **Free Port Area**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Custom Zone; Production/Storage Area.

16.20 Harbour area

IHO Definition: **HARBOUR AREA**. The area over which a harbour authority has jurisdiction. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.80, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Harbour Area (Administrative) (HRBARE)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 6 : reserved 8 : private 14 : public	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 49

16.20.1 Administrative harbour areas (see S-4 – B-430.1)

Administrative harbour areas must be shown on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC datasets, where possible, to assist Mariners in complying with harbour regulations.

If it is required to encode an administrative harbour area, it must be done using the feature **Harbour Area (Administrative)**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a named harbour area over which there is no jurisdictional authority, it must be done using the feature **Sea Area/Named Water Area** (see clause 9.1).
- A masked line may be used to suppress the symbolisation of the boundary, where such symbolisation is considered inappropriate.

Distinction: Dock Area; Sea Area/Named Water Area.

16.21 Log pond

IHO Definition: **LOG POND**. A maritime area enclosed with connected floating timbers used as a staging area for sawn logs. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.102, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Log Pond (LOGPON)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 61

16.21.1 Log ponds (see S-4 – B-449.2)

If it is required to encode a log pond (also known as booming ground), it must be done using the feature **Log Pond**.

Remarks:

- Seasonal log ponds should be encoded using the complex attribute **periodic date range**.
- It is not required to separately encode any posts, piles or other log pond barrier supports.

Distinction:

16.22 Oil barrier

IHO Definition: **OIL BARRIER**. A floating barrier to stop and contain the spread of oil on a water body surface. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Oil Barrier (OILBAR)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of oil barrier	(CATOLB)	1 : oil retention (high pressure pipe) 2 : floating oil barrier	EN	0,1
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1 †
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

	25.19)			
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 29

16.22.1 Oil barriers (see S-4 – B-449.2)

If it is required to encode an oil barrier, it must be done using the feature **Oil Barrier**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction:

16.23 Straight Territorial Sea Baseline

IHO Definition: **STRAIGHT TERRITORIAL SEA BASELINE**. Straight baselines are a system of straight lines joining specified or discrete points on the low-water line, usually known as straight baseline turning points. Straight baselines are used in delimitation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Straight Territorial Sea Baseline (STSLNE)

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 42

16.23.1 Straight Territorial Sea Baselines (see S-4 – B-440.4)

A Territorial Sea is delimited by:
- Territorial Sea Baselines (drying lines);
- Straight Territorial Sea Baselines;
- International maritime boundaries (see clause 16.1); and
- Seaward limits of Territorial Seas (see clause 16.2).

The term “Baseline” refers to the line from which the breadth of the Territorial Sea, the outer limits of the Contiguous Zone, the Exclusive Economic Zone and, in some cases, the Continental Shelf are measured. It is also the dividing line between internal waters and territorial seas. Internal waters comprise all areas of the sea on the landward side of the Territorial Sea Baselines, as well as inland waters including rivers, lakes, etc.

The normal baseline is the low water line (which is not defined any more precisely by UNCLOS) of the mainland, islands, or low tide elevations, as depicted on large scale charts officially recognised by the coastal State; they therefore do not require depiction in ENCs. Features which are naturally-formed and dry at low water (for example rocks, reefs, sand banks) may be considered low-tide elevations and included in the baseline (details are given in UNCLOS - see IHO publication C-51).

A straight baseline may be used:

- as a closing line across the mouth or estuary of a river;
- as a closing line across the mouth of a juridical bay or a historical bay;
- as part of a system of Straight Territorial Sea Baselines, for example to connect seaward points on a deeply indented coastline, a coastline that is fringed with islands, around unstable coastlines; or
- as an archipelagic baseline.

If it is required to encode a Straight Territorial Sea Baseline, it must be done using the feature **Straight Territorial Sea Baseline**.

Remarks:

- No remarks.

Distinction:

16.24 Territorial Sea area

IHO Definition: **TERRITORIAL SEA AREA**. A belt of water of a defined breadth but not exceeding 12 nautical miles measured seaward from the Territorial Sea Baseline. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Territorial Sea Area (TESARE)		
Primitives: Curve, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
in dispute			BO	0,1
nationality	(NATION)		TE	1,*
restriction	(RESTRN)	2 : anchoring restricted 4 : fishing restricted 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 12 : diving restricted 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 43

16.24.1 Territorial Seas (see S-4 – B-440.5)

A Territorial Sea is delimited by:
- Territorial Sea Baselines (drying lines);
- Straight Territorial Sea Baselines (see clause 16.1);
- International maritime boundaries (see clause 16.2); and
- Seaward limits of Territorial Seas.

Within the Territorial Sea, a coastal State exercises sovereignty subject to rules of international law, including the right of innocent passage for foreign ships.

If it is required to encode a Territorial Sea area, it must be done using the feature **Territorial Sea Area**.

Remarks:
- **Territorial Sea Area** must only be encoded using the geometric primitive curve where the real-world instance is actually linear, and it is therefore not possible to encode the feature using the geometric primitive surface. See clause 16.2.
- For guidance regarding the encoding of areas in which the maritime jurisdiction between two or more Coastal States are in dispute, see clause 16.2.1.

Distinction: Administration Area; Contiguous Zone; Continental Shelf Area; Exclusive Economic Zone; Fishery Zone; Restricted Area.

16.25 Submarine transit lane

IHO Definition: **SUBMARINE TRANSIT LANE**. A lane where submarines may navigate under water or at the surface. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Submarine Transit Lane (SUBTLN)

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
nationality	(NATION)		TE	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historical artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: N 33

16.25.1 Submarine transit lanes (see S-4 – B-441.5)

Submarine transit lanes should not generally be encoded because submarines exercise over wide areas which it would not be practicable to depict, and over which cautions (to keep a good look out for them) are unlikely to be effective. They may, however, be encoded where they occur in or near major shipping lanes or port approaches.

If it is required to encode a submarine transit lane, it must be done using the feature **Submarine Transit Lane**.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Distinction: Military Practice Area.

16.26 Pilotage district

IHO Definition: **PILOTAGE DISTRICT**. An area within which a pilotage direction exists. Such directions are regulated by a competent harbour authority which dictates circumstances under which they apply. (UK Pilotage Act 1987).

S-101 Geo Feature: Pilotage District

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(PILDST)* *(NPLDST)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Consists of	**Pilotage District Association** (see clause 25.11)	**Pilot Boarding Place**	Association	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.26.1 Pilotage districts (see S-4 – B-491)

If it is required to encode the area within which regulations regarding pilotage apply it should be done using the feature **Pilotage District**.

Remarks:

- The relevant regulations, where required, must be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- Where the limit of pilotage regulations are coincident with harbour or port limits it is not required to encode a **Pilotage District** feature.
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).
- The relationship between the pilotage district and any associated pilot boarding places should be encoded using the feature association **Pilotage District Association** (see clause 25.11).

Distinction: Pilot Boarding Place.

16.27 Collision regulations limit

IHO Definition: **COLLISION REGULATIONS LIMIT**. Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 (COLREGs). The demarcation line between inland navigation rules and international navigation rules.

S-101 Geo Feature: Collision Regulations Limit

Primitives: Curve

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
regulation citation			TE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.27.1 Collision regulations limit

If it is required to encode a collision regulations (COLREGs) demarcation line, it must be done using the feature **Collision Regulations Limit**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode the national regulation citation it must be done using the attribute **regulation citation**. The regulation citation is generally the national legal citation for the implementation of an international regulation (for example *33 CFR 26*), as distinct from the title for the regulation, which should be populated in the complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name** (for example *International Regulations for the Prevention of Collisions at Sea – Vessel Bridge-to-Bridge Radiotelephone Regulations*.

Distinction: Administration Area.

16.28 Marine pollution regulations area

IHO Definition: **MARINE POLLUTION REGULATIONS AREA**. The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL) is the main international convention covering prevention of pollution of the marine environment by ships from operational or accidental causes. (International Maritime Organization).

S-101 Geo Feature: Marine Pollution Regulations Area

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
regulation citation			TE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,* †
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† Mandatory if not associated to an instance of the information type **Nautical Information**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

16.28.1 Marine pollution regulations area

If it is required to encode an area subject to marine pollution regulations as defined in IMO MARPOL, IMO conventions and various national regulations, it must be done using the feature **Marine Pollution Regulations Area**.

Remarks:

- The regulation title should be encoded using the complex attribute **feature name**, sub-attribute **name**, for example *IMO MARPOL Annex IV – Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Sewerage from Ships*.
- If it is required to encode the national regulation citation it must be done using the attribute **regulation citation**. The regulation citation is generally the national legal citation for the implementation of an international regulation (for example *33 CFR 33*).
- A short summary of the regulation and a reference to the publication containing the regulation must be included using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

Distinction: Administration Area.

17 Geo Features – Restricted Areas – Overview

There are many types of areas within which certain activities are discouraged or prohibited, or from which certain classes of vessels are excluded. The general term for all areas in which certain aspects of navigation may be restricted or prohibited by regulations is “Restricted Area”, or equivalent. The word “prohibited”, or its equivalent, may appear in terms relating to activities which are contrary to the regulations, for example “Anchoring Prohibited”, “Entry Prohibited”.

If it is required to encode a restricted area, it must be done using the feature **Restricted Area** (see clause 17.8); or using other features having the attribute **restriction** (**Anchorage Area**, **Cable Area**, **Cargo Transhipment Area**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dredged Area**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Fairway**, **Fishing Ground**, **Harbour Facility**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Military Practice Area**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Precautionary Area**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Territorial Sea Area**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**).

Commented [TS82]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: s

Remarks:

- The attribute **category of restricted area** is used to describe the reason for the regulation, while the attribute **restriction** describes the restrictions.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to provide an additional explanation about the regulation (for example the equivalent to a caution note from a paper chart), where required.
- An area in which regulations apply due to recreation activities such as water skiing, jet skiing, kite surfing and rowing must be encoded, where required, as **Restricted Area** with **category of restricted area** = *32* (recreation area).
- If it is required to encode an area for which the Mariner must be made aware of circumstances influencing the safety of navigation, it must be done using the feature **Caution Area** (see clause 16.10). This feature may be used to identify a danger, a risk, a rule or advice (for example an area of continually changing depths) which is not directly related to a particular feature.

Commented [TS83]: NL Review comment 15/01/24.

Deleted: restriction

17.1 Minefields (see S-4 – B-441.8)

If it is required to encode a minefield, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *14* (minefield). Former mined areas should also be encoded with attribute **status** = *4* (not in use).

17.2 Degaussing ranges (see S-4 – B-448)

A degaussing (or demagnetising) range is an area, usually of about 0.2M diameter, within which ships’ magnetic fields may be measured. Sensing instruments and cables are installed on the seafloor in the range and there are cables leading from the range to a control position ashore. The range is usually marked by distinctive buoys. The significance of a degaussing range to Mariners is that anchoring and trawling are prohibited and that the range may have to be avoided when vessels are using it.

If it is required to encode a degaussing range, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *8* (degaussing range).

17.3 Nature reserves (see S-4 – B-437.3)

If it is required to encode a marine nature reserve area, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *4* (nature reserve).

17.4 Speed limits (see S-4 – B-430.2)

Commented [TS84]: Refer to S-101 Documentation and FC GitHub Issue #108.

Speed is often limited inside harbours in order to prevent wakes. If it is required to encode this restriction, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with the attribute **category of restricted area** = *24* (no wake area) or **restriction** = *13* (no wake). If it is required to encode cases where the speed limit is known in general or for a certain class(es) of vessel, it must be done using **restriction** = *27* (speed restricted), with the speed limit, speed units and, if appropriate, the class of vessel, encoded using an instance of the complex attribute **vessel speed limit**, sub-attributes **speed limit**, **speed units** and **vessel class**. Further detailed information regarding speed limits, for example varying speed limits based on vessel length, draught or cargo, may be encoded, if required, using the complex attribute **information**; or using the attribute **pictorial representation** (for example, to reproduce the graphic for a speed restriction table contained in a Nautical Publication).

If it is required to encode the buoys/beacons marking the **Restricted Area** feature with speed limits, it must be done using **Special Purpose/General Beacon** or **Special Purpose/General Buoy** features (see clauses 20.13 and 20.5 respectively), with the attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *24* (reduced wake mark) or *25* (speed limit mark). The speed limit and its unit of measurement should be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text** (for example *Speed limit is 6 knots*).

17.5 Anchoring restricted (see S-4 – B-431.4)

If it is required to encode a restricted anchoring area, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), or using other features with the attribute **restriction** (see clause 17), where **restriction** = *1* (anchoring prohibited) or *2* (anchoring restricted). Additional information about the restriction should be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

17.6 Areas to be avoided (see S-4 – B-435.7)

If it is required to encode an IMO Area to be Avoided, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **restriction** = *14* (area to be avoided). An IMO Area to be Avoided around a navigational aid must also be encoded with attribute **category of restricted area** = *12* (navigational aid safety zone).

Remarks:

- Areas other than IMO Area to be Avoided for which entry is prohibited or restricted should be encoded using the **Restricted Area**, having values **restriction** = *7* (entry prohibited) or *8* (entry restricted).

17.7 Environmentally Sensitive Sea Areas (see S-4 – B-437)

Environmentally Sensitive Sea Areas (ESSA) should be included on ENCs where there is a specifically identified requirement, and where it is practicable, given the optimum display scale of the ENC data and the extent of the ESSA. If there is no such requirement, or if it is not practicable, details of ESSA should only be inserted in associated publications, such as Sailing Directions. It should be noted that the inclusion of ESSA on smaller optimum display scale of the ENC data may be appropriate for voyage planning purposes.

If it is required to encode an Environmentally Sensitive Sea Area, it must be done using a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **category of restricted area** = *27* (ESSA) or *28* (PSSA).

An Environmentally Sensitive Sea Area that is shown on the source as a point symbol should be encoded using a small surface restricted area feature.

17.8 Restricted area

IHO Definition: **RESTRICTED AREA**. A specified area on land or water designated by an appropriate authority within which access or navigation is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Restricted Area (RESARE)				
Primitives: Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of restricted area	(CATREA)	1 : offshore safety zone 4 : nature reserve 5 : bird sanctuary 6 : game reserve 7 : seal sanctuary 8 : degaussing range 9 : military area 10 : historic wreck area 12 : navigational aid safety zone 14 : minefield 18 : swimming area 19 : waiting area 20 : research area 21 : dredging area 22 : fish sanctuary 23 : ecological reserve 24 : no wake area 25 : swinging area 27 : environmentally sensitive sea area 28 : particularly sensitive sea area 29 : disengagement area 30 : port security area 31 : coral sanctuary 32 : recreation area	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1

restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 7 : entry prohibited 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 14 : area to be avoided 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 22 : removal of historic artefacts prohibited 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 25 : stopping prohibited 26 : landing prohibited 27 : speed restricted 39 : swimming prohibited 42 : power-driven vessels prohibited	EN	1,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 9 : mandatory 18 : existence doubtful 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
vessel speed limit			C	0,*
speed limit			(S) RE	1,1
speed units		2 : kilometres per hour 3 : miles per hour 4 : knots	(S) EN	1,1
vessel class			(S) TE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (see clause 25.17)	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 3; M 29.1; N 2.1-2, 20-22, 25, 31, 34, 63

17.8.1 Restricted areas (see S-4 – B-422; B-430.2; B-431.4; B-435.7; B-435.11; B-437.1-7; B-439; B-439.2-4; B-441,1; B-445.9; B-445.11-12; B-446.4 and B-448.1)

If it is required to encode a restricted area, it must be done using the feature **Restricted Area**, or using other features having the attribute **restriction** (**Anchorage Area**, **Cable Area**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dredged Area**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Fairway**, **Fishing Ground**, **Harbour Facility**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Military Practice Area**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Precautionary Area**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Territorial Sea Area**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**).

Remarks:
- For additional guidance regarding the encoding of vessel speed limits, see clause 17.4.
- The term “no anchoring area” is used to identify the IMO routeing measure of that name. Such areas, where required, must be encoded as **Restricted Area** with attribute **restriction** = *1* (anchoring prohibited).

Distinction: Anchorage Area; Cable Area; Caution Area; Collision Regulations Limit; Deep Water Route Part; Depth Area; Dredged Area; Dumping Ground; Fairway; Information Area; Military Practice Area; Submarine Pipeline Area; Swept Area.

18 Geo Features – Aids to Navigation – Overview

In the context of this Product Specification, the following generic term definitions apply:

Beacon: A fixed artificial navigation mark that can be recognised by its shape, colour, pattern, topmark or light character, or a combination of these. It may carry various additional aids to navigation. This term is not commonly used when the navigation mark can be classified as a lighthouse. (IHO Dictionary - S-32).

Buoy: A floating object moored to the bottom in a particular (charted) place, as an aid to navigation or for other specific purposes. Navigational buoys may be classified according to: (a) their shape, appearance, or construction, such as barrel, can, cask, conical, cylindrical, dan, keg, nun, pillar, spar, spherical, or topmark buoy; (b) their colour, such as black, chequered, green, red buoy; (c) their location, such as bifurcation, fairway, junction, mid-channel, middle-ground, or turning buoy; (d) the various kinds of hazards or dangers to navigation which they mark, such as bar, isolated danger, fish trap, obstruction, spoil ground, telegraph or wreck buoy; (e) their particular purpose or use, such as anchor, anchorage, compass adjustment, dredging, farewell (or landfall), marker, quarantine, station (or watch), or warping buoy. (IHO Dictionary - S-32).

Deleted:

18.1 Geo features forming parts of navigational aids

Aids to navigation are composed of fixed or floating structure features established specifically as an aid to navigation, which may carry equipment features.

When identifying relationships (associations) between aids to navigation and associated geo features within this document, three “base classes” are used to define the aids to navigation geo features included in the relevant association. These “base classes” are:

- Structure Features: Includes **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Daymark**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Landmark**, **Pile**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**.
- Equipment Features: Includes **Daymark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Reflector**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**.
- Navigational Aid Features: Includes **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Daymark**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Pile**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**.

The encoding of relationships between structure and equipment features is described in clause 18.2.

Remarks:

- Structures that have not been established specifically as an aid to navigation may also carry aids to navigation as equipment features. These include **Bridge**, **Building**, **Cable Overhead**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Dolphin**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Fishing Facility**, **Hulk**, **Landmark**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Obstruction**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**. If it is required to encode such supporting structures at the same location as an equipment feature, it must be encoded as a separate feature, and share the same spatial type as (for point structures), or cover the location of (for structures of type curve or area) the equipment feature.
- Topmarks are encoded as part of the navigational aid structure, using the complex attribute **topmark** (see clause 29.34).
- Radar reflectors must not be encoded as separate features when attached to navigational aids. If it is required to encode their existence, it must be done by populating the Boolean attribute **radar conspicuous** = *True*. Radar reflectors may only be encoded where their position is known and they are included as equipment features on an overhead cable structure feature (see clauses 6.10.1, 20.18.1 and 25.15).
- Rescue stations and coast guard stations are not related to navigation, and they must not, therefore, be part of the equipment features of navigational aids. If it is required to encode a rescue

or coast guard station at the same location as a navigational mark, it must be encoded as a separate feature, and share the same spatial type as the navigational aid.

18.2 Relationships

A **Structure/Equipment** feature association (see clause 25.15) must be created in order to relate the different features comprising a navigational aid. Where a **Structure/Equipment** feature association is created, there must be only one structure feature related to one or more equipment features. An equipment feature must not be related to more than one structure feature, and a feature must not be both a structure and an equipment feature.

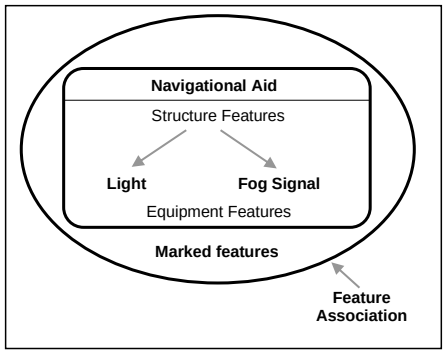


Figure 18-1 – Navigational aids – Structure/equipment association

Note that **Daymark** may be a structure feature or an equipment feature (refer to the lists of structure and equipment features at clause 18.1); where a navigational aid contains a **Daymark** and there is no other base structure (which can serve as the structure feature) indicated on the source, the **Daymark** feature should be encoded as the structure feature.

When the nature of the base structure on land is unknown or there is no structure feature, one of the equipment features may be chosen as the structure feature, giving priority to a **Light All Around** or **Light Sectored** feature, if one exists (however, see also clause 19.1.8). Where this occurs, the light feature must be encoded as the structure feature in the **Structure/Equipment** relationship. Alternatively, a **Pile** feature of type point or a **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature may be encoded as the structure feature at the same position as the equipment features. When a light is located in the water with no indication on the source of the structure feature, regardless of the height of the light, a **Pile** feature of type surface or a **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature should be encoded as the structure feature. This will ensure that a symbol will be shown on ECDIS systems when the light features are not displayed during daytime navigation.

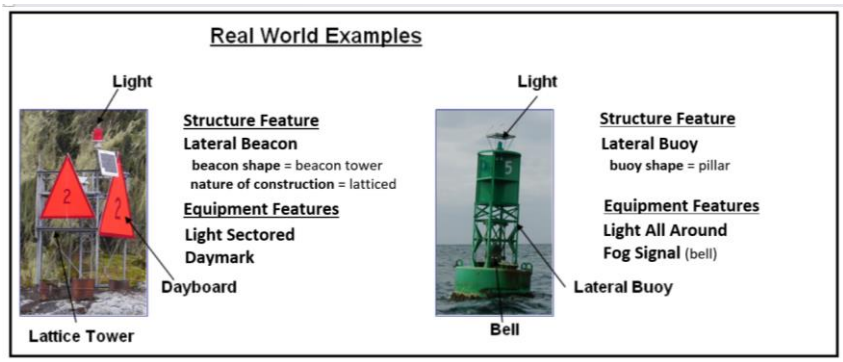


Figure 18-2 – Navigational aids – Structure/equipment feature associations: Real-world examples

In the above real-world examples, the structure and equipment features that make up the navigational aids are point spatial types, and they must share the same geographic point spatial type.

If it is required to encode the name of the navigational aid, it must be done using the complex attribute **feature name** (see clause 2.5.8) on the structure feature. The name must not be repeated for the equipment features. If the name is painted on the structure, it must be encoded with the same spelling in the complex attribute **feature name**. If the name is not based on the Latin alphabet, it must be encoded using **feature name** (**name**), with an appropriate value populated for the sub-attribute **language**, and transliterated for encoding on an iteration of **feature name** (**name**) with an appropriate value populated for the mandatory attribute **language** (normally English (*eng*)).

All point features comprising a navigational aid must share the same geographic point spatial instance.

Remarks:

- For guidance related to the population of the temporal attributes **date end** and **date start** for equipment features in a **Structure/Equipment** association relationship, see clause 2.4.9.

18.3 Buoyage systems and direction of buoyage (see S-4 – B-461)

Systems of buoyage are described as lateral, cardinal, or a combination of lateral and cardinal. Lateral systems depend on a direction of buoyage being defined. The cardinal system depends solely on the main points of the compass. Special purpose buoys often mark the limits or centre of an area (for example an exercise area, a dumping ground) and do not necessarily have lateral or cardinal system characteristics.

The IALA Maritime Buoyage System details, including the extent of Regions A and B, are given in other publications (for example UK's booklet NP 735 "IALA Maritime Buoyage System"). Although it is called a buoyage system, it applies to all fixed and floating marks except lighthouses, some sector lights, leading lights and marks, major floating lights and lights on offshore structures. Six types of marks are provided by the system: Lateral, Cardinal, Isolated danger, Safe water, Special and Emergency Wreck Marking marks, which may be used in any combination.

18.3.1 Buoyage systems and direction of buoyage (see S-4 – B-461)

The buoyage system of the area covered by the dataset and, where necessary, the direction of buoyage, must be encoded using the meta features **Navigational System of Marks** and **Local Direction of Buoyage**:

All parts of the dataset containing data must be covered by **Navigational System of Marks** features (see clause 3.6), with the mandatory attribute **marks navigational – system of** indicating the buoyage system in operation. **Navigational System of Marks** features must not overlap.

Within a dataset, there may be some areas where the direction of buoyage is defined by local rules and must, therefore, be specified. These areas should be encoded as separate **Local Direction of Buoyage** features (see clause 3.7), with the mandatory attribute **orientation value** indicating the direction of buoyage. **Local Direction of Buoyage** features must not overlap, but in areas where local buoyage directions apply, **Local Direction of Buoyage** features must overlap **Navigational System of Marks** features (see Figure 18-3 below).

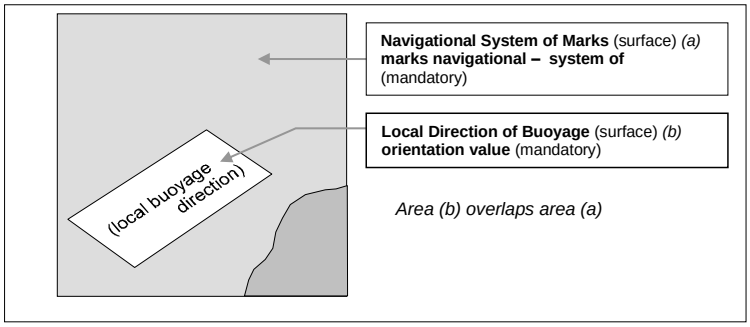


Figure 18-3 – Buoyage system and direction

Individual buoys and beacons may not be part of the general buoyage system. This should be encoded using the attribute **marks navigational – system of** on these buoy and beacon features.

18.3.1.1 Encoding IALA marks within IALA A or B

In the following Tables the symbol '/' indicates that this attribute is not relevant for that particular feature class. The Tables contain the most common examples of encoding; other encoding combinations are possible. For encoding of buoys, substitute **Buoy** for **Beacon** in the Feature column. Table 18-3 for topmarks refers to the sub-attribute values for the complex attribute **topmark**.

Real World Feature	INT 1	Feature	category of cardinal mark	colour	colour pattern	marks navigational – system of
North cardinal beacon	Q 130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*1*	*2,6*	*1*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
East cardinal beacon	Q 130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*2*	*2,6,2*	*1*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
South cardinal beacon	Q 130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*3*	*6,2*	*1*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
West cardinal beacon	Q 130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*4*	*6,2,6*	*1*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Real World Feature	**INT 1**	**Feature**	**category of lateral mark**	**colour**	**colour pattern**	**marks navigational – system of**
Port lateral beacon	Q 130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*1*	*3*	/	*1* (IALA A)
Starboard lateral beacon	Q 130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*2*	*4*	/	*1* (IALA A)
Preferred channel to starboard lateral beacon	Q 130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*3*	*3,4,3*	*1*	*1* (IALA A)
Preferred channel to port lateral beacon	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*4*	*4,3,4*	*1*	*1* (IALA A)
Port lateral beacon	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*1*	*4*	/	*2* (IALA B)
Starboard lateral beacon	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*2*	*3*	/	*2* (IALA B)
Preferred channel to starboard lateral beacon	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*3*	*4,3,4*	*1*	*2* (IALA B)

Preferred channel to port lateral beacon	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*4*	*3,4,3*	*1*	*2* (IALA B)

Table 18-1 – IALA cardinal and lateral marks – Attribute encoding

Real World Feature	INT 1	Feature	colour	colour pattern	marks navigational – system of
Emergency wreck marking buoy		**Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**	*5,6*	*2*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Isolated danger beacon	Q130.4	**Isolated Danger Beacon**	*2,3,2*	*1*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Safe water beacon	Q130.5	**Safe Water Beacon**	*3,1 or 1,3*	*2*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Special purpose beacon	Q130.6	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**	*6*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)

Table 18-2 – IALA emergency wreck marking, isolated danger, safe water and special purpose/general marks – Attribute encoding

Real World Feature	INT 1	Feature	topmark / daymark shape	colour*	colour pattern*	marks navigational – system of
North cardinal topmark	Q130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*13*	*2*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
East cardinal topmark	Q130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*11*	*2*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
South cardinal topmark	Q130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*14*	*2*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
West cardinal topmark	Q130.3	**Cardinal Beacon**	*10*	*2*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Isolated danger topmark	Q130.4	**Isolated Danger Beacon**	*4*	*2*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Port lateral topmark	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*5*	*3*	*/*	*1* (IALA A)
Starboard lateral topmark	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*1*	*4*	*/*	*1* (IALA A)
Port lateral topmark	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*5*	*4*	*/*	*2* (IALA B)
Starboard lateral topmark	Q130.1	**Lateral Beacon**	*1*	*3*	*/*	*2* (IALA B)
Safe water topmark	Q130.1	**Safe Water Beacon**	*3*	*3*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Special purpose topmark	Q130.1	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**	*7*	*6*	*/*	*1* and *2* (IALA A and B)
Emergency wreck marking topmark		**Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**	*8*	*6*	*/*	*1* or *2* (IALA A or B)

Table 18-3 – IALA topmarks – Attribute encoding

* If it is required to encode an aid to navigation that may be considered to be a topmark but has multiple colours that are considered important for navigation, this should be done using the feature **Daymark** (see clause 20.14).

Deleted:

Commented [TS85]: Refer to email from Christina 22/12/23 and IHO Sec response 16/01/24.

Deleted: Buoy

19 Geo Features – Lights

For the purpose of encoding lights in ENC, the following features must be used, depending on the type of light:

- **Light All Around** (see clause 19.2) for lights having the same character over the whole horizon of interest to marine navigation (all-round lights)), excluding fog detector and air obstruction lights;
- **Light Sectored** (see clause 19.3) for lights having one or more sectors which have different characteristics, including directional lights and lights having obscured or partially obscured sectors;
- **Light Fog Detector** (see clause 19.4) for lights used to automatically determine conditions of visibility which warrant the turning on or off of a sound signal; and
- **Light Air Obstruction** (see clause 19.5) for lights marking an obstacle which constitutes a danger to air navigation.

When encoding a light, the combination of the character and purpose of the light must be evaluated in order to determine the most appropriate light feature from the above list.

19.1 Lights: General

19.1.1 Rhythms of lights (see S-4 – B-471.2)

The principal character of a light is its rhythm (although, strictly, fixed lights and some alternating lights are not “rhythmic”).

If it is required to encode the rhythms of lights, this must be done using the complex attribute **rhythm of light**, sub-attributes **light characteristic** and **signal group**. When populating **rhythm of light**, the sub-attributes **signal group**, **signal period** and **signal sequence** are only valid for non-fixed lights (that is, sub-attribute **light characteristic** ≠ *1* (fixed)), with **signal group** and **signal period** being mandatory.

The use of these sub-attributes is defined in the following Table; it contains the most common examples of coding; other coding combinations are possible:

Rhythms of lights	F	Oc	Oc(2)	Oc(2+3)	Iso	Fl	Fl(3)	LFl
light characteristic	*1*	*8*	*8*	*8*	*7*	*2*	*2*	*3*
signal group	*prohibited*	*(1)*	*(2)*	*(2+3)*	*(1)*	*(1)*	*(3)*	*(1)*

Rhythms of lights	Q	Q(3)	VQ	VQ(3)	UQ	IUQ
light characteristic	*4*	*4*	*5*	*5*	*6*	*11*
signal group	*(1)*	*(3)*	*(1)*	*(3)*	*(1)*	*( )*

Rhythms of lights	Mo(K)	FFl	Q(6)+LFl	VQ(6)+LFl	Al.WR	Al.Fl.WR	Al.Fl(2W+1R)	Al.Oc(4)WR
light characteristic	*12*	*13*	*25*	*26*	*28*	*19*	*19*	*17*
signal group	*(K)*	*()(1)*	*(6)(1)*	*(6)(1)*	*( )*	*(1)*	*(2+1)*	*(4)*

Table 19-1 – Rhythms of lights – Common encoding examples

Commented [TS86]: Columns for IQ and IVQ removed (no longer valid light characteristics). Refer to email from Christina 22/12/23 and IHO Sec response 16/01/24.

Some lights recently constructed may appear to the Mariner as "fixed and flashing - FFL" by night, while the real-world feature actually comprises two separate lights vertically disposed, one fixed and the other flashing (F&Fl). When it is known that two separate features actually exist, they must be encoded as separate light features, in this case two **Light All Around** features, one with complex attribute **rhythm of light**, sub-attribute **light characteristic** = *1* (fixed) and the other with **light characteristic** = *2* (flashing), and not as one **Light All Around** with **light characteristic** = *13* (fixed/flash).

19.1.2 Types and functions of lights (see S-4 – B-471.1)

If it is required to encode types and functions of lights, this must be done using the attribute **category of light** (see clause 27.37).

19.1.3 Elevations of lights (see S-4 – B-471.6)

The elevation of a light is the vertical distance between the light source and the plane of reference for heights for the ENC data (see clause 2.5.7).

If it is required to encode the elevation of a light on a fixed structure, it must be done using the attribute **height**.

If it is required to encode the height above the water surface of a light on a floating structure, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length** on the relevant light feature (see clause 2.5.7).

19.1.4 Times of exhibition and exhibition conditions (see S-4 – B-473)

19.1.4.1 Night lights

If it is required to encode a night light, it must be done using the attribute **exhibition condition of light** = *4* (night light) on the light feature.

19.1.4.2 Unwatched lights (see S-4 – B-473.1)

This information should not be encoded, but unwatched (unmanned) lights, with no standby or emergency arrangements, may be encoded using attribute **status** = *17* (unwatched).

19.1.4.3 Occasional lights (see S-4 – B-473.2)

If it is required to encode an occasional light, it must be done using attribute **status** = *2* (occasional). If it is required to encode a private light that is not regularly exhibited, it must be done using **status** = *2,8* (occasional, private).

19.1.4.4 Daytime lights (see S-4 – B-473.4)

If it is required to encode a light shown throughout 24 hours without change of character, it must be done using attribute **exhibition condition of light** = *1* (light shown without change of character).

If it is required to encode a light having characteristics shown by day different from those shown at night, it must be done by encoding two light features sharing the same point spatial instance:

- one light feature with **exhibition condition of light** = *2* (daytime light),
- one light feature with **exhibition condition of light** = *4* (night light).

19.1.4.5 Fog lights (see S-4 – B-473.5)

If it is required to encode a light which is exhibited in fog or conditions of reduced visibility, it must be done using a light feature, with attributes **exhibition condition of light** = *3* (fog light) and **status** = *2* (occasional).

If it is required to encode a light having characteristics shown in fog that are different from those shown in conditions of normal visibility, it must be done by encoding two light features sharing the same point spatial instance:

- one light feature with **exhibition condition of light** = *3* (fog light) and **status** = *2* (occasional)
- one light feature with **exhibition condition of light** = *2* (daytime light) or *4* (night light) and the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text** = *Character of the light changes in fog*.

Note the distinction between fog lights and fog detector lights, which are lights used to automatically determine conditions of visibility which warrant the turning on or off of a sound signal. Fog detector lights must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Light Fog Detector** (see clause 19.4).

19.1.4.6 Manually-activated lights (see S-4 – B-473.5)

If a light is radio activated, the attribute **signal generation** must be populated with value *5* (radio activated). To encode the contact information for activation of the light, it must be done using the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1). The **Contact Details** must be associated to the light feature using the association **Additional Information**.

If a light is activated by calling into a manned station, the attribute **signal generation** must be populated with value *6* (call activated). To encode the contact information for the manned station, it must be done using the information type **Contact Details**. The **Contact Details** must be associated to the light feature using the association **Additional Information**.

19.1.5 Leading lights (see S-4 – B-475.6)

If it is required to encode a leading light, it must be done using an appropriate light feature, with attribute:

category of light = *4,12* - front leading light
4,13 - rear leading light
4,14 - lower leading light
4,15 - upper leading light

Remarks:

- Even if, on the source, the leading lights are merged into a single symbol, a light feature must be created for each light. These lights must be placed in their true position; that is, where the source shows a single light with a legend such as *2F.Bu*, further investigation must be done in order to determine the true position of each light, and its full attribution. Compilers should note that where this occurs on paper charts, the position of the light shown on the chart normally corresponds with the rear leading light.
- The leading line must be encoded using the method described in clause 15.1.

19.1.6 Lighthouses (see S-4 – B-457.3)

If it is required to encode a lighthouse, it must be done using a **Landmark** feature (see clause 7.2), with attributes **category of landmark** = *17* (tower) and **function** = *33* (light support) for towers, or using a **Building** feature (see clause 6.2), with the attribute **function** = *33*, for any other shapes.

If it is required to encode the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** for a lighthouse, this must be done as described in clause 19.1.3.

If the lighthouse is permanently extinguished/unlit, this must be indicated by population of the attribute **status** = *4* (not in use) for the **Landmark/Building**, and the light feature must be removed. Where a lighthouse is illuminated by flood lights, the additional value of **status** = *12* (illuminated) must also be populated. For lights that are temporarily extinguished, see clause 31.2.2 – paragraph 10(i).

19.1.7 Various special types of lights

Type	S-4	category of light	Remarks
Subsidiary light	B-471.8	*10*	Encoded as a separate light from the main light feature
Aero light	B-476.1	*5*	
Air obstruction light	B-476.2		Encode using feature **Light Air Obstruction**
Fog detector light	B-477		Encode using feature **Light Fog Detector**
Bearing light		*18*	
Flood light	B-478.2	*8*	Only to encode flood lights that are visible from seaward. The illuminated structure should be encoded using appropriate feature classes, with attribute **status** = *12* (illuminated) and, if the flood lit colour of the structure is considered important for navigation, complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **text** indicating the colour; for example, *Purple when flood lit*.
Synchronized lights	B-478.3		**status** =*15.* A series of synchronized lights may be defined by associating the lights features with a **Range System** feature using the feature association **Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)
Strip light	B-478.5	*9*	
Spot light		*11*	Only to encode spot lights that are visible from seaward. The illuminated feature should be encoded using appropriate feature classes, with attribute **status** = *12* (illuminated)
Emergency light		*17*	Must be encoded as a separate feature to the main light feature
Horizontally disposed lights	B-471.8	*19*	The number of lights must be encoded using complex attribute **multiplicity of features**
Vertically disposed lights	B-471.8	*20*	The number of lights must be encoded using complex attribute **multiplicity of features**

Commented [TS87]: DCEG Sub-WG meeting 4. Strip lights that are an aid to navigation need to be addressed in portrayal… not sure how if there is no attribution to indicate the difference between a strip light that is an aid to navigation and one which is not.

Specific pattern of lights	B-471.8		The pattern must be encoded using complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **text**; for example *lights disposed in the shape of a triangle*. The number of lights must be encoded using complex attribute **multiplicity of features**

Table 19-2 – Special types of lights

19.1.8 Light structures

Light features located in the water must have a structure feature, generally a beacon (for example **Lateral Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**) or other fixed structure (for example **Offshore Platform**), or a buoy structure (for example **Lateral Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**) for floating aids to navigation. When a light is located in the water with no indication on the source of the structure feature, regardless of the height of the light, a **Pile** feature of type surface or a **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature should be encoded as the structure feature. This will ensure that a symbol will be shown on ECDIS systems when the light features are not displayed during daytime navigation.

The light portrayal rules for ECDIS result in the display of **Light All Around** features with Boolean attribute **major light** = *True* using a 360° light sector. On land, if no aid to navigation structure object has been encoded at the position of these lights, the Mariner does not have a displayed centre point to take bearings to:

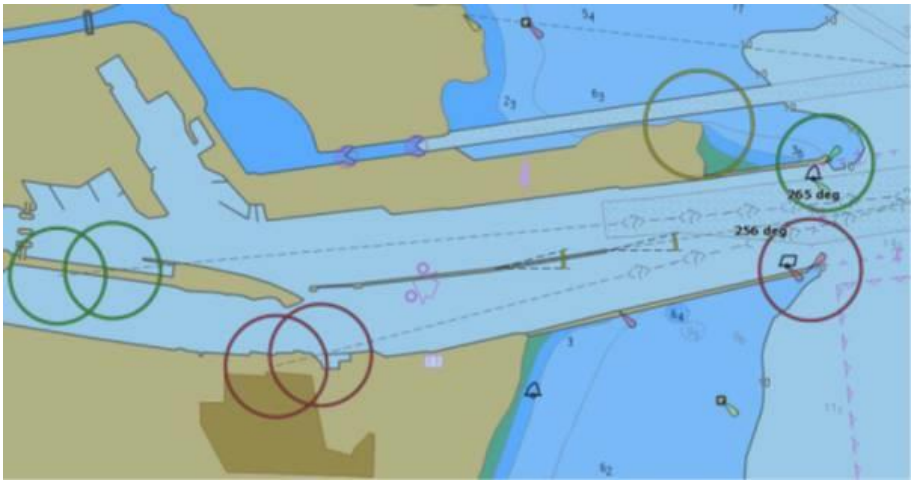


Figure 19-1 – Omnidirectional light display in ECDIS

Encoders are advised, therefore, that an aid to navigation structure object (for example **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Pile**) should be encoded as a light structure object for all **Light All Around** features on land encoded as major lights, where the nature of the structure object is unknown.

19.2 All around light

IHO Definition: **ALL AROUND LIGHT**. An all around light is a light that is visible over the whole horizon of interest to marine navigation and having no change in the characteristics of the light.

S-101 Geo Feature: Light All Around (LIGHTS)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of light	(CATLIT)	4 : leading light 5 : aero light 8 : flood light 9 : strip light 10 : subsidiary light 11 : spotlight 12 : front 13 : rear 14 : lower 15 : upper 17 : emergency 18 : bearing light 19 : horizontally disposed 20 : vertically disposed	EN	0,*
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange	EN	1,* (ordered)
exhibition condition of light	(EXCLIT)	1 : light shown without change of character 2 : daytime light 3 : fog light 4 : night light	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
light visibility	(LITVIS)	1 : high intensity	EN	0,1

		2 : low intensity		
major light			BO	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features	*(MLTYLT)*		(S) IN	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
rhythm of light			C	1,1
light characteristic	(LITCHR)	1 : fixed 2 : flashing 3 : long-flashing 4 : quick-flashing 5 : very quick-flashing 6 : ultra quick-flashing 7 : isophased 8 : occulting 11 : interrupted ultra quick flashing 12 : morse 13 : fixed and flash 14 : flash and long-flash 15 : occulting and flash 16 : fixed and long-flash 17 : occulting alternating 18 : long-flash alternating 19 : flash alternating 25 : quick-flash plus long-flash 26 : very quick-flash plus long-flash 27 : ultra quick-flash plus long-flash 28 : alternating 29 : fixed and alternating flashing	(S) EN	1,1
signal group	(SIGGRP)		(S) TE	0,* (ordered) †
signal period	(SIGPER)		(S) RE	0,1 †
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		(S) C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound 2 : eclipsed/silent	(S) EN	1,1
signal generation	(SIGGEN)	5 : radio activated 6 : call activated	EN	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 11 : extinguished	EN	0,*

		14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched 17 : unwatched		
value of nominal range	(VALNMR)		RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : Approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
flare bearing			IN	0,1

Commented [TS88]: Should "system" attribute flare bearing be populated by the production systems every time (i.e. (1,1))? [Same at 19.4 and 19.5]

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment**[1] (see clause 25.15)	**Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**	Association	0,*
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral**	Composition	0,1

[1] See clauses 18.2 and 19.1.8.

		Buoy, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**		
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For non-fixed lights (that is, sub-attribute **light characteristic** ≠ *1* (fixed)), the sub-attributes **signal group** and **signal period** are mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: P 1-65

19.2.1 All around lights (see S-4 – B-470)

If it is required to encode an all around light (excluding fog detector and air obstruction lights), it must be done using the feature **Light All Around**. This feature must be an equipment feature of a structure feature (see clause 18.2), which may be another light feature at the same position (if it exists and there is no structure feature available), using a **Structure/Equipment** feature association.

The IALA Maritime Buoyage System rules do not apply for most landfall lights and will apply to minor lights, but not to leading lights, some sector lights or major floating lights. In general, sector lights follow IALA convention when used for marking a channel.

Further guidance for encoding various types and characteristics of lights can be found in clauses 19.1.1 to 19.1.7.

Remarks:

- All sector lights, whether single sectored, multi-sectored or having sectors that are deliberately obscured or completely or partially obscured by obstructions, must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Light Sectored** (see clause 19.3); for encoding a directional sector or bearing, see clause 19.3.1.2.
- Fog detector and air obstruction lights must be encoded, where required, using the features **Light Fog Detector** and **Light Air Obstruction** (see clauses 19.4 and 19.5).
- If it is required to encode details of the lighting technology (for example neon), it must be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- If it is required to encode the purpose of a marine spotlight, it must be done using the complex attribute **information**.
- Lights on land encoded as major lights (Boolean attribute **major light** = *True*) must have a structure feature encoded (see clause 19.1.8) in order for the position of the light to be clearly indicated in the ECDIS.
- The attribute **vertical datum** applies only to **height**; this value must only be encoded if it is different from the value of **vertical datum** encoded on the underlying meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data** (see clause 3.10).
- The attribute **vertical length** only applies to lights attached to floating structures (see clause 2.5.7).

- The indication that a light is a “major” light through the population of the Boolean attribute **major light** with a *True* value determines the way the light is displayed in ECDIS, and is not based on any legal or formal classification of the importance of lights. Generally, a major light may be considered to be a light intended for use at sea, usually with a range of 15 miles or more, and in outer approaches to harbours. However the determination of what is a major light may be based on a number of additional factors, including the number and characteristics of navigational (and non-navigational) lights in the geographical area, and specific navigational requirements for the area. Indication in a dataset that a light is a major light should be based only on the requirements for ECDIS display, at the discretion of the Producing Authority.
- Names of major lights are very important. If a light has a name which is unrelated to any other encoded feature, the name must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name** (see clause 2.5.8) on at least the largest optimum display scale ENC data. If the name of a light is obviously that of the named feature on which the light stands, for example Saint Catherine’s Point, the name of the light need not be repeated for the light.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Lateral Buoy; Light Air Obstruction; Light Float; Light Fog Detector; Light Sectored; Light Vessel; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

19.3 Sector light

IHO Definition: **SECTOR LIGHT**. A light presenting different appearances (in particular, different colours) over various parts of the horizon of interest to maritime navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Light Sectored (LIGHTS)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of light	(CATLIT)	4 : leading light 5 : aero light 8 : flood light 9 : strip light 10 : subsidiary light 11 : spotlight 12 : front 13 : rear 14 : lower 15 : upper 17 : emergency 18 : bearing light 19 : horizontally disposed 20 : vertically disposed	EN	0,*
exhibition condition of light	(EXCLIT)	1 : light shown without change of character 2 : daytime light 3 : fog light 4 : night light	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1

Commented [TS89]: Refer to S-101 Documentation and FC GiyHub Issue #107

sector characteristics			C	1,*
light characteristic	(LITCHR)	1 : fixed 2 : flashing 3 : long-flashing 4 : quick-flashing 5 : very quick-flashing 6 : ultra quick-flashing 7 : isophased 8 : occulting 11 : interrupted ultra quick flashing 12 : morse 13 : fixed and flash 14 : flash and long-flash 15 : occulting and flash 16 : fixed and long-flash 17 : occulting alternating 18 : long-flash alternating 19 : flash alternating 25 : quick-flash plus long-flash 26 : very quick-flash plus long-flash 27 : ultra quick-flash plus long-flash 28 : alternating 29 : fixed and alternating flashing	(S) EN	1,1
light sector			(S) C	1,*
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange	(S) EN	1,* (ordered)
directional character			(S) C	0,1 †
moiré effect			(S) BO	0,1
orientation			(S) C	1,1
orientation uncertainty			(S) RE	0,1
orientation value	*(ORIENT)*		(S) RE	1,1
light visibility	(LITVIS)	1 : high intensity 2 : low intensity 3 : faint 4 : intensified 5 : unintensified 6 : visibility deliberately restricted 8 : partially obscured 9 : visible in line of range	(S) EN	0,*
sector limit			(S) C	0,1 †
sector limit one			(S) C	1,1
sector bearing	*(SECTR1)*	**sector limit one/sector bearing ≠ sector limit two/sector bearing** (*0 = 360*)	(S) RE	1,1
sector line length			(S) RE	0,1

sector limit two			(S) C	1,1
sector bearing	*(SECTR2)*	**sector limit two/sector bearing ≠ sector limit one/sector bearing**; (*0 = 360*)	(S) RE	1,1
sector line length			(S) RE	0,1
value of nominal range	(VALNMR)		(S) RE	0,1
sector information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
sector arc extension			(S) BO	0,1
signal group	(SIGGRP)		(S) TE	0,* (ordered) †
signal period	(SIGPER)		(S) RE	0,1 †
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		(S) C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound 2 : eclipsed/silent	(S) EN	1,1
signal generation	(SIGGEN)	5 : radio activated 6 : call activated	EN	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 11 : extinguished 14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1

file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment**[2] (see clause 25.15)	**Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**	Association	0,*
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Conveyor**, **Dolphin**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fortified Structure**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For non-fixed lights (that is, sub-attribute **light characteristic** ≠ *1* (fixed)), the sub-attributes **signal group** and **signal period** are mandatory.

For a light sector that is a directional sector, the sub-complex attribute **directional character** is mandatory.

For a light sector that is not a directional sector (that is, sub-complex attribute **directional character** is not populated), the sub-complex attribute **sector limit** is mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: P 1-65

19.3.1 Sectored lights (see S-4 – B-475)

If it is required to encode a light that consists of one or more sectors, it must be done using the feature **Light**

[2] See clause 18.2.

Sectored. This feature must be an equipment feature of a structure feature (see clause 18.1), which may be another light feature at the same position (if it exists and there is no structure feature available), using a **Structure/equipment** feature association.

The IALA Maritime Buoyage System rules do not apply for most landfall lights and will apply to minor lights, but not to leading lights, some sector lights or major floating lights. In general, sector lights follow IALA convention when used for marking a channel.

Further guidance for encoding various types and characteristics of lights can be found in clauses 9.1.1 to 9.1.7.

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **sector characteristics**, sub-complex attribute **light sector** is used to populate each sector for the light, except for sectors in which there is no light exhibited. Where there is a different rhythm of light between sectors (for example, for complex lights), separate instances of **sector characteristics** must be populated.
- Population of the sub-complex attribute **sector limit** having sub-attributes **sector limit one** = *0* and **sector limit two** = *360* (that is, encoding an all around light as a sectored light) is prohibited.
- If a sector of a sectored light is intended to have a directional function, this must be encoded using the **light sector** complex sub-attribute **directional character**. If the light is intensified in this sector, **light sector** sub-attribute **light visibility** = *4* (intensified) must be populated. The sub-complex attribute **sector limit** is optional for directional light sectors.
- The sub-attribute **sector line length** (see clause 27.157) may be used for critical light sectors to extend the sector line when the ECDIS display settings are set to display default sector lines. The intended usage of the ENC dataset must be considered when determining the usage of **sector line length** so as to avoid excessive screen clutter when default sector display is enabled; and consistent display of light sectors across the entire ENC portfolio should also be a consideration when determining the population of this attribute. Where populated, the value of **sector line length** must not exceed the value populated for the sub-attribute **value of nominal range** for the light sector.
- In some cases the area defined by the intersecting sectors of two discrete sector lights are used to indicate the existence of isolated and sometimes substantial dangers to navigation, the precise position of which may not be known. When default sectors are displayed in ECDIS, the extent and intent of these sectors may not be clearly defined to the Mariner. In order to more clearly indicate these areas, compilers should consider appropriate use of **sector line length** for the relevant sectors in the impacted area. Where it is considered important that the area of possible danger is defined, this should be done by encoding a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) covering the intersection area. Information relating to the definition of the area by sector lights and a précis of the danger should be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) for the **Caution Area**.
- The fairway defined by the succession of navigable areas in the white sectors of a series of **Light Sectored** features may be encoded using the feature **Fairway** (see clause 15.7).
- If there is additional information required to be encoded that is relevant to all sectors of the light, this must be done using the **information** (see clause 2.4.6). If the additional information is relevant to individual sectors of the light only (for example, for complex (oscillating) light sectors (see clause 19.3.1.3 below)), this must be encoded using the complex sub-attribute **sector information** for the sub-complex attribute **light sector**.
- If it is required to encode details of the lighting technology (for example neon), it must be done using the complex attribute **information**.
- The attribute **vertical datum** applies only to **height**; this value must only be encoded if it is different from the value of **vertical datum** encoded on the underlying meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data** (see clause 3.10).
- Names of major lights are very important. If a light has a name which is unrelated to any other encoded feature, the name must be populated using the complex attribute **feature name** (see clause 2.5.8) on at least the largest scale optimum display scale ENC data. If the name of a light is obviously that of the named feature on which the light stands, for example Saint Catherine's Point, the name of the light need not be repeated for the light.

19.3.1.1 Lights obscured by obstructions (see S-4 – B-475.3)

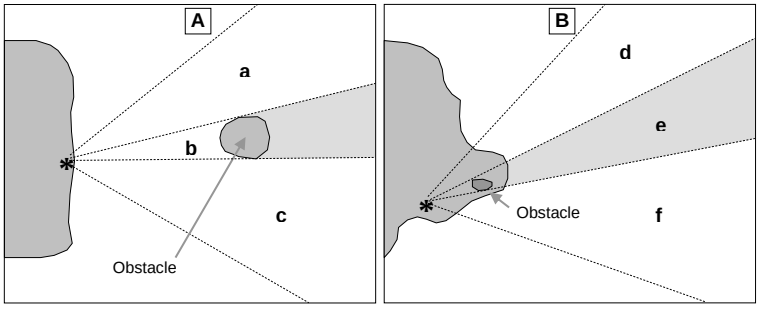


Figure 19-2 – Obscured light sectors

If an encoded light is obscured in a part of the navigable area of a sector (see Figure 19-2 (A) above) beyond an offshore obstruction, it must be encoded using **Light Sectored**, with each of the sectors (a) – (c) encoded using the complex attribute **light sector**. The partially obscured sector of (b) must have **light sector** with sub-attributes **light visibility** = *8* (partially obscured) and sub-attribute **value of nominal range** set to the distance from the light to the obstruction. The sectors in which the light is visible from seaward ((a) and (c)) must be encoded as separate iterations of **light sector**.

If there is no navigable water between the light and the obstacle (see (e) in Figure 19-2 (B) above), the masked sector must not have an iteration of **light sector** encoded, unless a faint light is visible in the navigable part of the sector, which should be encoded using **light sector**, with sub-attribute **light visibility** = *3* (faint). The sectors in which the light is visible from seaward ((d) and (f)) must be encoded as separate iterations of **sector characteristics**.

19.3.1.2 Directional lights (see S-4 – B-475.7-8)

Directional (or direction) lights of several types are in use but all have in common a very narrow sector intended to mark a direction to be followed. The narrow sector may be flanked by:

- Unlit sectors or unintensified light.
- Sectors of different colour or character. Some direction lights are so precise that a complete colour change at a sector boundary occurs over an angle of less than 1 minute (0·02°). This corresponds to a lateral distance of just 1 metre at a viewing distance of 3.5 km. In addition the intensity may be maintained right to the edge of the beam, and does not reduce the further the observer is away from the axis.

A moiré effect mark (or variable arrow mark) is a short-range (normally up to 2 km) type of directional “light”. Sodium lighting gives a yellow background to a screen (up to 3 m square) on which a vertical black line will be seen by an observer on the centreline, or variable arrow marks when course alteration is needed. The system can be used by day and night. It can also be used as a stop line (seen abeam) for vessels berthing along quays.

If it is required to encode a light sector having a directional function, it must be done using the feature **Light Sectored**.

Remarks:

- The indication that a particular light sector has a directional function is encoded by populating the complex attribute **sector characteristics**, sub-complex attribute **directional character**.
- The mandatory complex sub-attribute **orientation** must only be encoded to indicate the orientation, measured from seaward, of the leading line of the directional light sector when there is no **Recommended Track** or **Navigation Line** feature associated with the directional light. Where the directional sector has an associated **Recommended Track** and/or **Navigation Line**, **orientation** (**orientation value**) for the light sector must be populated with an empty (null) value.
- For a sector indicated as directional, the **light sector** complex sub-complex attribute **sector limit** is optional.
- For moiré effect lights, the Boolean sub-attribute **moiré effect** must be set to *True*.
- If it is required to encode the recommended track and/or navigation line associated with a directional light, it must be done using the methods described in clause 15.1.

19.3.1.3 Oscillating light sectors

Evolving technology in the development of navigational lights has resulted in the installation of complex

Commented [TS90]: DCEG Sub-WG meeting 3: Needs a diagram to make explanation of oscillating light sectors clearer.

directional navigation lights with multiple sectors, colours and characteristics, some with oscillating sectors, in many areas where navigation is restricted. These lights may have up to 7 sectors, with the central sector being a very narrow, sometimes intensified, fixed white sector performing the directional function of the light. In the IALA A System, the sectors flanking this directional light may be alternating and oscillate increasingly from white to green (to starboard) and red (to port) with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light. These lights will normally be flanked by narrow sectors of fixed green (to starboard) and red (to port). Additionally, there may be outer sectors that are occulting green (to starboard) and red (to port) which oscillate with increasing period of eclipse to isophased or flashing with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light. For the IALA B System the colours are reversed. In some cases these complex lights may not conform to IALA. Each of the outer sectors may be very narrow.

If is required to encode an oscillating light sector, it should be done using a **Light Sectored** feature, with iterations of the complex attribute **sector characteristics** as follows:

For light sectors in the IALA A system that are alternating and oscillate increasingly from white to green (to starboard) and red (to port) with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light:

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *28* (Alternating); **colour** = *1,3* (White, Red); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *White phase decreases as bearing to light increases*

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *28* (Alternating); **colour** = *1,4* (White, Green); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *White phase increases as bearing to light increases*

For lights in the IALA B system that are alternating and oscillate increasingly from white to red (to starboard) and green (to port) with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light; transpose the colours red and green in the above encoding.

For lights in the IALA A system that are occulting green (to starboard) and red (to port) which oscillate with increasing period of eclipse to isophased or flashing with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light:

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *8* (Occulting); **colour** = *3* (Red); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *Light phase decreases as bearing to light increases*

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *8* (Occulting); **colour** = *4* (Green); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *Light phase increases as bearing to light increases*

For lights in the IALA B system that are occulting red (to starboard) and green (to port) which oscillate with increasing period of eclipse to isophased or flashing with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light; transpose the colours red and green in the above encoding.

Oscillating lights which are not IALA should be encoded similar to the above. For instance, where a light contains white sectors that are occulting and oscillate with increasing period of eclipse to isophased or flashing with increasing deviation from the track defined by the directional light:

For the sector to port of the track defined by the directional light:

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *8* (Occulting); **colour** = *1* (White); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *Light phase decreases as bearing to light increases*

For the sector to starboard of the track defined by the directional light:

sector characteristics: light characteristic = *8* (Occulting); **colour** = *1* (White); **sector limit**; **sector information** (**text**) = *Light phase increases as bearing to light increases*

All other light sectors must be encoded using additional iterations of **sector characteristics**, with sub-attributes (including **light sector** or **directional character**) populated in accordance with the characteristics of the sector.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Lateral Buoy; Light Air Obstruction; Light All Around; Light Float; Light Fog Detector; Light Vessel; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

19.4 Fog detector light

IHO Definition: **FOG DETECTOR LIGHT**. A fog detector light is a light used to automatically determine conditions of visibility which warrant the turning on or off of a sound signal. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Light Fog Detector (LIGHTS)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange	EN	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
rhythm of light			C	0,1
light characteristic	(LITCHR)	1 : fixed 2 : flashing 3 : long-flashing 4 : quick-flashing 5 : very quick-flashing 6 : ultra quick-flashing 7 : isophased 8 : occulting 11 : interrupted ultra quick flashing 12 : morse 13 : fixed and flash 14 : flash and long-flash 15 : occulting and flash 16 : fixed and long-flash	(S) EN	1,1

		17 : occulting alternating 18 : long-flash alternating 19 : flash alternating 25 : quick-flash plus long-flash 26 : very quick-flash plus long-flash 27 : ultra quick-flash plus long-flash 28 : alternating 29 : fixed and alternating flashing		
signal group	(SIGGRP)		(S) TE	0,* (ordered) †
signal period	(SIGPER)		(S) RE	0,1 †
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		(S) C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound 2 : eclipsed/silent	(S) EN	1,1
signal generation	(SIGGEN)	5 : radio activated 6 : call activated	EN	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 11 : extinguished 14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum 25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000	EN	0,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
flare bearing			IN	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For non-fixed lights (that is, sub-attribute **light characteristic** ≠ *1* (fixed)), the sub-attributes **signal group** and **signal period** are mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: P 62

19.4.1 Fog detector lights (see S-4 – B-477)

If it is required to encode a light used to automatically determine conditions of visibility which warrant the turning on or off of a sound signal, it must be done using the feature **Light Fog Detector**. This feature must be an equipment feature of a structure feature (see clause 18.1), if it exists, using a **Structure/Equipment** feature association.

Further guidance for encoding various types and characteristics of lights can be found in clauses 19.1.1 to 19.1.7.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode details of the lighting technology (for instance neon), it must be done using the

complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

- The attribute **vertical datum** applies only to **height**; this value must only be encoded if it is different from the value of **vertical datum** encoded on the underlying meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data** (see clause 3.10).
- The attribute **vertical length** only applies to lights attached to floating structures (see clause 2.5.7).

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Lateral Buoy; Light Air Obstruction; Light All Around; Light Float; Light Sectored; Light Vessel; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

19.5 Air obstruction light

IHO Definition: **AIR OBSTRUCTION LIGHT**. An air obstruction light is a light marking an obstacle which constitutes a danger to air navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Light Air Obstruction (LIGHTS)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange	EN	0,*
exhibition condition of light	(EXCLIT)	1 : light shown without change of character 2 : daytime light 3 : fog light 4 : night light	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
light visibility	(LITVIS)	1 : high intensity 2 : low intensity 3 : faint 4 : intensified 5 : unintensified 6 : visibility deliberately restricted 7 : obscured 8 : partially obscured 9 : visible in line of range	EN	0,*
multiplicity of features			C	0,1
multiplicity known			(S) BO	1,1
number of features	*(MLTYLT)*		(S) IN	0,1

periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
rhythm of light			C	0,1
light characteristic	(LITCHR)	1 : fixed 2 : flashing 3 : long-flashing 4 : quick-flashing 5 : very quick-flashing 6 : ultra quick-flashing 7 : isophased 8 : occulting 11 : interrupted ultra quick flashing 12 : morse 13 : fixed and flash 14 : flash and long-flash 15 : occulting and flash 16 : fixed and long-flash 17 : occulting alternating 18 : long-flash alternating 19 : flash alternating 25 : quick-flash plus long-flash 26 : very quick-flash plus long-flash 27 : ultra quick-flash plus long-flash 28 : alternating 29 : fixed and alternating flashing	(S) EN	1,1
signal group	(SIGGRP)		(S) TE	0,* (ordered) †
signal period	(SIGPER)		(S) RE	0,1 †
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		(S) C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound 2 : eclipsed/silent	(S) EN	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 11 : extinguished 14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
value of nominal range	(VALNMR)		RE	0,1
vertical datum	(VERDAT)	3 : mean sea level 16 : mean high water 17 : mean high water springs 18 : high water 19 : approximate mean sea level 20 : high water springs 21 : mean higher high water 24 : local datum	EN	0,1

		25 : international great lakes datum 1985 26 : mean water level 28 : higher high water large tide 29 : nearly highest high water 30 : highest astronomical tide 44 : baltic sea chart datum 2000		
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
flare bearing			IN	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Landmark**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Wind Turbine**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For non-fixed lights (that is, sub-attribute **light characteristic** ≠ *1* (fixed)), the sub-attributes **signal group** and **signal period** are mandatory.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: P 61.2

19.5.1 Air obstruction lights (see S-4 – B-476.2)

If it is required to encode a light marking an obstacle which constitutes a danger to air navigation, which may also be used as a marine navigational aid, it must be done using the feature **Light Air Obstruction**. This feature must be an equipment feature of a structure feature (see clause 18.1) using a **Structure/Equipment** feature association.

Further guidance for encoding various types and characteristics of lights can be found in clauses 19.1.1 to 19.1.7.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode details of the lighting technology (for example neon), it must be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- The attribute **vertical datum** applies only to **height**; this value must only be encoded if it is different from the value of **vertical datum** encoded on the underlying meta feature **Vertical Datum of Data** (see clause 3.10).

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Lateral Buoy; Light All Around; Light Float; Light Fog Detector; Light Sectored; Light Vessel; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20 Geo Features – Buoys, Beacons

20.1 Lateral buoy

IHO Definition: **LATERAL BUOY**. A lateral buoy is used to indicate the port or starboard hand side of the route to be followed. They are generally used for well-defined channels and are used in conjunction with a conventional direction of buoyage. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Lateral Buoy (BOYLAT)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
category of lateral mark	(CATLAM)	1 : port-hand lateral mark 2 : starboard-hand lateral mark 3 : preferred channel to starboard lateral mark 4 : preferred channel to port lateral mark	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display	(S) EN	0,1 †

		2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display		
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus	(S) EN	1,1

		13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation**	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS91]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

		Scheme, **Two-Way Route**		
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.1

20.1.1 Lateral buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Lateral buoys are generally used for well-defined channels, in conjunction with a direction of buoyage. They indicate the port and starboard sides of the route to be followed.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), port hand buoys are usually can shaped, but may be another shape (except conical or spherical). Other shaped buoys have a can topmark. The colour of port hand buoys, topmarks and lights (if fitted) will be red in IALA region A and green in IALA region B.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System, starboard hand buoys are usually conical shaped, but may be another shape (except can or spherical). Other shaped buoys have a conical topmark. The colour of starboard hand buoys, topmarks and lights (if fitted) will be green in IALA region A and red in IALA region B.

A preferred channel mark is a modified lateral mark, with horizontal colour bands. The shape and predominant colour indicates which side is the preferred channel, the other colour indicates the secondary channel. If fitted, the light is Fl(2+1), the colour indicating the preferred channel.

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of a lateral mark, it must be done using the feature **Lateral Buoy**.

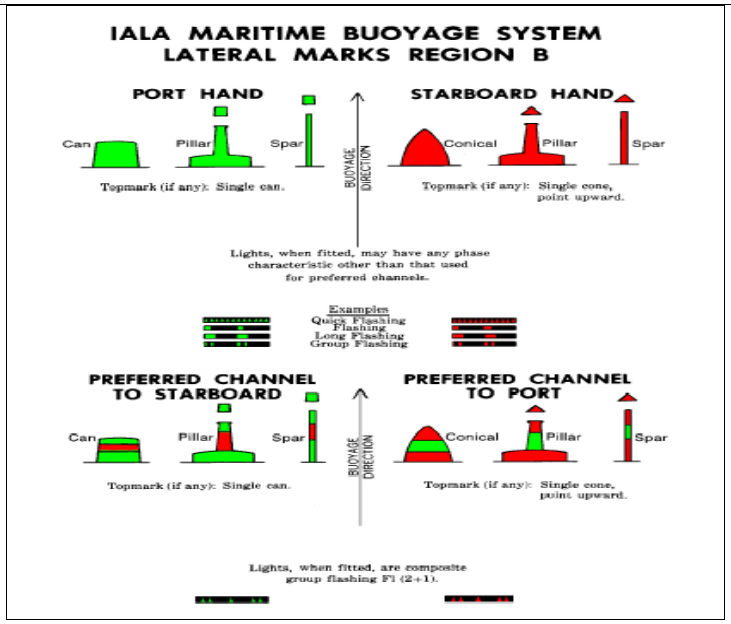


Figure 20-1 – IALA lateral buoys – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.2 Cardinal buoy

IHO Definition: **CARDINAL BUOY**. A cardinal buoy is used in conjunction with the compass to indicate where the mariner may find the best navigable water. It is placed in one of the four quadrants (North, East, South and West), bounded by inter-cardinal bearings from the point marked. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Cardinal Buoy (BOYCAR)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
category of cardinal mark	(CATCAM)	1 : north cardinal mark 2 : east cardinal mark 3 : south cardinal mark 4 : west cardinal mark	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †

date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	***(TOPMAR)***		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag	(S) EN	1,1

		18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS92]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.3

20.2.1 Cardinal buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Cardinal marks are used in conjunction with the compass to indicate where a Mariner may find best navigable water, taking their name from the quadrant in which they are placed in relation to the point marked. The Mariner should pass N of a North mark, E of an East mark, etc. The shape of cardinal buoys is not significant (although they are usually pillar or spar).

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body has black and yellow bands, configured with black reflecting the points of the topmark cones (for example black above yellow for north). Black double-cone topmarks are an important feature of cardinal marks and are carried wherever practicable. The points are up for a north mark, down for a south mark, apart for an east mark and together for a west mark. Lights (if fitted) are white Q or VQ, uninterrupted for the north, 3 flashes for east, 6 flashes + LFl for south and 9 flashes for west (resembling an analogue clock).

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of a cardinal mark, it must be done using the feature **Cardinal Buoy**.

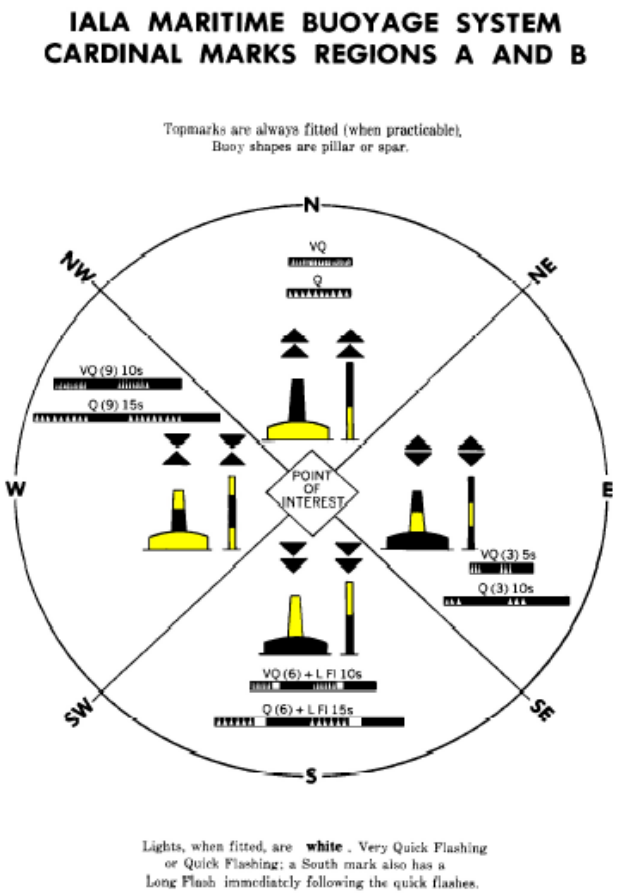


Figure 20-2 – IALA cardinal buoys – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.

Distinction: Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.3 Isolated danger buoy

IHO Definition: **ISOLATED DANGER BUOY**. An isolated danger buoy is a buoy moored on or above an isolated danger of limited extent, which has navigable water all around it. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Isolated Danger Buoy (BOYISD)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B	EN	0,1

		9 : no system 11 : CEVNI		
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	***(TOPMAR)***		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down)	(S) EN	1,1

		24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value

Commented [TS93]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.4

20.3.1 Isolated danger buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Isolated danger buoys are moored above isolated dangers of limited extent with navigable water all around them.

The shape of isolated danger buoys is not significant (although they are usually pillar or spar shaped). To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body is black, with one or more red bands. Black double-sphere topmarks are an important feature of isolated danger buoys and carried wherever practicable. The light (if fitted) is white Fl(2).

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of an isolated danger mark, it must be done using the feature **Isolated Danger Buoy**.

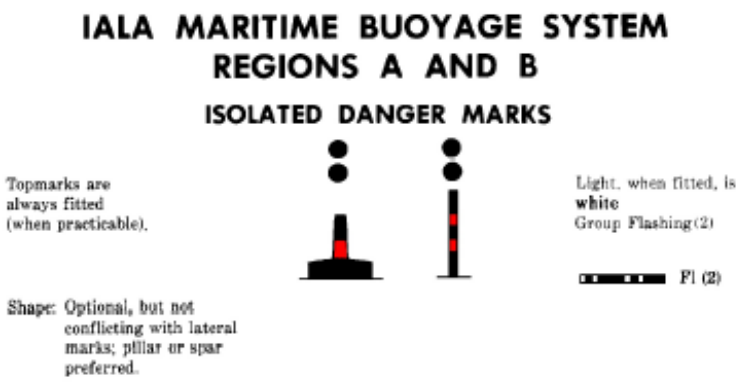


Figure 20-3 – IALA isolated danger buoys – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.4 Safe water buoy

IHO Definition: **SAFE WATER BUOY**. A safe water buoy is used to indicate that there is navigable water around the mark. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Safe Water Buoy (BOYSAW)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B	EN	0,1

		9 : no system 11 : CEVNI		
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	***(TOPMAR)***		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down)	(S) EN	1,1

		24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value

Commented [TS94]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.5

20.4.1 Safe water buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Safe water marks are used to indicate there is safe water all around the mark. It may be used as a centre-line, mid-channel or landfall buoy, or to mark the best point of passage under a bridge.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the shape of a safe water buoy is spherical, pillar or spar. The body of the mark has red and white vertical stripes. If the shape of the buoy is not spherical a red spherical topmark is carried wherever practicable. The light (if fitted) is white Oc, Iso, LFl or Mo(A) with a period of 10s.

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of a safe water mark, it must be done using the feature **Safe Water Buoy**.

Figure 20-4 – IALA safe water buoys – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.5 Special purpose/general buoy

IHO Definition: **SPECIAL PURPOSE/GENERAL BUOY**. A special purpose buoy is primarily used to indicate an area or feature, the nature of which is apparent from reference to a chart, Sailing Directions or Notices to Mariners. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Special Purpose/General Buoy (BOYSPP)				
Primitives: Point				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
category of special purpose mark	(CATSPM)	1 : firing danger area mark 2 : target mark 3 : marker ship mark 4 : degaussing range mark 5 : barge mark 6 : cable mark 7 : spoil ground mark 8 : outfall mark 9 : ODAS 10 : recording mark 11 : seaplane anchorage mark 12 : recreation zone mark 14 : mooring mark 15 : LANBY 17 : measured distance mark 18 : notice mark 19 : TSS mark (Traffic Separation Scheme) 20 : anchoring prohibited mark 21 : berthing prohibited mark 22 : overtaking prohibited mark 23 : two-way traffic prohibited mark 24 : reduced wake mark 25 : speed limit mark 26 : stop mark 27 : general warning mark 28 : sound ship's siren mark 29 : restricted vertical clearance mark 30 : maximum vessel's draught mark 31 : restricted horizontal clearance mark	EN	1,*

		32 : strong current warning mark 33 : berthing permitted mark 34 : overhead power cable mark 35 : channel edge gradient mark 36 : telephone mark 37 : ferry crossing mark 39 : pipeline mark 40 : anchorage mark 42 : control mark 43 : diving mark 45 : foul ground mark 46 : yachting mark 47 : heliport mark 48 : GNSS mark 49 : seaplane landing mark 50 : entry prohibited mark 51 : work in progress mark 52 : mark with unknown purpose 53 : wellhead mark 54 : channel separation mark 55 : marine farm mark 56 : artificial reef mark 57 : ice mark 58 : nature reserve mark 59 : fish aggregating device 60 : wreck mark 61 : customs mark 62 : causeway mark 63 : wave recorder		
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1

date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up)	(S) EN	1,1

		16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS95]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

	25.19)			
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 50-62, 130.6

20.5.1 Special purpose/general buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Special marks are used to indicate to the Mariner a special area or feature, the nature of which is usually apparent from the ENC, paper chart or associated publication. Special marks may also be used to mark a channel within a channel (for example a Deep Water route), using yellow buoys of the appropriate lateral shape, or yellow spherical buoys to mark the centreline. A special buoy may be any shape but must not conflict with lateral or safe water marks (for example an outfall buoy on the port-side of a channel could be can but should not be conical).

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body of the buoy is yellow. The topmark (if fitted) is a yellow diagonal 'X' (St Andrew's cross). Lights (if fitted) are yellow and of any rhythm except those used for cardinal, isolated danger and safe water marks.

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of a special purpose mark, or a buoy whose appearance or purpose is inadequately known, it must be done using the feature **Special Purpose/General Buoy**.

In the following Table, a blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the attribute. The Table contains the most common examples of coding; other coding combinations are possible for **Special Purpose/General Buoy** features.

Feature	INT1	Feature	buoy shape	category of special purpose mark	Other attributes
Firing danger area buoy	Q50	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*1*	
Target	Q51	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*2*	
Marker ship	Q52	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*3*	
Barge	Q53	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*5*	
Degaussing range buoy	Q54	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*4*	
Buoy marking cable	Q55	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*6*	
Spoil ground buoy	Q56	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*7*	
Buoy marking outfall	Q57	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*8*	
Buoy marking pipeline		**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*39*	

Superbuoy	Q26	*** **Buoy**	*7*		
Large automatic navigational buoy	P6	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**	*7*	*15*	
Ocean data acquisition system (ODAS) buoy	Q58	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*9*	Subsurface ODAS encoded as **Obstruction** (see clause 13.6)
Seaplane anchorage buoy	Q60	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*11*	
Buoy marking traffic separation scheme	Q61	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*19*	
Buoy marking recreation zone	Q62	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*12*	
Floating waste bin		**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*Empty (null) value*	**information** = *waste bin* (for example)
Fish Aggregating Device (FAD)		**Special Purpose/General Buoy**	**/**	*59*	Fish havens are encoded as **Obstruction** (see clause 13.6)
Buoy marking wave recorder (or current meter)	Q59	**Special Purpose/General Buoy**		*63*	

Table 20-1 – IALA special purpose buoys – Common types

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.
- If a special purpose buoy does not conform to the system of navigational marks defined by **Navigational System of Marks** (see clause 3.6), the attribute **marks navigational – system of** on the **Special Purpose/General Buoy** should be populated as *9* (no system).
- Fish havens (sometimes referred to as subsurface Fish Aggregating Devices (FAD)) and subsurface Ocean Data Acquisition System (ODAS) equipment must be encoded, where required, using an **Obstruction** feature (see clause 13.6).
- A buoy deployed as an emergency measure to mark a newly identified danger, such as a wreck, must be encoded using the feature **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy** (see clause 20.6). A special purpose buoy intended to permanently mark a wreck as a danger must be encoded, where required, as a **Special Purpose/General Buoy** feature, with attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *60* (wreck mark).

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Safe Water Buoy.

20.6 Emergency wreck marking buoy

IHO Definition: **EMERGENCY WRECK MARKING BUOY**. An emergency wreck marking buoy is a buoy moored on or above a new wreck, designed to provide a prominent (both visual and radio) and easily identifiable temporary first response. (Adapted from UKHO NP 735, 6th Edition).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system	EN	0,1

		11 : CEVNI		
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle	(S) EN	1,1

		pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.7

20.6.1 Emergency wreck marking buoys (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Emergency wreck marking buoys are used to mark new wrecks until a permanent form of marking has been established and the wreck itself has been promulgated by Notice to Mariners, or removed.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the shape of an emergency wreck marking buoy is pillar or spar. The body of the mark has blue and yellow vertical stripes. The topmark (if fitted)

is a standing/upright yellow '+' (St. George's cross). Lights (if fitted) are Al.Oc.BuY.3s.

If it is required to encode a buoy having the function of an emergency wreck mark, it must be done using the feature **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including the topmark and any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.
- An IALA compliant emergency wreck marking buoy topmark should be populated using the complex attribute **topmark**, with sub-attributes **topmark shape** = *8* (upright cross) and **colour** = *6* (yellow).
- An IALA compliant emergency wreck marking buoy should also have the following associated equipment features:
  - A **Light All Around** feature (see clause 19.2), with attributes **colour** = *5,6* (blue, yellow), **light characteristic** = *17* (occulting alternating), **signal group** = *(1)* and **signal period** = *3*. The attribute **signal sequence** should be populated as *(00.50)+01.00+(00.50)+01.00* and the attribute **value of nominal range** should be populated as *4*.
  - A **Radar Transponder Beacon** feature (see clause 21.5), with attributes **category of radar transponder beacon** = *2* (racon, radar transponder beacon) and **signal group** = *(D)*.

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Installation Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Mooring Buoy; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.7 Installation buoy

IHO Definition: **INSTALLATION BUOY**. An installation buoy is a buoy used for loading tankers with gas or oil. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.20, November 2000).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Installation Buoy (BOYINB)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
category of installation buoy	(CATINB)	1 : catenary anchor leg mooring 2 : single buoy mooring	EN	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas	EN	0,*
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: L 16

20.7.1 Installation buoys (see S-4 – B-445.4)

Although the oil and gas from some fields are sent ashore by submarine pipeline, a variety of mooring systems have been developed for use in deep water and in the vicinity of certain ports, to allow the loading of large vessels and the permanent mooring of floating storage vessels or units. These offshore systems include large mooring buoys, designed for mooring vessels up to 500,000 tonnes, and platforms on structures fixed at their lower ends to the seafloor. They allow a vessel to moor forward or aft to them, and to swing to the wind or stream, and are termed installation buoys.

If it is required to encode an installation buoy, it must be done using the feature **Installation Buoy**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.

Distinction: Mooring Buoy; Offshore Platform; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.8 Mooring buoy

IHO Definition: **MOORING BUOY**. A buoy secured to the bottom by permanent moorings with means for mooring a vessel by use of its anchor chain or mooring lines. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Mooring Buoy *(MORFAC)*

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
buoy shape	(BOYSHP)	1 : conical 2 : can 3 : spherical 4 : pillar 5 : spar 6 : barrel 7 : superbuoy 8 : ice buoy	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
maximum permitted draught	*(INFORM)*		RE	0,1

	(NINFOM)			
maximum permitted vessel length	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		RE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visitors mooring	*(SMCFAC)*		BO	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Mooring Trot Aggregation** (see clause 25.10)	**Mooring Trot**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for buoys that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 40-45

20.8.1 Mooring buoys (see S-4 – B-431.5)

Mooring buoys must be shown on charts of appropriate scale to indicate buoys and moored vessels as possible hazards to navigation as well as, on the largest scales, to facilitate mooring operations.

If it is required to encode a mooring buoy, it must be done using the feature **Mooring Buoy**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a buoy that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode the total vertical length, including any equipment features (for example light), of the buoy above the water level, it must be done using the attribute **vertical length**.
- If it is required to encode a visitors mooring, it must be done by populating the attribute **visitors mooring** as *True*.

Distinction: Mooring Area; Mooring Trot; Small Craft Facility; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.9 Lateral beacon

IHO Definition: **LATERAL BEACON**. A lateral beacon is used to indicate the port or starboard hand side of the route to be followed. They are generally used for well defined channels and are used in conjunction with a conventional direction of buoyage. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Lateral Beacon (BCNLAT)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
beacon shape	(BCNSHP)	1 : stake, pole, perch, post 2 : withy 3 : beacon tower 4 : lattice beacon 5 : pile beacon 6 : cairn 7 : buoyant beacon	EN	1,1
category of lateral mark	(CATLAM)	1 : port-hand lateral mark 2 : starboard-hand lateral mark 3 : preferred channel to starboard lateral mark 4 : preferred channel to port lateral mark	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)*		(S) TE	1,1

	(NOBJNM)			
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres	(S) EN	1,1

		5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All**	Association	0,*

	25.15)	**Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS96]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for beacons/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 91-92, 130.1

20.9.1 Lateral Beacons (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Lateral beacons are generally used for well defined channels, in conjunction with a direction of buoyage. They indicate the port and starboard sides of the route to be followed.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), port hand beacons have a can shaped topmark. The colour of port hand beacons, topmarks and lights (if fitted) will be red in IALA region A and green in IALA region B.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System, starboard hand beacons have a conical shaped topmark. The colour of starboard hand beacons, topmarks and lights (if fitted) will be green in IALA region A and red in IALA region B.

A preferred channel beacon is a modified lateral beacon, with horizontal colour bands. The predominant colour indicates which side is the preferred channel, the other colour indicates the secondary channel. If fitted, the light is Fl(2+1), the colour indicating the preferred channel.

If it is required to encode a beacon having the function of a lateral mark, it must be done using the feature **Lateral Beacon**.

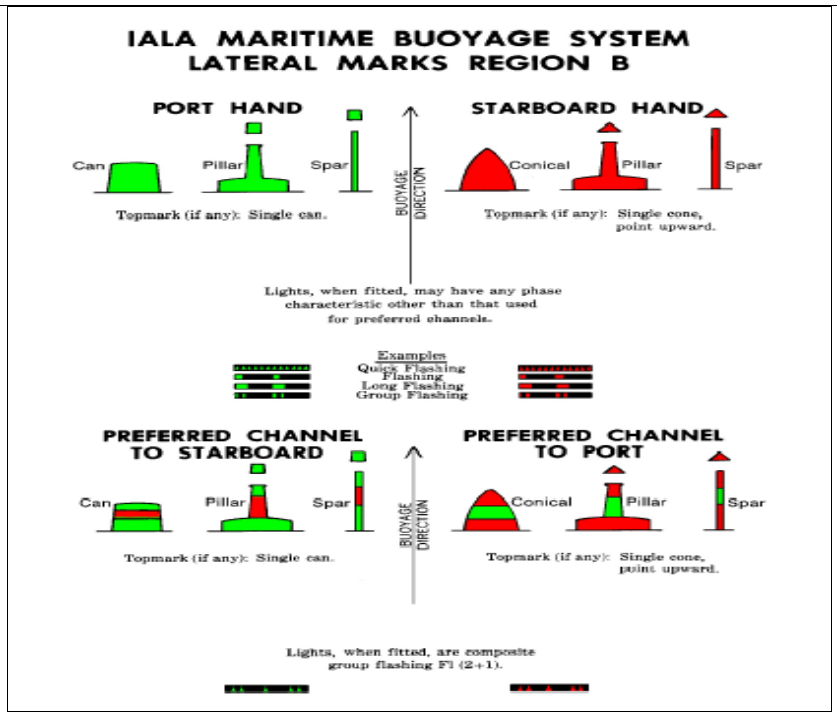


Figure 20-5 – IALA lateral beacons – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a beacon or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to beacons on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include the topmark and any equipment features.
- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Daymark; Isolated Danger Beacon; Safe Water Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon.

20.10 Cardinal beacon

IHO Definition: **CARDINAL BEACON**. A cardinal beacon is used in conjunction with the compass to indicate where the mariner may find the best navigable water. It is placed in one of the four quadrants (North, East, South and West), bounded by inter-cardinal bearings from the point marked. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Cardinal Beacon (BCNCAR)				
Primitives: Point				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
beacon shape	(BCNSHP)	1 : stake, pole, perch, post 2 : withy 3 : beacon tower 4 : lattice beacon 5 : pile beacon 6 : cairn 7 : buoyant beacon	EN	1,1
category of cardinal mark	(CATCAM)	1 : north cardinal mark 2 : east cardinal mark 3 : south cardinal mark 4 : west cardinal mark	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display	(S) EN	0,1 †

		3 : no chart display		
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,1 * (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped	(S) EN	1,1

		8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar**	Association	0,*

		Transponder Beacon, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, boy**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS97]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for beacons/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.3

20.10.1 Cardinal beacons (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Cardinal marks are used in conjunction with the compass to indicate where a Mariner may find best navigable water, taking their name from the quadrant in which they are placed in relation to the point marked. The Mariner should pass N of a North mark, E of an East mark, etc.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body of the beacon has black and yellow bands, configured with black reflecting the points of the topmark cones (for example black above yellow for north). Black double-cone topmarks are an important feature of cardinal marks and are carried wherever practicable. The points are up for a north mark, down for a south mark, apart for an east mark and together for a west mark. Lights (if fitted) are white Q or VQ, uninterrupted for the north, 3 flashes for east, 6 flashes + LFl for south and 9 flashes for west (resembling an analogue clock).

If it is required to encode a beacon having the function of a cardinal mark, it must be done using the feature **Cardinal Beacon**.

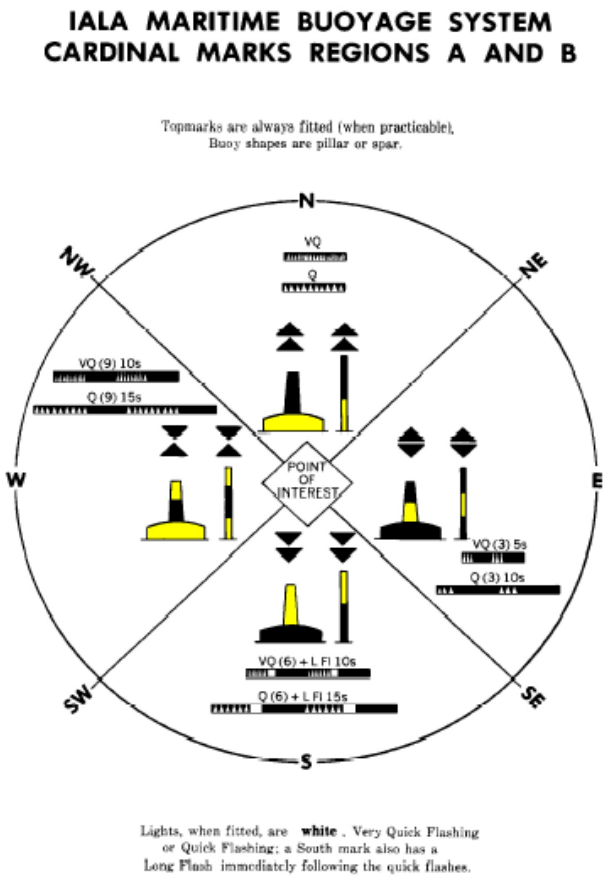


Figure 20-6 – IALA cardinal beacons – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a beacon or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to beacons on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include the topmark and any equipment features.
- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.

Distinction: Daymark; Isolated Danger Beacon; Lateral Beacon; Safe Water Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon.

20.11 Isolated danger beacon

IHO Definition: **ISOLATED DANGER BEACON**. An isolated danger beacon is a beacon erected on an isolated danger of limited extent, which has navigable water all around it. (UKHO NP735, 5th Edition).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Isolated Danger Beacon (BCNISD)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
beacon shape	(BCNSHP)	1 : stake, pole, perch, post 2 : withy 3 : beacon tower 4 : lattice beacon 5 : pile beacon 6 : cairn 7 : buoyant beacon	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	*(**TOPMAR**)*		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward)	(S) EN	1,1

		14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association**	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**,	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS98]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

	(see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**		
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for beacons/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: IQ 130.4

20.11.1 Isolated danger beacons (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Isolated danger beacons are placed on isolated dangers of limited extent with navigable water all around them.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body of an isolated danger beacon is black, with one or more red bands. Black double-sphere topmarks are an important feature of isolated danger beacons and carried wherever practicable. The light (if fitted) is white Fl(2).

If it is required to encode a beacon having the function of an isolated danger mark, it must be done using the feature **Isolated Danger Beacon**.

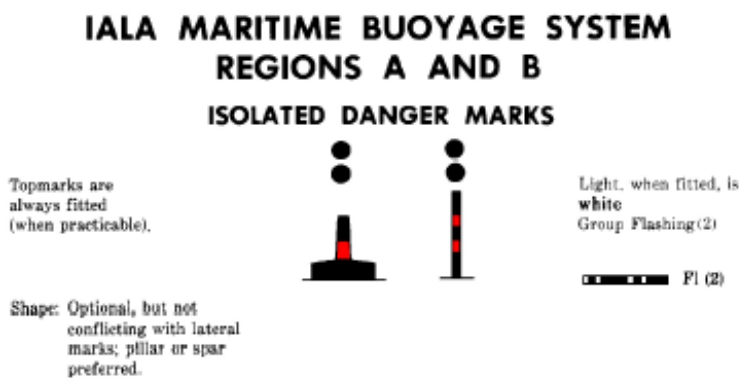


Figure 20-7 – IALA isolated danger beacons – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a beacon or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to beacons on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include the topmark and any equipment features.

- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Daymark; Lateral Beacon; Safe Water Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon;.

20.12 Safe water beacon

IHO Definition: **SAFE WATER BEACON**. A safe water beacon is used to indicate that there is navigable water around the mark. (UKHO NP735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Safe Water Beacon (BCNSAW)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
beacon shape	(BCNSHP)	1 : stake, pole, perch, post 2 : withy 3 : beacon tower 4 : lattice beacon 5 : pile beacon 6 : cairn 7 : buoyant beacon	EN	1,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	*(**TOPMAR**)*		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward)	(S) EN	1,1

		14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association**	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**,	Aggregation	0,1

Commented [TS99]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

	(see clause 25.2)	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**		
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for beacons/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.5

20.12.1 Safe water beacons (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Safe water marks are used to indicate there is safe water all around the mark. It may be used as a centre-line, mid-channel or landfall beacon, or to mark the best point of passage under a bridge.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body of the mark has red and white vertical stripes. A red spherical topmark is an important feature and carried wherever practicable. The light (if fitted) is white Oc, Iso, LFl or Mo(A) with a period of 10s.

If it is required to encode a beacon having the function of a safe water mark, it must be done using the feature **Safe Water Beacon**.

Figure 20-8 – IALA safe water beacons – Characteristics

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a beacon or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to beacons on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include the topmark and any equipment features.
- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Daymark; Isolated Danger Beacon; Lateral Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon.

20.13 Special purpose/general beacon

IHO Definition: **SPECIAL PURPOSE/GENERAL BEACON**. A special purpose beacon is primarily used to indicate an area or feature, the nature of which is apparent from reference to a chart, Sailing Directions or Notices to Mariners. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Special Purpose/General Beacon (BCNSPP)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
beacon shape	(BCNSHP)	1 : stake, pole, perch, post 2 : withy 3 : beacon tower 4 : lattice beacon 5 : pile beacon 6 : cairn 7 : buoyant beacon	EN	1,1
category of special purpose mark	(CATSPM)	1 : firing danger area mark 2 : target mark 3 : marker ship mark 4 : degaussing range mark 5 : barge mark 6 : cable mark 7 : spoil ground mark 8 : outfall mark 10 : recording mark 11 : seaplane anchorage mark 12 : recreation zone mark 14 : mooring mark 16 : leading mark 17 : measured distance mark 18 : notice mark 19 : TSS mark (Traffic Separation Scheme) 20 : anchoring prohibited mark 21 : berthing prohibited mark 22 : overtaking prohibited mark 23 : two-way traffic prohibited mark 24 : reduced wake mark 25 : speed limit mark 26 : stop mark 27 : general warning mark 28 : sound ship's siren mark 29 : restricted vertical clearance mark 30 : maximum vessel's draught mark 31 : restricted horizontal clearance mark 32 : strong current warning mark	EN	1,*

		33 : berthing permitted mark 34 : overhead power cable mark 35 : channel edge gradient mark 36 : telephone mark 37 : ferry crossing mark 39 : pipeline mark 40 : anchorage mark 41 : clearing mark 42 : control mark 43 : diving mark 44 : refuge beacon 45 : foul ground mark 46 : yachting mark 47 : heliport mark 48 : GNSS mark 49 : seaplane landing mark 50 : entry prohibited mark 51 : work in progress mark 52 : mark with unknown purpose 53 : wellhead mark 54 : channel separation mark 55 : marine farm mark 56 : artificial reef mark 57 : ice mark 58 : nature reserve mark 60 : wreck mark 61 : customs mark 62 : causeway mark 63 : wave recorder		
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display	(S) EN	0,1 †

		2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display		
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
marks navigational – system of	(MARSYS)	1 : IALA A 2 : IALA B 9 : no system 11 : CEVNI	EN	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 18 : existence doubtful	EN	0,*
topmark	***(TOPMAR)***		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board	(S) EN	1,1

		7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS**	Association	0,*

		Aid to Navigation, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**		
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS100]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for beacons/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 130.6

20.13.1 Special purpose/general beacons (see S-4 – B-461.3 and B-467)

Special beacons are used to indicate to the Mariner a special area or feature, the nature of which is usually apparent from the chart or associated publication.

To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System (see clause 18.3.1.1), the body of the beacon is yellow. The topmark (if fitted) is a yellow diagonal 'X' (St Andrew's cross). Lights (if fitted) are yellow and of any rhythm except those used for cardinal, isolated danger and safe water marks.

If it is required to encode a beacon having the function of a special purpose mark, or a beacon whose appearance or purpose is inadequately known, it must be done using the feature **Special Purpose/General Beacon**.

In the following Table, a blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the attribute. The Table contains the most common examples of coding; other coding combinations are possible.

Feature	INT1	Feature	beacon shape	category of special purpose mark
Minor not permanent mark	Q90	**Beacon *****	*1*	
Cairn	Q100	**Beacon *****	*6*	
Beacon tower	Q110	**Beacon *****	*3*	
Lattice beacon	Q111	**Beacon *****	*4*	
Leading beacon	Q120	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*16*
Beacon marking a clearing line	Q121	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*41*
Beacon marking measured distance	Q122	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*17*

Cable landing beacon	Q123	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*6*
Outfall landing beacon	Q123	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*8*
Pipeline landing beacon	Q123	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*39*
Refuge beacon	Q124	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*44*
Firing practice area beacon	Q125	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*1*
Notice board	Q126	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**		*18*
Buoyant beacon	P5	**Special Purpose/General Beacon**	*7*	

Table 20-2 – IALA special purpose beacons – Common types

Remarks:

- Non-beacon structures (for example chimneys, masts, towers) that are also used to serve the purpose of a special purpose beacon must be encoded, where required, using the feature **Landmark** (see clause 7.2).
- If it is required to encode a beacon or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to beacons on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include the topmark and any equipment features.
- If a special purpose beacon does not conform to the system of navigational marks defined by **Navigational System of Marks** (see clause 3.6), the attribute **marks navigational – system of** on the **Special Purpose/General Beacon** should be populated as *9* (no system).
- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.

20.13.2 Signs and notice boards

If it is required to encode a fixed or floating sign or notice board, it must be done using a **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature or **Special Purpose/General Buoy** feature (see clause 20.5), with attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *18* (notice mark), or using the feature **Daymark** (see clause 20.14).

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a sign or notice board that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be used, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- If it is required to encode any text shown on a notice board or sign, it must be done using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- If it is required to encode the shape and colour of a notice board, it must be done by encoding the board as a **Daymark** feature.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Daymark; Isolated Danger Beacon; Landmark; Lateral Beacon; Safe Water Beacon.

20.14 Daymark

IHO Definition: **DAYMARK**. The identifying characteristics of an aid to navigation which serve to facilitate its recognition against a daylight viewing background. On those structures that do not by themselves present an adequate viewing area to be seen at the required distance, the aid is made more visible by affixing a daymark to the structure. A daymark so affixed has a distinctive colour and shape depending on the purpose of the aid. (IHO Dictionary – S-32, Edition 5).

S-101 Geo Feature: Daymark (DAYMAR)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of special purpose mark	(CATSPM)	1 : firing danger area mark 2 : target mark 3 : marker ship mark 4 : degaussing range mark 5 : barge mark 6 : cable mark 7 : spoil ground mark 8 : outfall mark 10 : recording mark 11 : seaplane anchorage mark 12 : recreation zone mark 14 : mooring mark 15 : LANBY 16 : leading mark 17 : measured distance mark 18 : notice mark 19 : TSS mark (Traffic Separation Scheme) 20 : anchoring prohibited mark 21 : berthing prohibited mark 22 : overtaking prohibited mark 23 : two-way traffic prohibited mark 24 : reduced wake mark 25 : speed limit mark 26 : stop mark 27 : general warning mark 28 : sound ship's siren mark 29 : restricted vertical clearance mark 30 : maximum vessel's draught mark 31 : restricted horizontal clearance mark 32 : strong current warning mark 33 : berthing permitted mark 34 : overhead power cable mark 35 : channel edge gradient	EN	0,*

		mark 36 : telephone mark 37 : ferry crossing mark 39 : pipeline mark 40 : anchorage mark 41 : clearing mark 42 : control mark 43 : diving mark 44 : refuge beacon 45 : foul ground mark 46 : yachting mark 47 : heliport mark 48 : GNSS mark 49 : seaplane landing mark 50 : entry prohibited mark 51 : work in progress mark 52 : mark with unknown purpose 53 : wellhead mark 54 : channel separation mark 55 : marine farm mark 56 : artificial reef mark 57 : ice mark 58 : nature reserve mark 60 : wreck mark 61 : customs mark 62 : causeway mark 63 : wave recorder		
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
elevation	(ELEVAT)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †

height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 4 : hard surfaced 6 : wooden 7 : metal 8 : glass reinforced plastic 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12: illuminated	EN	0,*
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)	EN	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
shape information			C	0,*

language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Component of	**Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13)	**Range System**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS101]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

	25.19)			
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for daymarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 101

20.14.1 Daymarks (see S-4 – B-455.9)

If it is required to encode a daymark, it must be done using the feature **Daymark**.

The term “daymark” may also simply refer to any unlighted aid to navigation, particularly for leading marks. In North America, the term “daybeacon” is used for an unlit beacon.

In the following Table, a blank indicates that the encoder may choose a relevant value for the attribute. The Table contains the most common examples of coding; other coding combinations are possible.

Feature	INT1	Feature	category of special purpose mark	Other attributes
Coloured or white mark	Q101	**Daymark**		**nature of construction** = *9*
Coloured topmark with function of beacon	Q102.1	**Daymark**		**nature of construction** = *9*
Painted board with function of leading beacon	Q102.2	**Daymark**	*16*	**topmark shape** = *6*

Table 20-3 – Daymarks – Examples

Remarks:

- For guidance on the encoding of the attributes **elevation**, **height** and **vertical length** see clause 2.5.7. **elevation** applies only to daymarks on land. Values populated for **height** and **vertical length** must include any equipment features.
- If it is required to encode a cairn that bears the colour(s) specified by a navigational system of marks, it must be done using a beacon feature.
- If it is required to encode an aid to navigation that may be considered to be a topmark but has multiple colours that are considered important for navigation, this should be done using **Daymark**.
- If it is required to encode a daymark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10. If the colour pattern for the daymark is complex, it is strongly recommended that an image of the daymark is included, using the attribute **pictorial representation**.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Isolated Danger Beacon; Lateral Beacon; Safe Water Beacon; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Topmark.

20.15 Light float

IHO Definition: **LIGHT FLOAT**. A boat-like structure used instead of a light buoy in waters where strong streams or currents are experienced, or when a greater elevation than that of a light buoy is necessary. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Light Float (LITFLT)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal 11 : latticed	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1

date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
topmark	(***TOPMAR***)		C	0,1
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	(S) EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	(S) EN	0,1 †
topmark/daymark shape	(TOPSHP)	1 : cone (point up) 2 : cone (point down) 3 : sphere 4 : 2 spheres 5 : cylinder 6 : board 7 : x-shaped 8 : upright cross 9 : cube (point up) 10 : 2 cones (point to point) 11 : 2 cones (base to base) 12 : rhombus 13 : 2 cones (points upward) 14 : 2 cones (points downward) 15 : besom (point up) 16 : besom (point down) 17 : flag 18 : sphere over a rhombus 19 : square 20 : rectangle (horizontal) 21 : rectangle (vertical) 22 : trapezium (up) 23 : trapezium (down) 24 : triangle (point up) 25 : triangle (point down) 26 : circle 27 : two upright crosses (one over the other) 28 : T-shape 29 : triangle pointing up over	(S) EN	1,1

		a circle 30 : upright cross over a circle 31 : rhombus over a circle 32 : circle over a triangle pointing up 33 : other shape (see **shape information**)		
shape information			(S) C	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	0,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	1,1
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute/sub-attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for light floats/topmarks that have more than one value populated for the attribute/sub-attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of

Commented [TS102]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 30

20.15.1 Lights floats (see S-4 – B-462.8)

If it is required to encode a light float, it must be done using the feature **Light Float**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a light float or topmark that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- The light on a light float is a separate feature, handled as with buoys, beacons, etc.

Distinction: Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Light Vessel; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.16 Light vessel

IHO Definition: **LIGHT VESSEL**. A distinctively marked vessel anchored or moored at a charted point, to serve as an aid to navigation. By night, it displays a characteristic light(s) and is usually equipped with other devices, such as fog signal, submarine sound signal, and radio-beacon, to assist navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Light Vessel (LITVES)		
Primitives: Point		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 2 : black 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	1,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal length	(HORLEN)		RE	0,1
horizontal width	(HORWID)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
nature of construction	(NATCON)	6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1

date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar conspicuous	(CONRAD)		BO	0,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
vertical length	(VERLEN)		RE	0,1
visual prominence	(CONVIS)	1 : visually conspicuous 2 : not visually conspicuous 3 : prominent	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supports	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	Association	0,*
Component of	**Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2)	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	Aggregation	0,1
Auxiliary to	**Fairway Auxiliary** (see clause 25.8)	**Fairway**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for light vessels that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

Commented [TS103]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

Deleted: Association

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: P 6

20.16.1 Lights vessels (see S-4 – B-474.1-3)

Major floating lights are generally classed as those with a nominal range in excess of 10 nautical miles. Special circumstances, for example an isolated location, may mean that a floating light of lower range is given this status. The structure on which the light is fixed will be a light vessel, a major light float or a LANBY (Large Automatic Navigational Buoy, which is a type of superbuoy).

If it is required to encode a light vessel, it must be done using the feature **Light Vessel**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a light vessel that has more than one colour, the attributes **colour** and **colour pattern** must be encoded, according to the rules laid out in clause 2.4.10.
- The light on a light vessel is a separate feature, handled as with buoys, beacons, etc.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Light Float; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.17 Retroreflector

IHO Definition: **RETROREFLECTOR**. A means of distinguishing unlighted marks at night. Retroreflective material is secured to the mark in a particular pattern to reflect back light. (UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

S-101 Geo Feature: Retroreflector (RETRFL)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
colour	(COLOUR)	1 : white 3 : red 4 : green 5 : blue 6 : yellow 7 : grey 8 : brown 9 : amber 10 : violet 11 : orange 12 : magenta 13 : pink	EN	0,* (ordered)
colour pattern	(COLPAT)	1 : horizontal stripes 2 : vertical stripes 3 : diagonal stripes 4 : squared 5 : stripes (direction unknown) 6 : border stripe	EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 8 : private	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1

text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The attribute **colour pattern** is mandatory for retroreflectors that have more than one value populated for the attribute **colour**.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: Q 6

20.17.1 Retroreflectors (see S-4 – B-460.7)

Retroreflective material may be secured to unlit marks to aid their identification at night. The material is coloured according to one of two recognized IALA codes (“Standard” and “Comprehensive”). In any specified area only one of the codes will be used and this may be given in nautical publications.

If it is required to encode a retroreflector, it must be done using the feature **Retroreflector**.

Remarks:
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) may be used to describe letters, patterns or numerals shown on the retroreflector.
- The body carrying the retroreflector is a separate feature.

Distinction: Cardinal Beacon; Cardinal Buoy; Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy; Installation Buoy; Isolated Danger Beacon; Isolated Danger Buoy; Lateral Beacon; Lateral Buoy; Radar Reflector; Safe Water Beacon; Safe Water Buoy; Special Purpose/General Beacon; Special Purpose/General Buoy.

20.18 Radar reflector

IHO Definition: **RADAR REFLECTOR**. A device capable of, or intended for, reflecting radar signals. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radar Reflector (RADRFL)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
height	(HEIGHT)		RE	0,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 8 : private	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cable Overhead**, **Pipeline Overhead**	Composition	1,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: S 4

20.18.1 Radar reflectors (see S-4 – B-455.8 and B-465)

If it is required to encode radar reflectors on curve features (for instance overhead cables, overhead pipelines, conveyors), this must be done using the feature **Radar Reflector**.

Remarks:

- A radar reflector is usually a tetrahedron or pentagonal corner reflector to facilitate reflection towards the sender. (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Edition).
- If it is required to encode a feature which has no radar reflector, but is radar conspicuous, it must be indicated using the mandatory attribute **radar conspicuous** = *True* on the feature.
- Where the location of a radar reflector(s) is known on an overhead cable or pipeline, a **Radar Reflector**(s) should be encoded, and associated to the **Cable Overhead** or **Pipeline Overhead** using a **Structure/Equipment** feature association (see clauses 6.10, 6.11 and 25.15).
- If it is required to encode a surface or point feature which is radar conspicuous because it is fitted with a radar reflector, it must be indicated using **radar conspicuous** = *True* on the feature. A **Radar Reflector** feature must not be encoded in this case.

Distinction: Retroreflector.

20.19 Fog signal

IHO Definition: **FOG SIGNAL**. A warning signal transmitted by a vessel, or aid to navigation, during periods of low visibility. Also, the device producing such a signal. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Fog Signal (FOGSIG)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of fog signal	(CATFOG)	1 : explosive 2 : diaphone 3 : siren 4 : nautophone 5 : reed 6 : tyfon 7 : bell 8 : whistle 9 : gong 10 : horn	EN	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
signal frequency	(SIGFRQ)		IN	0,1
signal generation	(SIGGEN)	1 : automatically 2 : by wave action 3 : by hand 4 : by wind 5 : radio activated 6 : call activated	EN	0,1
signal group	(SIGGRP)		TE	0,1
signal period	(SIGPER)		RE	0,1
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound	(S) EN	1,1

		2 : eclipsed/silent		
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 15 : synchronized	EN	0,*
value of maximum range	(VALMXR)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: R 1, 10-16, 20-22

20.19.1 Fog signals (see S-4 – B-451-454)

The term “fog signal” refers to the sound emitted, not the apparatus. Fog signals are short range aids to navigation, principally used as hazard warnings. For various reasons they are unreliable as indicators of position. Their importance relative to other aids to navigation has declined but they are still considered useful for the safe navigation of vessels with very limited (or non-functioning) electronic equipment. A fog signal should be shown on ENCs at an optimum display scale on which vessels may navigate within range.

The position from which a fog signal is emitted is usually on a buoy, or close enough to a light to be treated as sounded from the same position as the light.

If it is required to encode a fog signal, it must be done using the feature **Fog Signal**.

Remarks:

- The characteristic rhythm of fog signals (other than those actuated by waves, which are irregular) may be more important than their type when Mariners are attempting to identify them. The number of sound emissions (for example blasts, strokes) and the period must therefore be encoded, where known, using the attributes **signal group**, **signal period** and **signal sequence**.
- Where required, the attribute **signal frequency** must be quoted in Hertz, for example a signal frequency of 950 MHz must be encoded as *950000000*.
- If the fog signal is radio activated, the attribute **signal generation** must be populated with value *5* (radio activated). To encode the contact information for activation of the signal, it must be done using the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1). The **Contact Details** must be associated to the **Fog Signal** feature using the association **Additional Information**.
- If the fog signal is activated by calling into a manned station, the attribute **signal generation** must be populated with value *6* (call activated). To encode the contact information for the manned station, it must be done using the information type **Contact Details**. The **Contact Details** must be associated to the **Fog Signal** feature using the association **Additional Information**.

Distinction: Signal Station Warning.

21 Geo Features – Radar, Radio

21.1 Automatic Identification System (AIS) aids to navigation (see S-4 – B-480-484)

AIS signals used as an aid to navigation may:

- actually be transmitted from a physical aid to navigation, or appear to be transmitted from a physical aid to navigation but is actually transmitted from an AIS base station (Physical AIS aid to navigation); or
- be transmitted from an AIS base station to represent an aid to navigation where a physical aid to navigation does not exist (Virtual AIS aid to navigation).

It is not required to encode AIS information on ENCs, as ENCs are intended to be used in conjunction with ECDIS as part of an Integrated Navigation System (INS), in which AIS targets are displayed when in range. However, Producing Authorities may wish to indicate the presence of a physical or virtual AIS aid to navigation to aid in the route planning process or for use in ECS or other navigation systems.

21.2 Physical AIS aid to navigation

IHO Definition: **PHYSICAL AIS AID TO NAVIGATION**. An Automatic Identification System (AIS) message 21 transmitted from a physical Aid to Navigation, or transmitted from an AIS station for an Aid to Navigation which physically exists. (Adapted from IALA Recommendation A-126).

S-101 Geo Feature: Physical AIS Aid to Navigation

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
estimated range of transmission	(ESTRNG)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
MMSI code		Unique 9 digit code	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary	EN	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**,	Composition	0,1

		Dolphin, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**		
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: S 17

21.2.1 Physical Automatic Identification System (AIS) aids to navigation (see S-4 – B-480-484)

If it is required to encode a physical AIS aid to navigation, it must be done using the feature **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**.

Remarks:

- Physical AIS aids to navigation must be encoded, where required, using the geometry of the physical aid to navigation from which the AIS signal is, or appears to be, transmitted. If it is required to encode the actual location from which the signal is transmitted for a physical AIS aid to navigation where the signal is transmitted from another location, it must be done using a **Radio Station** feature (see clause 21.4), with attribute **category of radio station** = *16* (AIS base station).
- The unique Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) code for the physical AIS aid to navigation should be encoded, where known, using the attribute **MMSI code**.

Distinction: Radar Station; Radio Station; Radio Calling-In Point; Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation.

21.3 Virtual AIS aid to navigation

IHO Definition: **VIRTUAL AIS AID TO NAVIGATION**. An Automatic Identification System (AIS) message 21 transmitted from an AIS station to simulate on navigation systems an Aid to Navigation which does not physically exist. (Adapted from IALA Recommendation A-126).

S-101 Geo Feature: Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation *(NEWOBJ)*

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
estimated range of transmission	(ESTRNG)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
MMSI code		Unique 9 digit code	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary	EN	0,1
virtual AIS aid to navigation type		1 : north cardinal 2 : east cardinal 3 : south cardinal 4 : west cardinal 5 : port lateral (IALA A) 6 : starboard lateral (IALA A) 7 : port lateral (IALA B) 8 : starboard lateral (IALA B) 9 : isolated danger 10 : safe water 11 : special purpose 12 : emergency wreck marking	EN	1,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: S 18

21.3.1 Virtual Automatic Identification System (AIS) aids to navigation (see S-4 – B-480-484)

If it is required to encode a virtual AIS aid to navigation, it must be done using the feature **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**.

Remarks:

- Virtual AIS aids to navigation should only be encoded where it is known that the Virtual aid is intended to be permanent, or deployed for a specified fixed period. Where it is known that a Virtual AIS aid to navigation is moved or withdrawn on a regular basis and/or at short notice, such that implementing these changes through the application of ENC Updates is impractical, the Virtual aid should not be encoded.
- If the virtual AIS aid to navigation is intended to serve a purpose other than the types defined in attribute **virtual AIS aid to navigation type**, it should be encoded using **virtual AIS aid to navigation type** = *11* (special purpose), and the purpose encoded using the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **text**.
- The unique Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) code for the virtual AIS aid to navigation should b encoded, where known, using the attribute **MMSI code**.

Distinction: Physical AIS Aid to Navigation; Radar Station; Radio Station; Radio Calling-In Point.

Commented [JW104]: For attribute **virtual AIS aid to navigation type**, there may be other types of AtoNs (current list only includes IALA purposes).
IHO Sec: Suggest that a similar approach is taken to that of topmark, with new value for **virtual AIS aid to navigation type** of other purpose (see **purpose information**) and new complex attribute **purpose information**.
Have included this text as an interim solution.

21.4 Radio station

IHO Definition: **RADIO STATION**. A place equipped to transmit radio waves. Such a station may be either stationary or mobile, and may also be provided with a radio receiver. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Radio Station (RDOSTA)

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
call sign	(CALSGN)		TE	0,1
category of radio station	(CATROS)	5 : radio direction-finding station 10 : differential GNSS 11 : Toran 14 : Chaika 19 : radio telephone station 20 : AIS base station	EN	0,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
estimated range of transmission	(ESTRNG)		RE	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
frequency pair			C	0,1
frequency shore station receives			(S) IN	0,1
frequency shore station transmits	(SIGFRQ)		(S) IN	1,1
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: S 10-16

21.4.1 Radio stations (see S-4 – B-480-484)

Transmissions from radio stations may provide Mariners with a line of position. Most radio position fixing systems require Radio Direction Finding (RDF) equipment to determine the bearing of the transmitting device; such equipment is generally no longer fitted on vessels. The exception is “emergency use only” VHF-based direction finding services (which do not use RDF equipment). Consequently, the following radio position-fixing stations are now obsolete and there is no longer any value in encoding them on ENCs:

- Circular (non-directional) (RC), directional (RD) and rotating pattern (RW) marine radiobeacons;
- Consol beacons (Consol);
- Aeronautical radiobeacons (Aero RC);
- Radio direction-finding stations (except VHF-based emergency stations) (RG);
- Coast Radio Stations providing ‘QTG’ service (R).

The feature “radio station” is used to encode the point of transmission of the signal.

If it is required to encode a radio station, it must be done using the feature **Radio Station**.

Remarks:

- The **Radio Station** must only be used to encode the technical equipment itself, independent of the building or structure in which it is installed. If it is required to encode the building or structure (for example mast, tower, radar dome), it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**). There is no requirement to establish a Structure/Equipment association between the **Radio Station** feature and the structure in which it is installed.
- Further information (for example transmission characteristic) may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).
- If it is required to encode a DGPS station, it must be done using **Radio Station**, with attribute **category of radio station** = *10* (Differential GNSS).
- Where required, the complex attribute **frequency pair**, sub-attributes **frequency shore station receives** and **frequency shore station transmits**, must be quoted in Hertz, for example a signal frequency of 950

MHz must be encoded as *950000000*.

21.4.2 Radio direction-finding stations (see S-4 – B-483)

If it is required to encode a radio direction-finding station, it must be done using a **Radio Station** feature, with attribute **category of radio station** = *5* (radio direction-finding station). The identification signal may be encoded using the attribute **call sign**.

Remarks:

- Direction–finding is now only provided as an emergency service by VHF.

Distinction: Physical AIS Aid to Navigation; Radar Station; Radio Calling-In Point; Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation.

21.5 Radar transponder beacon

IHO Definition: **RADAR TRANSPONDER BEACON**. A transponder beacon transmitting a coded signal on radar frequency, permitting an interrogating craft to determine the bearing and range of the transponder. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Radar Transponder Beacon (RTPBCN)				
Primitives: Point				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of radar transponder beacon	(CATRTB)	1 : ramark, radar beacon transmitting continuously 2 : racon, radar transponder beacon 3 : leading racon/radar transponder beacon	EN	1,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
interoperability identifier		MRN (see clause 27.113)	TE	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
radar wave length	*(RADWAL)*		C	0,2
radar band			(S) TE	1,1
wave length value			(S) RE	1,1
sector limit			C	0,1
sector limit one	*(SECTR1)*		(S) C	1,1
sector bearing		**sector limit one/sector bearing ≠ sector limit two/sector bearing** (*0 = 360*)	(S) RE	1,1
sector line length			(S) RE	0,1
sector limit two	*(SECTR2)*		(S) C	1,1
sector bearing		**sector limit two/sector bearing ≠ sector limit one/sector bearing** (*0 =*	(S) RE	1,1

		360)		
sector line length			(S) RE	0,1
signal group	(SIGGRP)		TE	0,1
signal sequence	*(SIGSEQ)*		C	0,* (ordered)
signal duration			(S) RE	1,1
signal status		1 : lit/sound 2 : eclipsed/silent	(S) EN	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private	EN	0,*
value of maximum range	(VALMXR)		RE	0,1
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides	**Additional Information** (see clause	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

Information	25.1)			

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: S 2-3

21.5.1 Radar beacons (see S-4 – B-486)

Radar beacons are transmitters operating in the marine radar frequency band. The signals produce a characteristic line on a vessel's radar display enabling the Mariner to determine their position with greater certainty than would be possible by means of a normal radar display alone.

If it is required to encode a radar beacon, it must be done using the feature **Radar Transponder Beacon**.

Remarks:

- The **Radar Transponder Beacon** must only be used to encode the technical equipment itself, independent of the building or structure in which it is installed. If it is required to encode the building or structure (for example mast, tower, radar dome), it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).
- The attribute **signal group** is used to encode Morse identification letter(s) for the radar beacon, where known.
- Leading racons are established such that, when their bearing lines are coincident on a vessel's radar display, the bearing serves to indicate the track to be followed. If it is required to encode the bearing line and the recommended track for leading racons, it must be done as described in clause 15.1. Where the bearing line coincides with a leading line defined by lights or other visual features making up a range system, navigation lines and recommended tracks must not be duplicated. The features making up the range system should be associated with a feature **Range System** (see clause 15.6) using the association **Range System Aggregation** (see clause 25.13). NOTE: All features comprising a range system must have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).
- If, for some reason, the radar transponder beacon signal is obscured between certain bearings, this information should be encoded using the complex attribute **sector limit** to encode the "visible" sector, as for lights (see clause 19.3.1.1).
- The sweep period may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).

Distinction: Radar Line; Radar Range; Radar Station.

22 Geo Features – Services

22.1 Pilot boarding place

IHO Definition: **PILOT BOARDING PLACE.** A location offshore where a pilot may board a vessel in preparation to piloting it through local waters. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

S-101 Geo Feature: Pilot Boarding Place (PILBOP)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of pilot boarding place	(CATPIL)	1 : boarding by pilot-cruising vessel 2 : boarding by helicopter 3 : pilot comes out from shore	EN	0,1
category of preference		1 : primary 2 : alternate	EN	0,1
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
destination			TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
pilot movement		1 : embarkation 2 : disembarkation 3 : pilot change	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 9 : mandatory 16 : watched 17 : unwatched 28 : buoyed	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1

Commented [JW105]: Modelling consistency: Attribute **communication channel** has been included in S-101 (not a valid attribute for CGUSTA in S-57). Suggest that this should be modelled so as to require an associated instance of **Contact Details**. IHO Sec: Given the proposed change to re-introduce complex attribute **information** to the individual geo features, suggest that a similar appoach may be taken for **communication channel**? If so, will need to revisit other features that formerly had communication channel as an allowable attribute.

information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Component of	**Pilotage District Association** (see clause 25.11)	**Pilotage District**	Aggregation	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: T 1.1-4

22.1.1 Pilot boarding places (see S-4 – B-491.1-2)

For a pilot boarding place, the pilot vessel may either cruise in the area or come out on request. Off some large ports pilots on outgoing ships may be disembarked at a different location. Pilots may board from a helicopter; it is then less important for a ship to reach the exact position of the boarding place but an approximate position should still be encoded. Some pilot stations are used solely for long-distance (deep-sea) pilots. Pilots may be in constant attendance, in regular attendance at certain limited times, or available by previous arrangement only. The primary purpose of encoded pilotage information is to show the position of the facility. Because of the many variations in the service provided, the main source of information on pilotage must be in an associated publication or product.

If it is required to encode a pilot boarding place, it must be done using the feature **Pilot Boarding Place**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode the ship to shore or shore to ship contact information, it must be done using the attribute **communication channel**; or the information type **Contact Details** (see clause 24.1). The **Contact Details** must be associated to the **Pilot Boarding Place** feature using the association **Additional Information**.
- If it is required to encode the area in which pilotage regulations apply, it should be done using the feature **Pilotage District** (see clause 16.26). The relationship between the pilotage district and any associated pilot boarding places should be encoded using the feature association **Pilotage District Association** (see clause 25.11).

Deleted: 25

22.1.2 Pilot stations ashore (see S-4 – B-491.4)

If it is required to encode a pilot station ashore, it must be done using a **Building** or **Landmark** feature, with attribute **function** = *11* (pilot office) or *12* (pilot lookout).

Distinction: Pilotage District.

22.2 Vessel traffic service

IHO Definition: **VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE**. The area of any service implemented by a relevant authority primarily designed to improve safety and efficiency of traffic flow and the protection of the environment. It may range from simple information messages, to extensive organisation of the traffic involving national or regional schemes. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Vessel Traffic Service Area *(ADMARE)*

Primitives: Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

22.2.1 Vessel traffic service area

If it is required to encode an area within which a competent authority provides services to vessels as part of a Vessel Traffic Service (VTS), it must be done using the feature **Vessel Traffic Service Area**. The area should

be captured based on the limits of the VTS or VTS sector.

Remarks:

- Separate **Vessel Traffic Service Area** features should be captured for individual VTS sectors where appropriate.

Distinction: Administration Area; Custom Zone.

22.3 Coast Guard station

IHO Definition: **COAST GUARD STATION.** A station at which a visual/radio/radar marine watch is kept either continuously or at certain times only. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).		
S-101 Geo Feature: Coast Guard Station (CGUSTA)		
Primitives: Point, Surface		
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
is MRCC			BO	0,1
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1

Commented [TS106]: Modelling consistency: Attribute **communication channel** has been included in S-101 (not a valid attribute for CGUSTA in S-57). Suggest that this should be modelled so as to require an associated instance of **Contact Details**.
IHO Sec: Given the proposed change to re-introduce complex attribute **information** to the individual geo features, suggest that a similar appoach may be taken for **communication channel**? If so, will need to revisit other features that formerly had communication channel as an allowable attribute.

Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: T 10, 11

22.3.1 Coast Guard stations (see S-4 – B-492)

The organisation of coast-watching and rescue services differs from country to country. For charting purposes it is assumed that two distinct functions can be recognised, even though they may be parts of the same organisation co-ordinating and effecting life saving and performing other services. Coast Guard stations are stations at which a watch is kept either continuously, or at certain times only. They are sited so as to have a commanding view, are often associated with signal stations, and are visually prominent. They are also referred to as watch-keeping stations.

Coast Guard stations are located along the coasts of most maritime nations. Their primary purpose in former days was to enforce customs regulations, observe the movements of ships and to watch for signs of distress at sea. These functions are largely superseded by modern telecommunications and Search & Rescue (SAR) arrangements, coordinated by regional Maritime Rescue and Coordination Centres (MRCC).

If it is required to encode a Coast Guard station, it must be done using the feature **Coast Guard Station**.

Remarks:

- Many modern Coast Guard services no longer maintain visual watch from fixed stations. However, because stations were usually situated so as to have a commanding view and may therefore be visually prominent and make good fixing marks, the buildings may still be encoded as **Building** or **Landmark**.
- The **Coast Guard Station** must only be used to describe the function of the Coast Guard station, independent of the building or structure itself. If it is required to encode the building or structure in which the Coast Guard station operates, it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).
- Maritime Rescue and Coordination Centres (MRCC) are part of a constantly manned communications watch system. If it is required to encode a MRCC, it should be done using **Coast Guard Station**, with the Boolean attribute **is MRCC** = *True*. The name of the station may be populated using the complex attribute **feature name** (sub-attribute **name**), for example *MRCC Swansea*.
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Building; Rescue Station.

22.4 Warning signal station

IHO Definition: **WARNING SIGNAL STATION**. A warning signal station is a place on shore from which warning signals are made to ships at sea. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32 and Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2012).

S-101 Geo Feature: Signal Station Warning (SISTAW)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of signal station, warning	(CATSIW)	1 : danger 2 : maritime obstruction 3 : cable 4 : military practice 5 : distress 6 : weather 7 : storm 8 : ice warning 9 : time 10 : tide 11 : tidal stream 12 : tide gauge 13 : tide scale 14 : diving 15 : water level gauge	EN	1,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched	EN	0,*

		17 : unwatched		
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: T 20, 26, 28-36

22.4.1 Warning signal stations (see S-4 – B-494; B-496-7)

Signal stations communicating visually have declined in importance. They are encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data not only for their main role of signalling information and instructions but also as a form of landmark. The signals generally exhibit lights by day and night but may display shapes or flags by day.

If it is required to encode a warning signal station, it must be done using the feature **Signal Station Warning**.

Remarks:

- The **Signal Station Warning** must only be used to describe the function of the signal station, independent of the building or structure itself. If it is required to encode the building or structure housing the service, it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Signal Station Traffic.

22.5 Traffic signal station

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SIGNAL STATION**. A traffic signal station is a place on shore from which signals are made to regulate the movement of traffic. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32 and S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.155, November 2000).				
S-101 Geo Feature: Signal Station Traffic (SISTAT)				
Primitives: Point, Surface				
Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*		
S-101 Attribute	**S-57 Acronym**	**Allowable Encoding Value**	**Type**	**Multiplicity**
category of signal station, traffic	(CATSIT)	1 : port control 2 : port entry and departure 3 : International Port Traffic 4 : berthing signal station 5 : dock 6 : lock 7 : flood barrage station 8 : bridge passage 9 : dredging 10 : traffic control light	EN	1,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 12 : illuminated 14 : public 15 : synchronized 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Supported by	**Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15)	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	Composition	0,1
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: T 21-25.2

22.5.1 Traffic signal stations (see S-4 – B-494-5)

Signal stations communicating visually have declined in importance. They are encoded on the largest optimum display scale ENC data not only for their main role of signalling information and instructions but also as a form of landmark. The signals generally exhibit lights by day and night but may display shapes or flags by day.

The nature of traffic signals varies from country to country and even from port to port. For charting purposes traffic signals can be considered to include, for instance:

- Port entry and departure signals;
- Lock, docking and berthing signals;
- Bridge signals;

- International traffic signals.

If it is required to encode a traffic signal station, it must be done using the feature **Signal Station Traffic**.

Remarks:

- If it is required to encode a bridge light marking the centre of a navigable span, it must be done using a light feature (see Section 19).
- The **Signal Station Traffic** must only be used to describe the function of the signal station, independent of the building or structure itself. If it is required to encode the building or structure housing the service, it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Signal Station Warning.

22.6 Rescue station

IHO Definition: **RESCUE STATION**. A place where equipment for saving life at sea is maintained. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

S-101 Geo Feature: Rescue Station (RSCSTA)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of rescue station	(CATRSC)	1 : rescue station with lifeboat 2 : rescue station with rocket 4 : refuge for shipwrecked mariners 5 : refuge for intertidal area walkers 6 : lifeboat lying at a mooring 7 : aid radio station 8 : first aid equipment	EN	0,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 7 : temporary 8 : private 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Commented [TS107]: Modelling consistency: Attribute **communication channel** has been included in S-101 (not a valid attribute for CGUSTA in S-57). Suggest that this should be modelled so as to require an associated instance of **Contact Details**.
IHO Sec: Given the proposed change to re-introduce complex attribute **information** to the individual geo features, suggest that a similar appoach may be taken for **communication channel**? If so, will need to revisit other features that formerly had communication channel as an allowable attribute.

	(NTXTDS)			
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: T 12-14

22.6.1 Rescue station (see S-4 – B-490 and B-493)

The organisation of coast-watching and rescue services differs from country to country. For charting purposes it is assumed that these two distinct functions can be recognised individually, even though they may be parts of the same organisation co-ordinating and effecting life saving and performing other services.

Rescue stations are the places at which life saving equipment is held, especially lifeboats (usually in relatively sheltered positions, near sea level). Rescue stations are not necessarily visually prominent. The range of equipment used in rescue is wide, for example search and rescue helicopters; fast, long-distance lifeboats; inflatable inshore lifeboats.

If it is required to encode a rescue station, it must be done using the feature **Rescue Station**.

Remarks:

- The **Rescue Station** must only be used to describe the function of the rescue station, independent of the building or structure itself. If it is required to encode the building or structure housing the service, it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**, **Landmark**).
- If it is required to encode a refuge beacon, it must be done using a **Special Purpose/General Beacon** feature, with attribute **category of special purpose mark** = *44* (refuge beacon), not by using **Rescue Station**.
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated, using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Building; Coast Guard Station; Special Purpose/General Beacon.

22.7 Harbour facility

IHO Definition: **HARBOUR FACILITY**. A Harbour installation with a service or commercial operation of public interest. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1,Page 1.81, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Harbour Facility (HRBFAC)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of harbour facility	(CATHAF)	1 : RoRo-terminal 3 : ferry terminal 4 : fishing harbour 5 : yacht harbour/marina 6 : naval base 7 : tanker terminal 8 : passenger terminal 9 : shipyard 10 : container terminal 11 : bulk terminal 12 : ship lift 13 : straddle carrier 14 : service harbour 15 : pilotage service	EN	1,*
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
condition	(CONDTN)	1 : under construction 2 : ruined 3 : under reclamation 5 : planned construction	EN	0,1
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
nature of construction	(NATCON)	1 : masonry 2 : concreted 3 : loose boulders 6 : wooden 7 : metal	EN	0,*
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
product	(PRODCT)	1 : oil 2 : gas	EN	0,1

Commented [JW108]: Modelling consistency: Attribute **communication channel** has been included in S-101 (not a valid attribute for CGUSTA in S-57). Suggest that this should be modelled so as to require an associated instance of **Contact Details**.
IHO Sec: Given the proposed change to re-introduce complex attribute **information** to the individual geo features, suggest that a similar appoach may be taken for **communication channel**? If so, will need to revisit other features that formerly had communication channel as an allowable attribute.

		3 : water 4 : stone 5 : coal 6 : ore 7 : chemicals 8 : drinking water 9 : milk 10 : bauxite 11 : coke 12 : iron ingots 13 : salt 14 : sand 15 : timber 16 : sawdust/wood chips 17 : scrap metal 18 : liquefied natural gas 19 : liquefied petroleum gas 20 : wine 21 : cement 22 : grain 25 : clay		
reported date	*(SORDAT)*	See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,1
restriction	(RESTRN)	1 : anchoring prohibited 2 : anchoring restricted 3 : fishing prohibited 4 : fishing restricted 5 : trawling prohibited 6 : trawling restricted 8 : entry restricted 9 : dredging prohibited 10 : dredging restricted 11 : diving prohibited 12 : diving restricted 13 : no wake 15 : construction prohibited 16 : discharging prohibited 17 : discharging restricted 18 : industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited 19 : industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted 20 : drilling prohibited 21 : drilling restricted 23 : cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited 24 : dragging prohibited 27 : speed restricted	EN	0,*
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 12 : illuminated 13 : historic 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*

file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: F 10, 11.1, 50

22.7.1 Harbour facilities (see S-4 – B-320 and B-321.5)

If it is required to encode a harbour facility, it must be done using the feature **Harbour Facility**.

Remarks:

- Fishing harbours or ports are equipped to provide for the particular needs of fishing boats. Boat harbours and marinas are areas of sheltered water, generally within harbours or ports, set aside for the use of small craft, usually with moorings, buoys, and, in the case of marinas, berthing facilities.
- Depending on the navigational purpose, harbour facilities are defined by: an area including docks, basins, and dockside equipment; or a point.
- If it is required to encode a terminal with facilities to load/unload or store shipping containers, this should be done using **Harbour Facility** with attribute **category of harbour facility** = *10* (container terminal).
- If it is required to encode a covered terminal into which ships can go, this should be done using **Harbour Facility** with the purpose of the terminal defined by **category of harbour facility**. The roof of the terminal may be encoded using the attribute **nature of construction**, and the maximum height and/or draught of vessels able to use the terminal encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). Alternatively, the roofed structure may be encoded using a **Building** feature (see clause 6.2).
- Each VHF-channel should be indicated using the attribute **communication channel** (see clause 27.76). Alternately, if the same VHF-channel(s) apply to multiple features in the dataset, this should be indicated through an associated instance of the information type **Contact Details**, attribute **communication channel** (see clause 24.1).

Distinction: Small Craft Facility.

Feature/Feature associations: **Updated Information**; **Text Association**

Feature/Information associations: **Additional Information**

Spatial/Information association: **Spatial Association**

22.8 Small craft facility

IHO Definition: **SMALL CRAFT FACILITY**. A place at which a service generally of interest to small craft or pleasure boats is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1,Page 1.162, November 2000).

S-101 Geo Feature: Small Craft Facility (SMCFAC)

Primitives: Point, Surface

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
category of small craft facility	(CATSCF)	1 : visitors berth 2 : nautical club 3 : boat hoist 4 : sailmaker 5 : boatyard 6 : public inn 7 : restaurant 8 : chandler 9 : provisions 10 : doctor 11 : pharmacy 12 : water tap 13 : fuel station 14 : electricity outlet 15 : bottle gas 16 : showers 17 : launderette 18 : public toilets 19 : post box 20 : public telephone 21 : refuse bin 22 : car park 23 : parking for boats and trailers 24 : caravan site 25 : camping site 26 : sewage pump-out station 27 : emergency telephone 28 : landing/launching place for boats 30 : scrubbing berth 31 : picnic area 32 : mechanics workshop 33 : guard and/or security service	EN	1,*
feature name		See clause 2.5.8	C	0,*
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
name	*(OBJNAM)* *(NOBJNM)*		(S) TE	1,1
name usage		1 : default name display 2 : alternate name display 3 : no chart display	(S) EN	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*

date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
status	(STATUS)	1 : permanent 2 : occasional 3 : recommended 4 : not in use 5 : periodic/intermittent 6 : reserved 7 : temporary 8 : private 9 : mandatory 12 : illuminated 14 : public 16 : watched 17 : unwatched	EN	0,*
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Updates	**Updated Information** (see clause 25.19)	**Update Information**	Association	0,1
Positions	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	**Text Placement**	Association	0,1
Provides Information	**Additional Information** (see clause 25.1)	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	Association	0,1

† The sub-attribute **name usage** may be mandatory for certain encoding combinations for instances of complex attribute **feature name**. See clause 2.5.8.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference: E 37.1-2; F 11.3, 19.2; Q 45

22.8.1 Small craft facilities (see S-4 – B-320.1-2)

If it is required to encode a small craft facility, it must be done using the feature **Small Craft Facility**.

Remarks:

- The **Small Craft Facility** must only be used to encode the function. In addition, if it is required to encode a physical feature (for example building), it must be done using an appropriate feature (for example **Building**).
- Due to possible ECDIS display issues **Small Craft Facility** features of type surface should only be encoded on **Land Area**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Hulk** or **Pontoon** features of type surface.

Distinction: Building; Harbour Facility; Shoreline Construction.

23 Cartographic Features

23.1 Text placement

Commented [TS109]: See S-101 Documentation and FC GitHub issue #7.

IHO Definition: **TEXT PLACEMENT**. The Text Placement feature is used in association with the Feature Name attribute or a light description to optimize text positioning in ECDIS.

S-101 Cartographic Feature: Text Placement

Primitives: Point

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
text			TE	0,1 †
text offset bearing			IN	1,1
text offset distance			IN	1,1
text rotation			BO	0,1
text type		1 : name 2 : light characteristic	EN	0,1 †
scale minimum	(SCAMIN)	See clause 2.5.9	IN	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Identifies	**Text Association** (see clause 25.16).	See next row	Composition	0,1

Associated to: Administration Area, **Airport/Airfield**, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, **Berth**, **Bollard**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Built-Up Area**, **Cable Area**, **Cable Overhead**, **Cable Submarine**, **Canal**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cargo Transhipment Area**, **Causeway**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Coastline**, **Collision Regulations Limit**, **Continental Shelf Area**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Current – Non-Gravitational**, **Dam**, **Daymark**, **Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Distance Mark**, **Dock Area**, **Dolphin**, **Dredged Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dyke**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fairway**, **Fairway System**, **Fence/Wall**, **Ferry Route**, **Fishery Zone**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fishing Ground**, **Floating Dock**, **Fog Signal**, **Fortified Structure**, **Foul Ground**, **Free Port Area**, **Gate**, **Gridiron**, **Harbour Area (Administrative)**, **Harbour Facility**, **Helipad**, **Hulk**, **Ice Area**, **Information Area**, **Installation Buoy**, **Island Group**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lake**, **Land Area**, **Land Elevation**, **Land Region**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Float**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Light Vessel**, **Local Magnetic Anomaly**, **Lock Basin**, **Log Pond**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Marine Pollution Regulations Area**, **Military Practice Area**, **Mooring Area**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Mooring Trot**, **Obstruction**, **Offshore Platform**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Oil Barrier**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Pile**, **Pilot Boarding Place**, **Pilotage District**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Pontoon**, **Precautionary Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Radar Line**, **Radar Range**, **Radar Station**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Radio Station**, **Railway**, **Range System**, **Rapids**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Rescue Station**, **Restricted Area**, **River**, **Road**, **Runway**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Seabed Area**, **Seagrass**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**, **Silo/Tank**, **Slope Topline**, **Sloping Ground**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Sounding**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Spring**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Tidal Stream Panel Data**, **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**, **Tideway**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Tunnel**, **Two-Way Route**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Vegetation**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**

† Only one of the attributes **text** or **text type** must be populated for each instance of **Text Placement**.

INT 1 Reference:

23.1.1 Text placement

If it is required to place text on an ENC to improve clarity and readability of display, it must be done using the cartographic feature **Text Placement**. In navigationally relevant areas such as shipping channels and dredged areas, where default ECDIS text positioning may cover other features, Data Producers should consider using **Text Placement**. The **Text Placement** feature must be associated with the relevant geo feature using the composition **Text Association** (see clause 25.16).

NOTE: Where an associated instance of **Text Placement** has not been related to a feature having the attribute **name** and/or the attributes associated with the characteristics of a light populated, the text will be positioned in the ECDIS display in accordance with the default position for text strings defined in the Portrayal Catalogue.

Remarks:

- The **Text Placement** cartographic feature is used by the ECDIS to optionally position text in ECDIS, which has been populated using an attribute(s) for the associated feature. The attribute(s) is identified by populating the attribute **text type**. Alternatively, the text to be displayed may be encoded using the attribute **text**. Where **text** is encoded, this will override any populated instance of the complex attribute **feature name** populated on the associated geo feature (see clause 2.5.8) for ECDIS text display. Encoders should therefore carefully assess the impact of the population of the **text** attribute on the end User, particularly where the name of a feature is encoded in multiple languages. Similarly, population of **text** will override the default display for the populated attributes associated with the characteristics of a light.
- The attributes **text offset bearing** and **text offset distance** define the bearing (related to true north) and distance of the anchor point of the text, in millimetres in the ECDIS display, to be displayed from the associated feature. The values populated for these attributes must be determined based on the desired position of the text at the optimum display scale of the ENC data. Note that the attribute **text offset bearing** does not rotate the text itself. Displayed text will always appear horizontal regardless of the display mode set by the mariner (north-up or course-up), unless the Boolean attribute **text rotation** is set to *True*.
- The Boolean attribute **text rotation**, when populated as *True*, will rotate the text on the ECDIS display to align along the bearing populated for the attribute **text offset bearing**.
- Data Producers are advised to determine the best positioning for text at the optimum display scale for the data; and based on “north-up” ECDIS display. While **text offset bearing**, **text offset distance** and **text rotation** will position the text at the same location relative to the associated feature at all Mariner’s Selected Viewing Scales, Data Producers are advised that, as the Mariner zooms out to smaller viewing scales, text may unintentionally cover other charted detail. Therefore, as an alternative, Data Producers may experiment with positioning the text so that it clears the majority of other charted features at the smallest scale at which the text is intended to be displayed, and populating the attribute **scale minimum** accordingly (see bullet below). Data Producers are also advised that optimum results may not be achieved when the Mariner has set the display setting for the ECDIS to screen rotations other than “north-up”.
- The attribute **scale minimum** may be used to determine a scale at which the text string is no longer visible in the ECDIS when scale minimum functionality is enabled. Where populated, the value for **scale minimum** on **Text Placement** must not be set to a smaller scale value than the value populated for the associated feature.
- **Text Placement** should normally be associated with features of type point, but may be used for features of type curve and surface.

Distinction:

24 Information types

24.1 Contact details

IHO Definition: **CONTACT DETAILS**. Information on how to reach a person or organisation by postal, internet, telephone, telex and radio systems.

S-101 Information Type: Contact Details

Primitives: None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
call sign	(CALSGN)		TE	0,1
communication channel	(COMCHA)		TE	0,*
contact instructions	*(INFORM)*		TE	0,1
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
frequency pair			C	0,*
frequency shore station receives			(S) IN	0,1
frequency shore station transmits	(SIGFRQ)		(S) IN	0,1
MMSI code		Unique 9 digit code	TE	0,1
online resource			C	0,*
headline			(S) TE	0,1
linkage		ISO 19115:2014	(S) TE	1,1
name of resource		ISO 19115:2014	(S) TE	0,1
telecommunications			C	0,*
contact instructions			(S) TE	0,1
telecommunication identifier			(S) TE	1,1
telecommunication service		1 : voice 2 : facsimile 3 : SMS 4 : data 5 : streamed data 6 : telex 7 : telegraph 8 : email	(S) EN	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
	Additional Information (see clause 25.1).	See next row	Association	0,*

Associated to: Administration Area, **Airport/Airfield**, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Berth**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Cable Area**, **Cable Overhead**, **Cable Submarine**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Daymark**, **Dock Area**, **Dolphin**, **Dry Dock**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**,

Floating Dock, **Fog Signal**, **Gate**, **Harbour Area (Administrative)**, **Harbour Facility**, **Helipad**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Land Region**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light All Around**, **Light Float**, **Light Sectored**, **Light Vessel**, **Lock Basin**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Mooring Area**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Mooring Trot**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Pilot Boarding Place**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Railway**, **Rescue Station**, **Runway**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Silo/Tank**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Tunnel**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Wind Turbine**
† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated. INT 1 Reference: **24.1.1 Contact details** If it is required to encode the contact information (communication channel, call sign, radio frequency etc.), it must be done using the information type **Contact Details**. Each instance of **Contact Details** must be associated to the feature(s) to which the information applies using the association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1). Remarks: • The frequency at which vessels receive signals must be populated, where required, using complex attribute **frequency pair**, sub-attribute **frequency shore station transmits**. The frequency at which vessels send signals to shore must be populated, where required, using complex attribute **frequency pair**, sub-attribute **frequency shore station receives**. • Where required, the values populated within the complex attribute **frequency pair** must be quoted in Hertz, for example a signal frequency of 950 MHz must be encoded as *950000000*. Distinction: Nautical Information.

24.2 Service hours

IHO Definition: **SERVICE HOURS**. The time when a service is available and known exceptions.

S-101 Information Type: Service Hours

Primitives: None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
schedule by day of week			C	1,*
category of schedule		1 : normal operation 2 : closure 3 : unmanned operation	(S) EN	0,1
time intervals by day of week			(S) C	1,*
day of week		1 : Sunday 2 : Monday 3 : Tuesday 4 : Wednesday 5 : Thursday 6 : Friday 7 : Saturday	(S) EN	0,7 (ordered) †
day of week is range			(S) BO	0,1
time of day end			(S) TI	0,* (ordered) †
time of day start			(S) TI	0,* (ordered) †
information			C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
	Additional Information (see clause 25.1).	See next row	Association	0,*

Associated to: Airport/Airfield, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Berth**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard**

Station, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Dock Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Floating Dock**, **Gate**, **Helipad**, **Landmark**, **Lock Basin**, **Mooring Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Runway**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**

† For each instance of **time intervals by day of week**, at least one of the sub-attributes **day of week**, **time of day start** or **time of day end** must be populated. Where populated, the number of instances of **time of day start** must be the same as the number of instances of **time of day end**.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

24.2.1 Service hours

If it is required to encode the time schedules for the operation of a service (for instance the opening and closing times for the opening spans of a bridge), it must be done using the information type **Service Hours**. Each instance of **Service Hours** must be associated to the feature(s) to which the information applies using the association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1).

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **time intervals by day of week**, sub-attribute **day of week is range** indicates whether an instance of **time intervals by day of week** encodes a range of days or discrete days. The day(s) or day range(s) are encoded using sub-attribute **day of week**. Where **day of week is range** is populated as *True*, there must be exactly two instances of the attribute **day of week**. If **day of week** is not populated, this indicates that the same schedule applies every day (Monday through Sunday). Multiple ranges or mixing range with discrete days(s) is not allowed (if this is required another instance of **time intervals by day of week** must be encoded).
- Overlapping intervals bound to the same feature using the association **Additional Information** are not permitted.
- The complex attributes **fixed date range** and **periodic date range**, when populated for **Service Hours**, apply only to **Service Hours** and not to any feature that it may be associated with.

Distinction: Nautical Information; Non-Standard Working Day.

Feature/Information associations: **Additional Information**

24.3 Non-standard working day

IHO Definition: **NON-STANDARD WORKING DAY**. Days when many services are not available. Often days of festivity or recreation or public holidays when normal working hours are limited, especially a national or religious festival, etc. (S-127 Edition 1.0.0).

S-101 Information Type: Non-Standard Working Day

Primitives: None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
date fixed		See clause 2.4.8	TD	0,*
date variable			TE	0,*
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
information			C	0,*
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
	Additional Information (see clause 25.1).	See next row	Association	0,*

Associated to: Airport/Airfield, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Berth**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Dock Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Floating Dock**, **Gate**, **Helipad**, **Landmark**, **Lock Basin**, **Mooring Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Runway**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**

† For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

24.3.1 Non-standard working days

If it is required to encode the date(s) when an event, festival or national holiday occurs each year, it must be done using the information type **Non-Standard Working Day**. Each instance of **Non-Standard Working Day**

must be associated to the feature(s) to which the information applies using the association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1).

Remarks:

- The attribute **date fixed** encodes the date when a festival or national holiday recurs on the same day each year in the Gregorian calendar.
- The complex **date variable** encodes a day which is not fixed in the Gregorian calendar, for instance “the fourth Thursday in November”; “Easter Sunday”.
- The complex attributes **fixed date range** and **periodic date range**, when populated for **Non-Standard Working Day**, apply only to **Non-Standard Working Day** and not to any feature that it may be associated with.
- The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) is used to encode any special conditions or regulations that exist in relation to the date/day populated.

Distinction: Nautical Information; Service Hours.

24.4 Nautical information

IHO Definition: **NAUTICAL INFORMATION**. Nautical information about a related area or facility.

S-101 Information Type: Nautical Information

Primitives: None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
periodic date range		See clause 2.4.8	C	0,*
date end	*(PEREND)*		(S) TD	1,1
date start	*(PERSTA)*		(S) TD	1,1
information		See clause 2.4.6	C	0,* †
file locator			(S) TE	0,1
file reference	*(TXTDSC)* *(NTXTDS)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
headline			(S) TE	0,1
language		ISO 639-2/T	(S) TE	1,1
text	*(INFORM)* *(NINFOM)*		(S) TE	0,1 †
pictorial representation	(PICREP)	See clause 2.4.12.2	TE	0,1 †

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
	Additional Information (see clause 25.1).	See next row	Association	0,*

Associated to: Administration Area, Airport/Airfield, Anchor Berth, Anchorage Area, Archipelagic Sea Lane, Archipelagic Sea Lane Area, Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis, Berth, Bollard, Bridge, Building, Built-Up Area, Cable Area, Cable Overhead, Cable Submarine, Canal, Cardinal Beacon, Cardinal Buoy, Cargo Transhipment Area, Causeway, Caution Area, Checkpoint, Coastline, Coast Guard Station, Collision Regulations Limit, Contiguous Zone, Continental Shelf Area, Conveyor, Crane, Current – Non-Gravitational, Custom Zone, Dam, Daymark, Deep Water Route, Deep Water Route Centreline, Deep Water Route Part, Depth Area, Depth Contour, Depth – No Bottom Found, Discoloured Water, Distance Mark, Dock Area, Dolphin, Dredged Area, Dry Dock, Dumping Ground, Dyke, Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy, Exclusive Economic Zone, Fairway, Fairway System, Fence/Wall, Ferry Route, Fishery Zone, Fishing Facility, Fishing Ground, Floating Dock, Fog Signal, Fortified Structure, Foul Ground, Free Port Area, Gate, Gridiron, Harbour Area (Administrative), Harbour Facility, Helipad, Hulk, Ice Area, Information Area, Inshore Traffic Zone, Installation Buoy, Island Group, Isolated Danger Beacon, Isolated Danger Buoy, Lake, Land Area, Land Elevation, Landmark, Land Region, Lateral Beacon, Lateral Buoy, Light Air Obstruction, Light All Around, Light Float, Light Fog Detector, Light Sectored, Light Vessel, Local Magnetic Anomaly, Lock Basin, Log Pond, Magnetic Variation, Marine Farm/Culture, Marine Pollution Regulations Area, Military Practice Area, Mooring Area, Mooring Buoy, Mooring Trot, Mooring Buoy, Navigation Line, Obstruction, Offshore Platform, Offshore Production Area, Oil Barrier, Physical AIS Aid to Navigation, Pile, Pilotage District, Pilot Boarding Place, Pipeline Overhead, Pipeline Submarine/On Land, Pontoon, Precautionary Area, Production/Storage Area, Pylon/Bridge Support, Radar Line, Radar Range, Radar Reflector, Radar Station, Radar Transponder Beacon, Radio Calling-In Point, Radio Station, Railway, Range System, Rapids, Recommended Route

Centreline, **Recommended Track**, **Recommended Traffic Lane Part**, **Rescue Station**, **Restricted Area**, **Retroreflector**, **River**, **Road**, **Runway**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Sandwave**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Seabed Area**, **Seagrass**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**, **Silo/Tank**, **Slope Topline**, **Sloping Ground**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Sounding**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Spring**, **Straight Territorial Sea Baseline**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Swept Area**, **Territorial Sea Area**, **Tidal Stream Panel Data**, **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**, **Tideway**, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Tunnel**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Unsurveyed Area**, **Vegetation**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**
† At least one of the attributes **information** or **pictorial representation** must be populated. For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated. For each instance of **information**, at least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated. INT 1 Reference: **24.4.1 Nautical information** If it is required to encode identical information associated with multiple geo features which cannot be encoded using the descriptive attributes on those features, it should be done using the information type **Nautical Information**. Each instance of **Nautical Information** must be associated to the feature(s) to which the information applies using the association **Additional Information** (see clause 25.1). Remarks: • Within a dataset, individual instances of information associated with a geo feature which cannot be encoded using the descriptive attributes on the feature should be encoded using the attributes **information** or **pictorial representation** on the feature itself, not using **Nautical Information**. However where this information is shared between features included in multiple datasets within the ENC portfolio, **Nautical Information** may be used. • **Nautical Information** must not be used to include a reference to a picture file (attribute **pictorial representation**) to a feature that does not itself include **pictorial representation** as an allowable attribute. • The complex attributes **fixed date range** and **periodic date range**, when populated for **Nautical Information**, apply only to **Nautical Information** and not to any feature that it may be associated with. Distinction: Information Area; Update Information.

24.5 Spatial quality

IHO Definition: **SPATIAL QUALITY**. The indication of the quality of the locational information for features in a dataset.

S-101 Information Type: Spatial Quality

Primitives: None

Real World	*Paper Chart Symbol*	*ECDIS Symbol*

S-101 Attribute	S-57 Acronym	Allowable Encoding Value	Type	Multiplicity
quality of horizontal measurement	(QUAPOS)	4 : approximate 5 : position doubtful	EN	0,1 †
spatial accuracy			C	0,* †
fixed date range		See clause 2.4.8	(S) C	0,1
date end	(DATEND)		(S) TD	0,1 †
date start	(DATSTA)		(S) TD	0,1 †
horizontal position uncertainty			(S) C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(POSACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1
vertical uncertainty			C	0,1
uncertainty fixed	*(SOUACC)*		(S) RE	1,1
uncertainty variable factor			(S) RE	0,1

Feature Associations

S-101 Role	Association Type	Associated to	Type	Multiplicity
Defined for	**Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause 25.12)	**Quality of Bathymetric Data**	Composition	0,*
Defined for	**Spatial Association** (see clause 25.14).	Spatial types (see clause 2.4.7)	Association	0,*

Commented [TS110]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24. Needs to be discussed?

† At least one of the attributes **quality of horizontal measurement** or **spatial accuracy** must be populated.

For each instance of **fixed date range**, at least one of the sub-attributes **date end** or **date start** must be populated.

INT 1 Reference:

24.5.1 Spatial quality

Spatial attribute types must contain a referenced geometry and may be associated with spatial quality attributes. Each spatial attribute instance must be referenced by a feature instance or another spatial attribute instance.

Spatial quality attributes are carried in the information type **Spatial Quality**. Only point, multipoint and curve geometry and the meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** can be associated with spatial quality. Currently no use case for associating surface geometry with spatial quality attributes is known, therefore this is prohibited. Vertical uncertainty is prohibited for curves as this dimension is not supported by curves.

Each instance of **Spatial Quality** must be associated to the geometry to which the information applies using the association **Spatial Association** (see clause 25.14); or in the case of **Spatial Quality** associated with **Quality of Bathymetric Data**, using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clause

25.12).

Remarks:

- The complex attribute **spatial accuracy** is used to specify the vertical and horizontal position uncertainty, which may degrade in changeable areas over time. In order to provide the spatial accuracy components for provision of an overall indication of the quality of bathymetric data for an area, an instance of **Spatial Quality** must be associated with each instance of the meta feature **Quality of Bathymetric Data** using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition** (see clauses 3.8 and 25.12). Where the attribute **category of temporal variation** for the associated **Quality of Bathymetric Data** is set to values *2* (likely to change and significant shoaling expected) or *3* (likely to change but significant shoaling not expected), multiple instances of **spatial accuracy** should be encoded to provide an indication of the degradation of the vertical and horizontal position accuracy of the charted bathymetric information over time.
    - The sub-complex attribute **fixed date range** is used, where required, to define the date range(s) where the spatial accuracy is degraded over time. Where multiple date ranges are specified, the attributes **date start** and **date end** for each instance of **fixed date range** must be equal to the corresponding instances of **zone of confidence** (**fixed date range**) for the associated **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature (see clause 3.8).
    - The sub-complex attribute **vertical uncertainty** must be used to specify the vertical uncertainty of the depths covered by the associated **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature within a specified date range (where encoded). When **depth range minimum value** is specified for the associated **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature, **vertical uncertainty** refers only to the uncertainty of the swept depth defined by **depth range minimum value**.
    - The sub-complex attribute **horizontal position uncertainty** must be used to specify the positional uncertainty of the depths covered by the associated **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature within a specified date range (where encoded).
    - The sub-attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** must not be populated for **Spatial Quality** associated to **Quality of Bathymetric Data**.
- For the geometry associated with all **Sounding** and **Underwater/Awash Rock** features; and **Foul Ground**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Obstruction** and **Wreck** features of type point, of depth 30 metres or less, it is mandatory to associate an instance of **Spatial Quality** using the association **Quality of Bathymetric Data Composition**. For the majority, if not all, of these features this should be done by using the instance of **Spatial Quality** associated with the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** representing the overall indication of the quality of bathymetric data for the area.
- The attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** may be used on **Spatial Quality** to provide an indication of lower accuracy quality of depth features, in addition to population of **horizontal position accuracy**, than the underlying **Quality of Bathymetric Data** indicates, however where this is done the **Spatial Quality** feature must not be associated to a **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature.

Distinction: Quality of Bathymetric Data; Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data; Quality of Survey.

Commented [TS111]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

Deleted: category of

Deleted: in data

25 Association Names

The following diagrams are examples to demonstrate the structure of the feature association tables included in the following clauses, as they may be correspondingly represented in UML. The examples are taken from the UML Relationship Diagram for the feature **Two Way Route Part**. The complete relationship diagram is shown in Figure 25-1 below.

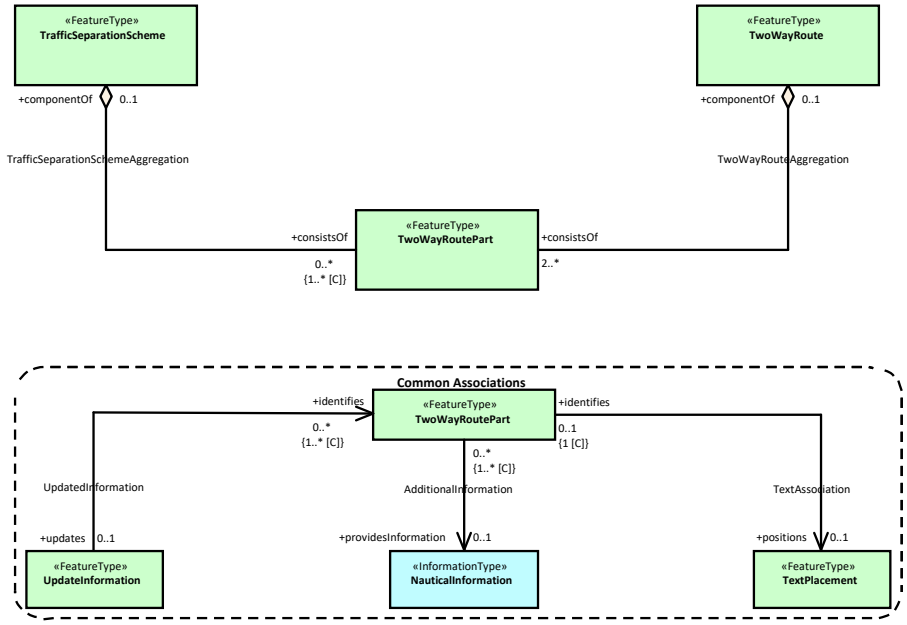


Figure 25-1 – Two-Way Route Part UML relationship diagram

NOTE: The association **Spatial Association** (see clause 25.14) is not included in Figure 25-1 above, as this association identifies the relationship between an information type (**Spatial Quality**) and the spatial type to which a feature is bound (that is, the geometry to which the feature is bound, rather than the feature itself).

Within the tables included in this Section, features are grouped in separate table entries where the features included at either end of the relationship may differ for the association. For example Figure 25-2* below shows that, for the association **Additional Information**, the feature **Anchor Berth** may be associated with any of the information types **Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours** or **Nautical Information**; while the feature **Two Way Route Part** may only be associated with the information type **Nautical Information** (as shown in Figure 25-1 above and Figure 25-5).

* Figure 25-2 is derived from clause 25.1.

IHO Definition: **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**. A feature association for the binding between at least one instance of a geo feature and an instance of an information type.

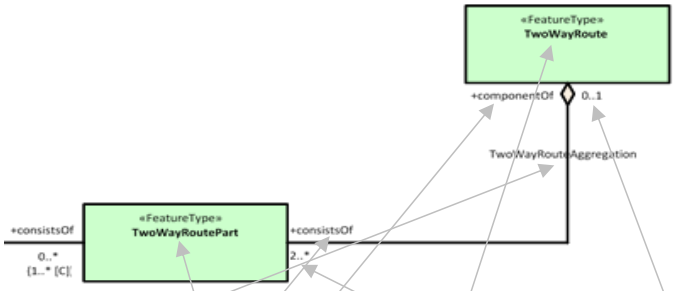
Remarks:

- The features comprising an **Additional Information** association must include at least one of any of the geo features included in the following lists associated to one or more of the corresponding information types.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Provides information	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	0,1 {1,* [C]}
		Airport/Airfield, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **…**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Association	Provides information	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	0,1 {1,* [C]}
		Administration Area, **…**, **Wind Turbine**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Association	Provides information	**Nautical Information**	0,1
		…, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **…**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Figure 25-2 – Example of different allowable Additional Information associations

Figure 25-3 below shows the representation of the feature/feature association **Two Way Route Aggregation** for the **Two-Way Route Part** feature (see clause 25.18).



IHO Definition: **TWO-WAY-ROUTE AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a two-way route and its component features.

Remarks:

- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Consists of	**Two-Way Route Part**	2,*
	Component of	**Two-Way Route**	0,1

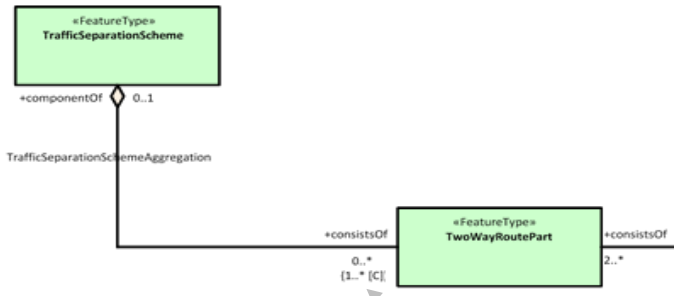
Figure 25-3 – Two-Way Route Aggregation

In Figure 25-3 above, the table should be interpreted as follows:

- A **Two-Way Route** *consists of* two or more **Two-Way Route Part** features.
- A **Two-Way Route Part** is a *component of* zero to one **Two-Way Route** features.

- The *2,** multiplicity at the **Two-Way Route Part** end of the relationship indicates that there is a requirement to bind each **Two-Way Route** feature using a **Two-Way Route Aggregation** (due to the non-zero lower multiplicity). The binding must be to at least two **Two-Way Route Part** features included in the **Two-Way Route Aggregation**.
- The *0,1* multiplicity at the **Two-Way Route** end of the relationship indicates that there is no requirement to bind each **Two-Way Route Part** feature using a **Two-Way Route Aggregation** (due to the lower multiplicity being zero). However, where the relationship exists, there must be at most one **Two-Way Route** feature.

Figure 25-4 below shows the representation of the feature/feature association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** for the **Two-Way Route Part** feature (see clause 25.18).



IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SPARATION SCHEME AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a Traffic Separation Scheme or a Traffic Separation Scheme System and its component features.

Remarks:

- A **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** must include at least one of any of the features shown in the "Consists of" role below in upright text.
- The **Traffic Separation Scheme** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the Scheme using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	0,1
	Consists of	**Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Landmark**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Pile**, **Precautionary Area**, ***Restricted Area***, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Figure 25-4 – Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation

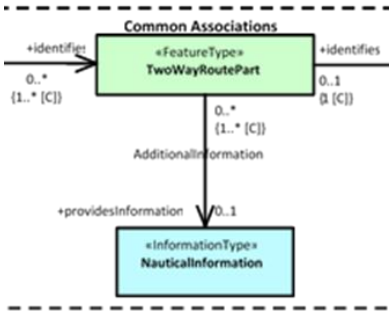
The components of the feature/feature association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** should be interpreted as for the corresponding components of the feature/feature association **Two-Way Route Aggregation** described for Figure 25-3, except for the multiplicity at the **Two-Way Route Part** end of the association (indicated with the arrow in Figure 25-4). The multiplicity as indicated in the UML as "0..* {1..* [C]}" in this case is an example of "collective multiplicity" notation.

- A collective multiplicity can only exist when there is more than one feature type that may be used in a given role. A collective multiplicity indicates the multiplicity of the collection.
- The "0..*" component of the multiplicity shown in the UML in this example is the "individual multiplicity". An individual multiplicity indicates the multiplicity for each component of the collection.
- The collective component of the multiplicity ({1..* [C]}) indicates that where the association **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** exists, there must be at least one of any of the features (collectively) that may be included as "containees". The allowable list of features is included in the following table entries, noting in this example that **Two-Way Route Part** is allowable for the **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (as highlighted in Figure 25-4).

- The individual component of the multiplicity (0,*) indicates there is no requirement for a **Two-Way Route Part** feature (or any other feature in the list) to be included in a **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** (due to the lower multiplicity being zero). However where the relationship exists, there may be an unlimited number of **Two-Way Route Part** features (due to the upper multiplicity being "*").
- Upright style (non-italicized) features in the tables are members of the collective multiplicity, italicized features are not. The individual multiplicity applies to all listed features; the collective multiplicity only applies to the upright features, which may or may not comprise the entire list.

The Tables in this Section show both types of multiplicity when applicable. If no collective multiplicity applies, only the "individual multiplicity" is shown.

Figure 25-5 below shows the representation of the feature/information association **Additional Information** for the **Two-Way Route Part** feature (table derived from clause 25.1).



IHO Definition: **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**. A feature association for the binding between at least one instance of a geo feature and an instance of an information type.

Remarks:

- A single information type instance may be associated with more than one geo feature instance. The features comprising an **Additional Information** association must include at least one of any of the geo features included in the following list associated to one or more of the corresponding information types.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Provides information	**Nautical Information**	0,1
		…, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Unsurveyed Area**, **Vegetation**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wreck**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Figure 25-5 – Additional Information

The only additional characteristic to note in Figure 25-5, which is characteristic of all feature/information associations, is that unlike feature/feature associations, feature/information associations have only one role (at the information feature end of the relationship).

25.1 Additional information

IHO Definition: **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**. A feature association for the binding between at least one instance of a geo feature and an instance of an information type.

Remarks:

- The features comprising an **Additional Information** association must include at least one of any of the geo features included in the following lists associated to one or more of the corresponding information types.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Provides information	**Contact Details**, **Non-Standard Working Day**, **Service Hours**, **Nautical Information**	0,1
		Airport/Airfield, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Berth**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Dock Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Floating Dock**, **Gate**, **Helipad**, **Landmark**, **Lock Basin**, **Mooring Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Runway**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Provides information	**Contact Details**, **Nautical Information**	0,1
		Administration Area, **Cable Area**, **Cable Overhead**, **Cable Submarine**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Daymark**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fog Signal**, **Harbour Area (Administrative)**, **Harbour Facility**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Land Region**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light All Around**, **Light Float**, **Light Sectored**, **Light Vessel**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Mooring Trot**, **Offshore Platform**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Pilot Boarding Place**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Railway**, **Rescue Station**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Silo/Tank**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Tunnel**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Wind Turbine**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Provides information	**Nautical Information**	0,1
		Archipelagic Sea Lane, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, **Bollard**, **Built-Up Area**, **Canal**, **Cargo Transhipment Area**, **Causeway**, **Caution Area**, **Coastline**, **Collision Regulations Limit**, **Contiguous Zone**, **Continental Shelf Area**, **Current – Non-Gravitational**, **Custom Zone**, **Dam**, **Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Depth Area**, **Depth Contour**, **Depth – No Bottom Found**, **Discoloured Water**, **Distance Mark**, **Dredged Area**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dyke**, **Exclusive Economic Zone**, **Fairway**, **Fairway System**, **Fence/Wall**, **Ferry Route**, **Fishery Zone**, **Fishing Ground**, **Fortified Structure**, **Foul Ground**, **Free Port Area**, **Gridiron**, **Hulk**, **Ice Area**, **Information Area**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Island Group**, **Lake**, **Land Area**, **Land Elevation**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Local Magnetic Anomaly**, **Log Pond**, **Magnetic Variation**, **Marine Pollution Regulations Area**, **Military Practice Area**, **Navigation Line**, **Obstruction**, **Oil Barrier**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Pile**, **Pilotage District**, **Pontoon**, **Precautionary Area**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Radar Line**, **Radar Range**, **Radar Reflector**, **Radar Station**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Radio Station**, **Range System**, **Rapids**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Recommended Traffic Lane Part**, **Restricted Area**, **Retroreflector**, **River**, **Road**, **Sandwave**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Seabed Area**, **Seagrass**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**, **Slope Topline**, **Sloping Ground**, **Sounding**, **Spring**, **Straight Territorial Sea Baseline**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Swept Area**, **Territorial Sea Area**, **Tidal Stream Panel Data**, **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**, **Tideway**, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation**	0,* {1,* [C]}

		Scheme Crossing, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Unsurveyed Area**, **Vegetation**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wreck**	

25.2 Aids to navigation association

Commented [TS112]: Refer to email from Hugh 08/01/24.

IHO Definition: **AIDS TO NAVIGATION ASSOCIATION**. A feature association for the binding between navigational aids and the traffic systems (such as routeing measures) that they define.

Remarks:

- The features comprising an **Aids to Navigation Association** must include at least one of any of the features included in the "Consists of" role associated to one or more of the corresponding features in the "Component of" role.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	0,1
	Consists of	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Daymark**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Pile**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Aggregation	Component of	**Deep Water Route**, **Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	0,1
	Consists of	**Building**, **Crane**, **Dolphin**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fortified Structure**, **Landmark**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Silo/Tank**, **Wind Turbine**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Aggregation	Component of	**Fairway System**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Two-Way Route**	0,1
	Consists of	**Bridge**, **Conveyor**, **Floating Dock**, **Hulk**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Deleted: Association

Deleted: Association

Deleted: Association

25.3 ASL aggregation

IHO Definition: **ASL AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between an Archipelagic Sea Lane and its component features.

Remarks:

- The **Archipelagic Sea Lane** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the ASL using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**	0,1
	Consists of	**Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.4 Bridge aggregation

IHO Definition: **BRIDGE AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a bridge and its component features.

Remarks:
- The features comprising a **Bridge Aggregation** must include at least one **Span Fixed** or **Span Opening** feature.
- A bridge over non-navigable water at the optimum display scale of the ENC data, which does not require its individual components to be encoded, must be encoded, where required, as a **Bridge** feature of type curve or surface (see clause 6.6).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Bridge**	0,1
	Consists of	**Span Fixed, Span Opening**, ***Pontoon***, ***Pylon/Bridge Support***	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.5 Caution area association

IHO Definition: **CAUTION AREA ASSOCIATION**. A feature association for the binding between a caution area and the traffic systems (such as routeing measures) to which the cautionary information applies.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Component of	**Caution Area**	0,1
	Consists of	**Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.6 Deep Water route aggregation

IHO Definition: **DEEP WATER ROUTE AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a Deep Water route and its component features.

Remarks:
- The collective multiplicity for the “Consists of” role requires that at least two instances of any combination of **Deep Water Route Centreline** and **Deep Water Route Part** must be included for the association to exist.
- The **Deep Water Route** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the Route using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Deep Water Route**	0,1
	Consists of	**Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.7 Fairway aggregation

IHO Definition: **FAIRWAY AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between related fairways comprising a fairway system.

Remarks:
- The collective multiplicity for the "Consists of" role requires that at least two instances of **Fairway** must be included for the association to exist.
- The **Fairway System** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the fairway using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Fairway System**	0,1
	Consists of	**Fairway**	1,*

25.8 Fairway auxiliary

IHO Definition: **FAIRWAY AUXILIARY**. A feature association for the binding between a fairway and related features auxiliary to the fairway.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Auxiliary to	**Fairway**	0,1
	Has auxiliary	**Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Caution Area**, **Daymark**, **Dredged Area**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Landmark**, **Pile**, **Range System**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Restricted Area**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Swept Area**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.9 Island aggregation

IHO Definition: **ISLAND AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a named group of islands.

Remarks:
- The collective multiplicity for the "Consists of" role requires that at least two instances of any combination of **Land Area** and **Island Group** must be included for the association to exist.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Island Group**	0,1
	Consists of	**Land Area**, **Island Group**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.10 Mooring trot aggregation

IHO Definition: **MOORING TROT AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a mooring trot and its component parts.

Remarks:
- Typically, a mooring trot will consist of:
  - At least one **Berth** feature;
  - At least 2 **Cable Submarine** features;
  - At least 2 **Mooring Buoy** features; and
  - At least 2 **Obstruction** features.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Mooring Trot**	0,1
	Consists of	**Berth**, **Cable Submarine**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Obstruction**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.11 Pilotage district association

IHO Definition: **PILOTAGE DISTRICT ASSOCIATION**. A feature association for the binding between a pilotage district and its component pilot boarding places.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Pilotage District**	0,1
	Consists of	**Pilot Boarding Place**	0,*

25.12 Quality of bathymetric data composition

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF BATHYMETRIC DATA COMPOSITION**. The mandatory association between the quality-related characteristics of bathymetric data and the horizontal position and vertical uncertainties of the data.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Composition	Defines	**Spatial Quality**	1,1
	Defined for	**Quality of Bathymetric Data**	0,*

25.13 Range system aggregation

IHO Definition: **RANGE SYSTEM AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between navigational tracks and the navigational aids that define the tracks.

Remarks:
- All features comprising a **Range System Aggregation** should have the same value populated for the attribute **scale minimum** (see clause 2.5.9).
- A **Range System Aggregation** must include at least one of any of the features shown in the “Consists of” role below in upright text.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Range System**	0,1
	Consists of	***Cardinal Beacon***, ***Building***, ***Daymark***, ***Dolphin***, ***Fortified Structure***, ***Isolated Danger Beacon***, ***Landmark***, ***Lateral Beacon***, ***Light All Around***, ***Light Sectored***, **Navigation Line**, ***Pile***, ***Radar Transponder Beacon***, **Range System**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, ***Safe Water Beacon***, ***Silo/Tank***, ***Special Purpose/General Beacon***	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.14 Spatial association

IHO Definition: **SPATIAL ASSOCIATION**. An association for the binding between a spatial type and its spatial quality information.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Defines	**Spatial Quality**	0,1
	Defined for	Spatial types (see clause 2.4.7)	0,*

25.15 Structure/equipment

IHO Definition: **STRUCTURE/EQUIPMENT**. A feature association for the binding between a navigation aid equipment feature and the structure that supports it.

Remarks:
- A **Structure/Equipment** composition binds a single “Supported by” feature to at least one “Supports” feature.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Composition	Supported by	**Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Conveyor**, **Dolphin**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fishing Facility**, **Floating Dock**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Installation Buoy**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Float**, **Light Vessel**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pontoon**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	0,1
	Supports	**Daymark**, **Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Composition	Supported by	**Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Conveyor**, **Dolphin**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fortified Structure**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Silo/Tank**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	0,1
	Supports	**Light Sectored**	0,* {1,* [C]}

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Composition	Supported by	**Dolphin**, **Fortified Structure**, **Hulk**, **Landmark**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pile**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Shoreline Construction**	0,1
	Supports	**Bollard**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Composition	Supported by	**Bridge**, **Building**, **Crane**, **Conveyor**, **Landmark**, **Offshore Platform**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Wind Turbine**	0,1
	Supports	**Light Air Obstruction**	0,*
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Composition	Supported by	**Light All Around**, **Light Sectored** [3]	0,1
	Supports	**Fog Signal**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Composition	Supported by	**Daymark**	0,1
	Supports	**Distance Mark**, **Fog Signal**, **Light All Around**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Retroreflector**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**	0,* {1,* [C]}
Role Type	**Role**	**Associated With**	**Multiplicity**
Composition	Supported by	**Cable Overhead**, **Pipeline Overhead** [4]	0,1
	Supports	**Radar Reflector**	0,*

25.16 Text association

IHO Definition: **TEXT ASSOCIATION**. A feature association for the binding between a geo feature and the cartographically positioned location for text.

Remarks:

- A **Text Association** must include one of any of the geo features included in the following list associated to a single **Text Placement** feature.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Composition	Positions	**Text Placement**	0,1
	Identifies	**Administration Area**, **Airport/Airfield**, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, **Berth**, **Bollard**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Built-Up Area**, **Cable Area**, **Cable Overhead**, **Cable Submarine**, **Canal**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Cargo Transhipment Area**, **Causeway**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Coastline**, **Collision Regulations Limit**, **Continental Shelf Area**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Current – Non-Gravitational**, **Dam**, **Daymark**, **Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Distance Mark**, **Dock Area**, **Dolphin**, **Dredged Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dyke**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Fairway**, **Fairway System**, **Fence/Wall**, **Ferry Route**, **Fishery Zone**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fishing Ground**, **Floating Dock**, **Fog Signal**, **Fortified Structure**, **Foul Ground**, **Free Port Area**, **Gate**, **Gridiron**, **Harbour Area (Administrative)**, **Harbour Facility**, **Helipad**, **Hulk**, **Ice Area**, **Information Area**, **Installation Buoy**, **Island Group**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**,	0,1 {1,1 [C]}

[3] See clauses 18.2 and 19.1.8.
[4] See clauses 6.9, 6.10 and 20.17

		Isolated Danger Buoy, **Lake**, **Land Area**, **Land Elevation**, **Land Region**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Float**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Light Vessel**, **Local Magnetic Anomaly**, **Lock Basin**, **Log Pond**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Marine Pollution Regulations Area**, **Military Practice Area**, **Mooring Area**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Mooring Trot**, **Obstruction**, **Offshore Platform**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Oil Barrier**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Pile**, **Pilot Boarding Place**, **Pilotage District**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Pontoon**, **Precautionary Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Radar Line**, **Radar Range**, **Radar Station**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Radio Station**, **Railway**, **Range System**, **Rapids**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Rescue Station**, **Restricted Area**, **River**, **Road**, **Runway**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Seabed Area**, **Seagrass**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**, **Silo/Tank**, **Slope Topline**, **Sloping Ground**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Sounding**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Spring**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Swept Area**, **Tidal Stream Panel Data**, **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**, **Tideway**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Tunnel**, **Two-Way Route**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Vegetation**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	

Commented [TS113]: Missing feature identified in S-101 Edition 1.2.0 Feature catalogue development.

25.17 Traffic Separation Scheme aggregation

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC SEPARATION SCHEME AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a Traffic Separation Scheme or a Traffic Separation Scheme System and its component features.

Remarks:

- A **Traffic Separation Scheme Aggregation** must include one of any of the features shown in the "Consists of" role below in upright text.
- The **Traffic Separation Scheme** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the Scheme using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Traffic Separation Scheme**	0,1
	Consists of	**Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Precautionary Area**, ***Restricted Area***, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**	0,* {1,* [C]}

25.18 Two-way route aggregation

IHO Definition: **TWO-WAY ROUTE AGGREGATION**. A feature association for the binding between a two-way route and its component features.

Remarks:

- The **Two-Way Route** may additionally be associated to the aids to navigation marking the components of the Route using the association **Aids to Navigation Association** (see clause 25.2).

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Aggregation	Component of	**Two-Way Route**	0,1
	Consists of	**Two-Way Route Part**	1,*

25.19 Updated information

IHO Definition: **UPDATED INFORMATION**. A feature association for the binding between an update information metadata feature and updated feature(s) that it identifies.

Remarks:

- An updated dataset feature can be any feature or information type instance that is subject to an ENC Update.

Role Type	Role	Associated With	Multiplicity
Association	Updates	**Update Information**	0,1
	Identifies	**Administration Area**, **Airport/Airfield**, **Anchor Berth**, **Anchorage Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Area**, **Archipelagic Sea Lane Axis**, **Berth**, **Bollard**, **Bridge**, **Building**, **Built-Up Area**, **Cable Area**, **Cable Overhead**, **Cable Submarine**, **Canal**, **Cardinal Beacon**, **Cardinal Buoy**, **Cargo Transhipment Area**, **Causeway**, **Caution Area**, **Checkpoint**, **Coast Guard Station**, **Coastline**, **Collision Regulations Limit**, **Contiguous Zone**, **Continental Shelf Area**, **Conveyor**, **Crane**, **Current – Non-Gravitational**, **Custom Zone**, **Dam**, **Daymark**, **Deep Water Route**, **Deep Water Route Centreline**, **Deep Water Route Part**, **Depth Area**, **Depth Contour**, **Depth – No Bottom Found**, **Discoloured Water**, **Distance Mark**, **Dock Area**, **Dolphin**, **Dredged Area**, **Dry Dock**, **Dumping Ground**, **Dyke**, **Emergency Wreck Marking Buoy**, **Exclusive Economic Zone**, **Fairway**, **Fairway System**, **Fence/Wall**, **Ferry Route**, **Fishery Zone**, **Fishing Facility**, **Fishing Ground**, **Floating Dock**, **Fog Signal**, **Fortified Structure**, **Foul Ground**, **Free Port Area**, **Gate**, **Gridiron**, **Harbour Area (Administrative)**, **Harbour Facility**, **Helipad**, **Hulk**, **Ice Area**, **Information Area**, **Inshore Traffic Zone**, **Installation Buoy**, **Island Group**, **Isolated Danger Beacon**, **Isolated Danger Buoy**, **Lake**, **Land Area**, **Land Elevation**, **Land Region**, **Landmark**, **Lateral Beacon**, **Lateral Buoy**, **Light Air Obstruction**, **Light All Around**, **Light Float**, **Light Fog Detector**, **Light Sectored**, **Light Vessel**, **Local Direction of Buoyage**, **Local Magnetic Anomaly**, **Lock Basin**, **Log Pond**, **Magnetic Variation**, **Marine Farm/Culture**, **Marine Pollution Regulations Area**, **Military Practice Area**, **Mooring Area**, **Mooring Buoy**, **Mooring Trot**, **Navigation Line**, **Navigational System of Marks**, **Obstruction**, **Offshore Platform**, **Offshore Production Area**, **Oil Barrier**, **Physical AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Pile**, **Pilot Boarding Place**, **Pilotage District**, **Pipeline Overhead**, **Pipeline Submarine/On Land**, **Pontoon**, **Precautionary Area**, **Production/Storage Area**, **Pylon/Bridge Support**, **Quality of Bathymetric Data**, **Quality of Non-Bathymetric Data**, **Quality of Survey**, **Radar Line**, **Radar Range**, **Radar Reflector**, **Radar Station**, **Radar Transponder Beacon**, **Radio Calling-In Point**, **Radio Station**, **Railway**, **Range System**, **Rapids**, **Recommended Route Centreline**, **Recommended Track**, **Recommended Traffic Lane Part**, **Rescue Station**, **Restricted Area**, **Retroreflector**, **River**, **Road**, **Runway**, **Safe Water Beacon**, **Safe Water Buoy**, **Sandwave**, **Sea Area/Named Water Area**, **Seabed Area**, **Seagrass**, **Seaplane Landing Area**, **Separation Zone or Line**, **Shoreline Construction**, **Signal Station Traffic**, **Signal Station Warning**, **Silo/Tank**, **Small Craft Facility**, **Slope Topline**, **Sloping Ground**, **Sounding**, **Sounding Datum**, **Span Fixed**, **Span Opening**, **Special Purpose/General Beacon**, **Special Purpose/General Buoy**, **Spring**, **Straight Territorial Sea Baseline**, **Submarine Pipeline Area**, **Submarine Transit Lane**, **Swept Area**, **Territorial Sea Area**, **Tidal Stream Panel Data**, **Tidal Stream – Flood/Ebb**, **Tideway**, **Traffic Separation Scheme**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Boundary**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Crossing**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Lane Part**, **Traffic Separation Scheme Roundabout**, **Tunnel**, **Two-Way Route**, **Two-Way Route Part**, **Underwater/Awash Rock**, **Unsurveyed Area**, **Vegetation**, **Vertical Datum of Data**, **Vessel Traffic Service Area**, **Virtual AIS Aid to Navigation**, **Water Turbulence**, **Waterfall**, **Weed/Kelp**, **Wind Turbine**, **Wreck**	0,* {1,* [C]}

26 Association Roles

26.1 Auxiliary to

IHO Definition: **AUXILIARY TO**. A pointer to a feature to which incidental, secondary or supplementary features are related.

26.2 Component of

IHO Definition: **COMPONENT OF**. A pointer to the aggregate in a whole-part relationship.

26.3 Consists of

IHO Definition: **CONSISTS OF**. A pointer to a part in a whole-part relationship.

26.4 Defined for

IHO Definition: **DEFINED BY**. A pointer to a specific spatial type(s).

26.5 Defines

IHO Definition: **DEFINES**. A pointer to an information type providing spatial quality information.

26.6 Has auxiliary

IHO Definition: **HAS AUXILIARY**. A pointer to incidental, secondary or supplementary features related to the referenced feature.

26.7 Identifies

IHO Definition: **IDENTIFIES**. A pointer to a specific feature(s).

26.8 Positions

IHO Definition: **POSITIONS**. A pointer to a specific cartographically positioned location for text.

26.9 Provides information

IHO Definition: **PROVIDES INFORMATION**. A pointer to an object that provides more information about th referencing feature or information type.

Deleted: J

26.10 Supported by

IHO Definition: **SUPPORTED BY**. A pointer to the structure feature that equipment feature(s) are supported

by.

26.11 Supports

IHO Definition: **SUPPORTS**. A pointer to the equipment feature(s) supported by a structure feature.

26.12 Updates

IHO Definition: **UPDATES**. A pointer to a feature that describes changes made to a dataset.

27 Geo Feature Attribute and Enumerate Descriptions

27.1 based on fixed marks *(CATTRK)*

IHO Definition: **BASED ON FIXED MARKS**. A straight route (known as a recommended track, range or leading line), which comprises:

a. at least two structures (usually beacons or daymarks) and/or natural features, which may carry lights and/or top-marks. The structures/features are positioned so that when observed to be in line, a vessel can follow a known bearing with safety. (Adapted from International Association of Lighthouse Authorities – IALA Aids to Navigation Guide, 1990); or

b. a single structure or natural feature, which may carry lights and/or a topmark, and a specified bearing which can be followed with safety. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.72, November 2000, as amended).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the track is based on a system of one or more fixed marks.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.2 beacon shape (BCNSHP)

IHO Definition: **BEACON SHAPE**. Describes the characteristic geometric form of the beacon. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **stake, pole, perch, post**

   IHO Definition: An elongated wood or metal pole, driven into the ground or seabed, which serves as a navigational aid or a support for a navigational aid. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **withy**

   IHO Definition: A tree without roots stuck or spoiled into the bottom of the sea to serve as a navigational aid. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.5, November 2000).

3) **beacon tower**

   IHO Definition: A solid structure of the order of 10 metres in height used as a navigational aid. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.5, November 2000).

4) **lattice beacon**

   IHO Definition: A structure consisting of strips of metal or wood crossed or interlaced to form a structure to serve as an aid to navigation or as a support for an aid to navigation. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.5, November 2000).

5) **pile beacon**

   IHO Definition: A long heavy timber(s) or section(s) of steel, wood, concrete, etc., forced into the seabed to serve as an aid to navigation or as a support for an aid to navigation. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32 and Navigation Dictionary, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1969).

6) **cairn**

   IHO Definition: A mound of stones, usually conical or pyramidal, raised as a landmark or to designate a point of importance in surveying. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **buoyant beacon**

   IHO Definition: A tall spar-like beacon fitted with a permanently submerged buoyancy chamber, the lower end of the body is secured to seabed sinker either by a flexible joint or by a cable under tension. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.5, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.3 bridge construction *(CATBRG)*

IHO Definition: **BRIDGE CONSTRUCTION**. The bridge's primary shape and/or construction material.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **arch**

   IHO Definition: A typically curved structural member spanning an opening and serving as a support (as for the wall or other weight above the opening). (Merriam-Webster On-line Dictionary, July 2023).

2) **viaduct**

   IHO Definition: A structure consisting of a series of arches or towers supporting a roadway, waterway, etc., across a depression, etc. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **pontoon bridge**

   IHO Definition: A fixed floating bridge supported by pontoons. (McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms, 3rd Edition, 1984).

4) **suspension bridge**

   IHO Definition: A fixed bridge consisting of either a roadway or a truss suspended from two or more cables which pass over towers and are anchored by backstays to a firm foundation. (McGraw-Hill Encyclopaedia of Science and Technology, 7th Edition, 1992).

5) **transporter bridge**

   IHO Definition: Consists of towers on each side of the watercourse connected by a system of girders on which a carriage runs. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.4 bridge function *(CATBRG)*

IHO Definition: **BRIDGE FUNCTION**. A specific role that describes the purpose of a bridge.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **vehicular**

   IHO Definition: Of, relating to, or designed for vehicles and especially motor vehicles. (Merriam-Webster On-line Dictionary, July 2023).

2) **rail**

   IHO Definition: Of, relating to, or designed for vehicles that run on a guiding track(s), especially trains.

3) **pedestrian**

   IHO Definition: Of, relating to, or designed for walking. (Merriam-Webster On-line Dictionary, July 2023).

4) **aqueduct**

   IHO Definition: A bridge supporting an artificially elevated channel, for the conveyance of water. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.5 building shape (BUISHP)

IHO Definition: **BUILDING SHAPE**. The specific shape of the building.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

5) **high-rise building**

   IHO Definition: A building having many storeys. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

6) **pyramid**

   IHO Definition: A polyhedron of which one face is a polygon of any number of sides, and the other faces are triangles with a common vertex. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

7) **cylindrical**

   IHO Definition: Shaped like a cylinder, which is a solid geometrical figure generated by straight lines fixed in direction and describing with one of its points a closed curve, especially a circle. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

8) **spherical**

   IHO Definition: Shaped like a sphere, which is a body the surface of which is at all points equidistant from the centre. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

9) **cubic**

   IHO Definition: A shape the sides of which are six equal squares; a regular hexahedron. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.6 buoy shape (BOYSHP)

IHO Definition: **BUOY SHAPE**. The principal shape and/or design of a buoy. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **conical**

   IHO Definition: The upper part of the body above the water-line, or the greater part of the superstructure, has approximately the shape or the appearance of a pointed cone with the point upwards. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

2) **can**

   IHO Definition: The upper part of the body above the water-line, or the greater part of the superstructure, has the shape of a cylinder, or a truncated cone that approximates to a cylinder, with a flat end uppermost. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

3) **spherical**

   IHO Definition: Shaped like a sphere, which is a body the surface of which is at all points equidistant from the centre. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

4) **pillar**

   IHO Definition: The upper part of the body above the water-line, or the greater part of the superstructure is a narrow vertical structure, pillar or lattice tower. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

5) **spar**

   IHO Definition: The upper part of the body above the water-line, or the greater part of the superstructure, has the form of a pole, or of a very long cylinder, floating upright. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter

2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

6) **barrel**

IHO Definition: The upper part of the body above the water-line, or the greater part of the superstructure, has the form of a barrel or cylinder floating horizontally. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

7) **superbuoy**

IHO Definition: A very large buoy designed to carry a signal light of high luminous intensity at a high elevation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **ice buoy**

IHO Definition: A specially constructed shuttle shaped buoy which is used in ice conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.7, November 2000).

Remarks:
- The principal shapes are those recommended in the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities – IALA System.

27.7 buried depth (BURDEP)

IHO Definition: **BURIED DEPTH**. The depth below the seabed to which a feature is buried. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.8, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **2.5** for a depth of 2·5 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.8 call sign (CALSGN)

IHO Definition: **CALL SIGN**. The designated call-sign of a station (radio station, radar station, pilot, …). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.9, November 2000 (as amended)).

Attribute Type: Free Text

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.9 category of airport/airfield (CATAIR)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF AIRPORT/AIRFIELD**. Classification of airport/airfield based on the primary aircraft and user group.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **military aeroplane airport**

IHO Definition: A large military airfield usually equipped with a control tower, hangars and accommodation for the receiving and discharging of passengers or cargo. (Adapted from The Macquarie Dictionary, 1988).

2) **civil aeroplane airport**

IHO Definition: A large airfield usually equipped with a control tower, hangars and accommodation for the receiving and discharging of passengers or cargo. (The Macquarie Dictionary, 1988).

3) **military heliport**

IHO Definition: A landing place for helicopters controlled by the military. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.10, November 2000).

4) **civil heliport**

IHO Definition: A landing place for helicopters, often the roof of a building. (The Macquarie Dictionary, 1988).

5) **glider airfield**

IHO Definition: An area of land set aside for the take-off and landing of gliders. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.10, November 2000).

6) **small planes airfield**

IHO Definition: An area of land set aside for the take-off and landing of small aeroplanes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.10, November 2000).

8) **emergency airfield**

IHO Definition: An area of land set aside for the take-off and landing of aeroplanes or helicopters in times of emergency. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.10, November 2000).

9) **search and rescue airfield**

IHO Definition: An area of land set aside for the take-off and landing of aeroplanes or helicopters in times of search and rescue.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.10 category of anchorage (CATACH)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF ANCHORAGE**. Classification of an area where different use types of vessel can remain static.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **unrestricted anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which vessels anchor or may anchor. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **deep water anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which vessels of deep draught anchor or may anchor. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

3) **tanker anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which tankers anchor or may anchor. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

5) **quarantine anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area where a vessel anchors when satisfying quarantine regulations. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **seaplane anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which seaplanes anchor or may anchor. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

7) **small craft anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which yachts and small boats anchor or may anchor. (S-57 Edition 3.1,

Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

9) **anchorage for periods up to 24 hours**

IHO Definition: An area in which vessels anchor or may anchor for periods of up to 24 hours. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

10) **anchorage for a limited period of time**

IHO Definition: An area in which vessels may anchor for a period of time not to exceed a specific limit. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

14) **waiting anchorage**

IHO Definition: An area in which vessels anchor or may anchor while waiting, for example, for access to a port or berth.

15) **reported anchorage**

IHO Definition: A location not defined by a regulatory authority that has been reported to be suitable and safe for anchoring.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.11 category of built-up area (CATBUA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF BUILT-UP AREA**. Human settlement classification.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **urban area**

IHO Definition: An area predominantly occupied by man-made structures used for residential, commercial, and industrial purposes. (Nautical Chart Manual, US Department of Commerce, 1992).

2) **settlement**

IHO Definition: A continuously occupied concentration of tents or lightweight fixed structures (for example: huts) serving as residences. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **village**

IHO Definition: A self-contained group of houses and associated buildings, usually in a country area. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **town**

IHO Definition: An inhabited place larger and more regularly built and with more complete and independent local government than a village but not incorporated as a city. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **city**

IHO Definition: A major town inhabited by a large permanent community with all essential services. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **holiday village**

IHO Definition: A complex for holiday-makers with cottages, shops, and entertainment, on site, which is mainly populated on a seasonal basis. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.12 category of cable (CATCBL)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CABLE**. Classification of the cable based on the services provided.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **power line**

   IHO Definition: A cable that transmits or distributes electrical power. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **transmission line**

   IHO Definition: Multiple un-insulated cables usually supported by steel lattice towers. Such features are generally more prominent than normal power lines. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.16, November 2000).

4) **telephone**

   IHO Definition: A cable that transmits telephone signals. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **telegraph**

   IHO Definition: An apparatus, system or process for communication at a distance by electric transmission over wire. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2017).

6) **mooring cable**

   IHO Definition: A chain or very strong fibre or wire rope used to anchor or moor vessels or buoys. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **ferry**

   IHO Definition: A vessel for transporting passengers, vehicles, and/or goods across a stretch of wate especially as a regular service. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionar Register, 2016).

   A ferry cable is a cable or chain used to facilitate the movement of a ferry.

9) **junction cable**

   IHO Definition: A cable used for joining components of complex marine structures, for example mooring trots.

10) **telecommunications cable**

    IHO Definition: A cable used for the transmission and reception of modulated communication waves/signals. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Commented [TS114]: See DQWG Cross-Checks of S-101 Ed 1.1.0 FC with DCEG (Attributes) - email from Hugo 08/03/23. Issue with the different definitions in the DCEG and the FC (GI Registry). Perhaps there should be a discrete item "Ferry Cable"?

27.13 category of canal (CATCAN)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CANAL**. Classification of an artificial waterway used for travel, drainage, or irrigation.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **transportation**

   IHO Definition: A canal used for navigation as part of a transport system. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.17, November 2000).

2) **drainage**

   IHO Definition: A canal used to drain excess water from surrounding land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.17, November 2000).

3) **irrigation**

IHO Definition: A canal used to supply water for the purpose of irrigation. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.17, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.14 category of cardinal mark (CATCAM)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CARDINAL MARK**. The four quadrants (north, east, south and west) are bounded by the true bearings NW-NE, NE-SE, SE-SW and SW-NW taken from the point of interest.

A cardinal mark is named after the quadrant in which it is placed.

The name of the cardinal mark indicates that it should be passed to the named side of the mark. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **north cardinal mark**

IHO Definition: Quadrant bounded by the true bearing NW-NE taken from the point of interest; it should be passed to the north side of the mark. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

2) **east cardinal mark**

IHO Definition: Quadrant bounded by the true bearing NE-SE taken from the point of interest. It should be passed to the east side of the mark. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

3) **south cardinal mark**

IHO Definition: Quadrant bounded by the true bearing SE-SW taken from the point of interest; it should be passed to the south side of the mark. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

4) **west cardinal mark**

IHO Definition: Quadrant bounded by the true bearing SW-NW taken from the point of interest; it should be passed to the west side of the mark. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

Remarks:
- Cardinal marks do not have a distinctive shape but are normally pillar or spar. To conform to the IALA Maritime Buoyage System, they are always coloured in yellow and black horizontal bands and their distinctive double cone top-marks are always black. Cardinal marks may also have a special system of flashing white lights and if such lights are fitted they are encoded as separate **Light** features.

27.15 category of cargo

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CARGO**. Classification of the different types of cargo that a ship may be carrying. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **bulk**

IHO Definition: Unpacked homogenous cargo poured loose in a certain space of a vessel, for example oil or grain. (Inland ENC Harmonization Group, Feature Catalogue Edition 2.4).

2) **container**

IHO Definition: One of a number of standard sized cargo carrying units, secured using standard corner

attachments and bar. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

3) **general**

IHO Definition: Break bulk cargo normally loaded by crane. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

4) **liquid**

IHO Definition: Any cargo loaded by pipeline. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

5) **passenger**

IHO Definition: A fee paying traveller. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

6) **livestock**

IHO Definition: Live animals carried in bulk. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

7) **dangerous or hazardous**

IHO Definition: Dangerous or hazardous cargo as described by the IMO International Maritime Dangerous Goods code. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2016).

8) **heavy lift**

IHO Definition: Indivisible heavy items of weight generally over 100 tons, and width or height greater than 100 metres. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

9) **ballast**

IHO Definition: Material carried by a ship to ensure its stability. (Adapted from Oxford English Dictionary).

10) **dry bulk cargo**

IHO Definition: Commodity cargo that is transported unpackaged in large quantities. These types of goods usually need to be kept dry during the whole transportation period. (Adapted from WÄRTSILÄ Encyclopedia of Marine and Energy Technology).

11) **liquid bulk cargo**

IHO Definition: Liquids or gases that are transported in bulk and carried unpackaged. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

12) **reefer container cargo**

IHO Definition: Cargo transported in refrigerated containers, generally perishable commodities which require temperature-controlled transportation, such as fruit, meat, fish, vegetables, dairy products and other foods. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

13) **Ro-Ro cargo**

IHO Definition: Wheeled cargo, such as cars, busses, trucks, agricultural vehicles and cranes, that are driven on and off the ship on their own wheels or using a platform vehicle, such as a self-propelled modular transporter. (Wikipedia).

14) **project cargo**

IHO Definition: Project cargo is a term used to broadly describe the national or international transportation of large, heavy, high value, or critical (to the project they are intended for) pieces of equipment. Also commonly referred to as heavy lift, this includes shipments made of various components which need disassembly for shipment and reassembly after delivery. (Wikipedia).

15) **break bulk cargo**

IHO Definition: Goods that are stowed on board ship in individually counted units, and not in intermodal containers nor in bulk as with oil or grain. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.16 category of checkpoint (CATCHP)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CHECKPOINT**. Classification of a place where vehicles or travellers are stopped for identification or inspection.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **custom**

   IHO Definition: Serves as a government checkpoint where customs duties are collected, the flow of goods are regulated and restrictions enforced, and shipments or vehicles are cleared for entering or leaving a country. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.17 category of coastline (CATCOA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF COASTLINE**. Physical condition of the coastline.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **steep coast**

   IHO Definition: A coast backed by rock or earth cliffs, gives a good radar return and is useful for visual identification from a considerable distance off, where cliffs alternate with low lying coast along the shoreline. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.20, November 2000).

2) **flat coast**

   IHO Definition: A level coast with no obvious topographic features. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.20, November 2000).

6) **glacier, seaward end**

   IHO Definition: Projecting seaward extension of glacier, usually afloat. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **mangrove**

   IHO Definition: One of several genera of tropical trees or shrubs which produce many prop roots and grow along low lying coasts into shallow water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **marshy shore**

   IHO Definition: A shoreline area made up of spongy land saturated with water. It may have a shallow covering of water, usually with a considerable amount of vegetation appearing above the surface. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **ice coast**

   IHO Definition: A vertical cliff forming the seaward edge of an ice shelf, ranging in height between 2 metres to 50 metres or more above sea level. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.21, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.18 category of conveyor (CATCON)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CONVEYOR**. Classification of conveyor used for moving goods from one location to another.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **aerial cableway**

   IHO Definition: A transportation system consisting of load cables strung between pylons on which carrier units (for example: cars or buckets intended to transport people, material, and/or equipment) are suspended. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **belt conveyor**

   IHO Definition: A conveyor along which material or people are transported by means of a moving belt. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.23, November 2000).

3) **flume**

   IHO Definition: An artificial channel, usually an inclined chute or trough, for carrying water to furnish power, transport logs down a mountainside, etc. (Websters New World Dictionary Third College Edition).

4) **lift/elevator**

   IHO Definition: Any of various mechanical devices for raising objects or materials.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.19 category of crane (CATCRN)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF CRANE**. Classification of machines used for hoisting and moving heavy objects.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **container crane/gantry**

   IHO Definition: A high speed, shore-based crane used in the lift-on/lift-off operation of specially constructed containers. (Adapted from Nautical Chart Manual, US Department of Commerce, Coast and Geodetic Survey, 7th Edition).

3) **sheerlegs**

   IHO Definition: A tripodal structure used in dockyards and harbours for stepping masts or lifting loads in to and out of vessels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.25, November 2000).

4) **travelling crane**

   IHO Definition: A crane mounted on rails (track) that can move (usually parallel to the wharf face) in order to load and unload cargo vessels. (Canadian Hydrographic Service).

5) **A-frame**

   IHO Definition: A type of crane shaped like the letter “A”. (Canadian Hydrographic Service).

6) **goliath crane**

   IHO Definition: A powerful travelling crane mounted on a movable gantry of large span. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.20 category of dam (CATDAM)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF DAM**. Classification of a structure acting as barrier to water flow.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **weir**

   IHO Definition: A dam erected across a river to raise the level of the water. A fence of stakes set in a river or along the shore as a trap for fish. The word is now restricted to smaller works, the larger are called dams. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **dam**

   IHO Definition: A barrier to check or confine anything in motion; particularly one constructed to hold back water and raise its level to form a reservoir, or to prevent flooding. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **flood barrage**

   IHO Definition: An opening dam across a channel which, when required, is closed to control flood waters. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.26, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.21 category of dock (CATDOC)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF DOCK**. Classification of vessel dock.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **tidal**

   IHO Definition: A dock which is open to the sea and in which the water level is affected by tides. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.28, November 2000).

2) **wet dock**

   IHO Definition: A dock in which water can be maintained at any level by closing a gate when the water is at the desired level. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.22 category of dolphin

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF DOLPHIN**. Classification of a post or group of posts, used for mooring or warping a vessel. (Adapted from IHO dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **mooring dolphin**

   IHO Definition: A post or group of posts driven into the seabed or riverbed, used as a mooring point for vessels. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

2) **deviation dolphin**

   IHO Definition: A post or group of posts, which a vessel may swing around for compass adjustment. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **berthing dolphin**

   IHO Definition: A post or group of posts driven into the seabed or riverbed, used to extend the berth of a vessel by providing extra mooring points.

Commented [TS115]: Refer to comment in Registry Item Spreadsheet – suggest that the definition is changed accordingly.

4) **fender or breasting dolphin**

IHO Definition: A post or group of posts driven into the seabed or riverbed, used to assist in berthing of vessels by taking up some berthing loads; keep vessels from pressing against the pier structure; or to protect structures from possible impact by ships.

Commented [TS116]: Refer to NL review comment 15/01/24. To be discussed.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.23 category of dumping ground (CATDPG)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF DUMPING GROUND**. Classification of an area based on the type of waste being disposed of.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **chemical waste dumping ground**

IHO Definition: An area at sea where chemical waste is dumped. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.29, November 2000).

3) **nuclear waste dumping ground**

IHO Definition: An area at sea where nuclear waste is dumped. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.29, November 2000).

4) **explosives dumping ground**

IHO Definition: An area at sea where explosives are dumped. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.29, November 2000).

5) **spoil ground**

IHO Definition: A sea area where dredged material is deposited. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **vessel dumping ground**

IHO Definition: An area at sea where disused vessels are scuttled. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.29, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.24 category of fence (CATFNC)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF FENCE**. Classification of a physical boundary.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fence**

IHO Definition: A man-made barrier of relatively light structure used as an enclosure or boundary. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **hedge**

IHO Definition: A continuous growth of shrubbery planted as a fence, a boundary or a wind break. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **wall**

IHO Definition: A solid man-made barrier of generally heavy material used as an enclosure, boundary, or for protection. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.25 category of ferry (CATFRY)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF FERRY**. Classification of the manoeuvrability of the ferry vessel, not the various types of ferry vessel.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **free moving ferry**

   IHO Definition: A ferry which may have routes that vary with weather, tide and traffic. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.32, November 2000).

2) **cable ferry**

   IHO Definition: A ferry that follows a fixed route guided by a cable. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.32, November 2000).

3) **ice ferry**

   IHO Definition: A winter-time ferry which crosses a lead. (Finnish Maritime Administration).

5) **high speed ferry**

   IHO Definition: A high speed water vessel for civilian use.

Remarks:

- The attribute “category of ferry” does not encode the various types of ferry vessel, but the manoeuvrability of the ferry. The value “cable ferry” indicates a ferry that follows a fixed route guided by a cable. A cable ferry may hinder the flow of other traffic.

27.26 category of fishing facility (CATFIF)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF FISHING FACILITY**. Classification of fishing facility provided based on different fishing methods.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fishing stake**

   IHO Definition: Poles or stakes placed in shallow water to outline a fishing ground or to catch fish. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **fish trap**

   IHO Definition: A structure (usually portable) for catching fish. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **fish weir**

   IHO Definition: A fence of stakes or stones set in a river or along the shore to trap fish. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **tunny net**

   IHO Definition: A net built at sea for catching tunny. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.27 category of fog signal (CATFOG)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF FOG SIGNAL**. Classification of the various means of generating the fog signal.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **explosive**

IHO Definition: A signal produced by the firing of explosive charges. (Admiralty List of Lights and Fog Signals).

2) **diaphone**

IHO Definition: A diaphone uses compressed air and generally emits a powerful low-pitched sound, which often concludes with a brief sound of suddenly lowered pitch, termed the “grunt”. (Admiralty List of Lights and Fog Signals).

3) **siren**

IHO Definition: A type of fog signal apparatus which produces sound by virtue of the passage of air through slots or holes in a revolving disk. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **nautophone**

IHO Definition: A horn having a diaphragm oscillated by electricity. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **reed**

IHO Definition: A reed uses compressed air and emits a weak, high pitched sound. (Admiralty List of Lights and Fog Signals).

6) **tyfon**

IHO Definition: A diaphragm horn which operates under the influence of compressed air or steam. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **bell**

IHO Definition: A ringing sound with a short range. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.34, November 2000).

8) **whistle**

IHO Definition: A distinctive sound made by a jet of air passing through an orifice. The apparatus may be operated automatically, by hand or by air being forced up a tube by waves acting on a buoy. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.34, November 2000).

9) **gong**

IHO Definition: A sound produced by vibration of a disc when struck. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.34, November 2000).

10) **horn**

IHO Definition: A horn uses compressed air or electricity to vibrate a diaphragm and exists in a variety of types which differ greatly in their sound and power. (Admiralty List of Lights and Fog Signals).

Remarks:

- The apparatus may be operated automatically, by hand or by wave action.
- The attribute “category of fog signal” encodes the various means of generating the signal. The classification “horn” is the generic term for fog signals “nautophone”, “reed” and “tyfon”.

27.28 category of fortified structure (CATFOR)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF FORTIFIED STRUCTURE**. Classification of the different types of fortified structure.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **castle**

IHO Definition: A large fortified building or structure. (Adapted from The Collins Dictionary).

2) **fort**

IHO Definition: A fortified enclosure, building, or position able to be defended against an enemy. (The Collins Dictionary).

3) **battery**

IHO Definition: A fortified structure on which artillery is mounted. (The Collins Dictionary).

4) **blockhouse**

IHO Definition: A concrete structure strengthened to give protection against enemy fire, with apertures to allow defensive gunfire. (The Collins Dictionary).

5) **fortified tower**

IHO Definition: A small circular fort with very thick walls (for example Martello tower). (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **redoubt**

IHO Definition: An outwork or fieldwork usually square or polygonal and without flanking defences. (Concise Oxford Dictionary).

8) **fortified submarine shelter**

IHO Definition: A fortified pen to hold submarines.

9) **rampart**

IHO Definition: Anything serving as a bulwark or defence.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.29 category of gate (CATGAT)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF GATE**. Classification of a structure that can be swung, drawn, or lowered to block an entrance or a passageway.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **flood barrage gate**

IHO Definition: An opening gate used to control flood water. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **caisson**

IHO Definition: A steel structure used for closing the entrance of locks, wet and dry docks. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **lock gate**

IHO Definition: Pair of massive hinged doors at each end of a lock. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **dyke gate**

IHO Definition: An opening gate in a dyke. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **sluice**

IHO Definition: A sliding gate or other contrivance for changing the level of a body of water by controlling the flow into or out of it. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.30 category of harbour facility (CATHAF)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF HARBOUR FACILITY**. Classification of harbour use.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **RoRo terminal**

   IHO Definition: A terminal for roll-on roll-off ferries. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

3) **ferry terminal**

   IHO Definition: A terminal for passenger and vehicle ferries. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

4) **fishing harbour**

   IHO Definition: A harbour with facilities for fishing boats. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

5) **yacht harbour/marina**

   IHO Definition: A harbour facility for small boats, yachts, etc., where supplies, repairs, and various services are available. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **naval base**

   IHO Definition: A centre of operations for naval vessels. (Adapted from The Collins Dictionary).

7) **tanker terminal**

   IHO Definition: A terminal for the bulk handling of liquid cargoes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

8) **passenger terminal**

   IHO Definition: A terminal for the loading and unloading of passengers. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

9) **shipyard**

   IHO Definition: A place where ships are built or repaired. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **container terminal**

    IHO Definition: A terminal with facilities to load/unload or store shipping containers. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000, as amended).

11) **bulk terminal**

    IHO Definition: A terminal for the handling of bulk materials such as iron ore, coal, etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

12) **ship lift**

    IHO Definition: A platform powered by synchronous electric motors (for example syncrolift) used to lift vessels (larger than boats) in and out of the water. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.38, November 2000).

13) **straddle carrier**

    IHO Definition: A wheeled vehicle designed to lift and carry containers or vessels within its own framework. It is used for moving, and sometimes stacking, shipping containers and vessels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.39, November 2000).

14) **service harbour**

    IHO Definition: A harbour within which the floating equipment (dredges, tugs …) of harbour services are stationed.

15) **pilotage service**

IHO Definition: The services of a person who directs the movements of a vessel through pilot waters, usually a person who has demonstrated extensive knowledge of channels, aids to navigation, dangers to navigation, etc., in a particular area and is licensed for that area, are available. (Adapted from IHO Hydrographic Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.31 category of hulk (CATHLK)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF HULK**. Classification of an old or unseaworthy ship used for a new function.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **floating restaurant**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure (for example: an old ship) that is used as a restaurant. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **historic ship**

IHO Definition: A ship of historical interest permanently moored as a tourist attraction. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **floating museum**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure (for example: an old ship) that is used as a museum. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **floating accommodation**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure (for example: an old ship) that is used for accommodation. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **floating breakwater**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure, often constructed from old ships, used as a breakwater. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.40, November 2000).

6) **casino**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure, such as an old ship, used as a casino boat.

7) **training vessel**

IHO Definition: A permanently moored floating structure, often constructed from old ships, used for training purposes.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.32 category of ice (CATICE)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF ICE**. Classification of ice.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fast Ice**

IHO Definition: Sea ice which remains fast, generally in the position where originally formed, and which may attain a considerable thickness. It is found along coasts, where it is attached to the shore, or over shoals, where it may be held in position by islands, grounded icebergs or grounded polar ice. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **glacier**

IHO Definition: A mass of snow and ice continuously moving from higher to lower ground or, if afloat, continuously spreading. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **polar ice**

IHO Definition: Sea ice that is more than one year old (in contrast to winter ice). The WMO code defines polar ice as any sea ice more than one year old and more than 3 metres thick. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.33 category of installation buoy (CATINB)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF INSTALLATION BUOY**. Classification of fixed installation buoy.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **catenary anchor leg mooring**

IHO Definition: Incorporates a large buoy which remains on the surface at all times and is moored by 4 or more anchors. Mooring hawsers and cargo hoses lead from a turntable on top of the buoy, so that the buoy does not turn as the ship swings to wind and stream. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.42, November 2000).

2) **single buoy mooring**

IHO Definition: A large mooring buoy used by tankers to load and unload in port approaches or in offshore oil and gas fields. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.34 category of land region (CATLND)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF LAND REGION**. General terms for describing landscapes.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fen**

IHO Definition: A type of bog, especially a low-lying area, wholly or partly covered with water and dominated by grass-like plants, grasses, sedges and reeds. (The New Encyclopaedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

2) **marsh**

IHO Definition: An area of wet, often spongy ground that is subject to frequent flooding or tidal inundations, but not considered to be continually under water. It is characterized by the growth of non woody plants and by the lack of trees. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

3) **bog**

IHO Definition: Wet spongy ground consisting of decaying vegetation, which retains stagnant water, too soft to bear the weight of any heavy body. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **heathland**

IHO Definition: A tract of wasteland peat bog, usually covered by a low scrubby growth, but may have scattered small open water holes. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

5) **mountain range**

IHO Definition: A series of connected and aligned mountains or mountain ridges. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

6) **lowlands**

IHO Definition: Low and relatively level land at a lower elevation than adjoining areas. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

7) **canyon lands**

IHO Definition: A relatively narrow, deep depression with steep sides, the bottom of which generally has a continuous slope. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **paddy field**

IHO Definition: A piece of land set aside for crops which are periodically flooded (for example rice paddy). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.44, November 2000).

9) **agricultural land**

IHO Definition: Of or pertaining to the science or practice of cultivating the soil and rearing animals. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

10) **savanna/grassland**

IHO Definition: An open grassy plain with few or no trees in a tropical or subtropical region; a tract covered mainly by grasses that have little or no woody tissue. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

11) **parkland**

IHO Definition: A piece of ground kept for ornament and/or recreation or maintained in its natural state as a public property or area. (Websters New Collegiate Dictionary 1975).

12) **swamp**

IHO Definition: An area of spongy land saturated with water. It may have a shallow covering of water, usually with a considerable amount of vegetation appearing above the surface. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **landslide**

IHO Definition: The sliding down of a mass of land on a mountain or cliff-side; land which has so fallen. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

14) **lava flow**

IHO Definition: The substance that results from the cooling of molten rock. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

15) **salt pan**

IHO Definition: Shallow pools of brackish water used for the natural evaporation of sea water to obtain salt. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

16) **moraine**

IHO Definition: Any accumulation of loose material deposited by a glacier. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

17) **crater**

IHO Definition: Bowl-shaped cavity, at the summit or on the side of a volcano. (IHO Dictionary – S-32). Also a hole formed by the impact of a meteor. (Nautical Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

18) **cave**

IHO Definition: A natural subterranean chamber or series of chambers open to the earth's surface. (Merriam-Webster On-line Dictionary, March 2010).

19) **rock column or pinnacle**

IHO Definition: Any high tower or spire-shaped pillar of rock, alone or cresting a summit. (IHO Dictionary –

S-32).

20) **cay**

IHO Definition: A small insular feature usually with scant vegetation; usually of sand or coral. Often applied to smaller coral shoals. (United Kingdom Hydrographic Office – UKHO – The Mariners Handbook).

21) **wadi**

IHO Definition: A watercourse that is permanently dry or dry except for the rainy season. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- The attribute “category of land region” encodes general terms for describing landscapes.

27.35 category of landmark (CATLMK)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF LANDMARK**. Classification of prominent cultural and natural features in the landscape.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **cairn**

IHO Definition: A mound of stones, usually conical or pyramidal, raised as a landmark or to designate a point of importance in surveying. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **cemetery**

IHO Definition: A site and associated structures devoted to the burial of the dead. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **chimney**

IHO Definition: A vertical structure containing a passage or flue for discharging smoke and gases of combustion. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **dish aerial**

IHO Definition: A parabolic aerial for the receipt and transmission of high frequency radio signals. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **flagstaff**

IHO Definition: A staff or pole on which flags are raised. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **flare stack**

IHO Definition: A tall structure used for burning-off waste oil or gas. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **mast**

IHO Definition: A relatively tall structure usually held vertical by guy lines.

8) **windsock**

IHO Definition: A tapered fabric sleeve mounted so as to catch and swing with the wind, thus indicating the wind direction. (Navigation Dictionary, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1969).

9) **monument**

IHO Definition: A structure erected and/or maintained as a memorial to a person and/or event. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

10) **column/pillar**

IHO Definition: A cylindrical or slightly tapering body of considerably greater length than diameter erected vertically. (Oxford English Dictionary).

11) **memorial plaque**

IHO Definition: A slab of metal, usually ornamented, erected as a memorial to a person or event. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.46, November 2000).

12) **obelisk**

IHO Definition: A tapering shaft usually of stone or concrete, square or rectangular in section, with a pyramidal apex. (Adapted from Oxford English Dictionary).

13) **statue**

IHO Definition: A representation of a living being, sculptured, moulded, or cast in a variety of materials (for example: marble, metal, or plaster). (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

14) **cross**

IHO Definition: A monument, or other structure in form of a cross. (Funk & Wagnalls Dictionary).

15) **dome**

IHO Definition: A landmark comprising a hemispherical or spheroidal shaped structure. (Adapted from the Macquarie Dictionary).

16) **radar scanner**

IHO Definition: A device used for directing a radar beam through a search pattern. (Adapted from Navigation Dictionary, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1969).

17) **tower**

IHO Definition: A relatively tall, narrow structure that may either stand alone or may form part of another structure. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

18) **windmill**

IHO Definition: A system of vanes attached to a tower and driven by wind (excluding wind turbines). (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

20) **spire/minaret**

IHO Definition: A tall conical or pyramid-shaped structure often built on the roof or tower of a building, especially a church or mosque. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

21) **large rock or boulder on land**

IHO Definition: An isolated rocky formation or a single large stone. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

22) **triangulation mark**

IHO Definition: A recoverable point on the earth, whose geographic position has been determined by angular methods with geodetic instruments. A triangulation point is a selected point, which has been marked with a station mark, or it is a conspicuous natural or artificial feature. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

23) **boundary mark**

IHO Definition: A marker identifying the location of a surveyed boundary line. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

24) **observation wheel**

IHO Definition: Wheels with passenger cars mounted external to the rim and independently rotated by electric motors. (Wikipedia, 2019).

25) **torii**

IHO Definition: A form of decorative gateway or portal, consisting of two upright wooden posts connected at the top by two horizontal crosspieces, commonly found at the entrance to Shinto temples.

26) **bridge**

IHO Definition: A structure erected over a depression or an obstacle such as a body of water, railroad,

etc., to provide a roadway for vehicles or pedestrians. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

27) **dam**

IHO Definition: A barrier to check or confine anything in motion; particularly one constructed to hold back water and raise its level to form a reservoir, or to prevent flooding. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.36 category of lateral mark (CATLAM)

: IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF LATERAL MARK**. Classification of lateral marks in the IALA Buoyage System.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **port-hand lateral mark**

IHO Definition: Indicates the port boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the "conventional direction of buoyage". (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

2) **starboard-hand lateral mark**

IHO Definition: Indicates the starboard boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the "conventional direction of buoyage". (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

3) **preferred channel to starboard lateral mark**

IHO Definition: At a point where a channel divides, when proceeding in the "conventional direction of buoyage", the preferred channel (or primary route) is indicated by a modified port-hand lateral mark. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

4) **preferred channel to port lateral mark**

IHO Definition: At a point where a channel divides, when proceeding in the "conventional direction of buoyage", the preferred channel (or primary route) is indicated by a modified starboard-hand lateral mark. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

Remarks:
- There are two international buoyage regions, A and B, between which lateral marks differ. The buoyage region is encoded using the separate attribute **marks navigational – system of** (see clause 27.123). When retroreflectors and/or lights are fitted to these marks, they are encoded as separate features.
- The "conventional direction of buoyage" may be either the general direction taken by the Mariner when approaching a harbour, river, estuary or other waterway from seaward, or the direction determined by the proper authority, which in principle follows a clockwise direction around land masses.

27.37 category of light (CATLIT)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF LIGHT**. Classification of different light types.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

4) **leading light**

IHO Definition: A light associated with other lights so as to form a leading line to be followed. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **aero light**

IHO Definition: An aero light is established for aeronautical navigation and may be of higher power than marine lights and visible from well offshore. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.48, November 2000).

8) **flood light**

IHO Definition: A broad beam light used to illuminate a structure or area. (Adapted from The Collins Dictionary).

9) **strip light**

IHO Definition: A light whose source has a linear form generally horizontal, which can reach a length of several metres. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.48, November 2000).

10) **subsidiary light**

IHO Definition: A light placed on or near the support of a main light and having a special use in navigation. (Admiralty List of Radio Signals, UK Hydrographic Office).

11) **spotlight**

IHO Definition: A powerful light focused so as to illuminate a small area. (The Collins Dictionary).

12) **front**

IHO Definition: Term used with leading lights to describe the position of the light on the lead as viewed from seaward. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

13) **rear**

IHO Definition: Term used with leading lights to describe the position of the light on the lead as viewed from seaward. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

14) **lower**

IHO Definition: Term used with leading lights to describe the position of the light on the lead as viewed from seaward. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

15) **upper**

IHO Definition: Term used with leading lights to describe the position of the light on the lead as viewed from seaward. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

17) **emergency**

IHO Definition: A light available as a backup to a main light which will be illuminated should the main light fail. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

18) **bearing light**

IHO Definition: A light which enables its approximate bearing to be obtained without the use of a compass. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

19) **horizontally disposed**

IHO Definition: A group of lights of identical character and almost identical position, that are disposed horizontally. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

20) **vertically disposed**

IHO Definition: A group of lights of identical character and almost identical position, that are disposed vertically. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

Remarks:

- Marine light (a light intended primarily for marine navigation) is not included in the above list. All lights are considered to be marine lights unless the attribute “category of light” indicates otherwise.

27.38 category of marine farm/culture (CATMFA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF MARINE FARM/CULTURE**. Classification of an area of water devoted to the raising, breeding, or production of a specific aquatic animal.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **crustaceans**

IHO Definition: Hard shelled animals, for example crabs or lobsters. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.50, November 2000).

2) **edible bivalve molluscs**

IHO Definition: A two-part hinged external shell covering that contains a soft-bodied invertebrate. (Adapted from NOAA National Ocean Service).

3) **fish**

IHO Definition: Vertebrate cold blooded animal with gills, living in water. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.50, November 2000).

4) **seaweed**

IHO Definition: The general name for marine plants of the Algae class which grow in long narrow ribbons. (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Ed.).

5) **pearl culture farm**

IHO Definition: An area where pearls are artificially cultivated. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.50, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.39 category of military practice area (CATMPA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF MILITARY PRACTICE AREA**. Classification of area by military use.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **torpedo exercise area**

IHO Definition: An area within which exercises are carried out with torpedoes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.52, November 2000).

3) **submarine exercise area**

IHO Definition: An area within which submarine exercises are carried out. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.52, November 2000).

4) **firing danger area**

IHO Definition: Areas for bombing and missile exercises. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.52, November 2000).

5) **mine-laying practice area**

IHO Definition: An area within which mine laying exercises are carried out. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.52, November 2000).

6) **small arms firing range**

IHO Definition: An area for shooting pistols, rifles and machine guns etc. at a target. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.52, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.40 category of mooring area

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF MOORING AREA**. Classification of an area in which vessels may be secured to mooring buoys. (Adapted from IHO dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **small craft mooring area**

   IHO Definition: An area in which yachts and small boats moor. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.11, November 2000).

2) **mooring area for visitors**

   IHO Definition: An area set aside for the mooring of visiting vessels. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

3) **mooring area for tankers**

   IHO Definition: An area set aside for the mooring of tankers. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.41 category of navigation line (CATNAV)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF NAVIGATION LINE**. Classification of route guidance given to vessels.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **clearing line**

   IHO Definition: A straight line that marks the boundary between a safe and a dangerous area or that passes clear of a navigational danger. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

2) **transit line**

   IHO Definition: A line passing through one or more fixed marks. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.55, November 2000).

3) **leading line bearing a recommended track**

   IHO Definition: A line passing through one or more clearly defined objects, along the path of which a vessel can approach safely up to a certain distance off. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.42 category of obstruction (CATOBS)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF OBSTRUCTION**. Classification of objects that impede movement.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **snag/stump**

   IHO Definition: A tree, branch or broken pile embedded in the ocean floor, river or lake bottom and not visible on the surface, forming thereby a hazard to vessels. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **wellhead**

   IHO Definition: A submarine structure projecting some distance above the seabed and capping a temporarily abandoned or suspended oil or gas well. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **diffuser**

IHO Definition: A structure on an outfall through which liquids are discharged. The structure will usually project above the level of the outfall and can be an obstruction to navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **crib**

IHO Definition: A permanent marine structure usually designed to support or elevate pipelines; especially a structure enclosing a screening device at the offshore end of a potable water intake pipe. The structure is commonly a heavy timber enclosure that has been sunken with rocks or other debris. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **fish haven**

IHO Definition: Areas established by private interests, usually sport fishermen, to simulate natural reefs and wrecks that attract fish. The reefs are constructed by dumping assorted junk in areas which may be of very small extent or may stretch a considerable distance along a depth contour. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.56, November 2000).

6) **foul area**

IHO Definition: An area of numerous unidentified dangers to navigation. The area serves as a warning to the mariner that all dangers are not identified individually and that navigation through the area may be hazardous. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **ice boom**

IHO Definition: Floating barriers, anchored to the bottom, used to deflect the path of floating ice in order to prevent the obstruction of locks, intakes, etc., and to prevent damage to bridge piers and other structures. (Canadian Hydrographic Service, Chart specifications).

9) **ground tackle**

IHO Definition: Equipment such as anchors, concrete blocks, chains and cables, etc., used to position floating structures such as trot and mooring buoys etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.57, November 2000).

10) **boom**

IHO Definition: A floating barrier used to protect a river or harbour mouth or to create a sheltered area for storage purposes. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

12) **wave energy device**

IHO Definition: A device to extract energy from the surface motion of ocean waves or from pressure fluctuations below the surface.

13) **subsurface ocean data acquisition system**

IHO Definition: A submerged device, not being a ship, together with its appurtenant equipment, deployed at sea essentially for the purpose of collecting, storing or transmitting samples or data relating to the marine environment. (Adapted from Wikipedia, 2018).

14) **artificial reef**

IHO Definition: A man-made structure that may mimic some of the characteristics of a natural reef, intended to attract sea life. (Adapted from NOAA National Ocean Service).

15) **template**

IHO Definition: A structure placed on the seafloor below a drilling rig to guide the drill. (Adapted from IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

16) **manifold**

IHO Definition: A large steel structure up to 20 metres in height above the seafloor, or a steel frame secured to the seafloor with piles to anchor the end of a submarine pipeline, for delivery to a production platform. (Adapted from IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

17) **submerged pingo**

IHO Definition: A hill of soil-covered ice pushed up by hydrostatic pressure in an area of permafrost that is located underwater.

18) **remains of platform**

IHO Definition: The distributed remains of a platform.

19) **scientific instrument**

IHO Definition: An instrument used for scientific purposes.

20) **underwater turbine**

IHO Definition: Any of various machines having a rotor, usually with vanes or blades, driven by the pressure, momentum, or reactive thrust of a moving fluid, as steam, water, hot gases, or air, either occurring in the form of free jets or as a fluid passing through and entirely filling a housing around the rotor and is located underwater.

21) **active submarine volcano**

IHO Definition: An active seabed volcano, which may be submerged or projecting above the water at the chart sounding datum. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

22) **shark net**

IHO Definition: A submerged net placed around beaches to reduce shark attacks on swimmers. (Wikipedia).

23) **mangrove**

IHO Definition: One of several genera of tropical trees or shrubs which produce many prop roots and grow along low-lying coasts into shallow water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.43 category of offshore platform (CATOFP)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF OFFSHORE PLATFORM**. Classification of an offshore raised structure.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **oil rig**

IHO Definition: A temporary mobile structure, either fixed or floating, used in the exploration stages of oil and gas fields. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **production platform**

IHO Definition: A term used to indicate a permanent offshore structure equipped to control the flow of oil or gas. It does not include entirely submarine structures. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **observation/research platform**

IHO Definition: A platform from which one's surroundings or events can be observed, noted or recorded such as for scientific study. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32, Edition 5).

4) **articulated loading platform**

IHO Definition: A metal lattice tower, buoyant at one end and attached at the other by a universal joint to a concrete filled base on the seabed. The platform may be fitted with a helicopter platform, emergency accommodation and hawser/hose retrieval. (Adapted from United Kingdom Hydrographic Office CSDO 607.2 (12), May 1994).

5) **single anchor leg mooring**

IHO Definition: A rigid frame or tube with a buoyancy device at its upper end, secured at its lower end to a universal joint on a large steel or concrete base resting on the seabed, and at its upper end to a mooring buoy by a chain or wire. (Adapted from United Kingdom Hydrographic Office CSDO 607.2 (12), May

1994).

6) **mooring tower**

IHO Definition: A platform secured to the seabed and surmounted by a turntable to which ships moor. (Adapted from United Kingdom Hydrographic Office CSDO 607.2 (12), May 1994).

7) **artificial island**

IHO Definition: A man-made structure usually built for the exploration or exploitation of marine resources, marine scientific research, tidal observations, etc. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **floating production, storage and off-loading vessel**

IHO Definition: An offshore facility consisting of a moored tanker/barge by which the product is extracted, stored or exported. (Adapted from United Kingdom Hydrographic Office CSDO 607.2 (13), May 1994).

9) **accommodation platform**

IHO Definition: A platform used primarily for eating, sleeping and recreation purposes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.59, November 2000).

10) **navigation, communication and control buoy**

IHO Definition: A floating structure with control room, power and storage facilities, attached to the seabed by a flexible pipeline and cables. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.59, November 2000).

11) **floating oil tank**

IHO Definition: A floating structure, anchored to the seabed, for storing oil. (Adapted from IHO Hydrographic Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.44 category of offshore production area *(CATPRA)*

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF OFFSHORE PRODUCTION AREA**. Classification of an area at sea within which there are production facilities. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 1, Page 1.113, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **wind farm**

IHO Definition: A collection of wind turbines that are collocated and are organized as a single power generation unit. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **wave farm**

IHO Definition: A collection of collocated devices which harness wave energy and are organized as a single power generation unit. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **current farm**

IHO Definition: A collection of collocated devices which harness tidal energy and are organized as a single power generation unit. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **tank farm**

IHO Definition: A collection of collocated large-capacity tanks in which petroleum, natural gas, or liquid petrochemicals are stored. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **seabed material extraction area**

IHO Definition: An area in which materials forming, or under, the seabed are removed.

6) **solar farm**

IHO Definition: A large-scale photovoltaic system (PV system) designed for the supply of merchant power into the electricity grid. They are differentiated from most building-mounted and other decentralised solar power applications because they supply power at the utility level, rather than to a local user or users. The generic expression utility-scale solar is sometimes used to describe this type of project. (Wikipedia).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.45 category of oil barrier (CATOLB)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF OIL BARRIER**. Classification of barriers used to prevent the unwanted spread of oil across the sea surface.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **oil retention (high pressure pipe)**

IHO Definition: A pipe with holes from which air blows. When the air bubbles reach the surface they form a barrier which prevents the spread of oil. (Kort- og Matrikelstyrelsen, Denmark).

2) **floating oil barrier**

IHO Definition: A floating tube shaped structure, with a curtain (2 metre) hanging under it, below the surface, which prevents the spread of oil. (Kort- og Matrikelstyrelsen, Denmark).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.46 category of opening bridge (CATBRG)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF OPRNING BRIDGE**. Classification of opening structures spanning and providing passage over a gap or barrier, such as a river or roadway.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

3) **swing bridge**

IHO Definition: A movable bridge (or span thereof) which rotates in a horizontal plane about a vertical pivot to allow the passage of vessels. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **lifting bridge**

IHO Definition: A movable bridge (or span thereof) which is capable of being lifted vertically to allow vessels to pass beneath. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **bascule bridge**

IHO Definition: A counterpoise bridge rotated in a vertical plane about an axis at one or both ends. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **pontoon bridge**

IHO Definition: A fixed floating bridge supported by pontoons. (McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms, 3rd Edition, 1984).

7) **drawbridge**

IHO Definition: A general name for bridges of which part or the entire span of the bridge may be raised or drawn aside to allow ships to pass through. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.47 category of pile (CATPLE)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PILE**. Classification of pile, driven into the earth as a foundation or support for a structure.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **stake**

   IHO Definition: An elongated wood or metal pole embedded in the seabed to serve as a marker or support. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **post**

   IHO Definition: A vertical piece of timber, metal or concrete forced into the earth or seabed. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **tripodal**

   IHO Definition: A single structure comprising 3 or more piles held together (sections of heavy timber, steel or concrete), and forced into the earth or seabed. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.61, November 2000).

5) **piling**

   IHO Definition: A number of piles, usually in a straight line, and usually connected or bolted together. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **area of piles**

   IHO Definition: A number of piles, usually in a straight line, but not connected by structural members (Australian Hydrographic Office).

7) **pipe**

   IHO Definition: A vertical hollow cylinder of metal, wood, or other material forced into the earth or seabed (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.61, November 2000).

8) **mooring post**

   IHO Definition: A post where to which something (such as a craft) can be moored. (Adapted from Merriam Webster Dictionary – 2023).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Commented [TS117]: Consider relevance of word "wood" in definition for **category of pile** of 7 (pipe).
IHO Sec: If considered that this change is required, will require a clarification in the IHO GI Registry.

Commented [TS118]: Refer to NL review comment 15/01/24. To be discussed.

27.48 category of pilot boarding place (CATPIL)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PILOT BOARDING PLACE**. Classification of pilot boarding method.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **boarding by pilot-cruising vessel**

   IHO Definition: Pilot boards from a cruising vessel. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.62, November 2000).

2) **boarding by helicopter**

   IHO Definition: Pilot boards by helicopter which comes out from the shore. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.62, November 2000).

3) **pilot comes out from shore**

   IHO Definition: Pilot embarks from a vessel or disembarks to a vessel which comes out from the shore on request. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.62, November 2000).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.49 category of pipeline/pipe (CATPIP)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PIPELINE/PIPE**. Classification of a pipe systems use.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **outfall pipe**

   IHO Definition: A pipe (generally a sewer or drainage pipe) discharging into the sea or a river. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **intake pipe**

   IHO Definition: A pipe taking water from a river or other body of water, to drive a mill or supply a canal, waterworks, etc. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **sewer**

   IHO Definition: A pipe in a sewage system for carrying water or sewage to a disposal area. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **bubbler system**

   IHO Definition: A submerged pipe from which warm water bubbles, preventing the surrounding water from freezing. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.63, November 2000).

6) **supply pipe**

   IHO Definition: A pipe used for transport (supply) of gas or liquid product. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

7) **bubble curtain**

   IHO Definition: A high pressure sub-surface pipeline (usually on the seafloor) with holes emitting a curtain of air bubbles. Its uses include: the prevention of acoustic transmission through the water; preventing the spread of surface debris or floating liquids; controlling the movement of fish. (IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.50 category of preference

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PREFERENCE**. The selection of a first choice compared to other options.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **primary**

   IHO Definition: The preferred first choice used in normal conditions.

2) **alternate**

   IHO Definition: The preferred choice in extraordinary conditions.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.51 category of production area (CATPRA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PRODUCTION AREA**. Classification of an area set aside for heavy industry.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **quarry**

   IHO Definition: An open-air excavation for the extraction of stone intended principally for use in construction. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **mine**

   IHO Definition: An excavation made in the terrain for the purpose of extracting and/or exploiting natural resources. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **stockpile**

   IHO Definition: A reserve stock of material, equipment or other supplies. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.64, November 2000).

4) **power station area**

   IHO Definition: A facility including one or more buildings and equipment used for power generation. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **refinery area**

   IHO Definition: A facility where petroleum and/or petroleum products are refined. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **timber yard**

   IHO Definition: An open tract for the storage of wooden lumber and timbers. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

7) **factory area**

   IHO Definition: A group of buildings where goods are manufactured. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.64, November 2000).

8) **tank farm**

   IHO Definition: A collection of collocated large-capacity tanks in which petroleum, natural gas, or liquid petrochemicals are stored. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

9) **wind farm**

   IHO Definition: A collection of wind turbines that are collocated and are organized as a single power generation unit. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **slag heap/spoil heap**

    IHO Definition: Hill of refuse from a mine, industrial plant etc. on land. (Adapted from Concise Oxford Dictionary).

11) **production plant**

    IHO Definition: A plant where production takes place.

12) **solar farm**

    IHO Definition: A large-scale photovoltaic system (PV system) designed for the supply of merchant power into the electricity grid. They are differentiated from most building-mounted and other decentralised solar power applications because they supply power at the utility level, rather than to a local user or users. The generic expression utility-scale solar is sometimes used to describe this type of project. (Wikipedia).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.52 category of pylon (CATPYL)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF PYLON**. Classification of the pylon based on the service it is supporting.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **power transmission pylon/pole**

   IHO Definition: A pylon or pole that supports one or more power lines. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **telephone/telegraph pylon/pole**

   IHO Definition: A pylon or pole that supports one or more communication lines. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **aerial cableway pylon**

   IHO Definition: A tower or pylon supporting steel cables which convey cars, buckets, or other suspended carrier units. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature and Attribute Coding Catalogue, Edition 1.2).

4) **bridge pylon/tower**

   IHO Definition: A tower and/or pylon from which the deck of a bridge is suspended. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **bridge pier**

   IHO Definition: A pillar or abutment that supports a bridge span. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

6) **pipeline pylon**

   IHO Definition: A tower or pylon supporting a suspended pipeline or pipelines. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature and Attribute Coding Catalogue, Edition 1.2).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.53 category of radar station (CATRAS)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF RADAR STATION**. Classification of radar station based on the services offered.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **radar surveillance station**

   IHO Definition: A radar station established for traffic surveillance. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **coast radar station**

   IHO Definition: A shore-based station which the mariner can contact by radio to obtain a position. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.68, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.54 category of radar transponder beacon (CATRTB)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF RADAR TRANSPONDER BEACON**. Classification of radar transponder beacon based on functionality.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **ramark, radar beacon transmitting continuously**

IHO Definition: A radar marker beacon which continuously transmits a signal appearing as a radial line on a radar screen, the line indicating the direction of the beacon. Ramarks are intended primarily for marine use. The name "ramark" is derived from the words radar marker. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **racon, radar transponder beacon**

IHO Definition: A radar beacon which returns a coded signal which provides identification of the beacon, as well as range and bearing. The range and bearing are indicated by the location of the first character received on the radar screen. The name "racon" is derived from the words radar beacon. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **leading racon/radar transponder beacon**

IHO Definition: A radar beacon that may be used (in conjunction with at least one other radar beacon) to indicate a leading line. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.69, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.55 category of radio station (CATROS)

Commented [TS119]: Consider creating a new value 21 (VHF-based emergency station) for attribute **category of radio station** (would need to be proposed to IHO Registry).
IHO Sec: Support removing value *5* and adding new value *21*; however requires a proposal that includes a definition for the new value. Note also that if this change is approved, clause 21.4.2 will also need to be amended.

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF RADIO STATION**. Classification of radio services offered by a radio station.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

5) **radio direction-finding station**

IHO Definition: A radio station intended to determine only the direction of other stations by means of transmission from the latter. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **differential GNSS**

IHO Definition: Differential GNSS is implemented by placing a GNSS monitor receiver at a precisely known location. Instead of computing a navigation fix, the monitor determines the range error to every GNSS satellite it can track. These ranging errors are then transmitted to local users where they are applied as corrections before computing the navigation result. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **Toran**

IHO Definition: An electronic position fixing system used mainly by aircraft. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.71, November 2000).

14) **Chaika**

IHO Definition: A low frequency electronic position fixing system using pulsed transmissions at 100 KHz. (Admiralty List of Radio Signals, UK Hydrographic Office, Volume 2, 1995).

19) **radio telephone station**

IHO Definition: The equipment needed at one station to carry on two way voice communication by radio waves only. (Websters New World Dictionary Third College Edition).

20) **AIS base station**

IHO Definition: An onshore AIS unit that monitors traffic in the waterways. (http://www.allaboutais.com/index.php/en/aisbasics1/glossary-of-ais-terms).

Remarks:
- A radiobeacon is a radio transmitter which emits a distinctive or characteristic signal on which a bearing may be taken.

27.56 category of rescue station (CATRSC)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF RESCUE STATION**. Classification of aid station based on life saving equipment.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **rescue station with lifeboat**

   IHO Definition: A place where equipment for saving life at sea is maintained; the type of lifeboat may vary from fast, long distance boats to inflatable inshore boats. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

2) **rescue station with rocket**

   IHO Definition: A life saving station equipped with line-carrying rocket apparatus. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **refuge for shipwrecked mariners**

   IHO Definition: Shelter or protection from danger or distress at sea. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

5) **refuge for intertidal area walkers**

   IHO Definition: Shelter or protection from danger in areas exposed to extreme and sudden tides or tidal streams. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

6) **lifeboat lying at a mooring**

   IHO Definition: A place where a lifeboat is moored ready for use. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

7) **aid radio station**

   IHO Definition: A radio station reserved for emergency situations; might also be a public telephone. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

8) **first aid equipment**

   IHO Definition: A place where first aid equipment is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.74, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.57 category of restricted area (CATREA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF RESTRICTED AREA**. The official legal status of each kind of restricted area defines the kind of restriction(s), for example the restriction for a ‘game reserve’ may be ‘entering prohibited’.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **offshore safety zone**

   IHO Definition: The area around an offshore installation within which vessels are prohibited from entering without permission. Special regulations protect installations within a safety zone and vessels of all nationalities are required to respect the zone. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **nature reserve**

   IHO Definition: A tract of land or water managed so as to preserve its flora, fauna, physical features, etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.75, November 2000, as amended).

5) **bird sanctuary**

   IHO Definition: A place where birds are bred and protected. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.75, November 2000).

6) **game reserve**

IHO Definition: A place where wild animals or birds hunted for sport or food are kept undisturbed for private use. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.75, November 2000).

7) **seal sanctuary**

IHO Definition: A place where seals are protected. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.75, November 2000).

8) **degaussing range**

IHO Definition: An area, usually about two cables diameter, within which ships' magnetic fields may be measured; sensing instruments and cables are installed on the seabed in the range and there are cables leading from the range to a control position ashore. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

9) **military area**

IHO Definition: An area controlled by the military in which restrictions may apply. (Australian Hydrographic Office).

10) **historic wreck area**

IHO Definition: An area around certain wrecks of historical importance to protect the wrecks from unauthorized interference by diving, salvage or deposition (including anchoring). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

12) **navigational aid safety zone**

IHO Definition: An area around a navigational aid which vessels are prohibited from entering. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

14) **minefield**

IHO Definition: An area laid and maintained with explosive mines for defence or practice purposes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

18) **swimming area**

IHO Definition: An area in which people may swim and therefore vessel movement may be restricted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

19) **waiting area**

IHO Definition: An area reserved for vessels waiting to enter a harbour. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

20) **research area**

IHO Definition: An area where marine research takes place. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

21) **dredging area**

IHO Definition: An area where dredging is taking place. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

22) **fish sanctuary**

IHO Definition: A place where fish (including shellfish and crustaceans) are protected. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000, as amended).

23) **ecological reserve**

IHO Definition: A tract of land or water managed so as to preserve the relation of plants and living creatures to each other and to their surroundings. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000, as amended).

24) **no wake area**

IHO Definition: An area in which a vessels' speed must be reduced in order to reduce the size of the wake

it produces. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

25) **swinging area**

IHO Definition: An area where vessels turn. (Service Hydrographique et Océanographique de la Marine, France).

27) **environmentally sensitive sea area**

IHO Definition: A generic term which may be used to describe a wide range of areas, considered sensitive for a variety of environmental reasons. (IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

28) **particularly sensitive sea area**

IHO Definition: An area that needs special protection through action by IMO because of its significance for regional ecological, socio-economic or scientific reasons and because it may be vulnerable to damage by international shipping activities. (IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

29) **disengagement area**

IHO Definition: An area near a fairway where vessels can go to clear the way or make an about turn and possibly return to a waiting area when nautical conditions impose it.

30) **port security area**

IHO Definition: An area in which defence, law and treaty enforcement, and counter-terrorism activities that fall within the port and maritime domain apply. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

31) **coral sanctuary**

IHO Definition: A place where coral is protected.

32) **recreation area**

IHO Definition: An area within which recreational activities regularly take place and therefore vessel movement may be restricted. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.76, November 2000).

Remarks:

- The official legal status of each kind of restricted area defines the kind of restriction(s), for example the restriction for a “game preserve” may be “entering prohibited”; the restriction for an “anchoring prohibition area” is “anchoring prohibited”.

27.58 category of road (CATROD)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF ROAD**. Classification of a road based on size.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **motorway**

IHO Definition: A limited access dual carriageway road specially designed for fast long-distance traffic and subject to special regulations concerning its use. It may have more than two lanes. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **major road**

IHO Definition: A hard surfaced (metalled) road; a main through route. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.77, November 2000).

3) **minor road**

IHO Definition: A secondary road for local traffic. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.77, November 2000).

4) **track/path**

IHO Definition: Track – a rough path or way formed by use. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Path – a way or track laid down for walking or made by continual treading. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **major street**

IHO Definition: A main road, in an urban area, for through traffic. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.77, November 2000).

6) **minor street**

IHO Definition: A secondary road, in an urban area, for local traffic. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.77, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.59 category of schedule

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SCHEDULE**. The type of schedule, for instance opening, closure, etc.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **normal operation**

IHO Definition: The service, office, is open, fully manned, and operating normally, or the area is accessible as usual.

2) **closure**

IHO Definition: The service, office, or area is closed.

3) **unmanned operation**

IHO Definition: The service is available but not manned.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.60 category of sea area (CATSEA)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SEA AREA**. Classification of an area based on its physical characteristics.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **gat**

IHO Definition: A natural or artificial passage or channel through shoals or steep banks, or across a line of banks lying between two channels. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **bank**

IHO Definition: An elevation of the seafloor, at depths generally less than 200 m, but sufficient for safe surface navigation, commonly found on the continental shelf or near an island. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

4) **deep**

IHO Definition: In oceanography, an obsolete term which was generally restricted to depths greater than 6,000 m. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **bay**

IHO Definition: A wide indentation in the coastline generally smaller than a gulf and larger than a cove. For the purposes of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea, a bay is a well-marked indentation whose penetration is in such proportion to the width of its mouth as to contain land locked waters and constitute more than a mere curvature of the coast. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **trench**

IHO Definition: A long, deep, asymmetrical depression with relatively steep sides, that is associated with subduction. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

7) **basin**

IHO Definition: A depression of the seafloor more or less equidimensional in plan and of variable extent. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **mud flats**

IHO Definition: A level tract of land, as the bed of a dry lake or an area frequently uncovered at low tide. Usually in plural. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

9) **reef**

IHO Definition: A shallow elevation composed of consolidated material that may constitute a hazard to surface navigation. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

10) **ledge**

IHO Definition: A rocky formation continuous with and fringing the shore. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **canyon**

IHO Definition: An elongated, narrow, steep-sided depression that generally deepens down-slope. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

12) **narrows**

IHO Definition: A navigable narrow part of a bay, strait, river, etc. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **shoal**

IHO Definition: A shallow elevation composed of unconsolidated material that may constitute a hazard to surface navigation. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

14) **knoll**

IHO Definition: A distinct elevation with a rounded profile less than 1000m above the surrounding relief as measured from the deepest isobath that surrounds most of the feature. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

15) **ridge**

IHO Definition: An elongated elevation of varying complexity and size, generally having steep sides. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

16) **seamount**

IHO Definition: A distinct generally equidimensional elevation greater than 1000m above the surrounding relief as measured from the deepest isobath that surrounds most of the feature. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

17) **pinnacle**

IHO Definition: Any high tower or spire-shaped pillar or rock or coral, alone or cresting a summit. It may extend above the surface of the water. It may or may not be a hazard to surface navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

18) **abyssal plain**

IHO Definition: An extensive, flat, gently sloping or nearly level region at abyssal depths. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, 2nd Edition).

19) **plateau**

IHO Definition: A large, relatively flat elevation that is higher than the surrounding relief with one or more relatively steep sides. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

20) **spur**

IHO Definition: A subordinate ridge protruding from a larger feature. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

21) **shelf**

IHO Definition: The flat or gently sloping region adjacent to a continent or around an island that extends from the low water line to a depth, generally about 200m, where there is a marked increase in downward slope. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

22) **trough**

IHO Definition: A long depression generally wide and flat bottomed with symmetrical and parallel sides. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

23) **saddle**

IHO Definition: A broad pass or col in a ridge, rise or other elevation. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

24) **abyssal hill**

IHO Definition: An isolated small elevation on the deep seafloor. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

25) **apron**

IHO Definition: A gently dipping slope, with a smooth surface, commonly found around groups of islands and seamounts. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

26) **archipelagic apron**

IHO Definition: A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface of the seafloor, characteristically found around groups of islands or seamounts. (Adapted from IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

27) **borderland**

IHO Definition: A region adjacent to a continent, normally occupied by or bordering a shelf and sometimes emerging as islands, that is irregular or blocky in plan or profile, with depths well in excess of those typical of a shelf. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

28) **continental margin**

IHO Definition: The zone, generally consisting of shelf, slope and rise, separating the continent from the deep seafloor or abyssal plain or plain. Occasionally a trench may be present in place of a continental rise.. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

29) **continental rise**

IHO Definition: A gentle slope rising from the oceanic depths towards the foot of a continental slope. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

30) **escarpment**

IHO Definition: An elongated, characteristically linear, steep slope separating horizontal or gently sloping areas of the seafloor. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

31) **fan**

IHO Definition: A relatively smooth, depositional feature continuously deepening away from a sediment source commonly located at the lower termination of a canyon or canyon system. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

32) **fracture zone**

IHO Definition: A long narrow zone of irregular topography formed by the movement of tectonic plates associated with an offset of a spreading ridge axis, characterized by steep-sided and/or asymmetrical ridges, troughs or escarpments. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names,

Edition 4.1.0).

33) **gap**

IHO Definition: A narrow break in a ridge, rise or other elevation. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

34) **guyot**

IHO Definition: A seamount having a comparatively smooth flat top. (IHO Dictionary – S-32 and IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

35) **hill**

IHO Definition: A distinct elevation generally of irregular shape, less than 1000m above the surrounding relief as measured from the deepest isobath that surrounds most of the feature. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

36) **hole**

IHO Definition: A depression of limited extent with all sides rising steeply from a relatively flat bottom. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

37) **levee**

IHO Definition: A depositional embankment bordering a canyon, valley or sea channel. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

38) **median valley**

IHO Definition: The axial depression of the mid-oceanic ridge system. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

39) **moat**

IHO Definition: An annular or partially annular depression commonly located at the base of seamounts, islands and other isolated elevations. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.1.0).

40) **mountains**

IHO Definition: A natural elevation of the earth's surface rising more or less abruptly from the surrounding level, and attaining an altitude which, relatively to adjacent elevations, is impressive or notable. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

41) **peak**

IHO Definition: A conical or pointed elevation on a larger feature such as a seamount. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

42) **province**

IHO Definition: A geographically distinct region with a number of shared physiographic characteristics that contrast with those in the surrounding areas. This term should be modified with the generic term that best describes the majority of features in the region, for example "Seamount" in "Baja California Seamount Province". (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

43) **rise**

IHO Definition: A broad elevation that generally rises gently and smoothly from the surrounding relief. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

44) **sea channel**

IHO Definition: An elongated, meandering depression, usually occurring on a gently sloping plain or fan. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

45) **seamount chain**

IHO Definition: Several seamounts in linear or arcuate alignment. (Adapted from IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, 2nd Edition).

46) **shelf-edge**

IHO Definition: The line along which there is a marked increase in slope at the seaward margin of a shelf. (Adapted from IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

47) **sill**

IHO Definition: A relatively shallow barrier between BASINS that may inhibit water movement. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

48) **slope**

IHO Definition: The sloping region that deepens from a shelf to the point where there is a general decrease in gradient. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

49) **terrace**

IHO Definition: A flat or gently sloping region, generally long and narrow, bounded along one edge by a steeper descending slope and along the other by a steeper ascending slope. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

50) **valley**

IHO Definition: An elongated depression that generally widens and deepens down-slope. (IHO-IOC Publication B-6, Standardization of Undersea Feature Names, Edition 4.2.0).

51) **canal**

IHO Definition: An artificial waterway with no flow, or a controlled flow, used for navigation, or for draining or irrigating land (ditch). (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

52) **lake**

IHO Definition: A large body of water entirely surrounded by land. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

53) **river**

IHO Definition: A relatively large natural stream of water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

54) **reach**

IHO Definition: A straight section of a river, especially a navigable river between two bends; or an arm of the sea extending into the land. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

55) **intertidal cay**

IHO Definition: A low, flat island of sand, coral, etc. awash or submerged at high water. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

56) **submarine volcano**

IHO Definition: A seabed volcano, submerged at the chart sounding datum, which may or may not be active. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.61 category of shoreline construction (CATSLC)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SHORELINE CONSTRUCTION**. Classification of shoreline construction based on use.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **breakwater**

IHO Definition: A structure protecting a shore area, harbour, anchorage, or basin from waves. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **groyne**

IHO Definition: A low artificial wall-like structure of durable material extending from the land to seaward for a particular purpose, such as to protect the coast or to force a current to scour a channel. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **mole**

IHO Definition: A form of breakwater alongside which vessels may lie on the sheltered side only; in some cases it may lie entirely within an artificial harbour, permitting vessels to lie along both sides. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.84, November 2000).

4) **pier (jetty)**

IHO Definition: A long, narrow structure extending into the water to afford a berthing place for vessels, to serve as a promenade, etc. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **promenade pier**

IHO Definition: A pier built only for recreational purposes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.84, November 2000).

6) **wharf**

IHO Definition: A structure serving as a berthing place for vessels. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **training wall**

IHO Definition: A wall or bank, often submerged, built to direct or confine the flow of a river or tidal current, or to promote a scour action. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32 and IHO Chart Specifications, S-4).

8) **rip rap**

IHO Definition: A layer of broken rock, cobbles, boulders, or fragments of sufficient size to resist the erosive forces of flowing water and wave action. (Adapted from Marine Chart Manual, US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration – NOAA, 1992).

9) **revetment**

IHO Definition: Facing of stone or other material, either permanent or temporary, placed along the edge of a stream, river or canal to stabilize the bank and to protect it from the erosive action of the stream. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **sea wall**

IHO Definition: An embankment or wall for protection against waves or tidal action along a shore or water front. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **landing steps**

IHO Definition: Steps at the shoreline as the connection between land and water on different levels. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

12) **ramp**

IHO Definition: A sloping structure which may include rails that can either be used, as a landing place, at variable water levels, for small vessels, landing ships, or a ferry boat, or for hauling a cradle carrying a vessel. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **slipway**

IHO Definition: The prepared and usually reinforced inclined surface on which keel- and bilge-blocks are laid for supporting a vessel under construction. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

14) **fender**

IHO Definition: A protective structure designed to cushion the impact of a vessel and prevent damage. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

15) **solid face wharf**

IHO Definition: A wharf consisting of a solid wall of concrete, masonry, wood etc., such that the water

cannot circulate freely under the wharf. The type of construction affects ship-handling; for example, a solid face wharf may give shelter from tidal streams, but under certain circumstances a cushion of water may build up between such a wharf and a ship attempting to berth at it, causing difficulties in ship handling. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.85, November 2000).

16) **open face wharf**

IHO Definition: A wharf supported on piles or other structures which allow free circulation of water under the wharf. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.85, November 2000).

17) **log ramp**

IHO Definition: An inclined plane used to dump logs into the water for transport, or to haul logs out of the water for processing. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

20) **swimming facility**

IHO Definition: An artificial pool or swimming enclosure, especially one in the open air, which may be constructed of wire mesh or heavy netting supported by cables, buoys or piles, for swimming in. (Adapted from the Macquarie Concise Dictionary).

22) **quay**

IHO Definition: A wharf approximately parallel to the shoreline and accommodating ships on one side only, the other side being attached to the shore. It is usually of solid construction, as contrasted with the open pile construction usually used for piers. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

23) **tie-up wall**

IHO Definition: A section of wall designated for tying-up vessels awaiting transit. Bollards and mooring devices are available for both large and small ships. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.62 category of signal station, traffic (CATSIT)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SIGNAL STATION, TRAFFIC**. Classification of station based on the traffic service provided.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **port control**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels within a port. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

2) **port entry and departure**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels entering or leaving a port. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

3) **international port traffic**

IHO Definition: A signal station displaying International Port Traffic signals. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

4) **berthing signal station**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels when berthing. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

5) **dock**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels entering or leaving a dock. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

6) **lock**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels entering or leaving a lock. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

7) **flood barrage station**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels wishing to pass through a flood control barrage. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

8) **bridge passage**

IHO Definition: A signal station for the control of vessels wishing to pass under a bridge. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

9) **dredging**

IHO Definition: A signal station indicating when dredging is in progress. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

10) **traffic control light**

IHO Definition: Visual signal lights placed in a waterway to indicate to shipping the movements authorized at the time at which they are shown. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.86, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.63 category of signal station, warning (CATSIW)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SIGNSL STATION, WARNING**. Classification of station based on the warning service provided.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **danger**

IHO Definition: A signal or message warning of the presence of a danger to navigation. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

2) **maritime obstruction**

IHO Definition: A signal or message warning of the presence of a maritime obstruction. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

3) **cable**

IHO Definition: A signal or message warning of the presence of a cable. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

4) **military practice**

IHO Definition: A signal or message warning of activity in a military practice area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

5) **distress**

IHO Definition: A station that may receive or transmit distress signals. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

6) **weather**

IHO Definition: A visual signal displayed to indicate a weather forecast. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **storm**

IHO Definition: A signal or message conveying information about storm conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

8) **ice warning**

IHO Definition: A signal or message conveying information about ice conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.87, November 2000).

9) **time**

IHO Definition: An accurate signal marking a specified time or time interval. It is used primarily for determining errors of timepieces. Such signals are usually sent from an observatory by radio, but visual signals are used at some ports. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **tide**

IHO Definition: A signal or message conveying information on tidal conditions in the area in question. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **tidal stream**

IHO Definition: A signal or message conveying information on condition of tidal currents in the area in question. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

12) **tide gauge**

IHO Definition: A device for measuring the height of tide. A graduated staff in a sheltered area where visual observations can be made; or it may consist of an elaborate recording instrument making a continuous graphic record of tide height against time. Such an instrument is usually actuated by a float in a pipe communicating with the sea through a small hole which filters out shorter waves. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **tide scale**

IHO Definition: A visual scale which directly shows the height of the water above chart datum or a local datum. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.88, November 2000).

14) **diving**

IHO Definition: A signal or message warning of diving activity. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.88, November 2000).

15) **water level gauge**

IHO Definition: A device for measuring and conveying information about the water level (non-tidal) in the area in question. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.88, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.64 category of silo/tank (CATSIL)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SILO/TANK**. Classification based on the product for which a silo or tank is used.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **silo in general**

IHO Definition: A large storage structure used for storing loose materials. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **tank in general**

IHO Definition: A fixed structure for storing liquids. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **grain elevator**

IHO Definition: A storage building for grain. Usually a tall frame, metal or concrete structure with an especially compartmented interior. (The New Encyclopaedia Britannica Micropaedia, 15th Edition).

4) **water tower**

IHO Definition: A tower supporting an elevated storage tank of water. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.65 category of slope (CATSLO)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SLOPE**. Classification of a stretch of ground forming a natural or artificial incline.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **cutting**

   IHO Definition: An excavation through high ground for a road, canal, etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.90, November 2000).

2) **embankment**

   IHO Definition: A man-made raised long mound of earth or other material. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

3) **dune**

   IHO Definition: A mound, ridge or hill of drifted material on the sea coast or in a desert. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **hill**

   IHO Definition: A small isolated elevation, smaller than a mountain. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **pingo**

   IHO Definition: A dome-shaped hill formed in a permafrost area when the hydrostatic pressure of freezing ground water causes the upheaval of a layer of frozen ground. (Encyclopaedia Britannica Mycropaedia, 15th Edition).

6) **cliff**

   IHO Definition: Land rising abruptly for a considerable distance above the water or surrounding land. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **scree**

   IHO Definition: A mass of detritus, forming a precipitous, strong slope upon a mountain-side. Also the material composing such a slope. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.66 category of small craft facility (CATSCF)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SMALL CRAFT FACILITY**. Classification of services and facilities for the small craft user.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **visitors berth**

   IHO Definition: A berth set aside for the use of visiting vessels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.91, November 2000).

2) **nautical club**

   IHO Definition: A club for mariners generally associated with other small craft facilities. (S-57 Edition 3.1,

Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.91, November 2000).

3) **boat hoist**

IHO Definition: A hoist for lifting boats out of the water. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.91, November 2000).

4) **sailmaker**

IHO Definition: A place where sails are made or may be taken for repair. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.91, November 2000).

5) **boatyard**

IHO Definition: A place on shore where boats may be built, stored and repaired. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

6) **public inn**

IHO Definition: A public house providing food, drink and accommodation. (The Collins Reference English Dictionary, 1992).

7) **restaurant**

IHO Definition: A commercial establishment serving food. (The Collins Reference Dictionary, 1992).

8) **chandler**

IHO Definition: A dealer in ships' supplies. (The Collins Reference Dictionary, 1992).

9) **provisions**

IHO Definition: A place where food and other such supplies are available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

10) **doctor**

IHO Definition: A place where a doctor is available to provide medical attention. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

11) **pharmacy**

IHO Definition: A place where medical drugs are dispensed. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

12) **water tap**

IHO Definition: A place where fresh water is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

13) **fuel station**

IHO Definition: A place where fuel is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

14) **electricity outlet**

IHO Definition: A place where a connection to an electrical supply is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

15) **bottle gas**

IHO Definition: A place where bottled gas is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

16) **showers**

IHO Definition: A place where showers are available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

17) **launderette**

IHO Definition: A place where there are facilities for washing clothes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

18) **public toilets**

IHO Definition: A place where toilets are available for public use. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

19) **post box**

IHO Definition: A place where mail may be posted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

20) **public telephone**

IHO Definition: A place where a telephone is available for public use. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

21) **refuse bin**

IHO Definition: A place where refuse may be dumped. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

22) **car park**

IHO Definition: A place where cars may be parked. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

23) **parking for boats and trailers**

IHO Definition: A place on shore where boats and/or trailers may be parked. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

24) **caravan site**

IHO Definition: A place where caravans may be parked or where caravan accommodation is provided. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

25) **camping site**

IHO Definition: A place where visitors may pitch tents and camp. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

26) **sewage pump-out station**

IHO Definition: A place where sewage may be pumped off a vessel. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

27) **emergency telephone**

IHO Definition: A place where a telephone is available for emergency use only. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

28) **landing/launching place for boats**

IHO Definition: A place where boats may be landed or launched. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

30) **scrubbing berth**

IHO Definition: A place where vessels may berth for the purpose of careening. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

31) **picnic area**

IHO Definition: A place where people may go to eat a picnic. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

32) **mechanics workshop**

IHO Definition: A place where mechanical repairs can be undertaken to engines or other vessel equipment. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

33) **guard and/or security service**

IHO Definition: A place where a vessel is patrolled by a security service or stored in a secure lockup. (S-57

Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.67 category of special purpose mark (CATSPM)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF SPECIAL PURPOSE MARK**. Classification of an aid to navigation which signifies some special purpose.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **firing danger mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate a firing danger area, usually at sea. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

2) **target mark**

   IHO Definition: Any object toward which something is directed. The distinctive marking or instrumentation of a ground point to aid its identification on a photograph. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **marker ship mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark marking the position of a ship which is used as a target during some military exercise. (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

4) **degaussing range mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate a degaussing range. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

5) **barge mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark of relevance to barges. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

6) **cable mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the position of submarine cables or the point at which they run on to the land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

7) **spoil ground mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the limit of a spoil ground. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **outfall mark**

   IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the position of an outfall or the point at which it leaves the land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

9) **ODAS**

   IHO Definition: Ocean Data Acquisition System. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **recording mark**

    IHO Definition: A mark used to record data for scientific purposes. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

11) **seaplane anchorage mark**

    IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate a seaplane anchorage. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

12) **recreation zone mark**

    IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate a recreation zone. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

14) **mooring mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a mooring or moorings. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

15) **LANBY**

IHO Definition: A large buoy designed to take the place of a lightship where construction of an offshore light station is not feasible. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

16) **leading mark**

IHO Definition: Aids to navigation or other indicators so located as to indicate the path to be followed. Leading marks identify a leading line when they are in transit. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

17) **measured distance mark**

IHO Definition: A mark forming part of a transit indicating one end of a measured distance. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

18) **notice mark**

IHO Definition: A notice board or sign indicating information to the mariner. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

19) **TSS Mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a Traffic Separation Scheme. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.94, November 2000).

20) **anchoring prohibited mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating an anchoring prohibited area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

21) **berthing prohibited mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that berthing is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

22) **overtaking prohibited mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that overtaking is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

23) **two-way traffic prohibited mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a one-way route. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

24) **reduced wake mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that vessels must not generate excessive wake. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

25) **speed limit mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that a speed limit applies. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

26) **stop mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the place where the bow of a ship must stop when traffic lights show red. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

27) **general warning mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that special caution must be exercised in the vicinity of the mark. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

28) **sound ship's siren mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that a ship should sound its siren or horn. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A

– Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

29) **restricted vertical clearance mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the minimum vertical space available for passage. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

30) **maximum vessel's draught mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the maximum draught of vessel permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

31) **restricted horizontal clearance mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the minimum horizontal space available for passage. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

32) **strong current warning mark**

IHO Definition: A mark warning of strong currents. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

33) **berthing permitted mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that berthing is allowed. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

34) **overhead power cable mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating an overhead power cable. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

35) **channel edge gradient mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the gradient of the slope of a dredge channel edge. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

36) **telephone mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the presence of a telephone. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

37) **ferry crossing mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that a ferry route crosses the ship route; often used with a sound ship's siren mark. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

39) **pipeline mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the position of submarine pipelines or the point at which they run on to the land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

40) **anchorage mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating an anchorage area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

41) **clearing mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate a clearing line. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

42) **control mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the location at which a restriction or requirement exists. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

43) **diving mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that diving may take place in the vicinity. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

44) **refuge beacon**

IHO Definition: A mark providing or indicating a place of safety. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.95, November 2000).

45) **foul ground mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a foul ground. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

46) **yachting mark**

IHO Definition: A mark installed for use by yachtsmen. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

47) **heliport mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating an area where helicopters may land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

48) **GNSS mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a location at which a GNSS position has been accurately determined. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

49) **seaplane landing mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating an area where seaplanes land. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

50) **entry prohibited mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that entry is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

51) **work in progress mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating that work (generally construction) is in progress. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

52) **mark with unknown purpose**

IHO Definition: A mark whose detailed characteristics are unknown. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

53) **wellhead mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating a borehole that produces or is capable of producing oil or natural gas. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

54) **channel separation mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the point at which a channel divides separately into two channels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

55) **marine farm mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the existence of a fish, mussel, oyster or pearl farm/culture. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

56) **artificial reef mark**

IHO Definition: A mark indicating the existence or the extent of an artificial reef. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.96, November 2000).

57) **ice mark**

IHO Definition: A mark, used year round, that may be submerged when ice passes through the area.

58) **nature reserve mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to define the boundary of a nature reserve.

59) **fish aggregating device**

IHO Definition: A fish aggregating (or aggregation) device (FAD) is a man-made object used to attract

ocean going pelagic fish such as marlin, tuna and mahi-mahi (dolphin fish). They usually consist of buoys or floats tethered to the ocean floor with concrete blocks. (Wikipedia, 2017).

60) **wreck mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the existence of a wreck.

61) **customs mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the existence of a customs checkpoint.

62) **causeway mark**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the existence of a causeway.

63) **wave recorder**

IHO Definition: A surface following buoy used to measure wave activity.

Remarks:
- A mark may be a beacon, a buoy, a signpost or may take another form.

27.68 category of tidal stream (CAT_TS)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF TIDAL STREAM**. Classification of the alternating horizontal movement of water associated with the rise and fall of the tide caused by tide producing forces.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **flood stream**

IHO Definition: The horizontal movement of water associated with the rising tide. Flood streams generally set towards the shore, or in the direction of the tide progression. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **ebb stream**

IHO Definition: The horizontal movement of water associated with falling tide. Ebb streams generally set seaward, or in the opposite direction to the tide progression. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **other tidal flow**

IHO Definition: Any other horizontal movement of water associated with tides, for example rotary flow. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.97, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.69 category of vegetation (CATVEG)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF VEGETATION**. Classification of the plant life of an area or region.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

3) **bush**

IHO Definition: A shrub or clump of shrubs with stems of moderate length. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary).

4) **deciduous wood**

IHO Definition: A wood with trees that shed their leaves annually. (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

5) **coniferous wood**

IHO Definition: A wood with evergreen trees of a group usually bearing cones, including yews, cedars and redwoods. (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

6) **wood in general (inc mixed wood)**

IHO Definition: Growing trees densely occupying a tract of land. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary).

11) **reed**

IHO Definition: Any of various water or marsh plants with a firm stem. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary).

13) **tree in general**

IHO Definition: An individual woody perennial plant, typically having a single stem or trunk growing to a considerable height and bearing lateral branches at some distance from the ground. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

14) **evergreen tree**

IHO Definition: Having green foliage all the year round. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

15) **coniferous tree**

IHO Definition: A cone-bearing, needle-leaved or scale-leaved evergreen tree. (Adapted from The New Encyclopaedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

16) **palm tree**

IHO Definition: A tropical or sub-tropical tree, shrub or vine having a tall, unbranched, columnar trunk. The trunk is crowned by a tuft or large, pleated fan or feather shaped leaves with stout sheathing and often prickly petioles (stalks), the persistent bases of which frequently clothe the trunk. (Adapted from The New Encyclopedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

17) **nipa palm tree**

IHO Definition: A rare palm tree with regular branching involving equal or sub-equal division of the apex that results in forking. (Adapted from The New Encyclopedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

18) **casuarina tree**

IHO Definition: A tree characterized by slender, green, often drooping branches that are deeply grooved and that bear, at intervals, whorls of tine leaves. (Adapted from The New Encyclopedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

19) **eucalypt tree**

IHO Definition: An instance of a large genus of mostly very large trees (90 metres). (Adapted from The New Encyclopaedia Britannica, 15th Edition 1991).

20) **deciduous tree**

IHO Definition: Sheds its leaves each year at the end of the period of growth. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

22) **filao tree**

IHO Definition: Casuarina equisetifolia, the most widespread and well-known member of the family Casuarinaceae. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.70 category of water turbulence (CATWAT)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF WATER TURBULENCE**. Classification of an unstable sea state.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **breakers**

IHO Definition: A wave breaking on the shore, over a reef, etc. Breakers may be roughly classified into three kinds, although the categories may overlap: spilling breakers break gradually over a considerable distance; plunging breakers tend to curl over and break with a crash; and surging breakers peak up, but then instead of spilling or plunging they surge up on the beach face. The French word “brisant” is also used for the obstacle causing the breaking of the wave. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **eddies**

IHO Definition: Circular movements of water usually formed where currents pass obstructions, between two adjacent currents flowing counter to each other, or along the edge of a permanent current. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **overfalls**

IHO Definition: Short, breaking waves occurring when a strong current passes over a shoal or other submarine obstruction or meets a contrary current or wind. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **tide rips**

IHO Definition: Small waves formed on the surface of water by the meeting of opposing tidal currents or by a tidal current crossing an irregular bottom. Vertical oscillation, rather than progressive waves, is characteristic of tide rips. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **bombora**

IHO Definition: A wave that forms over a submerged offshore reef or rock, sometimes (in very calm weather or at high tide) nearly swelling but in other conditions breaking heavily and producing a dangerous stretch of broken water; the reef or rock itself. (Australian National Dictionary).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.71 category of weed/kelp (CATWED)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF WEED/KELP**. Classification of marine vegetation of the algae class.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **kelp**

IHO Definition: A giant plant sometimes 60 metres long with no roots, it is anchored by hold-fasts or tendrils up to 10 metres long, that cling to rock. Gas filled bubbles on fronds act as floats keeping the kelp just below the surface. (Earth Sciences References; Mary McNeil).

2) **seaweed**

IHO Definition: The general name for marine plants of the algae class which grow in long narrow ribbons. (International Maritime Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

4) **sargasso**

IHO Definition: A certain type of seaweed, or more generally, a large floating mass of this seaweed. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.72 category of wreck (CATWRK)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF WRECK**. Classification of a wrecked or ruined ship.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **non-dangerous wreck**

IHO Definition: A wreck which is not considered to be dangerous to surface navigation. (S-57 Edition 3.1,

Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.105, November 2000).

2) **dangerous wreck**

IHO Definition: A wreck submerged at such a depth as to be considered dangerous to surface navigation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **distributed remains of wreck**

IHO Definition: A substantively decayed wreck over which it is safe to navigate but which should be avoided for anchoring, taking the ground or ground fishing. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.105, November 2000).

4) **wreck showing mast/masts**

IHO Definition: Wreck of which only the mast(s) is visible at the sounding datum indicated. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.105, November 2000).

5) **wreck showing any portion of hull or superstructure**

IHO Definition: Wreck of which any portion of the hull or superstructure is visible at the sounding datum indicated. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.105, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.73 category of zone of confidence in data (CATZOC)

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF ZONE OF CONFIDENCE IN DATA**. Classification of the zone of confidence in data within an area based on the positional accuracy, survey equipment and coverage.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **zone of confidence A1**

IHO Definition: Positional Accuracy +/- 5 metres; Depth Accuracy 0.5 metre +1% depth; Full area search undertaken. Significant seafloor features detected and depths measured; Controlled, systematic survey, high position and depth accuracy achieved using DGPS or a minimum three high quality lines of position (LOP) and a multibeam, channel or mechanical sweep system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

2) **zone of confidence A2**

IHO Definition: Positional Accuracy +/- 20 metres; Depth Accuracy 1.0 metre + 2% depth; Full area search undertaken. Significant seafloor features detected and depths measured; Controlled, systematic survey achieving position and depth accuracy less than ZOC A1 and using a modern survey echosounder and a sonar or mechanical sweep system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

3) **zone of confidence B**

IHO Definition: Positional Accuracy +/- 50 metres; Depth Accuracy 1.0 metre + 2% depth; Full area search not achieved, uncharted features hazardous to surface navigation are not expected but may exist; Controlled, systematic survey achieving similar depth but lesser position accuracies than ZOCA2, using a modern survey echosounder, but no sonar or mechanical sweep system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

4) **zone of confidence C**

IHO Definition: Positional Accuracy +/- 500 metres; Depth Accuracy 2.0 metre + 5% depth; Full area search not achieved, depth anomalies may be expected; Low accuracy survey or data collected on an opportunity basis such as soundings on passage. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

5) **zone of confidence D**

IHO Definition: Positional Accuracy worse than ZOC C; Depth Accuracy worse than ZOC C; Full area

search not achieved, large depth anomalies may be expected; Poor quality data or data that cannot be quality assessed due to lack of information. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

6) **zone of confidence U**

IHO Definition: The quality of the bathymetric data has yet to be assessed. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.107, November 2000).

Remarks:

- The full categorisation of each category is as follows:

1	2	3		4	5
ZOC [1]	Position Accuracy [2]	Depth Accuracy [3]		Seafloor Coverage	Typical Survey Characteristics [5]
A1	± 5 m + 5% depth	=0.50 + 1%d		Full area search undertaken. Significant seafloor features detected [4] and depths measured.	Controlled, systematic survey [6] high position and depth accuracy achieved using DGPS or a minimum three high quality lines of position (LOP) and a multi beam, channel or mechanical sweep system.
		Depth (m)	Accuracy (m)		
		10 30 100 1000	± 0.6 ± 0.8 ± 1.5 ± 10.5		
A2	± 20 m	= 1.00 + 2%d		Full area search undertaken. Significant seafloor features detected [4] and depths measured.	Controlled, systematic survey [6] achieving position and depth accuracy less than **zone of confidence A1** and using a modern survey echo sounder [7] and a sonar or mechanical sweep system.
		Depth (m)	Accuracy (m)		
		10 30 100 1000	± 1.2 ± 1.6 ± 3.0 ± 21.0		
B	± 50 m	= 1.00 + 2%d		Full area search not achieved; uncharted features, hazardous to surface navigation are not expected but may exist.	Controlled, systematic survey achieving similar depth but lesser position accuracies than **zone of confidence A2**, using a modern survey echo sounder [7], but no sonar or mechanical sweep system.
		Depth (m)	Accuracy (m)		
		10 30 100 1000	± 1.2 ± 1.6 ± 3.0 ± 21.0		
C	± 500 m	= 2.00 + 5%d		Full area search not achieved, depth anomalies may be expected.	Low accuracy survey or data collected on an opportunity basis such as soundings on passage.
		Depth (m)	Accuracy (m)		
		10 30 100 1000	± 2.5 ± 3.5 ± 7.0 ± 52.0		
D	Worse than **zone of confidence C**	Worse than **zone of confidence C**		Full area search not achieved, large depth anomalies may be expected.	Poor quality data or data that cannot be quality assessed due to lack of information.
U	Unassessed – The quality of the bathymetric data has yet to be assessed				

To decide on a ZOC Category, all conditions outlined in columns 2 to 4 of the Table must be met.

Explanatory notes quoted in the Table:

[1] The allocation of a Zone of Confidence (ZOC) indicates that particular data meets minimum criteria for position and depth accuracy and seafloor coverage defined in this Table. ZOC categories reflect a charting standard and not just a hydrographic survey standard. Depth and position accuracies specified for each ZOC category refer to the errors of the final depicted soundings and include not only survey errors but also other errors introduced in the chart production process. Data is further qualified in Meta Feature Type **Quality of Bathymetric Data** (see clause 3.8) and associated Information Type **Spatial Quality** (see clause 24.5) attributes as follows:

Deleted: Class

a) Positional Accuracy (**horizontal position uncertainty**) and Sounding Accuracy (**vertical uncertainty**)

on the associated instance of **Spatial Quality** may be used to indicate that a higher position or depth accuracy has been achieved than defined in this Table (for example a survey where full seafloor coverage was not achieved could not be classified higher that ZOC B; however, if the position accuracy was, for instance, ± 15 metres, the attribute **horizontal position uncertainty** could be used to indicate this).

b) Swept areas where the clearance depth is accurately known but the actual seabed depth is not accurately known may be accorded a 'higher' ZOC (that is, A1 or A2) providing positional and depth accuracies of the swept depth meets the criteria in this Table. In this instance, the attribute **depth range minimum value** on the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature may be used to specify the swept depth. The position accuracy criteria apply to the boundaries of swept areas.

Commented [TS120]: Refer to email from Pete Duguid 26/01/24.

c) The complex attribute **survey date range** on the **Quality of Bathymetric Data** feature is used to indicate the start and end dates of the survey(s) covering the area.

[2] Position Accuracy of depicted soundings at 95% CI (2.45 sigma) with respect to the given datum. It is the cumulative error and includes survey, transformation and digitizing errors etc. Position accuracy need not be rigorously computed for ZOCs B, C and D but may be estimated based on type of equipment, calibration regime, historical accuracy etc.

[3] Depth accuracy of depicted soundings = a + (b·d)/100 at 95% CI (2.00 sigma), where d = depth in metres at the critical depth. Depth accuracy need not be rigorously computed for ZOCs B, C and D but may be estimated based on type of equipment, calibration regime, historical accuracy etc.

[4] Significant seafloor features are defined as those rising above depicted depths by more than:

	Depth	Significant Feature
a.	<40 m	2 m
b.	>40 m	10% depth

A full seafloor search indicates that a systematic survey was conducted using detection systems, depth measurement systems, procedures, and trained personnel designed to detect and measure depths on significant seafloor features. Significant features are included on the chart as scale allows. It is impossible to guarantee that no significant feature could remain undetected, and significant features may have become present in the area since the time of the survey.

[5] Typical Survey Characteristics – these descriptions should be seen as indicative examples only.

[6] Controlled, systematic surveys (ZOC A1, A2 and B) – surveys comprising planned survey lines, on a geodetic datum that can be transformed to WGS 84.

[7] Modern survey echo sounder – high precision single beam depth measuring equipment, generally including all survey echo sounders designed post 1970.

27.74 colour (COLOUR)

IHO Definition: **COLOUR**. The property possessed by an object of producing different sensations on the eye as a result of the way it reflects or emits light.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **white**
2) **black**
3) **red**
4) **green**
5) **blue**
6) **yellow**
7) **grey**
8) **brown**
9) **amber**

10) **violet**

11) **orange**

12) **magenta**

13) **pink**

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.75 colour pattern (COLPAT)

IHO Definition: **COLOUR PATTERN**. A regular repeated design containing more than one colour.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **horizontal stripes**

   IHO Definition: Straight bands or stripes of differing colours oriented horizontally. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

2) **vertical stripes**

   IHO Definition: Straight bands or stripes of differing colours oriented vertically. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

3) **diagonal stripes**

   IHO Definition: Straight bands or stripes of differing colours oriented diagonally (that is, not horizontally or vertically). (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

4) **squared**

   IHO Definition: Often referred to as checker plate, where alternate colours are used to create squares similar to a chess or draught board. The pattern may be straight or diagonal. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

5) **stripes (direction unknown)**

   IHO Definition: Straight bands or stripes of differing colours oriented in an unknown direction. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

6) **border stripe**

   IHO Definition: A band or stripe of colour which is displayed around the outer edge of the feature, which may also form a border to an inner pattern or plain colour. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.113, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.76 communication channel (COMCHA)

IHO Definition: **COMMUNICATION CHANNEL**. A channel number assigned to a specific radio frequency, frequencies or frequency band. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.114, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Expected input: Enter specific Communication Channel.

Indication: Each Channel should be indicated in square brackets by 4 digits and up to 4 characters (A-Z).

Format: [XXXX]

Example: **[VHF0007]** for VHF-Channel 7
[NBDP5555] for Narrow Band Direct Printing Channel 5555

Remarks:
- The attribute “communication channel” encodes the various Channels used for all methods of radio communication.

27.77 condition (CONDTN)

IHO Definition: **CONDITION**. The various conditions of buildings and other constructions.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **under construction**

   IHO Definition: Being built but not yet capable of function. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **ruined**

   IHO Definition: A structure in a decayed or deteriorated condition resulting from neglect or disuse, or a damaged structure in need of repair. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **under reclamation**

   IHO Definition: An area of the sea, a lake or the navigable part of a river that is being reclaimed as land, usually by the dumping of earth and other material. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.118, November 2000).

4) **wingless**

   IHO Definition: A windmill or wind turbine from which the vanes or turbine blades are missing. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.118, November 2000).

5) **planned construction**

   IHO Definition: Detailed planning has been completed but construction has not been initiated. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Remarks:
- The attribute “condition” encodes the various conditions of buildings and other constructions. The default “condition” should be considered to be completed, undamaged and working normally. This attribute should, therefore, only be used to indicate features whose condition is anything other than “normal”.

27.78 contact instructions

IHO Definition: **CONTACT INSTRUCTIONS**. Instructions provided on how to contact a particular person, organisation or service.

Attribute Type: Free text

Remarks:
- Where required, **contact instructions** should also provide information on the access times for a particular person, organisation or service.

27.79 date disused

IHO Definition: **DATE DISUSED**. The date that an entity ceases to be used. (Adapted from S-4).

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)

Example: **20160908** for 08 September 2016 as the date an entity ceased to be used.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.80 date end (DATEND, *PEREND*, *SUREND*)

IHO Definition: **DATE END**. The latest date on which an object (for example a buoy) will be present.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)
----MMDD (same day each year, **mandatory**)
----MM-- (same month each year, **mandatory**)

Example: **20101203** for 03 December 2010 at 240000 hours as ending date.
----02-- for 28 February at 240000 hours as ending date for non-leap years; and 29 February at 240000 hours as ending date for leap years.

Remarks:
- The attribute **date end** indicates the latest date of an event or the end of a date range. This attribute is used to indicate the end of a fixed date range, the end of a periodic date range, or the removal or cancellation of a feature at a specific date in the future.

27.81 date fixed

IHO Definition: **DATE FIXED**. The date of an event.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: ----MMDD (same day each year, **mandatory**)
----MM-- (same month each year, **mandatory**)

Example: **----0908** for 08 September each year.
----02-- for February of each year.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.82 date start (DATSTA, *PERSTA*, *SUREND*)

IHO Definition: **DATE START**. The earliest date on which an object (for example a buoy) will be present.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM)

(for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)
----MMDD (same day each year, **mandatory**)
----MM-- (same month each year, **mandatory**)

Example: **20101129** for 29 November 2010 at 000000 hours as starting date.
----02-- for 01 February at 000000 hours annually as starting date.

Remarks:
- The attribute **date start** indicates the earliest date of an event or the start of a date range. This attribute is used to indicate the start of a fixed date range, the start of a periodic date range, or the deployment or implementation of a feature at a specific date in the future.

27.83 date variable

IHO Definition: **DATE VARIABLE**. A day which is not fixed in the Gregorian calendar.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The string encodes a recurring day each year that is not fixed in the Gregorian calendar.

Example: **Fourth Thursday in November**
Easter Sunday

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.84 day of week

IHO Definition: **DAY OF WEEK**. Any one of seven days in a week.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **Sunday**

   IHO Definition: The first day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

2) **Monday**

   IHO Definition: The second day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

3) **Tuesday**

   IHO Definition: The third day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

4) **Wednesday**

   IHO Definition: The fourth day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

5) **Thursday**

   IHO Definition: The fifth day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

6) **Friday**

   IHO Definition: The sixth day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

7) **Saturday**

   IHO Definition: The seventh day of the week. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.85 day of week is range

IHO Definition: **DAY OF WEEK IS RANGE**. A statement expressing if the days of the week identified define a range or not.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the identified days of the week define a range between and inclusive of those days.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.86 depth range maximum value (DRVAL2)

IHO Definition: **DEPTH RANGE MAXIMUM VALUE**. The maximum (deepest) value of a depth range. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.125, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: sxxxxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **100** for a maximum depth of 100 metres

Remarks:
- Depth range is the depth from a specified sounding datum as a depth interval bounded by the minimum (shoalest) and maximum (deepest) depth values. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).
- Where the area dries, the value is negative or zero (0).

27.87 depth range minimum value (DRVAL1)

IHO Definition: **DEPTH RANGE MINIMUM VALUE**. The minimum (shoalest) value of a depth range. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.124, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: sxxxxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **50** for a minimum depth of 50 metres

Remarks:
- Depth range is the depth from a specified sounding datum as a depth interval bounded by the minimum (shoalest) and maximum (deepest) depth values. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).
- Where the area dries, the value is negative.

27.88 destination

IHO Definition: **DESTINATION**. The place or general direction to which a vessel is going or directed.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication:

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.89 display uncertainties

IHO Definition: **DISPLAY UNCERTAINTIES**. A statement defining whether an encoded feature is to have its horizontal position and vertical accuracies displayed or not.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the uncertainties are to be displayed in some ECDIS settings.

Remarks:
- The attribute **display uncertainties** uses the values encoded for an associated instance of the information type **Spatial Quality** to determine the accuracy values to be displayed for a geo feature.

27.90 distance mark visible

IHO Definition: **DISTANCE MARK VISIBLE**. A statement indicating whether a distance mark is visible or not.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the distance mark is visible.

Remarks:
- A **Distance Mark** feature having attribute **distance mark visible** = *True* is required to be associated to a structure feature using the feature association **Structure/Equipment** (see clause 25.15).

27.91 distance unit of measurement

IHO Definition: **DISTANCE UNIT OF MEASUREMENT**. A specified amount of a quantity, as of length, by comparison with which any other quantity of the same kind is measured or estimated.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **metres**

   IHO Definition: The basic unit of length in the International System of Units (SI) system. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **yards**

   IHO Definition: A common unit of linear measure in English-speaking countries, equal to 3 feet or 36 inches, and equivalent to 0.9144 metre. (Adapted from Wikipedia).

3) **kilometres**

   IHO Definition: A unit of length, the common measure of distances equal to 1000 metres, and equivalent to 3280.8 feet or 0.621 mile.

4) **statute miles**

   IHO Definition: A unit equal to 5280 feet. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2019).

5) **nautical miles**

IHO Definition: A unit of length equal to 1,852 metres. This value was approved by the International Hydrographic Conference of 1929 and has been adopted by nearly all maritime states. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.92 dredged date

IHO Definition: **DREDGED DATE**. The date that dredging occurred.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)

Example: **20101203** for 03 December 2010 as the dredged date.

Remarks:
- The attribute **dredged date** indicates the latest date of dredging (which may be the latest known date if the dredged area is not maintained), or the date of the latest control survey confirming the depth in a maintained dredged area.

27.93 elevation (ELEVAT)

IHO Definition: **ELEVATION**. The altitude of the ground level of a feature, measured from a specified vertical datum. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.127, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m).

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxxx.x

Minimum value: 0

Example: **47** for an elevation of 47 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.94 estimated range of transmission (ESTRNG)

IHO Definition: **ESTIMATED RANGE OF TRANSMISSION**. The estimated range of a non-optical electromagnetic transmission. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.128, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Nautical mile (M)

Resolution: 0·1M

Format: xxx.x

Example: **45** for a maximum range of 45 nautical miles

Remarks:

- The estimated range (distance) assumes “in vacuo” transmission and a standard antenna height of 5 metres. Thus it gives a hint to the mariner whether they are likely to receive transmission at a certain distance from a feature carrying this attribute.

27.95 exhibition condition of light (EXCLIT)

IHO Definition: **EXHIBITION CONDITION OF LIGHT**. The outward display of the light.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **light shown without change of character**

   IHO Definition: A light shown throughout the 24 hours without change of character. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.129, November 2000).

2) **daytime light**

   IHO Definition: A light which is only exhibited by day. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.129, November 2000).

3) **fog light**

   IHO Definition: A light which is exhibited in fog or conditions of reduced visibility. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.129, November 2000).

4) **night light**

   IHO Definition: A light which is only exhibited at night. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.129, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.96 exposition of sounding (EXPSOU)

IHO Definition: **EXPOSITION OF SOUNDING**. Indicates the relationship of the depth of a feature to the range of depth of the surrounding depth area.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area**

   IHO Definition: The depth corresponds to the depth range of the surrounding depth area; that is, the depth is not shoaler than the minimum depth of the surrounding depth area or deeper than the maximum depth of the surrounding depth area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.130, November 2000).

2) **shoaler than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area**

   IHO Definition: The depth is shoaler than the minimum depth of the surrounding depth area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.130, November 2000).

3) **deeper than the range of depth of the surrounding depth area**

   IHO Definition: The depth is deeper than the maximum depth of the surrounding depth area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.130, November 2000).

Remarks:
- This attribute indicates features with a “value of sounding” not within the range of depth of the surrounding depth area. These features could be a potential danger for navigation.

27.97 file locator

IHO Definition: **FILE LOCATOR**. The location of a fragment of text or other information in a support file.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The string encodes the location of a single fragment of text or other information contained in a support file.

Example: **p-224.105(a)(1)**

Remarks:
- The attribute **file locator** indicates the location of a section of text within the file referenced by the attribute **file reference** that is relevant for a particular feature.
- The value populated for **file locator** depends on the type of file:
  - Plain-text (S-100 support file format = "ASCII"): The offset of the start of the section relative to the beginning of the file (the first character in the file has offset 0).
  - HTML: A HTML fragment identifier; this is the value of the *name* or *id* attribute of a HTML element in the file.
  - XML: XML fragment identifier; that is, the value of an *xml:id* attribute of an element in the file.
- The type of file is provided in the support file discovery metadata block (see S-100 Part 4a Appendix 4a-D S100_SupportFileFormat).

27.98 file reference (*TXTDSC*, *NTXTDS*)

IHO Definition: **FILE REFERENCE**. The file name of an externally referenced text file. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.209, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The string encodes the file name of a single external text file that contains the text.

Remarks:
- The attribute **file reference** indicates that a file containing text extracted from relevant pilot books or nautical publications is available.
- The files referenced by **file reference** must be.TXT, .HTM or .XML and may contain formatted text.
- The files referenced by this attribute generally contain long text strings or those that require formatting; there is no restriction on the type of text (except for lexical level) that can be held in files referenced by **file reference**.

27.99 flare stack

IHO Definition: **FLARE STACK**. A tall structure used for burning-off waste oil or gas. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the offshore platform contains a flare stack.

Remarks:
- The attribute **flare stack** is a statement expressing whether an offshore platform has a stack used for burning-off waste oil or gas or not.

27.100 frequency shore station receives

IHO Definition: **FREQUENCY SHORE STATION RECEIVES**. The shore station receiver frequency. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.187, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Hertz (Hz)

Resolution: 1 Hz

Format: xxxxxxxxxxx

Example: **950000000** for a radio signal centred on 950 MHz

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.101 frequency shore station transmits (SIGFRQ)

IHO Definition: **FREQUENCY SHORE STATION TRANSMITS**. The shore station transmitter frequency. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.187, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Hertz (Hz)

Resolution: 1 Hz

Format: xxxxxxxxxxx

Example: **950000000** for a radio signal centred on 950 MHz

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.102 function (FUNCTN)

IHO Definition: **FUNCTION**. A specific role that describes a feature.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **harbour-masters office**

   IHO Definition: A local official who has charge of mooring and berthing of vessels, collecting harbour fees, etc. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **customs office**

   IHO Definition: Serves as a government office where customs duties are collected, the flow of goods are regulated and restrictions enforced, and shipments or vehicles are cleared for entering or leaving a country. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

4) **health office**

   IHO Definition: The office which is charged with the administration of health laws and sanitary inspections. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

5) **hospital**

   IHO Definition: An institution or establishment providing medical or surgical treatment for the ill or wounded. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

6) **post office**

   IHO Definition: The public department, agency or organisation responsible primarily for the collection, transmission and distribution of mail. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

7) **hotel**

   IHO Definition: An establishment, especially of a comfortable or luxurious kind, where paying visitors are provided with accommodation, meals and other services. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

8) **railway station**

   IHO Definition: A building with platforms where trains arrive, load, discharge and depart. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

9) **police station**

IHO Definition: The headquarters of a local police force and that is where those under arrest are first charged. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

10) **water-police station**

IHO Definition: The headquarters of a local water-police force. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

11) **pilot office**

IHO Definition: The office or headquarters of pilots; the place where the services of a pilot may be obtained. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

12) **pilot lookout**

IHO Definition: A distinctive structure or place on shore from which personnel keep watch upon events at sea or along the coast. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **bank office**

IHO Definition: An office for custody, deposit, loan, exchange or issue of money. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

14) **headquarters for district control**

IHO Definition: The quarters of an executive officer (director, manager, etc.) with responsibility for an administrative area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.132, November 2000).

15) **transit shed/warehouse**

IHO Definition: A building or part of a building for storage of wares or goods. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

16) **factory**

IHO Definition: A building or buildings with equipment for manufacturing; a workshop. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

17) **power station**

IHO Definition: A stationary plant containing apparatus for large scale conversion of some form of energy (such as hydraulic, steam, chemical or nuclear energy) into electrical energy. (McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms, 3rd Edition, 1984).

18) **administrative**

IHO Definition: A building for the management of affairs. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

19) **educational facility**

IHO Definition: An establishment for teaching and learning (for example school, college, university, etc). (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

20) **church**

IHO Definition: A building for public Christian worship. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

21) **chapel**

IHO Definition: A place for Christian worship other than a parish, cathedral or church, especially one attached to a private house or institution. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

22) **temple**

IHO Definition: A building for public Jewish worship. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

23) **pagoda**

IHO Definition: A Hindu or Buddhist temple or sacred building. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

24) **shinto shrine**

IHO Definition: A building for public Shinto worship. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

25) **buddhist temple**

IHO Definition: A building for public Buddhist worship. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

26) **mosque**

IHO Definition: A Muslim place of worship. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

27) **marabout**

IHO Definition: A shrine marking the burial place of a Muslim holy man. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

28) **lookout**

IHO Definition: Keeping a watch upon events at sea or along the coast. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

29) **communication**

IHO Definition: Transmitting and/or receiving electronic communication signals. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

30) **television**

IHO Definition: A system for reproducing on a screen visual images transmitted (usually with sound) by radio signals. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

31) **radio**

IHO Definition: Transmitting and/or receiving radio-frequency electromagnetic waves as a means of communication. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

32) **radar**

IHO Definition: A method, system or technique of using beamed, reflected, and timed radio waves for detecting, locating, or tracking objects, and for measuring altitudes. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

33) **light support**

IHO Definition: A structure serving as a support for one or more lights. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

34) **microwave**

IHO Definition: Broadcasting and receiving signals using microwaves. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.133, November 2000).

35) **cooling**

IHO Definition: Generation of chilled liquid and/or gas for cooling purposes. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

36) **observation**

IHO Definition: A place from which the surroundings can be observed but at which a watch is not habitually maintained. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

37) **timeball**

IHO Definition: A visual time signal in the form of a ball. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

38) **clock**

IHO Definition: Instrument for measuring time and recording hours. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

39) **control**

IHO Definition: Used to control the flow of traffic within a specified range of an installation. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

40) **airship mooring**

IHO Definition: Equipment or structure to secure an airship. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

41) **stadium**

IHO Definition: An arena for holding and viewing events. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

42) **bus station**

IHO Definition: A building where buses and coaches regularly stop to take on and/or let off passengers, especially for long-distance travel. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

44) **sea rescue control**

IHO Definition: A unit responsible for promoting efficient organization of search and rescue services and for coordinating the conduct of search and rescue operations within a search and rescue region. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

45) **observatory**

IHO Definition: A building designed and equipped for making observations of astronomical, meteorological, or other natural phenomena. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

46) **ore crusher**

IHO Definition: A building or structure used to crush ore.

47) **boathouse**

IHO Definition: A building or shed, usually built partly over water, for sheltering a boat or boats.

48) **pumping station**

IHO Definition: A facility to move solids, liquids or gases by means of pressure or suction. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2013).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.103 headline

IHO Definition: **HEADLINE**. Words set at the head of a passage or page to introduce or categorize. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2012).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The string encodes the heading relevant to a text string or information contained in a support file.

Example: **Description of table format for S-101 meta and geo features**

Remarks:
- The attribute **headline** should contain no more than 100 characters.

27.104 height (HEIGHT)

IHO Definition: **HEIGHT**. The value of the vertical distance to the highest point of the feature, measured from a specified vertical datum. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.134, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxxx.x

Minimum value: 0

Example: **73** for a height of 73 metres

Remarks:
- Height must not be used for floating features.

27.105 horizontal clearance length

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL CLEARANCE LENGTH**. The length of a feature, such as a lock or basin, which is available for safe navigation. This may, or may not, be the same as the total physical length of the feature. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.137, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **75** for a horizontal clearance length of 75 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.106 horizontal clearance value (HORCLR)

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL CLEARANCE VALUE**. The physical horizontal clearance distance between two points on a feature, such as a bridge span, dock, gate, lock or tunnel.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **125** for a horizontal clearance of 125 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.107 horizontal clearance width

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL CLEARANCE WIDTH**. The width of a feature, such as a lock or basin, which is available for safe navigation. This may, or may not, be the same as the total physical width of the feature. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.137, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **30** for a horizontal clearance width of 30 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.108 horizontal length (HORLEN)

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL LENGTH**. A measurement of the longer of two linear axis. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxx.x

Example: **95** for a length of 95 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.109 horizontal width (HORWID)

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL WIDTH**. A measurement of the shorter of two linear axis. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxx.x

Example: **12.6** for a width of 12.6 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.110 ice factor (ICEFAC)

IHO Definition: **ICE FACTOR**. The value of the maximum variation in the vertical clearance of an overhead cable due to an accumulation of ice. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.140, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **2.5** for a reduction of 2·5 metres in the vertical clearance.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.111 IMO adopted *(CATTSS)*

IHO Definition: **IMO ADOPTED**. A defined maritime traffic route that has been adopted as an IMO routeing measure. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.99, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the routeing measure has been adopted by the IMO.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.112 in dispute

IHO Definition: **IN DISPUTE**. A statement that expresses if an area is in a jurisdictional dispute.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the area defined is in jurisdictional dispute.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.113 interoperability identifier

IHO Definition: **INTEROPERABILITY IDENTIFIER**. A common unique identifier for entities which describe a single real-world feature, and which is used to identify instances of the feature in end-user systems where the feature may be included in multiple data product types. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2023).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The identifier is encoded using the Marine Resource Name (MRN) concept and namespace, administered by IALA, that follows the syntax and semantics for URNs specified in RFC 2141.

Format: urn:mrn:[Organisational ID]:…:... **(mandatory)**

Example: **urn:mrn:iho:mc:1234.5**

Remarks:
- For further information regarding MRNs, see S-100 Part 3, clause 3-10.

27.114 is MRCC

IHO Definition: **IS MRCC**. A statement that expresses if a Coast Guard station performs the function of a Maritime Rescue and Coordination Centre.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the encoded Coast Guard station performs the function of a Maritime Rescue and Coordination Centre.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.115 jurisdiction (JRSDTN)

IHO Definition: **JURISDICTION**. The jurisdiction applicable to an administrative area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.142, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **international**

   IHO Definition: Involving more than one country; covering more than one national area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.142, November 2000).

2) **national**

   IHO Definition: An area administered or controlled by a single nation. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.142, November 2000).

3) **national sub-division**

   IHO Definition: An area smaller than the nation in which it lies. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.142, November 2000).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.116 language

IHO Definition: **LANGUAGE**. The method of human communication, either spoken or written, consisting of the use of words in a structured and conventional way.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The language is encoded by a character code following ISO 639-2/T.

Format: c3 **(mandatory)**

Example: **eng** for English

Remarks:
- The attribute **language** indicates the language of the specific text.

27.117 lifting capacity (LIFCAP)

IHO Definition: **LIFTING CAPACITY**. The specific safe lifting capacity of a feature. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.145, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Tonne (t)

Resolution: 0·1t

Format: xxx.x

Minimum value: 0

Example: **120** for a lifting capacity of 120 tonnes

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.118 light characteristic (LITCHR)

IHO Definition: **LIGHT CHARACTERISTIC**. The distinct character, such as fixed, flashing, or occulting, which is given to each light to avoid confusion with neighbouring ones. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fixed**

IHO Definition: A signal light that shows continuously, in any given direction, with constant luminous intensity and colour. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **flashing**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which the total duration of light in a period is clearly shorter than the total duration of darkness and all the appearances of light are of equal duration. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **long-flashing**

IHO Definition: A single-flashing light in which an appearance of light of not less than two seconds duration is regularly repeated. (IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

4) **quick-flashing**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which flashes are repeated at a rate of not less than 50 flashes per minutes but less than 80 flashes per minutes. It may be:
- *Continuous quick-flashing*: A quick-flashing light in which a flash is regularly repeated.
- *Group quick-flashing*: A quick-flashing light in which a group of two or more flashes, which are specified in number, is regularly repeated.

(IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

5) **very quick-flashing**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which flashes are repeated at a rate of not less than 80 flashes per minute but less than 160 flashes per minute. It may be:
- *Continuous very quick-flashing*: A very quick-flashing light in which a flash is regularly repeated.
- *Group very quick-flashing*: A very quick-flashing light in which a group of two or more flashes, which are specified in number, is regularly repeated.

(IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

6) **continuous ultra quick-flashing**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which flashes are regularly repeated at a rate of not less than 160 flashes per minute. (IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

7) **isophased**

IHO Definition: A light with all durations of light and darkness equal. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **occulting**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which the total duration of light in a period is clearly longer than the total duration of darkness and all the eclipses are of equal duration. It may be:
- *Single-occulting*: An occulting light in which an eclipse is regularly repeated.
- *Group-occulting*: An occulting light in which a group of two or more eclipses, which are specified in number, is regularly repeated.
- *Composite group-occulting*: An occulting light in which a sequence of groups of one or more eclipses, which are specified in number, is regularly repeated, and the groups comprise different numbers of eclipses.

(IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

11) **interrupted ultra quick-flashing**

IHO Definition: A light in which the ultra quick flashes (160 or more per minute) are interrupted at regular intervals by eclipses of long duration. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

12) **morse**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which appearances of light of two clearly different durations are grouped to represent a character or characters in the Morse code. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **fixed and flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a fixed light is combined with a flashing light of higher luminous intensity. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

14) **flash and long-flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a flashing light is combined with a long-flashing light of higher

luminous intensity. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

15) **occulting and flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which an occulting light is combined with a flashing light of higher luminous intensity. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

16) **fixed and long-flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a fixed light is combined with a long-flashing light of higher luminous intensity. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

17) **occulting alternating**

IHO Definition: An alternating light in which the total duration of light in each period is clearly longer than the total duration of darkness and in which the intervals of darkness (occultations) are all of equal duration. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

18) **long-flash alternating**

IHO Definition: An alternating single-flashing light in which an appearance of light of not less than two seconds duration is regularly repeated. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

19) **flash alternating**

IHO Definition: An alternating rhythmic light in which the total duration of light in a period is clearly shorter than the total duration of darkness and all the appearances of light are of equal duration. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

25) **quick-flash plus long-flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a group of quick flashes is followed by one or more long flashes in a regularly repeated sequence with a regular periodicity. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

26) **very quick-flash plus long-flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a group of very quick flashes is followed by one or more long flashes in a regularly repeated sequence with a regular periodicity. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

27) **ultra quick-flash plus long-flash**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a group of ultra quick flashes is followed by one or more long flashes in a regularly repeated sequence with a regular periodicity. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

28) **alternating**

IHO Definition: A signal light that shows continuously, in any given direction, two or more colours in a regularly repeated sequence with a regular periodicity. (IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

29) **fixed and alternating flashing**

IHO Definition: A rhythmic light in which a fixed light is combined with a flashing light of higher luminous intensity and different colour.

Remarks:

- A selection of the above characteristics is defined and illustrated diagrammatically in IHO Chart Specifications, S-4 – B-471.2.

27.119 light visibility (LITVIS)

Commented [TS121]: Refer to S-101 Portrayal Catalogue GitHub Issue #226. Need to discuss allowable values, particularly for feature **Light Air Obstruction**.

IHO Definition: **LIGHT VISIBILITY**. The specific visibility of a light, with respect to the light's intensity and ease of recognition.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **high intensity**

   IHO Definition: Non-marine lights with a higher power than marine lights and visible from well off shore (often “Aero” lights). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.148, November 2000).

2) **low intensity**

   IHO Definition: Non-marine lights with lower power than marine lights. (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

3) **faint**

   IHO Definition: A decrease in the apparent intensity of a light which may occur in the case of partial obstructions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.148, November 2000).

4) **intensified**

   IHO Definition: A light in a sector is intensified (that is, has longer range than other sectors). (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

5) **unintensified**

   IHO Definition: A light in a sector is unintensified (that is, has shorter range than other sectors). (Bundesamt für Seeschifffahrt und Hydrographie, Germany).

6) **visibility deliberately restricted**

   IHO Definition: A light sector is deliberately reduced in intensity, for example to reduce its effect on a built-up area. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.148, November 2000).

7) **obscured**

   IHO Definition: Said of the arc of a light sector designated by its limiting bearings in which the light is not visible from seaward. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **partially obscured**

   IHO Definition: This value specifies that parts of the sector are obscured. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.148, November 2000).

9) **visible in line of range**

   IHO Definition: Lights that must be in line to be visible.

Remarks:
- The attribute “light visibility” encodes the specific visibility of a light, with respect to the light’s intensity and ease of recognition.

27.120 linkage

IHO Definition: **LINKAGE**. Location (address) for online access using a URL/URI address or similar addressing scheme. (Adapted from ISO 19115-1:2014).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication:

Format: URL address or equivalent

Example: https://www.iho.int

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.121 magnetic anomaly value (VALLMA)

IHO Definition: **MAGNETIC ANOMALY VALUE**. The value of the deviation from the normal magnetic variation. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.228, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 0.1°

Format: xx.x

Minimum value: 0.1

Maximum value: 180

Example: **5** for a deviation of 5 degrees

Remarks:
- The deviation is assumed to be positive and negative by default. The plus/minus character must not be encoded.

27.122 major light

IHO Definition: **MAJOR LIGHT**. A statement expressing if a light is considered to be a major light in terms of ECDIS display in a particular area.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the light is considered to be a major light.

Remarks:
- The attribute **major light** is only intended to provide an indication to the ECDIS that the light is considered to be an important light in terms of its display. As such this is a cartographic attribute to aid the compiler in determining the most appropriate display for a light; it is not intended to be used as a formal classification method for lights.

27.123 marks navigational – system of (MARSYS)

IHO Definition: **MARKS NAVIGATIONAL – SYSTEM OF**. The system of navigational buoyage a region complies with.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **IALA A**

   IHO Definition: Navigational aids conform to the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities – IALA A system. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.149, November 2000).

2) **IALA B**

   IHO Definition: Navigational aids conform to the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities – IALA B system. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.149, November 2000).

9) **No system**

   IHO Definition: Navigational aids do not conform to any defined system. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.149, November 2000).

11) **CEVNI**

   IHO Definition: CEVNI (European Code for Navigation on Inland Waterways) is the European code for rivers, canals and land lakes in most of Europe.

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.124 maximum permitted draught

IHO Definition: **MAXIMUM PERMITTED DRAUGHT**. The maximum draught of a vessel permitted along a route, in a channel or dock, at a berth, or over a submerged feature.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **14.5** for a maximum permitted draught of 14·5 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.125 maximum permitted vessel length

IHO Definition: **MAXIMUM PERMITTED VESSEL LENGTH**. The maximum length of a vessel permitted in channel or dock, at a berth, or at an anchorage or mooring.

Commented [TS122]: Identified during GI Registry adjudication of new concept.

Deleted: draught

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxx.x

Example: **30.5** for a maximum permitted vessel length of 30·5 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.126 measured distance

IHO Definition: **MEASURED DISTANCE**. A course at sea, whose ends are indicated by ranges ashore, and whose length has been accurately measured for determining the speed of vessels. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 1m

Format: xxxx

Example: **1445** for a measured distance of 1445 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.127 minimum berth depth (*DRVAL1*)

IHO Definition: **MINIMUM BERTH DEPTH**. The least depth of the body of water at the berth or in a berth pocket adjacent to the berth. (IHO Nautical Information Provision Working Group, 2022).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **14.6** for a minimum berth depth of 14.6 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.128 MMSI code

IHO Definition: **MMSI CODE**. The Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) Code is formed of a series of nine digits which are transmitted over the radio path in order to uniquely identify ship stations, ship earth stations, coast stations, coast earth stations, and group calls. These identities are formed in such a way that the identity or part thereof can be used by telephone and telex subscribers connected to the general telecommunications network principally to call ships automatically. (Adapted from Appendix 43 of the International Telecommunications Union Radio Regulations).

Attribute Type: Free text

Unit: None.

Resolution: 1

Format: xxxxxxxxx

Example: **366777490**

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.129 moiré effect

IHO Definition: **MOIRE EFFECT**. A short range (up to 2km) type of directional light. Sodium lighting gives a yellow background to a screen on which a vertical black line will be seen by an observer on the centre line. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.49, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the encoded light is a moiré effect light.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.130 multiplicity known

IHO Definition: **MULTIPLICITY KNOWN**. The number of features of identical character that exist as a co-located group is or is not known. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.150, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the exact number of features is known.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.131 name (*OBJNAM*, *NOBJNM*)

IHO Definition: **NAME**. The individual name of a feature. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.158, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Name of feature (c…): String of characters.

Format: c...

Example:

Remarks:
- The attribute **name** encodes the individual name of a feature (see clause 2.5.8).

27.132 name of resource

IHO Definition: **NAME OF RESOURCE**. Name of the online resource. (ISO 19115).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: String of characters.

Format: c...

Example:

Remarks:
- The attribute **name of resource** encodes the name of an online resource. The URL/URI for accessing the resource is populated using the attribute **linkage**.

27.133 name usage

IHO Definition: **NAME USAGE**. Classification of the type and display level of the name of a feature in an end-user system.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **default name display**

   IHO Definition: The name is intended to be displayed when the end-user system is set to the default name/text display setting.

2) **alternate name display**

   IHO Definition: The name is intended to be displayed when the end-user system is set to an alternate name/text display setting, for example an alternate language.

3) **no chart display**

   IHO Definition: The name or text is not intended to be displayed.

Remarks:
- For ECDIS, all encoded instances of the complex attribute **feature name** will be able to be viewed in the ECDIS Pick Report, regardless of the value populated for **name usage**.

27.134 nationality (NATION)

IHO Definition: **NATIONALITY**. Identifier of membership of a particular nation. (Derived from Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2018).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The nationality is encoded by a 2 character code following ISO 3166 (refer to S-57 Appendix A).

Format: c2 **(mandatory)**

Example: **AU** for Australia
US for the United States of America

Remarks:
- The attribute "nationality" indicates the nationality of the specific feature.
- Where it is required to encode multiple nationalities relevant to a single feature (for example, for a maritime jurisdiction area that is in dispute between two Coastal States), this must be done by populating multiple instances of **nationality**.

27.135 nature of construction (NATCON)

IHO Definition: **NATURE OF CONSTRUCTION**. The building's primary construction material.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **masonry**

   IHO Definition: Constructed of stones or bricks, usually quarried, shaped, and mortared. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **concreted**

   IHO Definition: Constructed of concrete, a material made of sand and gravel that is united by cement into a hardened mass used for roads, foundations, etc. (Adapted from the Illustrated Contemporary Dictionary, Encyclopedic Edition, 1978).

3) **loose boulders**

   IHO Definition: Constructed from large stones or blocks of concrete, often placed loosely for protection against waves or water turbulence. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

4) **hard surfaced**

   IHO Definition: Constructed with a surface of hard material, usually a term applied to roads surfaced with asphalt or concrete. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

5) **unsurfaced**

   IHO Definition: Constructed with no extra protection, usually a term applied to roads not surfaced with a hard material. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

6) **wooden**

   IHO Definition: Constructed from wood. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

7) **metal**

   IHO Definition: Constructed from metal. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

8) **glass reinforced plastic**

   IHO Definition: Constructed from a plastic material strengthened with fibres of glass. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.152, November 2000).

11) **latticed**

   IHO Definition: A structure of crossed wooden or metal strips usually arranged to form a diagonal pattern of open spaces between the strips.

12) **glass**

   IHO Definition: 1. Any artificial or natural substance having similar properties and composition, as fused

borax, obsidian, or the like. 2. Something made of such a substance, as a windowpane.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.136 nature of surface (NATSUR)

IHO Definition: **NATURE OF SURFACE**. The general material which the land surface or the seabed is composed.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **mud**

   IHO Definition: Soft, wet earth. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.153, November 2000).

2) **clay**

   IHO Definition: (Particles of less than 0.002mm); stiff, sticky earth that becomes hard when baked. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.153, November 2000).

3) **silt**

   IHO Definition: An unconsolidated sediment whose particles range in size from 0.0039 to 0.0625 millimetres in diameter (between clay and sand size). (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **sand**

   IHO Definition: Loose material consisting of small but easily distinguishable, separate grains, between 0.0625 and 2.000 millimetres in diameter. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **stone**

   IHO Definition: A general term for rock and rock fragments ranging in size from pebbles and gravel to boulders or large rock masses. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **gravel**

   IHO Definition: (Particles of 2.0 - 4.0mm); small stones with coarse sand. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.153, November 2000).

7) **pebbles**

   IHO Definition: A small stone worn smooth and rounded by the action of water, sand, ice, etc. ranging in diameter between 4 and 64 millimetres. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **cobbles**

   IHO Definition: A naturally rounded stone larger than a pebble. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

9) **rock**

   IHO Definition: Any formation of natural origin that constitutes an integral part of the lithosphere. The natural occurring material that forms firm, hard, and solid masses. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **lava**

   IHO Definition: The fluid or semi-fluid matter flowing from a volcano. The substance that results from the cooling of the molten rock. Part of the ocean bed is composed of lava. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

14) **coral**

   IHO Definition: Hard calcareous skeletons of many tribes of marine polyps. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

17) **shells**

   IHO Definition: The hard outside covering of an animal. Part of the ocean bed is composed of numerous shells of marine animals. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

18) **boulder**

IHO Definition: A rounded rock with diameter of 256 millimetres or larger. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- The attribute “nature of surface” encodes the general nature of the material of which the land surface or the seabed is composed.
- Mixed bottom: where the seabed comprises a mixture of material, the main constituent is given first for example fine sand with mud and shells would be indicated as *4,1,17*.
- Mud, sand, stone, rock are terms used for the general description. Clay, silt, gravel, pebbles, cobbles are more specific terms related to particle size.

27.137 nature of surface – qualifying terms (NATQUA)

IHO Definition: **NATURE OF SURFACE – QUALIFYING TERMS**. The nature of various forms of natural surface materials in terms of their size, morphology and consistency.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **fine**

   IHO Definition: Falls within the smallest size continuum for a particular nature of surface term. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.155, November 2000).

2) **medium**

   IHO Definition: Falls within the moderate size continuum for a particular nature of surface term. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.155, November 2000).

3) **coarse**

   IHO Definition: Falls within the largest size continuum for a particular nature of surface term. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.155, November 2000).

4) **broken**

   IHO Definition: Fractured or in pieces. (Adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

5) **sticky**

   IHO Definition: Having an adhesive or glue like property. (Adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

6) **soft**

   IHO Definition: Not hard or firm. (Adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

7) **stiff**

   IHO Definition: Not pliant; thick, resistant to flow. (Adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

8) **volcanic**

   IHO Definition: Composed of or containing material ejected from a volcano. (Adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

9) **calcareous**

   IHO Definition: Composed of or containing calcium or calcium carbonate. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **hard**

    IHO Definition: Firm; usually refers to an area of the seafloor not covered by unconsolidated sediment. (IHO Dictionary – S-32 and adapted from Webster’s II New Riverside Dictionary, 1984).

Remarks:
- The attribute “nature of surface - qualifying terms” encodes the nature of various forms of natural surface materials in terms of their size, morphology and consistency.

27.138 number of features

IHO Definition: **NUMBER OF FEATURES**. The number of features of identical character that exist as a co-located group. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.150, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: None

Resolution: 1

Format: xx

Example: **3** for 3 co-located cables

Remarks:
- The attribute **number of features** must only be used to indicate the number of entities of a feature, where known, that are co-located (for example 3 overhead cables suspended over a body of water between 2 pylons), and this information is considered to be of use to the Mariner. Where possible, features must be encoded individually.

27.139 opening bridge *(CATBRG)*

IHO Definition: **OPENING BRIDGE**. A bridge that is closed when set for carrying road traffic and open when set to permit marine traffic to pass through the waterway it crosses. Modern opening (movable) bridges are either bascule, vertical lift or swing. (Adapted from McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology, 7th Edition, 1992).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that one or more spans of the bridge are opening.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.140 orientation value (ORIENT)

IHO Definition: **ORIENTATION VALUE**. The angular distance measured from true north to the major axis of the feature. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 0·01°

Format: xxx.xx

Minimum value: 0

Maximum value: 360

Example: **246.7** for an orientation value of 246·7 degrees

27.141 pictorial representation (PICREP)

IHO Definition: **PICTORIAL REPRESENTATION**. Indicates whether a pictorial representation of the feature is available. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.162, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The string encodes the file name of a single external graphic file (pixel/vector).

Remarks:
- The “pictorial representation” could be a drawing or a photo.

27.142 pilot movement

IHO Definition: **PILOT MOVEMENT**. Classification of pilot activity by arrival, departure, or change of pilot. It may also describe the place where the pilot's advice begins, ends, or is transferred to a different pilot.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **embarkation**

   IHO Definition: The place where vessels not being navigated according to a pilot’s instructions pick up a pilot while in transit from sea to a port or constricted waters for future navigation under pilot instructions.

2) **disembarkation**

   IHO Definition: The place where vessels being navigated under a pilot’s instructions in transit from sea to a port or constricted waters drop the pilot and proceed without being subject to pilot instructions.

3) **pilot change**

   IHO Definition: The place where vessels being navigated under a pilot’s instructions drop off the pilot and pick up a different pilot for future navigation under pilot’s instructions.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.143 product (PRODCT)

IHO Definition: **PRODUCT**. The various substances which are transported, stored or exploited.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **oil**

   IHO Definition: A thick, slippery liquid that will not dissolve in water, usually petroleum based in the context of storage tanks. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

2) **gas**

   IHO Definition: A substance with particles that can move freely, usually a fuel substance in the context of storage tanks. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

3) **water**

   IHO Definition: A colourless, odourless, tasteless liquid that is a compound of hydrogen and oxygen. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

4) **stone**

   IHO Definition: A general term for rock and rock fragments ranging in size from pebbles and gravel to boulders or large rock masses. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **coal**

   IHO Definition: A hard black mineral that is burned as fuel. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

6) **ore**

   IHO Definition: A solid rock or mineral from which metal is obtained. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

7) **chemicals**

IHO Definition: Any substance obtained by or used in a chemical process. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

8) **drinking water**

IHO Definition: Water that is suitable for human consumption. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

9) **milk**

IHO Definition: A white fluid secreted by female mammals as food for their young. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

10) **bauxite**

IHO Definition: A mineral from which aluminum is obtained. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

11) **coke**

IHO Definition: A solid substance obtained after gas and tar have been extracted from coal, used as a fuel. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

12) **iron ingots**

IHO Definition: An oblong lump of cast iron metal. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

13) **salt**

IHO Definition: Sodium chloride obtained from mines or by the evaporation of sea water. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

14) **sand**

IHO Definition: Loose material consisting of small but easily distinguishable, separate grains, between 0.0625 and 2.000 millimetres in diameter. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

15) **timber**

IHO Definition: Wood prepared for use in building or carpentry. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

16) **sawdust/wood chips**

IHO Definition: Powdery fragments of wood made in sawing timber or coarse chips produced for use in manufacturing pressed board. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

17) **scrap metal**

IHO Definition: Discarded metal suitable for being reprocessed. (Adapted from the Oxford Minidictionary, Third Edition).

18) **liquefied natural gas**

IHO Definition: Natural gas that has been liquefied for ease of transport by cooling the gas to -162 Celsius. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

19) **liquefied petroleum gas**

IHO Definition: A compressed gas consisting of flammable light hydrocarbons and derived from petroleum. (Adapted from the Websters New World Dictionary).

20) **wine**

IHO Definition: The fermented juice of grapes. (Adapted from the Websters New World Dictionary).

21) **cement**

IHO Definition: A substance made of powdered lime and clay, mixed with water. (Adapted from the Websters New World Dictionary).

22) **grain**

IHO Definition: A small hard seed, especially that of any cereal plant such as wheat, rice, corn, rye etc. (Adapted from the Websters New World Dictionary).

23) **electricity**

IHO Definition: Electric charge or current.

24) **ice**

IHO Definition: The solid form of water. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

25) **clay**

IHO Definition: (Particles of less than 0.002mm); stiff, sticky earth that becomes hard when baked. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.153, November 2000).

Remarks:
- The attribute “product” encodes the various substances which are transported, stored or exploited.

27.144 radar band

IHO Definition: **RADAR BAND**. The band code character of the electromagnetic spectrum within which radar wave lengths lie.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Radar band (C).

Format: C

Example: **X** for the (X) - Band.

Remarks:
- Radar transponder beacons generally work on the 3cm (X) – Band or the 10cm (S) – Band wave lengths. Nevertheless, wave lengths outside the marine band are used.

27.145 radar conspicuous (CONRAD)

IHO Definition: **RADAR CONSPICUOUS**. A feature which returns a strong radar echo. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the feature returns a strong radar echo.

Default value: *False*

Remarks:
- **Radar conspicuous** applies to both features that themselves provide a strong radar echo; or return a strong radar echo as a result of being fitted with a radar reflector or a Radar Target Enhancer.

27.146 radius (RADIUS)

IHO Definition: **RADIUS**. The vector extending from the centre to the periphery of a circular or spherical feature. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.173, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxx.x

Example: **26** for a radius of 26 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.147 reference direction

IHO Definition: **REFERENCE DIRECTION**. A direction used as a basis for comparison of other directions. (IHO Hydrographic Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

5) **east**

13) **west**

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.148 reference location

IHO Definition: **REFERENCE LOCATION**. Information relating to the point of origin for a measured distance as indicated on a distance mark.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Reference location (c...).

Format: c...

Example: **Storey Bridge** for a distance mark marking a specified distance from Storey Bridge.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.149 reference tide

IHO Definition: **REFERENCE TIDE**. The reference tide to which the series of tidal stream values apply.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **high water**

   IHO Definition: The highest level reached at a place by the water surface in one oscillation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **low water**

   IHO Definition: The lowest level reached at a place by the water surface in one oscillation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.150 reference tide type

IHO Definition: **REFERENCE TIDE TYPE**. The type of tide range (that is, mean spring tide, mean neap tide or mean tide) for which a set of tidal stream rates and directions apply.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **springs**

   IHO Definition: The tides of increased range occurring near the times of full moon and new moon. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

2) **neaps**

   IHO Definition: The tides of decreased range occurring near the times of first and last quarter.

3) **mean**

   IHO Definition: The tides of mean range occurring between spring and neap tides.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.151 reference year for magnetic variation (RYRMGV)

IHO Definition: **REFERENCE YEAR FOR MAGNETIC VARIATION**. The reference calendar year for magnetic variation values. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.176, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Unit: Four digit year indication (YYYY)

Format: YYYY----

Example: **2009----**

Remarks:
- The dashes (----) must be included in all cases.

27.152 regulation citation

IHO Definition: **REGULATION CITATION**. The regulation citation for a feature.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Regulation citation (c...).

Format: c...

Example: **CFR 33.88.810**

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.153 reported date *(SORDAT)*

IHO Definition: **REPORTED DATE**. The date that the item was observed, done, or investigated.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM)

(for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)

Example: **20101129** for 29 November 2010 as the reported date.

Remarks:
- The attribute **reported date** indicates the date that information regarding a feature has been supplied to a Producing Authority.

27.154 restriction (RESTRN)

IHO Definition: **RESTRICTION**. The official legal statute of each kind of restricted area. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.179, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **anchoring prohibited**

   IHO Definition: An area within which anchoring is not permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.177, November 2000).

2) **anchoring restricted**

   IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which anchoring is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.177, November 2000).

3) **fishing prohibited**

   IHO Definition: An area within which fishing is not permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.177, November 2000).

4) **fishing restricted**

   IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which fishing is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.177, November 2000).

5) **trawling prohibited**

   IHO Definition: An area within which trawling is not permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.177, November 2000).

6) **trawling restricted**

   IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which trawling is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

7) **entry prohibited**

   IHO Definition: An area within which navigation and/or anchoring is prohibited. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **entry restricted**

   IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which navigation is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

9) **dredging prohibited**

   IHO Definition: An area within which dredging is not permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

10) **dredging restricted**

IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which dredging is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

11) **diving prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which diving is not permitted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

12) **diving restricted**

IHO Definition: A specified area designated by appropriate authority, within which diving is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

13) **no wake**

IHO Definition: Mariners must adjust the speed of their vessels to reduce the wave or wash which may cause erosion or disturb moored vessels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

14) **area to be avoided**

IHO Definition: An IMO declared routeing measure comprising an area within defined limits in which either navigation is particularly hazardous or it is exceptionally important to avoid casualties and which should be avoided by all ships, or certain classes of ships. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

15) **construction prohibited**

IHO Definition: The erection of permanent or temporary fixed structures or artificial islands is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

16) **discharging prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which discharging or dumping is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

17) **discharging restricted**

IHO Definition: A specified area designated by an appropriate authority, within which discharging or dumping is restricted in accordance with specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

18) **industrial or mineral exploration/development prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which industrial or mineral exploration and development are prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

19) **industrial or mineral exploration/development restricted**

IHO Definition: A specified area designated by an appropriate authority, within which industrial or mineral exploration and development is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

20) **drilling prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which excavating a hole on the seabed with a drill is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

21) **drilling restricted**

IHO Definition: A specified area designated by an appropriate authority, within which excavating a hole on the seabed with a drill is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

22) **removal of historical artefacts prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which the removal of historical artefacts is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

23) **cargo transhipment (lightening) prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area in which cargo transhipment (lightening) is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

24) **dragging prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area in which the dragging of anything along the seabed, for example bottom trawling, is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

25) **stopping prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area in which a vessel is prohibited from stopping. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.178, November 2000).

26) **landing prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area in which landing is prohibited. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.179, November 2000).

27) **speed restricted**

IHO Definition: An area within which speed is restricted. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.179, November 2000).

39) **swimming prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area in which swimming is prohibited.

42) **power-driven vessels prohibited**

IHO Definition: An area within which any vessel propelled by machinery is prohibited. (Adapted from Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972).

Remarks:

- The official legal status of each kind of restricted area defines the kind of restriction(s), for example the restriction for a “game preserve” may be “entry prohibited”, the restriction for a “fish sanctuary” may be “fishing restricted”.
- The complete information about the restriction(s), actually held in handbooks or other publications, may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **file reference**. A short explanation may be given by the use of **information**, sub-attribute **text**.

27.155 scale minimum (SCAMIN)

IHO Definition: **SCALE MINIMUM**. The minimum scale at which the feature may be used for example for ECDIS presentation.

Attribute Type: Integer

Minimum value: 1

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:89 999 is encoded as 89999.

Unit: None

Resolution: 1

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: If a particular minimum scale is specified as 1:89 999 (encoded as **89999**), and an example of a smaller scale would be 1:179 999 (encoded as **179999**).

The **scale minimum** value of a feature determines the display scale below which the feature is no longer displayed. Its purpose is to reduce clutter, to prioritise the display of features and to improve display speed. In encoding its value, the producing authority should consider these factors, as well as the scale at which the feature is no longer likely to be required for navigation.

In order to optimize the performance and clarity of the ENC, it is a mandatory requirement on ENCs that **scale minimum** is used.

Remarks:
- **scale minimum** only affects the display of a feature on an ECDIS, not its presence in the System Database.
- If **scale minimum** is not encoded, the feature is displayed at all scales.
- Where **scale minimum** is used, it must always be set to a scale less (that is, to a smaller scale) than or equal to the optimum display scale of the data as described in clause 2.5.5. Failure to follow this rule will mean that features will not be displayed on the ECDIS until the overscale warning is activated.
- Skin of the Earth and Meta features must always be displayed. Therefore, **scale minimum** must not be encoded on Skin of the Earth and Meta features.
- If the same feature exists in datasets of different optimum display scales, the same **scale minimum** value must be assigned to each occurrence of the feature.

27.156 sector bearing *(SECTR1, SECTR2)*

IHO Definition: **SECTOR BEARING**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

sector bearing specifies the limit of the sector. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.184, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 0·01°

Format: xxx.xx

Example: **125** for a sector bearing of 125 degrees

Remarks:
- The values given to the common limits of adjacent sectors should be identical.
- The orientation of the bearing is from seaward to the central feature. This conforms with the method used in "List of Lights" publications.
- A generic term such as "to shore" cannot be used; a specific bearing must be encoded. Where a light sector limit is defined as "to the shore", it should be encoded using a value that ensures that, when the limit is drawn, it will fall entirely on land.

27.157 sector line length

IHO Definition: **SECTOR LINE LENGTH**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

sector line length specifies the displayed length of the line, in ground units, defining the limit of the sector.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Nautical mile (M)

Resolution: 0.01M

Format: xx.xx

Example: **5.15** for a sector line length of 5.15 nautical miles

Remarks:
- The attribute **sector line length** is used to override the default sector line length in ECDIS for light sectors that are considered to be particularly critical to safe navigation.
- Sector lines should be displayed such that they cover the area where they are useful to Mariners.
- Sector lines must not extend beyond the nominal range of the light sector.

27.158 signal duration

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL DURATION**. The time occupied by a single instance of light/sound or eclipse/silence in a signal sequence.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Seconds (s)

Resolution: 0·01s

Format: xx.xx

Minimum value: > 0

Example: **2.5** for an duration of 2·5 seconds

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.159 signal frequency (SIGFRQ)

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL FREQUENCY**. The frequency of a signal. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.187, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Hertz (Hz)

Resolution: 1 Hz

Format: xxxxxxxxxxx

Example: **950000000** for a radio signal centred on 950 MHz

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.160 signal generation (SIGGEN)

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL GENERATION**. The mechanism used to generate a fog or light signal.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **automatically**

   IHO Definition: Signal generation is initiated by a self regulating mechanism such as a timer or light sensor. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.188, November 2000).

2) **by wave action**

   IHO Definition: The signal is generated by the motion of the sea surface such as a bell in a buoy. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.188, November 2000).

3) **by hand**

   IHO Definition: The signal is generated by a manually operated mechanism such as a hand cranked siren. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.188, November 2000).

4) **by wind**

   IHO Definition: The signal is generated by the motion of air such as a wind driven whistle. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.188, November 2000).

5) **radio activated**

   IHO Definition: Activated by radio signal.

6) **call activated**

IHO Definition: Activated by making a call to a manned station.

Remarks:
- The attribute “signal generation” encodes the mechanism used to generate a fog signal.

27.161 signal group (SIGGRP)

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL GROUP**. The number of signals, the combination of signals or the Morse character(s) within one period of full sequence. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.189, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The signal group of a light is encoded using brackets to separate the individual groups. A group of signals may be a single number, a chain of numbers separated by "+", a sequence of up to 4 letters or a letter and a number.

A fixed light has no signal group.

Where no specific signal group is given for one of the light characteristics, this should be shown by an empty pair of brackets.

Format: (c)(c)...

Examples:

light characteristic		**signal group**
VQ(6)+LFl	->	(6)(1)
LFl+Fl(2+3)	->	(1)(2+3)
Fl(2)+LFl	->	(2)(1)
FFl	->	()(1)
Mo(AA)	->	(AA)
AlFl(2W+1R)	->	(2+1)
AlLFlWR	->	(1)
FOcW	->	()(1)
AlOc(4)WR	->	(4)
AlWR	->	()
Iso	->	(1)
IQ	->	()

Remarks:
- In the above examples, where there is more than one group included in the rhythm of the light (for example (6)(1)), each group is encoded using a separate instance of **signal group**; in this case the first instance of **signal group** would be *(6)* and the second instance would be *(1)*.

27.162 signal period (SIGPER)

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL PERIOD**. The time occupied by an entire cycle of intervals of light and eclipse. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.190, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Seconds (s)

Resolution: 0·01s

Format: xx.xx

Minimum value: > 0

Example: **12** for an interval of 12 seconds

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.163 signal status

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL STATUS**. The indication of an element of a signal sequence being a period of light/sound or eclipse/silence.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **lit/sound**

   IHO Definition: The indication of an element of a signal sequence being a period of light or sound.

2) **eclipsed/silent**

   IHO Definition: The indication of an element of a signal sequence being a period of eclipse or silence.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.164 speed limit

IHO Definition: **SPEED LIMIT**. The maximum allowed rate of travel in an area.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Knot (kt); or defined by complex attribute **vessel speed limit**, sub-attribute **speed units**.

Resolution: 0·1kt.

Format: xx.x

Example: **4.5** for a speed limit of 4.5 knots

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.165 speed maximum (CURVEL)

IHO Definition: **SPEED MAXIMUM**. Rate of motion. The terms speed and velocity are often used interchangeably, but speed is a scalar, having magnitude only, while velocity is a vector quantity, having both magnitude and direction. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Speed maximum is the maximum rate of travel that can occur. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.121, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Knot (kt)

Resolution: 0·1kt.

Format: xx.x

Example: **2.1** for a maximum speed of 2·1 knots

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.166 speed minimum

IHO Definition: **SPEED MINIMUM**. Rate of motion. The terms speed and velocity are often used interchangeably, but speed is a scalar, having magnitude only, while velocity is a vector quantity, having both

magnitude and direction. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Speed minimum is the minimum rate of travel that can occur. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.121, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Knot (kt)

Resolution: 0·1kt.

Format: xx.x

Example: **1.6** for a maximum speed of 1·6 knots

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.167 speed units

IHO Definition: **SPEED UNITS**. The units for description of speed. (S-412 WMO Weather Product Specification, 2017).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

2) **kilometres per hour**

   IHO Definition: A unit of speed, expressing the number of kilometres travelled in one hour. (Wikipedia).

3) **miles per hour**

   IHO Definition: An imperial and United States customary unit of speed expressing the number of statute miles covered in one hour. (Wikipedia).

4) **knots**

   IHO Definition: A nautical unit of speed. One knot is one nautical mile per hour. The name is derived from the knots in the log line. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.168 station name

IHO Definition: **STATION NAME**. The name of the reference tide station with reference water level for tidal stream panel observations.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Name of tidal stream station (c...): String of characters.

Format: c...

Example: **Darwin** for the Darwin tide station.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.169 station number

IHO Definition: **STATION NUMBER**. The identification number of the reference tide station with reference water level for tidal stream panel observations.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: The value indicates the reference number of a tide station as listed in national Tide Tables.

Format: c...

Example: **63230** for the reference number of Darwin tide station.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.170 status (STATUS)

IHO Definition: **STATUS**. The condition of an object at a given instant in time.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **permanent**

   IHO Definition: Intended to last or function indefinitely. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

2) **occasional**

   IHO Definition: Acting on special occasions; happening irregularly. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

3) **recommended**

   IHO Definition: Presented as worthy of confidence, acceptance, use, etc. (The Macquarie Dictionary, 1988).

4) **not in use**

   IHO Definition: Use has ceased, but the facility still exists intact; disused. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

5) **periodic/intermittent**

   IHO Definition: Recurring at intervals. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

6) **reserved**

   IHO Definition: Set apart for some specific use. (Adapted from The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

7) **temporary**

   IHO Definition: Meant to last only for a time. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary).

8) **private**

   IHO Definition: Administered by an individual or corporation, rather than a State or a public body. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

9) **mandatory**

   IHO Definition: Compulsory; enforced. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

11) **extinguished**

   IHO Definition: No longer lit. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.197, November 2000).

12) **illuminated**

   IHO Definition: Lit by flood lights, strip lights, etc. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.198, November 2000).

13) **historic**

   IHO Definition: Famous in history; of historical interest. (The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 7th Edition).

14) **public**

   IHO Definition: Belonging to, available to, used or shared by, the community as a whole and not restricted to private use. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

15) **synchronized**

IHO Definition: Occur at a time, coincide in point of time, be contemporary or simultaneous. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

16) **watched**

IHO Definition: Looked at or observed over a period of time especially so as to be aware of any movement or change. (adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993).

17) **unwatched**

IHO Definition: Usually automatic in operation, without any permanently-stationed personnel to superintend it. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

18) **existence doubtful**

IHO Definition: A feature that has been reported but has not been definitely determined to exist. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.198, November 2000).

28) **buoyed**

IHO Definition: Marked by buoys. (Australian Hydrographic Office).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.171 stream depth

IHO Definition: **STREAM DEPTH**. The depth below the sea surface to which the tidal stream data refers relative to the sounding datum.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxxxx.x

Examples: **0** for surface tidal stream data
15 for tidal stream data collected at a depth of 15 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.172 swept date

IHO Definition: **SWEPT DATE**. The date that the area was swept by a survey.

Attribute Type: Truncated date

Indication: Dates should be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY), 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific year, month and/or day is required/known, indication of the year, month and/or day is omitted, and replaced with dashes (-). See also clause 2.4.8.

Format: YYYYMMDD (full date, **mandatory**)
YYYYMM-- (no specific day required – **mandatory**)
YYYY---- (no specific month required – **mandatory**)

Example: **20101203** for 03 December 2010 as the swept date.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.173 technique of vertical measurement (TECSOU)

IHO Definition: **TECHNIQUE OF VERTICAL MEASUREMENT**. Survey method used to obtain depth information.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **found by echo sounder**

   IHO Definition: The depth was measured by using an instrument that determines depth of water by measuring the time interval between emission of a sonic or ultrasonic signal and return of its echo from the bottom. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **found by side scan sonar**

   IHO Definition: The depth was computed from a record produced by active sonar in which fixed acoustic beams are directed into the water perpendicularly to the direction of travel to scan the seabed and generate a record of the seabed configuration. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **found by multi beam**

   IHO Definition: The depth was measured by using a wide swath echo sounder that uses multiple beams to measure depths directly below and transverse to the ship's track. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **found by diver**

   IHO Definition: The depth was determined by a person skilled in the practice of diving. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **found by lead line**

   IHO Definition: The depth was measured by using a line, graduated with attached marks and fastened to a sounding lead. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

8) **swept by vertical acoustic system**

   IHO Definition: The given area has been swept using a system comprised of multiple echo sounder transducers attached to booms deployed from the survey vessel. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.207, November 2000).

9) **found by electromagnetic sensor**

   IHO Definition: The depth was determined by using an instrument that compares electromagnetic signals. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

10) **photogrammetry**

    IHO Definition: The science or art of obtaining reliable measurements from photographs. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **satellite imagery**

    IHO Definition: The depth was determined by using instruments placed aboard an artificial satellite. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

12) **found by levelling**

    IHO Definition: The depth was determined by using levelling techniques to find the elevation of the point relative to a datum. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **swept by side scan sonar**

    IHO Definition: The given area was determined to be free from navigational dangers to a certain depth by towing a side scan sonar. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

15) **found by LIDAR**

    IHO Definition: The depth was measured by using an instrument that measures distance by emitting timed pulses of laser light and measuring the time between emission and reception of the reflected pulses. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

16) **synthetic Aperture Radar**

IHO Definition: A radar with a synthetic aperture antenna which is composed of a large number of elementary transducing elements. The signals are electronically combined into a resulting signal equivalent to that of a single antenna of a given aperture in a given direction. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

17) **hyperspectral Imagery**

IHO Definition: Term used to describe the imagery derived from subdividing the electromagnetic spectrum into very narrow bandwidths. These narrow bandwidths may be combined with or subtracted from each other in various ways to form images useful in precise terrain or target analysis.

18) **mechanically swept**

IHO Definition: The given area was determined to be free from navigational dangers to a certain depth by towing a line or object below the surface at the desired depth; or least depth(s) and position(s) within an area was identified using the same technique. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.174 telecommunication identifier

IHO Definition: **TELECOMMUNICATION IDENTIFIER**. An identifier, such as words, numbers, letters, symbols, or any combination of those used to establish a contact to a particular person, organisation or service.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication:

Format: c...

Example: **+61 2 4223 6500**; **pilsener@beer.com**

Remarks:
- The telecommunication identifier should include the international and any applicable regional codes.

27.175 telecommunication service

IHO Definition: **TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICE**. Classification of methods of communication over a distance by electrical, electronic, or electromagnetic means.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **voice**

IHO Definition: The transfer or exchange of information by using sounds that are being made by mouth and throat when speaking.

2) **facsimile**

IHO Definition: A system of transmitting and reproducing graphic matter (as printing or still pictures) by means of signals sent over telephone lines. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2014).

3) **SMS**

IHO Definition: Short Message Service is a form of text messaging communication on phones and mobile phones.

4) **data**

IHO Definition: A representation of facts, concepts or instructions in a formalised manner suitable for communication, interpretation or processing. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **streamed data**

IHO Definition: Data that is constantly received by and presented to an end-user while being delivered by a provider.

6) **telex**

IHO Definition: A system of communication in which messages are sent over long distances by using a telephone system and are printed by using a special machine (called a teletypewriter). (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2014).

7) **telegraph**

IHO Definition: An apparatus, system or process for communication at a distance by electric transmission over wire.

8) **email**

IHO Definition: Messages and other data exchanged between individuals using computers in a network. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary – 2014).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.176 text (*INFORM*, *NINFOM*)

IHO Definition: **TEXT**. A non-formatted digital text string.

Attribute Type: Free text

Remarks:
- This attribute should be used, for example, to hold the information that is shown on paper charts by short cautionary or explanatory notes. Therefore, text populated in **text** must not exceed 300 characters.
- Text may be in English, or in a national language defined by the attribute **language** (see clause 27.116).
- No formatting of text is possible within **text**. If formatted text, or text strings exceeding 300 characters, is required, then the sub-attribute **file reference** must be used (see clause 27.98).

27.177 text offset bearing

IHO Definition: **TEXT OFFSET BEARING**. The angular distance measured from true north that text associated with a feature is positioned from the feature in an end-user system.

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 1°

Format: xxx

Minimum value: 0

Maximum value: 360

Example: **246** for a text offset bearing of 246 degrees

Remarks:
- The attribute **text offset bearing** only defines the bearing to the anchor point of the text in the end-user system. It does not impact on the rotation of the text itself (that is, text is always displayed horizontally on the screen).

27.178 text offset distance

IHO Definition: **TEXT OFFSET DISTANCE**. The distance that text associated with a feature is positioned from the feature in an end-user system.

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: Defined in relation to the desired distance in the ECDIS display from the associated feature at the optimum display scale of the ENC data.

Resolution: 1mm

Format: xx

Example: **45** for a text offset of 45 mm

Remarks:
- None.

27.179 text rotation

IHO Definition: **TEXT ROTATION**. A statement that expresses if text associated with a feature is to be rotated in the ECDIS display or not.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the text is to be rotated in accordance with a defined parameter.

Remarks:
- The rotation of the text in the ECDIS is done in accordance with the value populated for the attribute **text offset bearing**.

27.180 text type

IHO Definition: **TEXT TYPE**. The attribute from which a text string is derived.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **name** Text display preference is the name of the feature (see clause 27.131).

2) **light characteristic** (see clause 27.118).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.181 time of day end

IHO Definition: **TIME OF DAY END**. The time corresponding to the end of an active period.

Attribute Type: Time

Indication: The “time of day end” must be encoded using 2 digits for the hour (hh), 2 digits for the minutes (mm) and 2 digits for the seconds (ss). Additional characters are added dependant on the time zone indication (UTC or offset to UTC). This conforms to ISO 8601.

Format: hhmmssZ **(mandatory** for UTC time**)**
hhmmss+hhmm **(mandatory** for local time with UTC offset**)**
hhmmss **(mandatory** for local time without offset**)**

Example: **162000Z** for a period ending at 04:20 pm UTC.
162000+0100 for a period ending at 04:20 pm local time, 1 hour ahead of UTC.
162000 for a period ending at 04:20 pm local time, without specified offset to UTC.

Remarks:
- Local time expressed without a specified offset to UTC is used where the same time of day applies locally, regardless of any local seasonal time adjustments (for example daylight saving (or Summer) time).

27.182 time of day start

IHO Definition: **TIME OF DAY START**. The time corresponding to the start of an active period.

Attribute Type: Time

Indication: The "time of day start" must be encoded using 2 digits for the hour (hh), 2 digits for the minutes (mm) and 2 digits for the seconds (ss). Additional characters are added dependant on the time zone indication (UTC or offset to UTC). This conforms to ISO 8601.

Format: hhmmssZ **(mandatory** for UTC time**)**
hhmmss+hhmm **(mandatory** for local time with UTC offset**)**
hhmmss **(mandatory** for local time without offset**)**

Example: **094500Z** for a period starting at 09:45 am UTC.
094500+0100 for a period starting at 09:45 am local time, 1 hour ahead of UTC.
094500 for a period starting at 09:45 am local time, without specified offset to UTC.

Remarks:
- Local time expressed without a specified offset to UTC is used where the same time of day applies locally, regardless of any local seasonal time adjustments (for example daylight saving (or Summer) time).

27.183 time relative to tide

IHO Definition: **TIME RELATIVE TO TIDE**. The time difference relative to the reference tide.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Hour

Resolution: 0·1 hour

Format: sxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **1.5** for 1·5 hours after the referenced tide

Remarks:
- Positive values are time after the referenced tide, negative values are time before the referenced tide.

27.184 topmark/daymark shape (TOPSHP)

IHO Definition: **TOPMARK/DAYMARK SHAPE**. The shape a topmark or daymark exhibits.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **cone (point up)**

   IHO Definition: Is where the vertex points up. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.222, November 2000).

2) **cone (point down)**

   IHO Definition: Is where the vertex points down. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.222, November 2000).

3) **sphere**

   IHO Definition: A curved surface all points of which are equi-distant from a fixed point within, called the

centre. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **2 spheres**

IHO Definition: Two spheres, one above the other. Two black spheres are commonly used as an International Association of Lighthouse Authorities - IALA topmark (isolated danger). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

5) **cylinder**

IHO Definition: A solid geometrical figure generated by straight lines fixed in direction and describing with one of point a closed curve, especially a circle (in which case the figure is circular cylinder, its ends being parallel circles). (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

6) **board**

IHO Definition: Usually of rectangular shape, made from timber or metal and used to provide a contrast with the natural background of a daymark. The actual daymark is often painted on to this board. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

7) **x-shaped**

IHO Definition: Having a shape or a cross-section like the capital letter X. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

8) **upright cross**

IHO Definition: A cross with one vertical member and one horizontal member; that is, similar in shape to the character "+". (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

9) **cube (point up)**

IHO Definition: A cube standing on one of its vertexes. A cube is a solid contained by six equal squares; a regular hexahedron (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

10) **2 cones (point to point)**

IHO Definition: 2 cones, one above the other, with their vertices together in the centre. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

11) **2 cones (base to base)**

IHO Definition: 2 cones, one above the other, with their bases together in the centre and their vertices pointing up and down. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

12) **rhombus**

IHO Definition: A plane figure having four equal sides and equal opposite angles (two acute and two obtuse); an oblique equilateral parallelogram. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

13) **2 cones (points upward)**

IHO Definition: 2 cones, one above the other, with their vertices pointing up. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

14) **2 cones (points downward)**

IHO Definition: 2 cones, one above the other, with their vertices pointing down. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

15) **besom (point up)**

IHO Definition: A bundle of rods or twigs. A besom, point up is where the thicker (untied) end of the besom is at the bottom. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

16) **besom (point down)**

IHO Definition: A bundle of rods or twigs. A besom, point down is where the thinner (tied) end of the besom is at the bottom. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

17) **flag**

IHO Definition: A flag mounted on a short pole. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223,

November 2000).

18) **sphere over a rhombus**

IHO Definition: A sphere located above a rhombus. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

19) **square**

IHO Definition: A plane figure with four right angles and four equal straight sides (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

20) **rectangle (horizontal)**

IHO Definition: A rectangle is a plane figure with four right angles and four straight sides, opposite sides being parallel and equal in length. A horizontal rectangle is where the two longer opposite sides are standing horizontally. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

21) **rectangle (vertical)**

IHO Definition: A rectangle is a plane figure with four right angles and four straight sides, opposite sides being parallel and equal in length. A vertical rectangle is where the two longer opposite sides are standing vertically. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

22) **trapezium (up)**

IHO Definition: A quadrilateral having one pair of opposite sides parallel, and which stands on its longer parallel side. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

23) **trapezium (down)**

IHO Definition: A quadrilateral having one pair of opposite sides parallel, and which stands on its shorter parallel side. (Adapted from The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

24) **triangle (point up)**

IHO Definition: A figure having three angles and three sides, and which has a vertex at the top. (Adapted from New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

25) **triangle (point down)**

IHO Definition: A figure having three angles and three sides, and which has a side at the top. (Adapted from New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

26) **circle**

IHO Definition: A perfectly round plane figure whose circumference is everywhere equidistant from its centre. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 1).

27) **two upright crosses (one over the other)**

IHO Definition: Two upright crosses, generally vertically disposed one above the other. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224, November 2000).

28) **T-shape**

IHO Definition: Having a shape like the capital letter T. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224, November 2000).

29) **triangle pointing up over a circle**

IHO Definition: A triangle, vertex uppermost, located above a circle. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224, November 2000).

30) **upright cross over a circle**

IHO Definition: An upright cross located above a circle. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224, November 2000).

31) **rhombus over a circle**

IHO Definition: A rhombus located above a circle. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224,

November 2000).

32) **circle over a triangle pointing up**

IHO Definition: A circle located over a triangle, vertex uppermost. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.224, November 2000).

33) **other shape (see shape information)**

IHO Definition: An uncommon and/or non-standardized shape as textually described using an associated attribute.

Remarks:

- **Cone:** A solid figure generated by straight lines drawn from a fixed point (the vertex) to a circle in a plane not containing the vertex. (The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, 1993, vol 2).

  Cones are commonly used as International Association of Lighthouse Authorities - IALA topmarks (lateral). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.222, November 2000).
- Spheres are commonly used as International Association of Lighthouse Authorities - IALA topmarks (safe water). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).
- Cylinders are commonly used as International Association of Lighthouse Authorities - IALA topmarks (lateral). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).
- An x-shape as an International Association of Lighthouse Authorities – IALA topmark should be 3 dimensional in shape. It is made of at least three crossed bars. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.223, November 2000).

27.185 traffic flow (TRAFIC)

IHO Definition: **TRAFFIC FLOW**. Direction of vessels passing a reference point.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **inbound**

IHO Definition: Traffic flow in a general direction toward a port or similar destination. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.225, November 2000).

2) **outbound**

IHO Definition: Traffic flow in a general direction away from a port or similar point of origin. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.225, November 2000).

3) **one-way**

IHO Definition: Traffic flow in one general direction only. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.225, November 2000).

4) **two-way**

IHO Definition: Traffic flow in two generally opposite directions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.225, November 2000).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.186 underlying layer

IHO Definition: **UNDERLYING LAYER**. The position of the seabed type within the layers of the seabed.

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The value indicates the level of a material in a layered seabed, with the value *0* indicating the topmost level.

Example: **1** where the seabed type is the layer below the top of the seabed surface.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.187 value of annual change in magnetic variation (VALACM)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF ANNUAL CHANGE IN MAGNETIC VARIATION**. The annual change in magnetic variation values. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.226, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: minute (‘), negative west

Resolution: 0.1’

Format: sxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **-7.1** for an annual change of 7·1’ in a westerly direction

Remarks:
- A positive value; that is, unsigned, indicates a change in an easterly direction and a negative value indicates a change in a westerly direction.

27.188 value of depth contour (VALDCO)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF DEPTH CONTOUR**. The depth of a sea bottom contour. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.227, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: sxxxxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **50** for a depth contour of 50 metres

Remarks:
- Drying contours are indicated by a negative value.

27.189 value of magnetic variation (VALMAG)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF MAGNETIC VARIATION**. The angle between the magnetic and geographical meridians at any place, expressed in degrees east or west to indicate the direction of magnetic north from true north. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: degree (°), negative west

Resolution: 0.01°

Format: sxx.xx
s: sign, negative values only

Example: **2.3** for a magnetic north oriented at 2.3 degrees (2°18’) east from the geographic (true) north

Remarks:
- A positive value; that is, unsigned, indicates a change in an easterly direction and a negative value indicates a change in a westerly direction.

27.190 value of maximum range (VALMXR)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF MAXIMUM RANGE**. The extreme distance at which a feature can be seen or a signal detected. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.230, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Nautical mile (M)

Resolution: 0·1M

Format: xx.x

Example: **17** for maximum range of 17 nautical miles

Remarks:
- This attribute does not apply to lights, where the attribute “value of nominal range” should be used.

27.191 value of nominal range (VALNMR)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF NOMINAL RANGE**. The luminous range of a light in a homogenous atmosphere in which the meteorological visibility is 10 sea miles. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Nautical mile (M)

Resolution: 0·1M

Format: xx.x

Example: **14** for a nominal range of 14 nautical miles

Remarks:
- The nominal range is normally the luminous range of a light in a homogeneous atmosphere in which the meteorological visibility is 10 sea miles. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

27.192 value of sounding (VALSOU)

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF SOUNDING**. The value of the measurement of a sounding relative to the chart datum. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.232, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·01m

Format: sxxxxx.xx
s: sign, negative values only

Examples: **18.20** for a sounding of 18·2 metres
-2.46 for a drying height of 2·46 metres

Remarks:
- A drying height is indicated by a negative value.

27.193 vertical clearance unlimited

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE UNLIMITED**. A statement that expresses if the vertical clearance for a feature in the open position, such as a bridge span, is unlimited.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the vertical clearance for a feature in the open position is unlimited.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.194 vertical clearance value (VERCLR) *(VERCCL, VERCOP, VERCSA)*

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE VALUE**. The vertical clearance measured from the horizontal plane towards the feature overhead. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.234, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC Dataset Discovery Metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **7.6** for a vertical clearance of 7·6 metres

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.195 vertical datum (VERDAT)

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL DATUM**. The reference level used for expressing the vertical measurements of points on the earth's surface. Also called datum level, reference plane, levelling datum, datum for sounding reduction, datum for heights. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **mean low water springs**

   IHO Definition: The average height of the low waters of spring tides. This level is used as a tidal datum in some areas. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **mean lower low water springs**

   IHO Definition: The average height of lower low water springs at a place. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

3) **mean sea level**

   IHO Definition: The average height of the surface of the sea at a tide station for all stages of the tide over a 19-year period, usually determined from hourly height readings measured from a fixed predetermined reference level. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **lowest low water**

   IHO Definition: An arbitrary level conforming to the lowest tide observed at a place, or somewhat lower. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.239, November 2000).

5) **mean low water**

   IHO Definition: The average height of all low waters at a place over a 19-year period. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **lowest low water springs**

   IHO Definition: An arbitrary level conforming to the lowest water level observed at a place at spring tides during a period of time shorter than 19 years. (Australian Hydrographic Office).

7) **approximate mean low water springs**

   IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, usually within 0.3m from that of mean low water springs (MLWS). (AustralianHydrographic Office).

8) **indian spring low water**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary tidal datum approximating the level of the mean of the lower low water at spring tides. It was first used in waters surrounding India. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

A tidal datum approximating the lowest water level observed at a place, originated by G.H. Darwin for the tides of India at a level below MSL being equal to the sum of amplitudes of the harmonic constituents M2, S2, K1 and O1; usually below that of the lower low water at spring tides. Also called Indian tide plane. (Australian Hydrographic Office).

9) **low water springs**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, approximating that of mean low water springs (MLWS). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

10) **approximate lowest astronomical tide**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, usually within 0.3m from that of lowest astronomical tide (LAT). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

11) **nearly lowest low water**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level approximating the lowest water level observed at a place, usually equivalent to the Indian spring low water (ISLW). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

12) **mean lower low water**

IHO Definition: The average height of the lower low waters at a place over a 19-year period. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

13) **low water**

IHO Definition: The lowest level reached at a place by the water surface in one oscillation. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

14) **approximate mean low water**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, usually within 0.3m from that of mean low water (MLW). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

15) **approximate mean lower low water**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, usually within 0.3m from that of mean lower low water (MLLW). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

16) **mean high water**

IHO Definition: The average height of all high waters at a place over a 19-year period. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

17) **mean high water springs**

IHO Definition: The average height of the high waters of spring tides. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

18) **high water**

IHO Definition: The highest level reached at a place by the water surface in one oscillation. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

19) **approximate mean sea level**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, usually within ± 0.3m from that of mean sea level (MSL). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

20) **high water springs**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level, approximating that of mean high water springs (MHWS). (Australian Hydrographic Office).

21) **mean higher high water**

IHO Definition: The average height of higher high waters at a place over a 19-year period. (IHO Dictionary,

S-32).

22) **equinoctial spring low water**

IHO Definition: The level of low water springs near the time of an equinox. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

23) **lowest astronomical tide**

IHO Definition: The lowest tide level which can be predicted to occur under average meteorological conditions and under any combination of astronomical conditions. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

24) **local datum**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary datum defined by a local harbour authority, from which levels and tidal heights are measured by this authority. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

25) **international Great Lakes Datum 1985**

IHO Definition: A vertical reference system with its zero based on the mean water level at Rimouski/Pointe-au-Père, Quebec, over the period 1970 to 1988. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

26) **mean water level**

IHO Definition: The average of all hourly water levels over the available period of record. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

27) **lower low water large tide**

IHO Definition: The average of the lowest low waters, one from each of 19 years of observations. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

28) **higher high water large tide**

IHO Definition: The average of the highest high waters, one from each of 19 years of observations. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

29) **nearly highest high water**

IHO Definition: An arbitrary level approximating the highest water level observed at a place, usually equivalent to the high water springs. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.240, November 2000).

30) **highest astronomical tide**

IHO Definition: The highest tidal level which can be predicted to occur under average meteorological conditions and under any combination of astronomical conditions. (IHO Dictionary, S-32).

44) **baltic sea chart datum 2000**

IHO Definition: The datum refers to each Baltic country's realization of the European Vertical Reference System (EVRS) with land-uplift epoch 2000, which is connected to the Normaal Amsterdams Peil (NAP). (Baltic Sea Hydrographic Commission).

Remarks:
- This attribute is used to specify the datum to which both heights (vertical datum) and soundings (sounding datum) are referred.
- When the vertical datum is unknown, such as water areas above locks, the value "local datum" should be used, and further details may be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
- The ± 0.3m approximation quoted in the "approximate" levels is arbitrary and follows the British example of their definition for "approximate LAT".

27.196 vertical length (VERLEN)

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL LENGTH**. The total vertical length of a feature. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.242, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxx.x

Minimum value: 0

Example: **24.5** for a vertical length of 24.5 metres

Remarks:
- For floating features: The vertical distance from the surface of water to the highest point of that feature.
- For fixed features: The vertical distance from seabed or ground to the highest point of that feature.
- For features on top of other features: the vertical distance from the lowest to the highest point of that feature.
- Vertical length measurements do not require a datum.

27.197 vessel class

IHO Definition: **VESSEL CLASS**. The classification of a vessel, normally as defined by length or gross tonnage.

Indication: The string encodes the classification of a vessel, normally by length or gross tonnage.

Attribute Type: Free text

Remarks:
- No remarks .

27.198 virtual AIS aid to navigation type

IHO Definition: **VIRTUAL AIS AID TO NAVIGATION TYPE**. A purpose of a virtual AIS Aid to Navigation.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **north cardinal**

   IHO Definition: Indicates that it should be passed to the north side of the aid. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

2) **east cardinal**

   IHO Definition: Indicates that it should be passed to the east side of the aid. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

3) **south cardinal**

   IHO Definition: Indicates that it should be passed to the south side of the aid. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

4) **west cardinal**

   IHO Definition: Indicates that it should be passed to the west side of the aid. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.18, November 2000).

5) **port lateral (IALA A)**

   IHO Definition: Indicates the port boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the “conventional direction of buoyage” in the IALA A system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

6) **starboard lateral (IALA A)**

   IHO Definition: Indicates the starboard boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the “conventional direction of buoyage” in the IALA A system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition

3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

7) **port lateral (IALA B)**

IHO Definition: Indicates the port boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the “conventional direction of buoyage” in the IALA B system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000).

8) **starboard lateral (IALA B)**

IHO Definition: Indicates the starboard boundary of a navigational channel or suggested route when proceeding in the “conventional direction of buoyage” in the IALA B system. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.47, November 2000)..

9) **isolated danger**

IHO Definition: A mark used alone to indicate a dangerous reef or shoal. The mark may be passed on either hand. (Adapted from IALA International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation).

10) **safe water**

IHO Definition: Indicates that there is navigable water around the mark. (Adapted from UKHO NP 735, 5th Edition).

11) **special purpose**

IHO Definition: A special purpose aid is primarily used to indicate an area or feature, the nature of which is apparent from reference to a chart, Sailing Directions or Notice to Mariners.

12) **emergency wreck marking**

IHO Definition: A mark used to indicate the existence of a recent wreck.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.199 visitors mooring *(CATSCF)*

IHO Definition: **VISITORS MOORING**. A mooring set aside for the use of visiting vessels. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.92, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that a mooring is designated as a visitors mooring.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.200 visual prominence (CONVIS)

IHO Definition: **VISUAL PROMINENCE**. The extent to which a feature, either natural or artificial, is visible from seaward. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **visually conspicuous**

IHO Definition: Term applied to an object either natural or artificial which is distinctly and notably visible from seaward. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **not visually conspicuous**

IHO Definition: An object that may be visible from seaward, but cannot be used as a fixing mark and is not conspicuous. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.120, November 2000).

3) **prominent**

IHO Definition: Objects which are easily identifiable, but do not justify being classed as conspicuous. (IHO

Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

27.201 water level effect (WATLEV)

IHO Definition: **WATER LEVEL EFFECT**. The effect of the surrounding water on an object. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.243 (Remarks), November 2000).

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **partly submerged at high water**

   IHO Definition: Partially covered and partially dry at high water. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.243, November 2000).

2) **always dry**

   IHO Definition: Not covered at high water under average meteorological conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.243, November 2000).

3) **always under water/submerged**

   IHO Definition: Remains covered by water at all times under average meteorological conditions. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.243, November 2000).

4) **covers and uncovers**

   IHO Definition: Expression intended to indicate an area of a reef or other projection from the bottom of a body of water which periodically extends above and is submerged below the surface. Also referred to as dries or uncovers. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

5) **awash**

   IHO Definition: Flush with, or washed by the waves at low water under average meteorological conditions. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

6) **subject to inundation or flooding**

   IHO Definition: An area periodically covered by flood water, excluding tidal waters. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

7) **floating**

   IHO Definition: Resting or moving on the surface of a liquid without sinking. (Concise Oxford Dictionary).

Remarks:
- The attribute “water level effect” encodes the effect of the surrounding water on a feature.

27.202 waterway distance

IHO Definition: **WATERWAY DISTANCE**. The length of the space between two points along a waterway. (Adapted from Oxford English Dictionary).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined by the sub-attribute **distance unit of measurement** (see clause 27.91).

Resolution: 0·1

Format: xx.x

Example: **2.5** for a waterway distance value of 2.5 nautical miles (where **distance unit of measurement** is populated as *5* (nautical mile).

Remarks:

- No remarks.

27.203 wave length value

IHO Definition: **WAVE LENGTH VALUE**. The distance between two successive peaks (or other points of identical phase) on an electromagnetic wave. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.172, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Indication:

Unit: Metre (m)

Resolution: 0.01m

Format: x.xx

Example: **0.03** for a radar transponder beacon in the wave length “3cm (X) – Band”.

Remarks:
- Radar transponder beacons generally work on the 3cm (X) – Band or the 10cm (S) – Band wave lengths. Nevertheless, wave lengths outside the marine band are used.

28 Meta Feature and Spatial Attribute and Enumerate Descriptions

28.1 category of temporal variation

IHO Definition: **CATEGORY OF TEMPORAL VARIATION**. An assessment of the likelihood of change over time.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **extreme event**

   IHO Definition: Indication of the possible impact of a significant event (for example hurricane, earthquake, volcanic eruption, landslide, etc), which is considered likely to have changed the seafloor or landscape significantly.

2) **likely to change and significant shoaling expected**

   IHO Definition: Continuous or frequent change (for example river siltation, sand waves, seasonal storms, icebergs, etc) that is likely to result in new significant shoaling.

3) **likely to change but significant shoaling not expected**

   IHO Definition: Continuous or frequent change (for example sand wave shift, seasonal storms, icebergs, etc) that is not likely to result in new significant shoaling.

4) **likely to change**

   IHO Definition: Continuous or frequent change to non-bathymetric features (for example river siltation, glacier creep/recession, sand dunes, buoys, marine farms, etc).

5) **unlikely to change**

   IHO Definition: Significant change to the seafloor is not expected.

6) **unassessed**

   IHO Definition: Not having been assessed.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.2 data assessment

IHO Definition: **DATA ASSESSMENT**. The categorization of the assessment level of bathymetric data for an area.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **assessed**

   IHO Definition: The quality of the bathymetric data has been assessed.

2) **assessed (Oceanic)**

   IHO Definition: The quality of oceanic bathymetric data (depths deeper than 200 metres) has been assessed, however details are not required.

3) **unassessed**

   IHO Definition: Not having been assessed.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.3 full seafloor coverage achieved

IHO Definition: **FULL SEAFLOOR COVERAGE ACHIEVED**. Expression stating if full seafloor coverage has been achieved in the area covered by hydrographic surveys.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that full seafloor coverage for an area covered by hydrographic survey(s) has been achieved.

Remarks:
- **full seafloor coverage achieved** applies to both the spatial completeness of feature detection and to the spatial completeness of the measurement of the regular seafloor. The former is further specified by the complex attribute **features detected**, the latter by the attributes **depth range maximum value** and **depth range minimum value**.

28.4 horizontal distance uncertainty (HORACC)

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL DISTANCE UNCERTAINTY**. The best estimate of the horizontal accuracy of horizontal clearances and distances. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.136, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **0.5** for an error of 0·5 metres.

Remarks:
- The expected input is the radius of the two-dimensional error.
- The error is assumed to be positive and negative. The plus/minus character must not be encoded.

28.5 least depth of detected features measured

IHO Definition: **LEAST DEPTH OF DETECTED FEATURES MEASURED**. Expression stating if the least depth of detected features in an area was measured.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the characteristics of a hydrographic survey are such that the least depth of significant seafloor features can be determined.

Remarks:
- A feature in this context is any object, whether manmade or not, projecting above the seafloor, which may be a danger for surface navigation (reference: IHO publication S-44).
- **least depth of detected features measured** does not describe the least depth of features that were actually detected during a hydrographic survey, but the ability of the survey to detect the least depth of features with a maximum uncertainty as defined in IHO publication S-44.

28.6 line spacing maximum

IHO Definition: **LINE SPACING MAXIMUM**. The maximum distance between hydrographic survey lines.

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: metre

Resolution: 1m

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxx

Example: **250** for a maximum distance between sounding lines of 250 metres.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.7 line spacing minimum

IHO Definition: **LINE SPACING MINIMUM**. The minimum distance between hydrographic survey lines.

Attribute Type: Integer

Unit: metre

Resolution: 1m

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxx

Example: **50** for a minimum distance between sounding lines of 50 metres.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.8 maximum display scale (CSCALE)

IHO Definition: **MAXIMUM DISPLAY SCALE**. The value considered by the Data Producer to be the maximum (largest) scale at which the data is to be displayed before it can be considered to be “grossly overscaled”.

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:22 000 is encoded as 22000.

Unit: none

Resolution: 1

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: **12000** for a maximum display scale of scale of 1:12000

Remarks:
- **Maximum display scale** provides a reference for the user selected viewing scale in the ECDIS at which the overscale warning will be displayed if there is no larger optimum display scale ENC dataset available.
- This attribute is only used in conjunction with the meta feature **Data Coverage** which is used to define polygons of equal largest intended viewing scale.

28.9 measurement distance maximum (SDISMX)

IHO Definition: **MEASUREMENT DISTANCE MAXIMUM**. The maximum spacing of the principal measurement lines of a hydrographic survey.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: metre

Resolution: 1m

Minimum value: 0

Format: xxxx

Example: **30** for a maximum distance between sounding along a sounding line of 30 metres.

Remarks:
- Note that, in spite of the representation of a depth measurement with a single discrete point position, it actually represents an area with a certain footprint on the seafloor.

28.10 measurement distance minimum (SDISMN)

IHO Definition: **MEASUREMENT DISTANCE MINIMUM**. The minimum spacing of the principal measurement lines of a hydrographic survey.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: metre

Resolution: 1m

Minimum value: 0

Format: xxx.xx

Example: **5.75** for a minimum distance between sounding along a sounding line of 5.75 metres.

Remarks:
- Note that, in spite of the representation of a depth measurement with a single discrete point position, it actually represents an area with a certain footprint on the seafloor.

28.11 minimum display scale

IHO Definition: **MINIMUM DISPLAY SCALE**. The smallest intended viewing scale for the data.

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:700 000 is encoded as 700000.

Unit: none

Resolution: 1

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: **700000** for a minimum display scale of scale of 1:700000

Remarks:
- **Minimum display scale** is intended to be used in a series of ENC cells covering a geographic area to determine the dataset loading strategy as the user selected viewing scale becomes larger.
- This attribute is only used in conjunction with the meta feature **Data Coverage** which is used to define polygons of equal smallest intended viewing scale. **minimum display scale** should therefore not be confused with the attribute **scale minimum**.

28.12 optimum display scale (CSCALE)

IHO Definition: **OPTIMUM DISPLAY SCALE**. The largest intended viewing scale for the data.

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:22 000 is encoded as 22000.

Unit: none

Resolution: 1

Minimum value: 1000

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: **12000** for an optimum display scale of scale of 1:12000

Remarks:
- **optimum display scale** provides a reference for the user selected viewing scale in the ECDIS at which the overscale indication will be displayed if there is no larger optimum display scale ENC dataset available, as well as the ECDIS viewing scale when the cell is loaded.
- This attribute is only used in conjunction with the meta feature **Data Coverage** which is used to define polygons of equal largest intended viewing scale.

28.13 orientation uncertainty

IHO Definition: **ORIENTATION UNCERTAINTY**. The best estimate of the accuracy of a bearing.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 0·001°

Format: xxx.xxx

Minimum value: 0

Maximum value: 360

Example: **0·005** for an error of 0·005 degrees

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.14 quality of horizontal measurement (QUAPOS)

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF HORIZONTAL MEASUREMENT**. The degree of reliability attributed to a position.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

4) **approximate**

   IHO Definition: A position that is considered to be less than third-order accuracy, but is generally considered to be within 30.5 metres of its correct geographic location. Also may apply to a feature whose position does not remain fixed. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32, and IHO Specifications, S-4 – B-424.1).

5) **position doubtful**

   IHO Definition: Of uncertain position. The expression is used principally on charts to indicate that a wreck, shoal, etc., has been reported in various positions and not definitely determined in any. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.15 quality of vertical measurement (QUASOU)

IHO Definition: **QUALITY OF VERTICAL MEASUREMENT**. The reliability of the value of a sounding.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **depth known**

IHO Definition: The depth from the chart datum to the seabed (or to the top of a drying feature) is known. (Adapted from Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

2) **depth or least depth unknown**

IHO Definition: The depth from chart datum to the seabed, or the shoalest depth of the feature is unknown. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000, as amended).

3) **doubtful sounding**

IHO Definition: A depth that may be less than indicated. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

4) **unreliable sounding**

IHO Definition: A depth that is considered to be an unreliable value. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000).

6) **least depth known**

IHO Definition: The shoalest depth over a feature is of known value. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary – S-32).

7) **least depth unknown, safe clearance at value shown**

IHO Definition: The least depth over a feature is unknown, but there is considered to be safe clearance at this depth. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000).

8) **value reported (not surveyed)**

IHO Definition: Depth value obtained from a report, but not fully surveyed. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000).

9) **value reported (not confirmed)**

IHO Definition: Depth value obtained from a report, which it has not been possible to confirm. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000).

10) **maintained depth**

IHO Definition: The depth at which a channel is kept by human influence, usually by dredging. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

11) **not regularly maintained**

IHO Definition: Depths may be altered by human influence, but will not be routinely maintained. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.169, November 2000).

Remarks:
- The attribute **quality of vertical measurement** indicates the reliability of the value of sounding.

28.16 scale value maximum (SCVAL1)

IHO Definition: **SCALE VALUE MAXIMUM**. The largest scale for the range of survey scale. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.182, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:25 000 is encoded as 25000.

Unit: none

Resolution: 1

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: **25000** for a scale of 1:25000

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.17 scale value minimum (SCVAL2)

IHO Definition: **SCALE VALUE MINIMUM**. The smallest scale for the range of survey scale. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.183, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: The modulus of the scale is indicated, that is 1:250 000 is encoded as 250000.

Unit: none

Resolution: 1

Minimum value: 1

Format: xxxxxxxx

Example: **250000** for a scale of 1:250000

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.18 significant features detected

IHO Definition: **SIGNIFICANT FEATURES DETECTED**. A statement expressing if significant features have or have not been detected in the course of a survey.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the characteristics of a hydrographic survey are such that significant seafloor features could be detected.

Remarks:
- A feature in this context is any object, whether manmade or not, projecting above the seafloor, which may be a danger for surface navigation (reference: IHO publication S-44). **Significant features detected** does not describe if significant features were actually detected during a hydrographic survey, but whether the survey had the capacity to detect significant features.

28.19 size of features detected

IHO Definition: **SIZE OF FEATURES DETECTED**. The size of detected bathymetric features in an area.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: cubic metre

Resolution: 0·01

Minimum value: 1 cubic metre

Format: xxx.xx

Example: **32.5** for a survey capable of detecting significant seafloor features of a minimum size of 32.5 cubic metres.

Remarks:
- A feature in this context is any object, whether manmade or not, projecting above the seafloor, which may be a danger for surface navigation (reference: IHO publication S-44).
- **Size of features detected** does not describe the actual size of features detected during a hydrographic survey, but the size of the smallest feature that the survey was capable of detecting with a high probability.

28.20 source

IHO Definition: **SOURCE**. The publication, document, or reference work from which information comes or is acquired.

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Source (c...): String of characters.

Format: c...

Example:
Notice to Mariners 3245/09

Remarks:
- The attribute **source** may be populated with the corresponding paper chart Notice to Mariners numbers, although other references are permitted.

28.21 survey authority (SURATH)

IHO Definition: **SURVEY AUTHORITY**. The authority which was responsible for the survey. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.200, November 2000).

Attribute Type: Free text

Indication: Survey authority (c...): String of characters.

Format: c...

Example:
Australian Hydrographic Office
Port of Melbourne Authority

Remarks:
- The attribute “survey authority” encodes the name of the source survey authority.

28.22 survey type (SURTYP)

IHO Definition: **SURVEY TYPE**. Classification of the different survey types.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **reconnaissance/sketch survey**

   IHO Definition: A survey made (due to lack of time or facilities) to a lower degree of accuracy and detail than the chosen scale would normally indicate. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

2) **controlled survey**

   IHO Definition: A thorough survey usually conducted with reference to guidelines. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.203, November 2000).

4) **examination survey**

   IHO Definition: A survey principally aimed at the investigation of underwater obstructions and dangers. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.203, November 2000).

5) **passage survey**

   IHO Definition: A survey where soundings are acquired by vessels on passage. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.203, November 2000).

6) **remotely sensed**

   IHO Definition: A survey where features have been positioned and delimited using remote sensing techniques. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.203, November 2000).

7) **full coverage**

IHO Definition: A survey achieving 100% coverage using systematic, controlled techniques providing full seafloor coverage or full coverage to a defined depth and an investigation of all contacts.

8) **systematic survey**

IHO Definition: A controlled survey but full coverage may not have been achieved.

9) **non-systematic survey**

IHO Definition: A survey of lower quality than a full coverage and systematic survey. Such surveys may be further categorized as reconnaissance, sketch, track, passage, remotely sensed and spot-sounding surveys.

10) **inadequately surveyed**

IHO Definition: Not surveyed to modern standards; or due to its age, scale, or positional or vertical uncertainties is not suitable to the type of navigation expected in the area. (Adapted from IHO Data Quality Working Group (DQWG)).

11) **spot-sounding survey**

IHO Definition: A survey that uses a regular (for example grid) or irregular pattern of soundings obtained one at a time, and normally with very wide spacing.

12) **acoustically swept survey**

IHO Definition: A controlled, systematic survey to standard accuracy; using modern survey echo sounder with sonar sweep.

13) **mechanically swept survey**

IHO Definition: Swept areas where the clearance depth is accurately known but the actual seabed depth is not accurately known.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.23 update number

IHO Definition: **UPDATE NUMBER**. Update number of the ENC being referenced. (IHO WWNWS-SC)

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: For an Update file, corresponds to the EEE of an ENC dataset file name 101CCCCØØØØØØØØØØ.EEE.

Format: xxx

Minimum value: 0

Example: **1** for Update number 1

Remarks:
- Leading zeros must not be encoded.

28.24 update type

IHO Definition: **UPDATE TYPE**. An action performed when the contents of a dataset are changed.

Attribute Type: Enumeration

1) **insert**

IHO Definition: To put or introduce into the body of something. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary).

2) **delete**

IHO Definition: To eliminate especially by removing, cutting out or erasing. (Adapted from Merriam-Webster Dictionary).

3) **modify**

IHO Definition: To make basic or fundamental changes to the characteristics of something, often to give a new orientation to or to serve a new end. (Merriam-Webster Dictionary).

4) **move**

IHO Definition: To change the place or position of something. (Adapted from Merriam-Webster Dictionary).

Remarks:
- No remarks.

28.25 uncertainty fixed (*POSACC, SOUACC, VERACC*)

IHO Definition: **UNCERTAINTY FIXED**. The best estimate of the fixed horizontal or vertical accuracy component for positions, depths, heights, vertical distances and vertical clearances.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m).

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xx.x

Example: **1.2** for a fixed uncertainty of 1·2 metres

Remarks:
- The maximum of the one-dimensional error (for vertical) or two-dimensional error (for horizontal). The error is assumed to be positive and negative. The plus/minus character must not be encoded.

28.26 uncertainty variable factor

IHO Definition: **UNCERTAINTY VARIABLE FACTOR**. The factor to be applied to the variable component of an uncertainty equation so as to provide the best estimate of the variable horizontal or vertical accuracy component for positions, depths, heights, vertical distances and vertical clearances.

Attribute Type: Real

Indication: The fraction that equates to the factor (or percentage) contributing to the variable uncertainty component is indicated, that is a factor of 5% is encoded as 0.05.

Resolution: 0·01

Format: 0.xx

Example: The positional accuracy for the highest accuracy for hydrographic data in a **Patial Quality** feature is quoted as “±5 metres + 10% depth”. The variable component in this example is depth, and the factor to be applied to the depth at a location in order to provide the variable uncertainty is **0.1**.

In this example, at a depth of 25 metres, the variable uncertainty would be 2.5 metres, and the overall best estimate of the positional accuracy would be ±7.5 metres.

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29 Complex Attributes

29.1 directional character

IHO Definition: **DIRECTIONAL CHARACTER**. A directional light is a light illuminating a sector of very narrow angle and intended to mark a direction to follow. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Indication: The complex attribute defines whether the light is a moiré effect light and encodes the orientation of the directional light sector.

Sub-attributes:		
	moiré effect	see clause 27.129
	orientation	see clause 29.15

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.2 feature name

IHO Definition: **FEATURE NAME**. Provides the name of an entity, defines the national language of the name, and provides the option to display the name at various system display settings.

Indication: The complex attribute provides the encoder with options as to the name to display in certain system display settings.

Sub-attributes:		
	language	see clause 27.116
	name	see clause 27.131
	name usage	see clause 27.133

Remarks:
- For further information regarding the population of the complex attribute **feature name**, in particular the encoding of multiple instances of **feature name** for a single feature instance, see clause 2.5.8.

29.3 features detected

IHO Definition: **FEATURES DETECTED**. The uniform assessment of detected features.

Indication:

Sub-attributes:		
	least depth of detected features measured	see clause 28.5
	significant features detected	see clause 28.18
	size of features detected	see clause 28.19

Remarks:
- A feature in this context is meant to be any object, whether manmade or not, projecting above the seafloor, which may be a danger for surface navigation. (Refer IHO document S-44). **features detected** does not describe if features were actually detected during a hydrographic survey, but whether the survey had the capacity to detect features.

29.4 fixed date range

IHO Definition: **FIXED DATE RANGE**. An active period of a single fixed event or occurrence, as the date range between discrete start and end dates.

Indication: The complex attribute describes single fixed period, as the date range between its sub-attributes.

Sub-attributes:		
	date end	see clause 27.80
	date start	see clause 27.82

Remarks:
- The sub-attributes **date start** and **date end** must be encoded in the format YYYYMMDD; using 4 digits for

the calendar year (YYYY) and, optionally, 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific month and/or day is required/known, the values are replaced with dashes (-).

29.5 frequency pair

IHO Definition: **FREQUENCY PAIR**. A pair of frequencies for transmitting and receiving radio signals. The shore station transmits and receives on the frequencies indicated.

Indication: The complex attribute describes all variations of radio receiving and transmitting.

Sub-attributes: **frequency shore station receives** see clause 27.100
frequency shore station transmits see clause 27.101

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.6 horizontal clearance fixed

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL CLEARANCE FIXED**. The horizontal clearance measured between two points for a fixed span.

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the horizontal distance …….

Sub-attributes: **horizontal clearance value** see clause 27.106
horizontal distance uncertainty see clause 28.4

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.7 horizontal clearance open

IHO Definition: **HORIZOBTAL CLEARANCE OPEN**. The horizontal clearance measured between two points for an opening span.

Commented [TS123]: Refer email correspondence 03-08 May with Christian. Concern is that this implies that horizontalClearanceOpen should be an allowable attribute for the SpanOpening feature, which it is not currently.

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the horizontal distance …….

Sub-attributes: **horizontal clearance value** see clause 27.106
horizontal distance uncertainty see clause 28.4

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.8 horizontal position uncertainty

IHO Definition: **HORIZONTAL POSITION UNCERTAINTY**. The best estimate of the accuracy of a position. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.255, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the horizontal uncertainty associated with any horizontal measurement.

Sub-attributes: **uncertainty fixed** see clause 28.25
uncertainty variable factor see clause 28.26

Remarks:
- The expected input is the maximum of the two-dimensional error. The error is assumed to be positive and negative.

29.9 information

IHO Definition: **INFORMATION**. Textual information about the feature. The information may be provided as a string of text or as a file name of a single external text file that contains the text. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Pages 2.141 and 2.209, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute provides additional textual information that cannot be provided using other allowable attributes for the feature, and defines the language of the text string.

Sub-attributes:		
	file locator	see clause 27.96
	file reference	see clause 27.97
	headline	see clause 27.103
	language	see clause 27.116
	text	see clause 27.176

Remarks:
- At least one of the sub-attributes **file reference** or **text** must be populated.
- The files referenced by the sub-attribute **file reference** generally contain long text strings or those that require formatting; there is no restriction on the type of text (except for lexical level) that can be held in files referenced by sub-attribute **file reference**.
- The sub-attribute **file locator** cannot be populated unless the attribute **file reference** is populated.
- For further information on the population of **information**, see clause 2.4.6.
- This complex attribute should be used, for example, to hold the information that is shown on paper charts by cautionary and explanatory notes.

29.10 light sector

IHO Definition: **LIGHT SECTOR**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

Indication:

Sub-attributes:		
	colour	see clause 27.74
	directional character	see clause 29.1
	light visibility	see clause 27.119
	sector limit	see clause 29.21
	value of nominal range	see clause 27.191
	sector information	see clause 29.20
	sector arc extension	see clause 30.4

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.11 measured distance value

IHO Definition: **MEASURED DISTANCE VALUE**. The distance value indicated on a distance mark, or the distance between two measured distance marks.

Indication:

Sub-attributes:		
	distance unit of measurement	see clause 27.91
	reference location	see clause 27.148
	waterway distance	see clause 27.202

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.12 multiplicity of features

IHO Definition: **MULTIPLICITY OF FEATURES**. The number of features of identical character that exist as a co-located group. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.150, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute provides an indication as to whether the true number of features is known and, where known, the number of features.

Sub-attributes: **multiplicity known** see clause 27.130
number of features see clause 27.138

Remarks:
- The attribute **multiplicity of features** must only be used to indicate the number of entities of a feature that are co-located (for example 3 overhead cables suspended over a body of water between 2 pylons), and this information is considered to be of use to the Mariner. Where possible, features must be encoded individually.

29.13 online resource

IHO Definition: **ONLINE RESOURCE**. Information about online sources from which a resource or data can be obtained. (Adapted from ISO 19115).

Indication: The complex attribute describes the access to online resources according to ISO 19115.

Sub-attributes: **headline** see clause 27.103
linkage see clause 27.120
name of resource see clause 27.132

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.14 orientation

IHO Definition: **ORIENTATION**. The angular distance measured from true north to the major axis of the feature. (Defence Geospatial Information Working Group; Feature Data Dictionary Register, 2010).

Indication: The complex attribute provides the orientation value together with a measure of the uncertainty of the value.

Sub-attributes: **orientation uncertainty** see clause 28.13
orientation value see clause 27.140

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.15 periodic date range

IHO Definition: **PERIODIC DATE RANGE**. The active period of a recurring event or occurrence.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the active period for a seasonal feature (for example a buoy), as the dates between its sub-attributes.

Sub-attributes: **date end** see clause 27.80
date start see clause 27.82

Remarks:
- The sub-attributes **date start** and **date end** must be encoded in the format ----MMDD; using 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific day is required/known, the values are replaced with dashes (-).

29.16 radar wave length *(RADWAL)*

IHO Definition: **RADAR WAVE LENGTH**. The distance between two successive peaks (or other points of identical phase) on an electromagnetic wave in the radar band of the electromagnetic spectrum. (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.172, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute describes the wave length, as the combination of its sub-attributes.

Sub-attributes:		
	radar band	see clause 27.144
	wave length value	see clause 27.203

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.17 rhythm of light

IHO Definition: **RHYTHM OF LIGHT**. The sequence of times occupied by intervals of light/sound and eclipse/silence for all light characteristics or sound signals.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the rhythm of a light (or a light sector).

Sub-attributes:		
	light characteristic	see clause 27.118
	signal group	see clause 27.161
	signal period	see clause 27.162
	signal sequence	see clause 29.25

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.18 schedule by day of week

IHO Definition: **SCHEDULE BY DAY OF WEEK**. The nature and timings of a daily schedule by days of the week.

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the regular schedule for a service.

Sub-attributes:		
	category of schedule	see clause 27.59
	time intervals by day of week	see clause 29.33

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.19 sector characteristics

IHO Definition: **SECTOR CHARACTERISTICS**. Describes the characteristics of a light sector.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the characteristics of a light sector.

Sub-attributes:		
	light characteristic	see clause 27.118
	light sector	see clause 29.10
	signal group	see clause 27.161
	signal period	see clause 27.162
	signal sequence	see clause 29.25

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.20 sector information

IHO Definition: **SECTOR INFORMATION**. Additional textual information about a light sector.

Indication: The complex attribute provides additional textual information that cannot be provided using other allowable attributes for the feature, and defines the language of the text string.

Sub-attributes: **language** see clause 27.117
text see clause 27.177

Remarks:
- This complex attribute should be used, for example, to hold the information related to the characteristics of a complex light sector.
- No formatting of text is possible within **sector information**. If formatted text is required, then an associated text file referenced by the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **file reference** must be used (see clause 27.98).

29.21 sector limit

IHO Definition: **SECTOR LIMIT**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

The sector limit specifies the limits of the sector in a clockwise direction around the central feature (for example a light). (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.184, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute describes the angle of a light sector as defined by the sub-attributes.

Sub-attributes: **sector limit one** see clause 29.22
sector limit two see clause 29.23

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.22 sector limit one *(SECTR1)*

IHO Definition: **SECTOR LIMIT ONE**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

sector limit one specifies the first limit of the sector. The order of **sector limit one** and **sector limit two** is clockwise around the central feature (for example a light). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.184, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute describes the line or bearing of a light where the character changes or the light is obscured.

Sub-attributes: **sector bearing** see clause 27.156
sector line length see clause 27.157

Remarks:
- The values given to the common limits of adjacent sectors should be identical.
- The orientation of the bearing is from seaward to the central feature. This conforms with the method used in "List of Lights" publications.
- A generic term such as "to shore" cannot be used; a specific bearing must be encoded. Where a light sector limit is defined as "to the shore", it should be encoded using a value that ensures that, when the limit is drawn, it will fall entirely on land.

29.23 sector limit two *(SECTR2)*

IHO Definition: **SECTOR LIMIT TWO**. A sector is the part of a circle between two straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference. (Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 2nd Edition).

sector limit two specifies the second limit of the sector. The order of **sector limit one** and **sector limit two** is clockwise around the central feature (for example a light). (S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.184, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute describes the line or bearing of a light where the character changes or the light is obscured.

Sub-attributes: **sector bearing** see clause 27.156
sector line length see clause 27.157

Remarks:
- The values given to the common limits of adjacent sectors should be identical.
- The orientation of the bearing is from seaward to the central feature. This conforms with the method used in "List of Lights" publications.
- A generic term such as "to shore" cannot be used; a specific bearing must be encoded. Where a light sector limit is defined as "to the shore", it should be encoded using a value that ensures that, when the limit is drawn, it will fall entirely on land.

29.24 shape information

IHO Definition: **SHAPE INFORMATION**. Textual information about the shape of a non-standard topmark.

Indication: The complex attribute provides additional textual information that cannot be provided using the attribute **topmark/daymark shape**.

Sub-attributes: **language** see clause 27.116
text see clause 27.176

Remarks:
- No formatting of text is possible within **shape information**. If formatted text is required, then an associated text file referenced by the complex attribute **information** must be used (see clause 29.9).

29.25 signal sequence

IHO Definition: **SIGNAL SEQUENCE**. The sequence of times occupied by intervals of light/sound and eclipse/silence for all "light characteristics" or sound signals. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.191, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute provides the signal sequence for non-fixed lights and sound signals.

Sub-attributes: **signal duration** see clause 27.158
signal status see clause 27.163

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.26 spatial accuracy

IHO Definition: **SPATIAL ACCURACY**. Provides an indication of the vertical and horizontal positional uncertainty of bathymetric data, optionally within a specified date range.

Indication: The complex attribute defines the horizontal and vertical position accuracy of bathymetric features, which may optionally be degraded over time.

Sub-attributes: **fixed date range** see clause 29.4

	horizontal position uncertainty	see clause 29.8
	vertical uncertainty	see clause 29.41

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.27 speed

IHO Definition: **SPEED**. Rate of motion. The terms speed and velocity are often used interchangeably, but speed is a scalar, having magnitude only, while velocity is a vector quantity, having both magnitude and direction. (Adapted from IHO Dictionary, S-32).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the range of the speed at a location.

Sub-attributes:	**speed maximum**	see clause 27.165
	speed minimum	see clause 27.166

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.28 surface characteristics

IHO Definition: **SURFACE CHARACTERISTICS**. The general nature of the material of which the land surface or the seabed is composed.

Indication:

Sub-attributes:	**nature of surface**	see clause 27.136
	nature of surface – qualifying terms	see clause 27.137
	underlying layer	see clause 27.186

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.29 survey date range

IHO Definition: **SURVEY DATE RANGE**. The complex attribute describes the period of the hydrographic survey, as the time between its sub-attributes.

Commented [TS124]: Do not think that this is a good definition. Suggest change.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the period of the hydrographic survey, as the time between its sub-attributes.

Sub-attributes:	**date end**	see clause 27.80
	date start	see clause 27.82

Remarks:
- The sub-attributes **date start** and **date end** must be encoded using 4 digits for the calendar year (YYYY) and, optionally, 2 digits for the month (MM) (for example April = 04) and 2 digits for the day (DD). When no specific month and/or day is required/known, indication of the month and/or day is replaced with dashes (-).

29.30 telecommunications

IHO Definition: **TELECOMMUNICATIONS**. A means or channel of communicating at a distance by electrical or electromagnetic means such as telegraphy, telephony, or broadcasting.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the different telecommunications methods and contact details.

Sub-attributes:	**contact instructions**	see clause 27.78
	telecommunication identifier	see clause 27.174

	telecommunication service	see clause 27.175

Remarks:
- If no value is populated for the sub-attribute **telecommunication service**, this means the service is by voice communication.

29.31 tidal stream panel values

IHO Definition: **TIDAL STREAM PANEL VALUES**. The direction of the flow and the tidal current rate from 6 hours before to 6 hours after high water (HW) or low water (LW) at the reference tide station, at hourly or sub-hourly intervals. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.210, November 2000).

Indication:

Sub-attributes:	**reference tide**	see clause 27.149
	reference tide type	see clause 27.160
	stream depth	see clause 27.171
	tidal stream value	see clause 29.32

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.32 tidal stream value

IHO Definition: **TIDAL STREAM VALUE**. A measurement of the direction and speed of a tidal stream at a given time relative to the reference tide.

Indication:

Sub-attributes:	**orientation**	see clause 29.14
	speed maximum	see clause 27.165
	time relative to tide	see clause 27.183

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.33 time intervals by day of week

IHO Definition: **TIME INTERVALS BY DAY OF WEEK**. The regular weekly operation times of a service or schedule.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the timings for a regular service schedule.

Sub-attributes:	**day of week**	see clause 27.84
	day of week is range	see clause 27.85
	time of day end	see clause 27.181
	time of day start	see clause 27.182

Remarks:
- At least one of the sub-attributes **day of week**, **time of day start** or **time of day end** must be encoded. Where populated, the number of instances of **time of day start** must be the same as the number of instances of **time of day end**.
- The sub-attribute **day of week is range** indicates whether an instance of **time intervals by day of week** encodes a range of days or discrete days. The day(s) or day range(s) are encoded using sub-attribute **day of week**. Where **day of week is range** is populated as *True*, there must be exactly two instances of the attribute **day of week**. If **day of week** is not populated, this indicates that the same schedule applies every day (Monday through Sunday). Multiple ranges or mixing range with discrete days(s) is not allowed (if this is required another instance of **time intervals by day of week** must be encoded).
- An indeterminate range may be indicated with a null value at the appropriate position in the sequence.

29.34 topmark

IHO Definition: **TOPMARK**. A characteristic shape secured at the top of a buoy or beacon to aid in its identification. (IHO Dictionary – S-32).

Indication:

Sub-attributes:		
	colour	see clause 27.74
	colour pattern	see clause 27.75
	topmark/daymark shape	see clause 27.184
	shape information	see clause 29.24

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.35

29.35 value of local magnetic anomaly

IHO Definition: **VALUE OF LOCAL MAGNETIC ANOMALY**. The value of the deviation from the norma magnetic variation and where required its direction. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter Page 2.228, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the range of the local magnetic anomaly.

Sub-attributes:		
	magnetic anomaly value	see clause 27.121
	reference direction	see clause 27.147

Remarks:
- No remarks.

Commented [TS125]: Refer to email from Jonathan Pritchard 05/02/24.

Deleted: <#>update description

Deleted: <#>¶
IHO Definition: **UPDATE DESCRIPTION**. The textual description of changes included in an update.¶
Indication: The complex attribute provides additional textual information describing changes made to an ENC dataset resulting from application of an ENC Update.¶
Sub-attributes: **language** see clause 27.112¶
text see clause 27.176¶
Remarks:¶
<#>The sub-attribute **text** is populated with a brief description of the changes made when the Update is applied, for example: **Navigational aids inserted¶**
Changes to depths alongside and new pontoons added ...

29.36 vertical clearance closed

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE CLOSED**. The vertical clearance of a feature in closed condition (for example a closed lifting bridge) measured from the horizontal plane towards the feature overhead. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.235, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the vertical distance from a defined vertical datum to the underside of a an opening overhead feature when it is in the closed position.

Sub-attributes:		
	vertical clearance value	see clause 27.194
	vertical uncertainty	see clause 29.41

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.37 vertical clearance fixed

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE FIXED**. The vertical clearance measured from the horizontal plane towards a fixed (non-opening) feature overhead. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.234, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the vertical distance from a defined vertical datum to the underside of a fixed overhead feature.

Sub-attributes:		
	vertical clearance value	see clause 27.194
	vertical uncertainty	see clause 29.41

Remarks:
- In the case of cables carrying high voltages an additional clearance of from 2 to 5 metres may be needed to avoid an electrical discharge. When known, the authorised safe clearance (known in the UK as the Safe Overhead Clearance) which is the physical clearance minus a safety margin shall be stated, using the attribute **vertical clearance safe** (see clause 29.40). **vertical clearance fixed** must not be used to

populate authorized safe clearances.

29.38 vertical clearance open

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE OPEN**. The vertical clearance of a feature in opened condition (for example an open lifting bridge) measured from the horizontal plane towards the feature overhead. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.236, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the vertical distance from a defined vertical datum to the underside of an opening overhead feature when it is in the open position.

Sub-attributes:

vertical clearance unlimited	see clause 27.193
vertical clearance value	see clause 27.194
vertical uncertainty	see clause 29.41

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.39 vertical clearance safe

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL CLEARANCE SAFE**. The safe vertical clearance of a feature measured from the horizontal plane towards the feature overhead. (Adapted from S-57 Edition 3.1, Appendix A – Chapter 2, Page 2.237, November 2000).

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the safe vertical distance from a defined vertical datum to the lowest point of an electrical cable over navigable water.

Sub-attributes:

vertical clearance value	see clause 27.194
vertical uncertainty	see clause 29.41

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.40 vertical uncertainty

IHO Definition: **VERTICAL UNCERTAINTY**. The best estimate of the vertical accuracy of depths, heights, vertical distances and vertical clearances.

Indication: The complex attribute encodes the vertical uncertainty associated with any vertical measurement.

Sub-attributes:

uncertainty fixed	see clause 28.25
uncertainty variable factor	see clause 28.26

Remarks:
- No remarks.

29.41 vessel speed limit

IHO Definition: **VESSEL SPEED LIMIT**. The maximum allowed rate of travel for a vessel in an area in knots.

Indication: The complex attribute describes the speed limit for vessels in an area where speed is restricted.

Sub-attributes:

speed limit	see clause 27.164
speed units	see clause 27.170
vessel class	see clause 27.197

Remarks:
- The speed limit in an area may differ for different classes of vessel.

29.42 zone of confidence

IHO Definition: **ZONE OF CONFIDENCE**. The overall indication of the quality of bathymetric data within an area based on the positional accuracy, survey equipment and coverage; optionally within a specified data range.

Indication: The complex attribute defines the overall indication of the quality of bathymetric data, which may optionally be degraded over time.

Sub-attributes:		
	category of zone of confidence in data	see clause 27.73
	fixed date range	see clause 29.4

Remarks:

- No remarks.

30 ECDIS System (Portrayal) Attributes

30.1 default clearance depth

IHO Definition: **DEFAULT CLEARANCE DEPTH**. The depth value determined for an underwater hazard of unknown depth, based on the depth of the surrounding area.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: sxxxxx.x
s: sign, negative values only

Examples: **12.5** for a default clearance depth of 12.5 metres
-2.4 for a drying default clearance height of 2·4 metres

Remarks:
- The depth of the surrounding area is determined from the surrounding encoded **Depth Area**(s) and is encoded, where required, based on the value calculated for the attribute **surrounding depth** (see clause 30.5).
- The default value populated for **default clearance depth** is the value calculated for **surrounding depth** – 66 metres.
- **default clearance depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, only if the system attribute **surrounding depth** is populated with a (non-null) value.
- The auto populated value for **default clearance depth** may be amended by the Data Producer if the resulting isolated danger indication in the ECDIS is not considered appropriate.
- A drying height is indicated by a negative value.

30.2 flare bearing

IHO Definition: **FLARE BEARING**. The bearing about which the light flare symbol is rotated to be displayed in ECDIS.

Attribute Type: Integer

Indication: Indicates the bearing of the light flare to be included in the data for ECDIS display purposes where different from the default. Required where there is more than one light encoded on an instance of point spatial geometry. The value encoded corresponds to a bearing away from the position of the light.

Unit: Degree (°)

Resolution: 1°

Format: xxx

Minimum value: 0

Maximum value: 359

Example: **270** for an flare bearing of 270 degrees away from the light

Remarks:
- The initial flare bearing is calculated by ENC production software systems.
- The attribute **flare bearing** may also be populated manually to cartographically align the light flare along, for example, a transit or leading line (noting that in such cases the bearing to be encoded will be the reciprocal (+/- 180° of the bearing encoded for the navigational line).

30.3 in the water

IHO Definition: **IN THE WATER**. An indication if the feature is located in or over navigable water.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value is an indication that the feature is located in or over navigable water.

Remarks:
- A True value is an indication that the feature is to be included in the ECDIS Base Display viewing group.

30.4 sector arc extension

IHO Definition: **SECTOR ARC EXTENSION**. An indication that the default radius of a sector arc is to be extended by 5mm.

Attribute Type: Boolean

Indication: A True value indicates that a sector arc radius is to be extended 5 millimetres beyond the default. Required where there is more than one light sector covering the same or similar angle.

Remarks:
- The requirement for a sector arc to be extended is calculated by ENC production software systems.

30.5 surrounding depth

IHO Definition: **SURROUNDING DEPTH**. The depth value determined for seabed around an underwater hazard of unknown depth, based on the depth of the surrounding area.

Attribute Type: Real

Unit: Defined as an attribute in the ENC dataset metadata: metre (m)

Resolution: 0·1m

Format: xxxxx.x

Example: **20** for a surrounding depth of 20 metres

Remarks:
- The value for **surrounding depth** is determined from the attribute **depth range minimum value** for the surrounding encoded **Depth Area**(s) (see clause 11.7). For an area feature covered by more than one depth area, the **surrounding depth** is determined as the **depth range minimum value** of the deeper of the depth areas covering the feature.
- **surrounding depth** must be populated with a value, which must not be an empty (null) value, if the attribute **value of sounding** for the feature instance is populated with an empty (null) value.
- **surrounding depth** is used by the production software to determine the value of the attribute **default clearance depth** (see clause 30.1).

31 Updating (see S-4 – B-600)

Remarks:

- An ENC Update will be rejected by the ECDIS if it is located outside the area of data coverage for the dataset (that is, area covered by the meta feature **Data Coverage** with attribute **category of coverage** = *1* (coverage available)) or if it changes the extent of this area. Where the area of data coverage for a base ENC dataset is to be changed, this must be done by issuing a New Edition of the dataset.
- It has been reported that some ECDIS experience problems in loading large Update datasets. Therefore, as a guide, ENC Updates should not exceed 50 Kilobytes in size.
- It has been reported that grouping new or modified soundings into existing sounding groups (see clause 11.3) in an ENC Update negatively impacts the discovery of the changes to the bathymetry by Mariners. Therefore, encoders are advised that soundings added or modified as part of an ENC Update should be encoded as individual sounding objects or, if in close proximity, may be included as a single grouped sounding object. When a New Edition of the ENC is produced, soundings may be re-grouped in accordance with the Data Producer's standard practices.
- When updating the geometry of curve features, compilers must note S-101 clause X.X regarding the requirement for the vector records making up the curve feature to be referenced sequentially. Additionally, for curve features comprising multiple edges, the end node of a vector record must be the same as the start node of the following vector record. It has been reported that some ECDIS reject ENC Updates where the geometry does not conform to these requirements.

Commented [TS126]: Needs a reference.

31.1 Issuing Updates in advance

Under certain conditions, it may be necessary for a Data Producer to issue Update information in advance. For example, a change in a traffic routeing system must be made public before the new situation is implemented. Within an Update dataset there is no means of indicating the date at which an Update must be applied. Therefore, when an Update dataset is received by an end user, it must be applied immediately. To avoid situations where Update information would cause target data to reflect a situation that does not yet exist, the following encoding rules must be followed:

a) If the advance Update information contained in the Update message involves the addition of features to the existing data (for example a new lighthouse), the **date start** sub-attribute for the complex attribute **fixed date range** on the new features must contain the date at which the Update becomes active.

b) If the advance Update information contained in the Update message involves the modification of existing features (for example a change in a traffic routeing system), it must be treated as a deletion of the existing features and replacement with new features. See a) above and c) below.

c) If the advance Update information contained in the Update message involves the deletion of existing features (for example the removal of a buoy), the Update message must set the **end date** sub-attribute for the complex attribute **fixed date range** of all features to be deleted to the date at which the Update becomes active. **NB**. This Update message does not actually delete the features from the dataset, it simply indicates that on the date held in the **date end** sub-attribute for the complex attribute **fixed date range** they become obsolete. A further Update to actually delete the obsolete features from the dataset should be sent at the time that the change in the real world occurs.

d) To highlight to the Mariner that the advance Update information contained in an Update message will take place in the future, it is recommended that a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) be created covering the location at which the future changes will take place. A warning note specifying, in plain language, the nature of the future change should be encoded, using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). The sub-attribute **date end** for the complex attribute **fixed date range** on the **Caution Area** must be set to the date at which the change described in the Update becomes active.

Changes to the **date start** and **date end** for **fixed date range** cannot be applied to spatial types. Therefore, a change to the geometry of a real world feature (for example the relocation of a buoy) to be applied in the future can only be achieved by updating all of the geo and spatial types involved.

As a consequence of issuing advance information Updates, more than one instance of a particular real world feature could exist in the dataset.

Further information regarding issuing Update information in advance as an equivalent to the paper chart Preliminary Notices to Mariners process can be found at clause 31.2.3.

31.1.1 Advance notification of changes to traffic separation schemes

It is important that Mariners be provided with advance notification of changes to traffic separation schemes (TSS), which may include modification to an existing TSS, addition of a new TSS or removal of a TSS. In order to provide a consistent approach to Mariners regarding advance notification of changes to a traffic separation scheme, the following procedure should be adopted:

1) At least one month before the changes to the TSS come into force, issue an updated dataset (as an Update or a New Edition) which:

- Adds new or amended TSS component features. These features must have **date start** for **fixed date range** populated with the date that the changes to the TSS come into force.
- Adds **date end** for **fixed date range** (populated with the date of the day before the changes to the TSS come into force) to any component features of the existing TSS that are to be changed or deleted.
- Creates a **Caution Area** surface feature (see clause 16.10) covering the geographic extent of both the current and the future TSS. The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6) must be used to explain the change to the TSS, for example *"The traffic separation scheme off Cape Bon is to be modified at 0000 UTC on 1 July 2009. This ENC includes all the information before and after the change, indicated by the sub-attributes **date end** (before the change) and **date start** (after the change) for the complex attribute **fixed date range** on the components of the scheme"*. The sub-attribute **date end** on **fixed date range** for the **Caution Area** should be populated with the date at which the change comes into force or, if encoders wish to provide extended information to the Mariner that a change has been made, with a date up to a month after the change comes into force. If the current and the future TSS are not in the same geographic area, it may be required to encode two distinct **Caution Area** surface features. A picture file may be referenced by the **Caution Area** using the attribute **pictorial representation** if it is considered useful, for example the equivalent paper chart representation of the amended or new TSS.

2) As soon as possible after the modified/new/deleted TSS comes into force, issue an updated dataset (as an Update or New Edition) which:

- Deletes the changed or redundant component features of the former TSS.
- Removes the attribute **fixed date range** from the component features of the new TSS.

3) The **Caution Area** must also be removed by Update, either as part of the Update to remove the redundant component features of the former TSS, or as a separate Update at a later date, corresponding to the date populated in the sub-attribute **date end** for the complex attribute **fixed date range** for the **Caution Area**.

Encoders who are members of RENCs should also provide advance notification of changes to TSS to their RENC in accordance with RENC procedures, in order for the RENC to provide additional notification to Mariners of impending TSS changes.

31.2 Guidelines for encoding Temporary and Preliminary ENC Updates

31.2.1 Introduction

The following provides high level guidance for the promulgation of the equivalent of paper chart Temporary (T) and Preliminary (P) Notices to Mariners (NMs) via ENC Updates. This guidance allows for some latitude in its application and is dependent on the assessment of each particular case, and as such relies ultimately on the judgement of each ENC Producing Authority.

31.2.2 Temporary (T) Notices to Mariners (see S-4 – B-633)

1. Temporary Notices to Mariners, (T)NMs, for paper charts are defined in S-4, Section B-600. A (T)NM promulgates navigationally significant information that will remain valid only for a limited period of time.

For the paper chart, the convention is for the Mariner to insert the Update on the chart in pencil, and erase it when the (T)NM is cancelled.

S-101 provides mechanisms which allow ENCs to be automatically updated. This allows the affected ENC(s) to be continually updated in a timely manner for the duration of the NM without additional workload for the Mariner.

Producing Authorities must promulgate temporary information which is safety-related or which otherwise needs to be advised to the Mariner urgently by ENC Update to provide the ECDIS user with an updated System Database. This service corresponds to the service that (T)NMs offer to the paper chart user.

2. Update encoding for an ENC and (T)NM for the paper chart are two completely different communication processes for promulgating information to the Mariner. Since these processes are different (but not supposed to be independent), and the products to which they apply are also different, it is recommended that ENC Updates be derived from the source information rather than the paper chart (T)NM. Often the (T)NM for paper chart does not provide enough detail to apply the relevant ENC Update.

3. If possible the information should be encoded with the relevant features. However, HOs should consider the following:
   - An ENC Update must not be initiated if the information will no longer be valid by the time it is received by the Mariner; this will depend upon the timescales relating to the Producer Nation's ENC Updating regime. Shorter time periods may be covered by Radio Navigational Warnings (RNW). If known, the ENC Update should include an indication of how long the temporary change will remain in force.
   - If it is unlikely that the HO will be notified when a temporary change will revert to its original charted state, the HO should consider an alternative method such as a general note or by issuing an ENC Update explaining, for example, that the aids to navigation within an area are reported to be unreliable.

   It is important that HOs should consider constraints of time when identifying the encoding method. Time consuming and unnecessarily complex methods of encoding should be avoided.

4. The overuse of **Caution Area** features (especially **Caution Area** of type surface – see clause 16.10) for temporary information should be avoided. The **Caution Area** feature is used when it is relevant for the situation and/or when a particular change needs a special warning. **Caution Area** may be used when the relevant features cannot be encoded, for example information cannot be displayed clearly or cannot be easily promulgated due to time constraints.

5. To correctly encode an ENC Update the source information is essential in determining which elements of the Update are reliable, which are permanent and which are temporary. The attribute **status** with value *7* (temporary) should only be used in an Update when it is certain that the status of a feature is confirmed as temporary.

6. Use of complex attribute **fixed date range**:

   The earliest date on which a feature will be present (**date start**) and the latest date on which a feature will be present (**date end**) must only be encoded when known. Where such dates have been encoded for any feature that is the structure component of a **Structure/Equipment** feature association, all other component features within the relationship must not extend beyond the temporal attribute values encoded for the structure feature.

   The ENC Update should be issued as close as possible to the earliest date of the change (**date start**), unless it is appropriate to provide the information well in advance. A feature no longer present should be removed from the display by issuing a further Update as soon as possible after the return to the original charted state (**date end**). The timing of the issue of these Updates will depend upon the Producing Authorities ENC Updating regime and its corresponding timescales.

   When an ENC Update promulgates information well in advance and uses **fixed date range**, a **Caution Area** feature may be used in order to inform Mariners that temporal information exists at some future point in time.

7. The complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text** should be used as required to provide supplementary or contextual information when encoding temporary (or preliminary) information. When the text is too long to be encoded using **information** (**text**) (see

clause 27.176), the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **file reference** should be used to encode a reference to an external textual file. Encoders using **information** to provide positional information must express the coordinate values in WGS 84 and in accordance with S-4 – B-131. If it is deemed necessary a picture file (referenced using attribute **pictorial representation**) may be included.

8. ENC Updates issued for temporary information should be carefully managed and reviewed regularly to consider whether further action is necessary. New information may have been received that necessitates the issuing of a new Update to modify or cancel the previous one. Producing Authorities should make it easy to recover the original charted state before the temporary changes came into effect.

9. Further verification is recommended to make sure that the encoded ENC Update is consistent with the corresponding paper chart Notice to Mariners.

10. Guidelines for typical cases:

    a) Individual new physical features (for example wreck, buoy) with no associated explicit or implicit area associated (for example restricted area):
    - Encode the relevant S-101 feature.
    - In this instance a **Caution Area** feature would not normally be used.

    b) Individual new physical feature(s) with an associated explicit area around it:
    - Encode the relevant S-101 surface feature (for example **Restricted Area**). The relevant feature is encoded for the new physical feature. However, when the area is an “entry prohibited area” or a **Caution Area** feature the new physical feature(s) may be omitted to simplify encoding unless it is navigationally significant.

    c) Individual new physical feature with a notification of caution, for example “Mariners are advised to navigate with caution…”:
    - Encode the relevant S-101 feature. Additional clarification and advice may, if required, be provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). Exceptionally, a **Caution Area** feature may be encoded to highlight the caution if considered necessary.

    d) Obstructions (including wrecks) reported to exist within an area:
    - Encode an **Obstruction** or **Wreck** feature of type surface (see clauses 13.6 and 13.5).

    e) New simple surface feature (military practice area, dredged area):
    - Encode the relevant S-101 surface feature.
    - Supplementary information is provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6).
    - Normally, a **Caution Area** feature is not added.

    f) Complex information within an area (for example works in progress where the changes are numerous or involve complex changes to the topology):
    - Encode the surface feature. It should be encoded with the relevant S-101 feature or, if more suitable or by default, a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10). Supplementary or contextual information is provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). When the available information is sufficiently detailed, navigationally significant features (for example navigational aids, obstructions) should be encoded or modified within the area. When the available information does not permit this, a **Caution Area** feature defining the area is preferred.

    g) Changes to an existing feature (for example navigational aid):
    - In these instances it is usually only necessary to change the attributes values. A **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) may be used to warn the Mariner if it is considered necessary.

    h) Buoy temporarily moved:
    - When a buoy is temporarily moved then it, and any associated features, are “moved” to the new position and the attribute **status** = *7* (temporary) is populated. Alternative encodings are possible, for example, if the move is for a fixed period of time. In these cases the feature, and any associated components, can be created in the temporary position with sub-attribute **date end** for the complex attribute **fixed date range** populated with the date corresponding to the end of the fixed period of time. The currently charted feature, and any associated

components, should have **date start** for the complex attribute **fixed date range** also populated with the date corresponding to the end of the fixed period of time. A **Caution Area** feature may, if considered necessary, be added.

i) Light temporarily extinguished:
- The attribute **status** for the **Light** feature is populated with the values *11* (extinguished) and *7* (temporary).

j) Change to a maintained depth in a dredged area:
- When information is received from an official or recognised survey authority relating to a dredged area where the dredged depth has changed, the attribute value of **depth range minimum value** for the **Dredged Area** feature should be changed to the value provided by the survey.
- Where a **Sounding** feature is encoded in a dredged area to indicate shoaler depths, the attribute value **exposition of sounding** = *2* (shoaler than the depth of the surrounding depth area) should not be populated (see clauses 11.3.1 and 11.4.1). Where required, the shoal depths should be encoded using **Sounding**, with the appropriate underlying depth information (**Depth Contour** and **Depth Area**) to support the depths. Alternatively, the attribute **depth range maximum value** for the **Dredged Area** may be set to the designed dredged depth for the dredged area and the attribute **depth range minimum value** set to the value of the shoalest depth, or a **Caution Area** feature may be encoded covering the shoaler depth area with the depth information provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). Where the shoal depths are close to the edge of the dredged area, the dredged area limit may be adjusted to exclude the shoal depths from the area. See also S-4 – B-414.5.

31.2.3 Preliminary (P) Notices to Mariners (see S-4 – B-634)

1. Preliminary Notices to Mariners, (P)NMs, for paper chart are defined in S-4, Section B-600. A (P)NM promulgates navigationally significant information early to the Mariner, for example when a paper chart new edition cannot be issued in due time.

   For the paper chart, the convention is for the Mariner to insert the Update on the chart in pencil, and erase it when the (P)NM is cancelled.

   S-101 provides mechanisms which allow ENCs to be automatically updated (Update application profile). This allows the affected ENC(s) to be continually updated in a timely manner for the duration of the NM without additional workload for the Mariner.

   Producing Authorities must promulgate preliminary information which is safety-related or which otherwise needs to be advised to the Mariner urgently by ENC Update to provide the ECDIS user with an updated System Database. This method of delivery corresponds to the service that (P)NMs offer to the paper chart user.

2. Update encoding for ENC and (P)NM for paper chart are two completely different communication processes for promulgating information to the Mariner.

   For example, there are instances when the paper chart needs updating using a NM block (also known as a chartlet or patch) or by issuing a New Edition due to the complexity or volume of changes. This could clutter the paper chart unacceptably if amended by hand and/or overburden the chart corrector. The lead time for a NM block correction or a New Edition can be lengthy, sometimes several months. In these cases a (P)NM may be issued as an interim measure. The ENC Updating mechanisms are more flexible and may allow for ENC Updates to be issued in quicker time. However, experience has shown that large Updates may result in processing issues in the ECDIS, in particular inordinately long loading times. Therefore producing an ENC New Edition may be the better option in some cases.

   There may be other instances, when new information is received, where it is not possible to fully update both the ENC and paper chart promptly. For example, not all the information required to produce a chart-updating NM is received by the HO in the first notification (for instance notification of works in progress or projected), or extensive new information requires significant compilation work. In these cases it is still necessary to provide notification of navigationally significant changes to the Mariner in a timely manner.

Since the paper chart and ENC processes are different (but not supposed to be independent), and also the products to which they apply are different, it is recommended that ENC Updates be derived from the source information rather than from the paper chart (P)NM. It is often the case that the paper chart (P)NM does not provide enough detail to encode the ENC Update exactly as it should be.

3. Simple or more complex encoding methods are possible but it is important for Producing Authorities to consider carefully which encoding method is appropriate when creating an ENC Update with due consideration for time.

4. Often, information received is too complex, extensive and/or imprecise to be encoded with the relevant S-101 features. In these instances the use of a **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) is preferred to give a précis of the overall changes together with detailed navigationally significant information. For complex or extensive changes the **Caution Area** should have the complex attribute **information**, sub-attribute **file reference** referencing a file containing precise details of the preliminary information. See also clause 31.2.2 paragraph 7 above. If the information is less precise then **information** should be used to inform Mariners of this fact.

   It is noted that the Mariner, if it is considered necessary, has the facility in the ECDIS to add "Mariner Objects" and annotate them. These can be saved in the System Database based on information provided in textual form using the **information** complex attribute. It is envisaged that these features would be created at the "Route Planning" stage and act as a prompt during the "Route Monitoring" phase.

   When information is issued as advance notification for an ENC it is necessary to provide as soon as possible to the Mariner the final and full charted information encoded with the relevant S-101 features. An ENC Update or a New Edition of the ENC dataset should therefore be issued at a later date when the Producing Authority can carry out full encoding of the changes. The period of time will depend on the following:
   - the time needed by the HO to undertake the full encoding with relevant features;
   - the time needed to obtain confirmation of details; and
   - the date at which the real world situation is stabilized and any forecast changes have been completed.

5. Source Information received may contain some navigationally significant elements that are simple to encode with the relevant features in a timely manner. In such cases these elements may be encoded with the relevant features provided that they reflect the "real world" situation after the ENC Update is made available to the user. However, if the changes are subject to continual change these features should be amended as a consequence and will represent additional work for the HO. In such cases, the ENC Update should also warn the Mariner that the situation is subject to change. For temporary information, see clause 31.2.2.

6. Use of complex attribute **fixed date range**: See clause 31.2.2 paragraph 6. For new or amended routeing measures, see clause 31.1.1.

7. Use the complex attribute **information**: See clause 31.2.2 paragraph 7.

8. Diagrams are sometimes very useful to the Mariner, for example, for indicating changes to complex routeing measures or the introduction of new ones. A picture file may be referenced using the attribute **pictorial representation** in such cases.

9. ENC Updates issued for preliminary information should be managed and reviewed regularly. For example further source information may have been acquired requiring a further ENC Update. This may add, modify or cancel information previously promulgated.

10. Further verification is recommended to make sure that the encoded ENC Update is consistent with the corresponding paper notice.

11. <u>Guidelines for typical cases:</u>

    a) Traffic separation schemes:
       - See clause 31.1.1. For the use of the complex attribute **fixed date range**, see also clause 31.2.2 paragraph 6.

    b) Complex information within an area of change (for example works in progress):

- A **Caution Area** feature (see clause 16.10) should be created to cover the area. Information is provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6), sub-attribute **text**, for example *under construction*, or sub-attribute **file reference** to encode a reference to an external textual file when it is necessary to give more detailed information. If sufficiently detailed information is available, then navigationally significant information such as navigational aids, fairways, regulated areas, etc. can be encoded or modified within the **Caution Area** if time permits. A reference to a picture file may also be included, if required, using the attribute **pictorial representation** on the **Caution Area**.
- Alternatively, and if considered appropriate a **Restricted Area** feature (see clause 17.8), with attribute **restriction** = *7* (entry prohibited) may be encoded instead of the **Caution Area** feature.

c) Simple information which does not need an additional notification of caution:

- The relevant feature(s) and the appropriate attributes should be encoded with any additional contextual information provided using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). In this case it is not necessary to use a **Caution Area** feature. This could apply, for example, to submarine cables or pipelines being laid (**Cable Submarine** or **Pipeline Submarine/On Land** features), or an area under reclamation (**Land Area** feature with attribute **condition** = *3* (under reclamation)). If required the encoding should reflect that positions are approximate using the spatial attribute **quality of horizontal measurement** = *4* (approximate) on the spatial type(s).

d) Depths less than those charted within a defined area:

- If the depth values and their positions are known, **Sounding** features (see clause 11.3) may be created or modified. Any affected depth contours and depth areas should also be amended as necessary. The source of the information should be encoded using the complex attribute **information** (see clause 2.4.6). However, Producing Authorities should carefully consider the time needed to update ENC depth information and the complexity of changes to the topology that may be required.
- The encoding of amended **Sounding**, **Depth Area** and associated features could be inappropriate for promulgating this navigationally significant information within acceptable time scales. In this case a **Caution Area** (see clause 16.10) is the preferred option. In such cases, only the most significant amendments to depth information should be provided using the complex attribute **information**. This method should also be used if the depth values and/or the exact positions are unknown, or if the Producing Authority only has information relating to a limited number of depth values.